



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

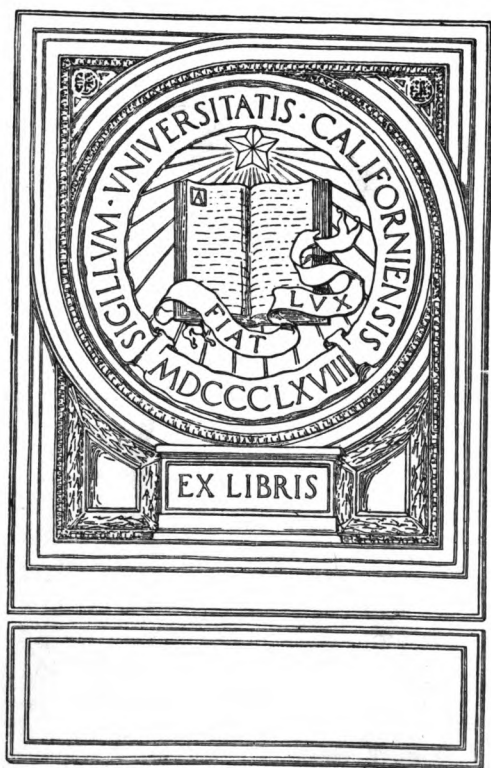
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



A

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN;

CONTAINING

GRAMMAR, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARIES,

ON THE METHOD OF

CONSTANT IMITATION AND REPETITION.

BY

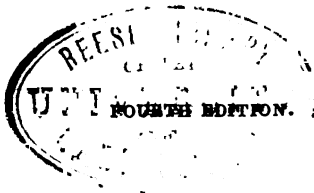
JOHN MCCLINTOCK, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES,

AND

GEORGE R. CROOKS, A.M.,

ADJUNCT PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.



HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,

82 CLIFF STREET, NEW YORK.

1848.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846,
By HARPER & BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New York.

24897

P R E F A C E.

THIS book is designed, as the title-page states, to contain within itself Grammar, Exercises, Reading-book, and Dictionary; in short, all that the pupil will need before commencing the regular reading of Cæsar or any other easy Latin author. It has been prepared, as far as possible, on the following principles:

1. The object of studying languages is twofold: (1), the acquisition of the languages themselves; and (2), the mental discipline gained in acquiring them.

2. No language can be thoroughly acquired without the outlay of much labour and time. All schemes which promise to dispense with such outlay must be pronounced visionary and chimerical.

3. But labour without fruit does not contribute to mental cultivation. Labour and pain are not necessary companions: learning should not be "wrung from poor striplings like blood from the nose, or the plucking of untimely fruit."*

4. The grammar of a language cannot be understood until the language itself is at least partially acquired.

5. The vernacular may be learned, so far as its use is concerned, without grammar: a foreign living language may be so learned, but never so thoroughly, nor even so rapidly, as with grammatical aids. In the study of a dead language grammar is indispensable.

6. "A grammar intended for beginners should be formed altogether differently from one intended for

* Milton.

the higher classes, both in the distribution of the matter and in the mode of presenting it. Those who think that the pupil should use the same grammar from the beginning of his course to the end, are quite in error."*

7. In elementary books, or in teaching, no etymological form nor grammatical principle should be presented to the pupil without an immediate application thereof to *practice*, which should be kept up, both orally and in writing, from the very first lesson.

8. The all-important rule of practice, in the acquisition of language, is *imitation* and *repetition*. This is no new invention; all good teachers have known and used it; but yet it has been but slightly employed in elementary books heretofore.

9. Models for imitation should be simple at first, and gradually made more complicated; but they should always be selected from pure authors, say, in Latin, from Cicero and Cæsar.

10. The pupil's ear should be trained to correctness from the beginning, and the simplest rules of prosody learned and applied as soon as possible. For this purpose, the quantity of all syllables should be marked in elementary books, and attention to it should be strictly enforced by the teacher.

11. The foreign idiom, both as to the use and arrangement of words, should be made familiar to the pupil by constant practice. Nothing can be more hurtful than exercises in which foreign words are used in the idiom, and according to the arrangement of the vernacular.

How far we have been successful in carrying out these principles, the book itself must show.

* Kühner.

We have aimed to combine the advantages of constant repetition and imitation of Latin sentences from the beginning, with a more thorough drilling in etymological forms than is common. In order to effect this combination, we have necessarily deviated from the ordinary grammatical course to some extent; but we trust that experienced teachers will find, from an examination of the table of contents alone, that our arrangement is not devoid of systematic and even logical order.

While we have not gone out of our way to bring in novelties, we have yet adopted every new method which we have deemed to be an improvement. None of the class-books of any repute in England or Germany have escaped our notice in the preparation of this work; and we have made free use of them all, without slavish adherence to any. Perhaps the most marked peculiarity of the etymological part of the book will be found to be the doctrine of the genders of nouns of the third declension, which we have reduced, for the first time, to a form at once philosophical, we hope, and practical.* Some steps toward the method here presented have been taken by MADVIG, WEISENBORN, and others in Germany; but none of these writers has brought out a clear exposition of the doctrine, adapted to the actual purposes of instruction. The arrangement, also, of the verbs,† according to the formation of the perfect-stem, founded mainly upon the classification of GROTEFEND (better set forth by ALLEN), will be found, we trust, to be an improvement upon any yet offered.

* The summary of rules, with all the exceptions, will be found to occupy two pages only, viz., p. 132, 133.

† Lessons lxii.-lxix., and p. 268-279.

The Syntax, in its details, generally follows ZUMPT; but in the arrangement, especially of Part II., we have approached nearer to the plan of BILLROTH. The admirable syntax of BECKER, adopted by KÜHNER in his Greek and Latin Grammars, we deem too difficult for beginners.

The Exercises are selected, as far as possible, from Cæsar's Gallic War. Although we have laboured hard to keep out bad Latin, we do not hope that all our sentences will escape criticism. We have found, from actual experiment in our classes, that the exercises to be rendered from English into Latin are within the capacity of any student of ordinary industry who studies the book in order; and we do not know that this can be said of any book of the kind, of equal extent, in use among us.

A few words as to the use of the book may not be out of place. Our own method has been to employ the lessons, for a considerable time at least, entirely in oral instruction, the teacher pronouncing first the Latin sentences distinctly, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding English without book; and then pronouncing the English sentences, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding Latin. As the quantities are marked (in Part I.) in all syllables except those to which the general rules apply, we require the pupil to observe quantity in his pronunciation from the very beginning, so that he learns prosody by practice before the rules are given. For the purpose of review, the summary of Etymology (Part III.), which contains, in short compass, all that is necessary to be learned by heart, will be found very convenient. After the student has passed

through Parts I. and II., he will find little difficulty in committing accurately the Rules of Syntax (Part IV.), with most of which he will be already familiar. The Reading Lessons at the end will give him easy practice in the syntax* and in word-building. For the convenience of those who may need it, we have condensed into a few pages, in Appendix I., all of Prosody that is essential for the understanding of hexameter verse.

The preparation of this book was originally suggested by our sense of the inadequacy of the ordinary modes of instruction, and especially by the advantage which we ourselves had derived from the use of OLLENDORFF'S method in the study of the German language. Finding that Rev. T. K. ARNOLD had prepared a series of books on the same principle, we used them in our own classes for some time, with a view to revising them for republication. They were found unsuited to our purpose in many respects, and we therefore formed the design of preparing an entirely new series, adapted to the use of American schools. The first of these is now presented to the public.

Dickinson College, April 7, 1846.

* * In Part I. the quantity is marked on all syllables except those to which the general rules apply. At the beginning of Part II. additional rules of quantity are given, and the marks are subsequently omitted on many syllables, in order to afford the pupil exercise upon the rules. In the Syntax and Reading Lessons they are omitted almost entirely. Great pains have been taken to ensure accuracy in the marks of quantity, but we cannot hope to have avoided error entirely.

* Our Second Book in Latin will contain a fuller development of Syntax, in a series of progressive exercises in writing Latin.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

IN this edition, a number of errors in the marks of quantity, which had crept into the first, are corrected. We have also placed a series of Examination Questions at the end of the book, which will add, we hope, to its practical value.

Carlisle, November, 1846.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	Page
§ 1. Division of the Letters	1
§ 2. Syllables, Quantity, Accent	1
§ 3. Pronunciation	3
§ 4. Division of Words	4

PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

<i>Summary of Essential Points</i>	8
§ 5. <i>First Declension of Nouns.—First Conjugation of Verbs.</i> (I.—V.)	10
First Declension of Nouns, Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases	10
First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Intransitive</i>	14
First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Transitive</i>	17
First Declension of Nouns, Dative and Ablative Cases	19
§ 6. <i>Second Declension of Nouns.—Second Conjugation of Verbs.</i> (VI.—VIII.)	22
Second Declension, <i>Masculine</i>	22
Second Declension, <i>Neuter</i> .—Second Conjugation of Verbs	26
§ 7. <i>Adjectives of First Class, Three Endings.</i> (IX.—X.)	28
Forms of Adjectives in <i>us, a, um</i>	28
Some forms of <i>Esse, to be</i>	30
§ 8. <i>Third and Fourth Conjugations of Verbs.</i> (XI.)	33
§ 9. <i>Passive Verbs.</i> (XII.—XIII.)	36
§ 10. <i>Third Declension of Nouns, Partial Treatment.</i> (XIV.—XV.)	40
§ 11. <i>Adjectives of Second Class, Two Endings.</i> (XVI.)	44
§ 12. <i>Adjectives of Third Class, One Ending.</i> (XVII.)	46
§ 13. <i>Fourth Declension of Nouns.</i> (XVIII.)	48
§ 14. <i>Fifth Declension of Nouns.</i> (XIX.)	51
§ 15. <i>Pronouns.</i> (XX.—XXXI.)	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 1st Person. Verb, 1st Person	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 2d Person. Verb, 2d Person	57
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 3d Person	61
Pronouns, <i>Demonstrative</i>	63
Pronoun, <i>Relative</i>	63
Pronoun, <i>Interrogative</i>	70

Pronouns, <i>Indefinite</i>	Page 72
Pronouns, <i>Correlative</i>	74
§ 16. <i>Numerals</i> . (XXXII.—XXXIII.)	77
§ 17. <i>Verbs of Third Conjugation in io</i> . (XXXIV.)	81
§ 18. <i>Verbs, Deponent</i> . (XXXV.)	83
§ 19. <i>Adverbs</i> . (XXXVI.)	85
§ 20. <i>Prepositions</i> . (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)	88
§ 21. <i>Analysis of Tense-formations</i> . (XXXIX.—XLI.)	92

PART II.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

§ 1. <i>Additional Rules of Quantity</i>	99
§ 2. <i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Partial Treatment</i> . (XLIII.—XLVI.)	102
Perfect Tenses of <i>Esse</i>	102
Perfect Tenses of 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations	104
Perfect Tenses of 3d Conjugation	106
§ 3. <i>Third Declension of Nouns, Fuller Treatment</i> . (XLVII.—LVII.)	110
Irregular Nouns	129
Summary of Rules of Gender, Third Declension	132
§ 4. <i>Comparison of Adjectives</i> . (LVIII.—LX.)	134
§ 5. <i>Comparison of Adverbs</i>	140
§ 6. <i>Supine</i> . (LXI.)	141
§ 7. <i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Active Voice. Fuller Treatment</i> . (LXII.—LXIX.)	144
Forms of Perfect Stem, 1st Conjugation	144
Forms of Perfect Stem, 2d Conjugation	146
Forms of Perfect Stem, 3d Conjugation	149
Forms of Perfect Stem, 4th Conjugation	159
§ 8. <i>Tenses for Completed Action, Passive Voice</i> . (LXX.)	162
§ 9. <i>Participles</i> . (LXXI.—LXXV.)	165
Present Participle Active	165
Future Participle Active	168
Perfect Participle Passive	170
Ablative Absolute	172
§ 10. <i>Infinitive</i> . (LXXVI.—LXXIX.)	176
Forms of Infinitive	176
Accusative with Infinitive	178
§ 11. <i>Gerund</i> . (LXXX.)	184
§ 12. <i>Gerundive</i> . (LXXXI.—LXXXII.)	187
Gerundive used for Gerund	187
Gerundive used to express Duty or Necessity	189
§ 13. <i>Imperative Mood</i> . (LXXXIII.)	192
§ 14. <i>Sentences</i>	194
§ 15. <i>Conjunctions</i> . (LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)	195

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

	Page
§ 16. <i>Subjunctive Mood.</i> (LXXXVI.—XCIII).	199
Subjunctive Present	199
Subjunctive Perfect	202
Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. Conditional Sentences	205
Subjunctive with <i>ut, ne</i> (<i>Purpose</i>)	209
Subjunctive with <i>ut</i> (<i>Consequence</i>). Succession of Tenses	212
Subjunctive with <i>quin, quo, quominus</i> . Periphrastic Forms	214
Subjunctive with <i>quam</i>	217
Subjunctive in Relative Sentences	220
§ 17. <i>Oratio Obliqua.</i> (XCIV.)	223
§ 18. <i>Impersonal Verbs.</i> (XCV.—XCVI.)	226
§ 19. <i>Irregular Verbs.</i> (XCVII.—CI)	230
<i>Posse</i>	230
<i>Velle, Nolle, Malle</i>	232
<i>Ferre</i>	234
<i>Fieri, Edere</i>	236
<i>Ire, Quire, Nequire</i>	238
§ 20. <i>Defective Verbs.</i> (CII.)	241

PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. <i>Letters, Quantity, &c.</i>	247
§ 2. <i>Noun</i>	248
§ 3. <i>Adjective</i>	251
§ 4. <i>Numerals</i>	254
§ 5. <i>Pronoun</i>	255
§ 6. <i>Verb</i>	258
1. <i>Classes of Verbs</i>	258
2. <i>Parts of the Verb</i>	258
3. <i>Conjugation</i>	259
4. <i>The Auxiliary <i>Esse, to be</i></i>	260
5. <i>Paradigms of Regular Verbs</i>	261
6. <i>Verbs in <i>io</i> of the 3d Conjugation</i>	266
7. <i>Deponent Verbs</i>	266
8. <i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i>	266
9. <i>Formation of Perfect Stem</i>	267
10. <i>Lists of Verbs, with various Perfects and Supines</i>	268
<i>First Conjugation</i>	268
<i>Second Conjugation</i>	269
<i>Third Conjugation</i>	271
<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	276
<i>Deponent Verbs</i>	277
<i>Inchoative Verbs</i>	279
11. <i>Irregular Verbs, Paradigms</i>	279
12. <i>Defective Verbs</i>	282

13. Impersonal Verbs	Page
§ 7. <i>Adverb</i>	283
§ 8. <i>Preposition</i>	288
§ 9. <i>Conjunction</i>	289
§ 10. <i>Interjection</i>	290

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

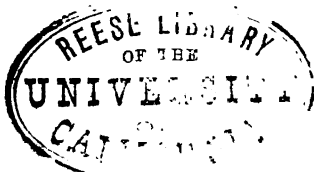
PART I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. Subject and Predicate	293
II. Use of Cases	295
<i>Nominative</i>	295
<i>Genitive</i>	295
<i>Dative</i>	298
<i>Accusative</i>	300
<i>Ablative</i>	302
III. Use of the Indefinite Verb	306
<i>Infinitive</i>	306
<i>Participle</i>	307
<i>Gerund</i>	308
<i>Gerundive</i>	308
<i>Supine</i>	309

PART II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. Co-ordinate Sentences	310
II. Subordinate Sentences	310
A. <i>Participial Sentences</i>	311
B. <i>Accusative with Infinitive</i>	312
C. <i>Conjunctive Sentences</i>	313
D. <i>Relative Sentences</i>	316
E. <i>Interrogative Sentences</i>	318
<i>Oratio Obliqua</i>	319

APPENDIX I. Prosody	323
APPENDIX II. Greek Nouns	326
APPENDIX III. The Calendar	327
APPENDIX IV. Abbreviations	329
WORD-BUILDING	333
READING LESSONS	340
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	355
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	383



INTRODUCTION.*

§ 1. DIVISION OF THE LETTERS.

(1.) THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*; *k* is used in but few words, and *y* and *z* only in words borrowed from the Greek.

(2.) Six are *vowels*,¹ viz., *a, e, i, o, u, y*: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.²

¹ Sounds formed by an *uninterrupted* emission of the air from the throat. Called *vowels* (vocales = sounding letters), because capable of being sounded by themselves.

² Sounds formed by *interrupting* the emission of air from the throat. Called *consonants* (con-sonare = to sound together), because incapable of being sounded by themselves.

(3.) The consonants are divided into

(a) Liquids,³ *l, m, n, r*;

(b) Spirants,³ *h, s, j*;

(c) Mutes,³ *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, v*;

³ The *Liquids* are formed by a *partial* interruption of the voice; the *Spirants* chiefly by the breath; and the *Mutes* by a more complete interruption of the passage of the air from the throat. *H* is regarded, indeed, simply as an aspiration, though in many words it fills the place of a consonant.

(d) Double consonants,⁴ *x, z*.

⁴ *X* is compounded of *c*, *g*, *s*, and *z* (occurring only in Greek words) of *d*, *g*.

(4.) The union of two vowels into one syllable forms a *diphthong*. These are, in Latin, *au, eu, ae, oe* (generally written *æ, œ*), and, in a few words, *ei, oi, ui*.

§ 2. SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

(5.) Every word contains as many syllables as vowels; e. g., *miles*, a soldier, is not pronounced in one syllable, as the English word *miles*, but in two, *mī-les*.

(6.) The quantity of syllables (that is, their *length*

* This Introduction may be omitted by *very young pupils* in their first study of the work; but the references to it in the subsequent lessons should be carefully attended to.

or *shortness*) depends upon that of the vowels which they contain. The dash (—) placed over a vowel denotes that it is *long*; the semicircle (˘), that it is *short*. A vowel that may be used either as long or short is marked (ˉ), and is said to be *common*.

(7.) The following rules for the quantity of syllables must be carefully observed:

— (a) All diphthongs are *long*; e. g., mens-*æ*, tables; a *ū*-rum, gold.

(b) A vowel followed by another vowel is *short*; e. g., D*ē*us, God.

This rule applies, even though *h* intervene between the two vowels, as *h* is not regarded as a consonant (3, *b*, n. 3); e. g., tr*ā*ho, v*ē*ho.

(c) A vowel followed by two consonants, or a double one (3, *d*), is *long by position*; e. g., in am*ā*nt, the *a* before *nt* is long by position.

☞ [Every syllable to which none of these three rules is applicable will be marked with its proper quantity in the following pages, until other rules are given.]

(8.) A word of but one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*; of two, a *Dissyllable*; of more than two, a *Polysyllable*. Thus, lex is a monosyllable; l*ē*g*is*, a dissyllable; inc*ō*l*ās*, a polysyllable.

(9.) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the second from the last, the *antepenult*. Thus, in the word inc*ō*l*ās*, the syllable l*ās* is the ultimate, c*ō*, the penult, and in the antepenult.

(10.) The *accent* of a syllable is a stress or elevation of the voice in pronouncing it. Observe the following rules:

(a) Every *dissyllable* is accented on the *penult*; e. g., b*ō*nus, p*ō*no.

(b) Every *polysyllable* is accented,

1. On the *penult*, when the penult is *long*; e. g., ām*ā*r*ē*.

2. On the *antepenult*, when the penult is *short*;
e. g., *ánimūs*. +

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION.

(11.) [Almost every modern nation has its own way of pronouncing Latin. But as the vowels have nearly the same sounds in all the different countries of *Continental Europe*, there is something approaching to uniformity in their pronunciation; the English, however, give peculiar sounds to some of the vowels, and they pronounce Latin, therefore, unlike all the rest of the world. In this country two methods prevail, which, for convenience' sake, may be called the *Continental* and the *English*. We give them both, stating, at the same time, our decided preference for the first, both on the score of consistency and convenience. In both methods the *consonants* are pronounced nearly as in English.]

(a) *The Continental Method.*

Table of Vowel Sounds.

Short <i>ā</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ī</i> , as in machine.
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ō</i> , as in not.
Short <i>ē</i> , as in net.	Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	Short <i>ū</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ī</i> , as in sit.	Long <i>ū</i> , as in full.

Diphthongs.

æ or œ, as e in there.

au, as ou in our.

eu, as eu in feud.

ei (rarely occurring), as i in nice.

(b) *The English Method.*

The vowels have the English *long* or *short* sounds.

Exc. A final, in words of more than one syllable, has a *broad* sound; as, fama (fame-ah).

Monosyllables.

In monosyllables, if the vowel be the *last* letter, it has the *long* sound; as *mē*, *dō*; if any *other* letter, the *short* sound; as *ēt*, *ōb*.

Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(1.) The vowel of an *accented penult* has the *long* sound,

(a) Before another vowel ; as, Déus.

(b) Before a single consonant ; as, Jóvis.

It has the *short* sound,

(a) Before two consonants, or a double consonant ; as, múnus, réxit.

(2.) The vowel of an *accented antepenult* has the *short* sound ; as, régibus.

(3.) An *accented* vowel before a mute and liquid has usually the *long* sound ; as, sácta.

§ 4. DIVISION OF WORDS.

(12.) I. Words are divided, according to their *signification*, into *eight* classes, called Parts of Speech, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

(13.) The *Noun* is the name of an object (person, or thing) ; e. g., *John, man, house*.

Nouns are divided into,

(a) Proper, denoting *individual* objects ; e. g., *John, Cæsar, Rome*.

(b) Common, denoting one or more of a *class* of objects ; e. g., *man, house, horses*.


(c) Abstract, denoting a *quality* ; e. g., *goodness, haste, virtue*.

(14.) The *Adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object ; e. g., *good, small* ; as, a *good* boy, a *small* house.

(15.) The *Pronoun* is a substitute for the noun ; e. g., *he, she, it*, are substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

(16.) The *Verb* declares something of a person or thing.

E. g., the boy *dances*; the boy *sleeps*; the boy *is* good. (In this last case the quality "good" is affirmed of "boy," by means of the verb *is*.)

 *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines* are words partaking in the meaning of the verb, and in the form of the noun.

(17.) The *Adverb* qualifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb; *e. g.*, the boy learns *rapidly*; the boy is *remarkably* faithful; the boy learns *very* rapidly.

(18.) *Prepositions* express the relations of objects simply; *e. g.*, *from* me; *in* the house.

(19.) *Conjunctions* connect words and sentences; *e. g.*, Thomas *and* John went to town; Thomas went, *but* John remained.

(20.) *Interjections* are merely signs of emotion; *e. g.*, *alas*!

(21.) II. Words are divided, according to their form, into,

(1) Four *inflected*, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.

(2) Four *uninflected*, viz., Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Rem. Inflection is the variation of a word to express different relations; *e. g.*, boy, boys, the boy's hat; I love, I am loved, &c. The inflection of Nouns is called *Declension*; of Verbs, *Conjugation*. The Latin language makes much more use of inflection than the English.

(22.) III. Words are divided, according to their formation, into,

(1) *Derivative*, *i. e.*, derived from other words.

(2) *Primitive*, *i. e.*, not derived from other words.

E. g., *manly*, *manhood*, are derivatives from the primitive *man*.

(3) *Compound*, *i. e.*, made up by the union of two or more words.

(4) *Simple*, *i. e.*, not so made up.

E. g., *man-kind* is a compound, made up of the two simple words *man* and *kind*.

P A R T I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS,

INCLUDING

TENSES OF VERBS FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION.

SUMMARY.

[THE rules and statements on this page and the following are to be thoroughly learned, as they must be applied constantly.]

(23.) OF THE LETTERS.

- (1) Six are *vowels*, *a, e, i, o, u, y*;
- (2) Four *liquids*, *l, m, n, r*;
- (3) Three *c-sounds*, *c, g, q*;
- (4) Two *p-sounds*, *b, p*;
- (5) Two *t-sounds*, *d, t*;
- (6) Two double consonants, *x, z*.
- (7) The diphthongs are *au, eu, ae, oe* (and rarely *ei, oi, ui*).

(24.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, *via*.
- (2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, *amānt*.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, *āgri*.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long*; *e. g.*, *mensæ, aūrum*.

[In the following pages of Part I., the quantity of all syllables is marked, except those which are covered by the above rules.]

(25.) GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

[In English, gender is determined by sex alone; *e. g.*, *man* is masculine, *woman* feminine. But in Latin, gender is determined partly by the *meaning* of nouns, and partly by their *endings*. The general rules here given from the *meanings* apply to nouns of all the declensions.]

I. MASCULINES : Names of *male beings* ; of most *rivers, winds, mountains, months, and nations.*

II. FEMININES : Names of *female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, and islands.*

III. NEUTERS : All *indeclinable* words.

IV. COMMON : Such as have but one form for masculine and feminine ; *e. g.*, *e x ũ l*, *an exile* (male or female).

[These four rules are contained in the following verses.]

(25. a.) *Males, rivers, winds, and mountains* most we find
 With *months and nations* MASCULINE declined ;
 But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
 As FEMININE ; most *islands, too, the same.*
 COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
 And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

EXPLANATION OF MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The mark *—* indicates a *short* vowel.

“ “ — indicates a *long* vowel.

“ “ = indicates that two words or phrases are *equivalent* to each other.

“ “ + between two words shows that they are *compounded* together.

e. g. means, *for example* (*exempli gratia*).

Passages in brackets [] are not meant to be committed to memory.

In the Exercises, words in parentheses () are not meant to be translated.

The References are made to *paragraphs*, not to *pages*.
 In a reference, R. means *Remark* ; N. means *foot-note*.

§ 5.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—FIRST CON- JUGATION OF VERBS. (I.—V.)

LESSON I.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(26.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Shade or shadow,</i>	Umbră.
(b) <i>Of the shade,</i>	Umbræ.
(c) <i>The wood,</i>	Sylvă.
(d) <i>Of the wood,</i>	Sylvæ.

(27.) The Latin has *no article*. Umbră may be *a shade*, or *the shade*, according to its connection with other words.

(28.) The words umbră and sylvă are names of things belonging to certain *classes*, and are, therefore, *common nouns* (13, b).

(29.) In English, certain words (of, with, by, &c.) are generally placed before nouns, to express their relations to other words; *e. g.*, *of the wood*, &c.; but in Latin these relations are commonly indicated by different *endings* of the noun (21, (2), R.); *e. g.*, sylv-ă, *the wood*; sylv-æ, *of the wood*.

(30.) That part of the noun to which the *ending* is added is called the *stem*; *e. g.*, sylv- is the stem of sylv-ă; terr- is the stem of terr-ă, *the earth*.

(31.) There are in Latin *six endings*, which, added to the stem, form six *cases*, the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

(32.) And as we may speak of objects as *one* or *more*, there are two numbers, the *singular and plural*,

distinguished by their endings ; *e. g.*, umbrā, *the shadow* ; umbræ, *the shadows*.

(33.) In this lesson we shall use but three cases, the nominative, vocative, and genitive.

(a) The *nominative* answers to the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of. In the example (26, a), umbrā, *shade*, is in the nominative.

(b) The *same* form of the noun, when spoken to, is called the vocative ; *e. g.*, umbrā, *shade* ; *O shade!*

(c) The *genitive* expresses, in general, those relations which are expressed in English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*, and answers to the question *whose?* of *whom?* of *what?* *e. g.*, umbrā, *the shade* (of *what?*), sylvæ (of *the wood*). Here sylvæ is in the genitive.

(34.) There are *five* declensions of nouns, distinguished from each other by the endings of the *genitive singular*. In this lesson we shall use only nouns of the

FIRST DECLENSION.

Case-Endings and Paradigm.—Nominative and Genitive.

(35.) (a)

ENDINGS.

Nom. and Voc. Gen.	Sing. ā æ	Plur. æ ārūm.
-----------------------	-----------------	---------------------

(b) By adding these endings to the stem sylv-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Nom. and Voc. Gen.	Sing. sylv-ā, <i>the wood</i> ; <i>O wood!</i> sylv-æ, <i>of the wood</i> .	Plur. sylv-æ, <i>the woods</i> ; <i>O woods!</i> sylv-ārūm, <i>of the woods</i> .
-----------------------	---	---

(36.) (a) Thus, nouns of the first declension have the nom. and voc. ending ā (*short*), and the gen. ending æ (*long*, 24, 3).

(b) The penult *a* of the gen. pl. is long. (c) They are of the *feminine* gender, except the names of *men* or *male* beings, or *rivers*: thus, *sylv-ă* is fem.; but *naut-ă*, a *sailor*, *poët-ă*, a *poet*, and the like, are masc.

[A few *Greek* nouns of this declension end in *e* fem., and *as*, *es*, masc. See Appendix.]

(37.)

EXERCISE.

[In the Vocabularies, the *nom. case* is always given, with the *genitive ending* subjoined.]

I. Vocabulary.

Queen, *rēgină*, æ.
 Crown, *cōrōnă*, æ.
 Wing, *ălă*, æ.
 Dove, *cōlumbă*, æ.
 Feather, *plūmă*, æ.
 Daughter, *filiă*, æ.
 A Celt, *Celtă*, æ.
 Farmer, *ăgricōlă*, æ. (m.)
 Rose, *rōsă*, æ.
 Maid-servant, *ancillă*, æ.

Galba, *Galbă*, æ. (m.)
 Flight, *fūgă*, æ.
 Province, *prōvinciă*, æ.
 Memory, recollection, *mēmóriă*, æ.
 Gaul, *Galliă*, æ.
 Eagle, *ăquilă*, æ.
 A Belgian, *Belgă*, æ.
 Injury, *injūriă*, æ.
 Language, *linguă*, æ.

II. Translate into Latin.

Of a crown.—Of a queen.—O Galba!—Of crowns.—Of a feather.—Of eagles.—Of the Celt.—Wings.—Roses.—Of doves.—Of injuries.—Of a daughter.—O daughter!—Of the province.—Languages.—Provinces.—Belgians.—Of the provinces.—Of the maid-servant.—O maid-servant!—The farmers.—O farmer!—Of memory.—O Belgian!—Of Gaul.—The eagles.

III. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

[A few questions are subjoined in the foot-notes, merely as specimens to the first lessons.]

LESSON II.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(38.) Examples.

(a) The queen's crown. | *Cōrōnă rēginæ*.

* What is the quantity of *u* in *umbră*? (24, 2.) Of *æ* in *sylv-æ*? (24, 3.) Of *u* in *cōlumbă*? (24, 2.) Of the penult (9) in *filiă*? (24, 1.) Of *i* in *linguă*? Of *i* in *ancillă*? (24, 2.)

(a) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *unemphatic*) stands *after* the noun on which it depends; *e. g.*, *rēgīnæ* in (a) stands *after* *cōrōnā*.

(b) The *queen's* crown (*i. e.*, | *Rēgīnæ cōrōnā*.
not the *king's*).

(b) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *emphatic*) stands *before* the noun on which it depends; *e. g.*, in (b) *rēgīnæ* stands *before* *cōrōnā*.

[Words in the exercises considered *emphatic* are in *italics*.]

(39.) EXERCISE.

I. Translate into English.

<i>Ālā cōlumbæ.</i>	<i>Rōsā ancillæ.</i>	<i>Fūgā Belgārūm.</i>
<i>Plūmā āquīlæ.</i>	<i>Galbæ fūgā.</i>	<i>Plūmæ āquīlārūm.</i>
<i>Ō rēgīnā (voc.).</i>	<i>Prōvinciā Galliæ.</i>	<i>Injūriārūm mēmōriā.</i>
<i>Filiā āgrīcōlæ.</i>	<i>Mēmōriā fūgæ.</i>	<i>Lingūā Celtārūm.</i>
<i>Rēgīnæ filiā.</i>	<i>Ō filiā!</i>	<i>Filiæ rēgīnārūm.</i>
<i>Cōlumbæ plūmā.</i>	<i>Āquīlārūm fūgā.</i>	<i>Lingūā Belgārūm.</i>

II. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

III. Translate into Latin.

The queen's dove.	The wings of eagles.
The farmer's eagle.	O eagle.
The flight of doves.	Galba's daughter.
The girl's rose.	The shades of the woods.
The queen's rose.	The memory of the queen.
The flight of the Celts.	The girl's dove.
The wings of the doves.	The language of the province.
The recollection of an injury.	O Belgians!
O Celts!	The flight of the queen.

* 1. What is the quantity of the ultimate (9) of *ancillæ*? Why? (24, 3.) Of its penult? (9.) Why? (24, 2.) Of the penult of *Galliæ*? Why? (24, 1.)

2. What is the quantity of *a* in *injuriarum*? (36, b.) in *memoria*? (36, a.)

3. What is the stem of *columba*, *ala*, *rosa*? &c. (30.)

4. What is the gender of *rosa*, *ala*, *fuga*? &c. (36, c.) What is the gender of *Galba*, *agricola*? (25, a.)

5. What is the case of *rosa*, *provinciæ*, *injuriarum*, *memoria*? What their number?

6. How many cases have Latin nouns? (31.) What are they? (31.)

LESSON III.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative and Genitive Cases.—First Conjugation of Verbs.—Intransitives.

(40.) *Examples.*

To fly,	völärö.
To dance,	saltärö.
(a) The eagle flies,	äquillä völäät.
(b) The girl dances,	püellä saltät.

(41.) SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(a.) Every sentence (e. g., *the eagle flies*) consists of two parts:

1. The *subject*, i. e., that of which something is declared (a noun, or some word used instead of a noun); e. g., *eagle*.

2. The *predicate*, i. e., that which is declared of the subject (generally a verb); e. g., *flies*.

Rem. The predicate is frequently an adjective or participle connected with the subject by the verb *is*; e. g., *the rose is sweet*.

(b.) The verb in the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person; e. g., *the eagle flies*: here *flies* is in the *third person singular*, to agree with *eagle*.

(42.) ACTIVE VERBS are those which express activity; e. g., *the eagle flies*, *the boy dances*. Active verbs are either

(a) *Transitive*, i. e., such as require an *object* to complete their meaning; e. g., *the boy killed* (whom? or what?) *the squirrel*. Here *killed* is a transitive verb.

(b) *Intransitive*, i. e., such as *do not* require an object; e. g., *the birds fly*; *the boy dances*.

[All the verbs used in this lesson are intransitives.]

(43.) (a) The *infinitive* form of a verb expresses its action indefinitely, without reference to person or time; e. g., *to dance*, *to plough*.

(b) The *indicative* mood of a verb expresses its action *definitely*, as a fact or question ; e. g., he *ploughs*. *Does he dance?*

[The imperative and subjunctive moods are treated of hereafter.]

(44.)

TENSES.

(a) The *present* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time ; e. g., *I am ploughing, I plough.*

(b) The *imperfect* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time ; e. g., *I was ploughing, I ploughed.*

(c) The *future* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time ; e. g., *I shall be ploughing, I shall plough.*

[Rem. As these three forms all express *imperfect* or *incomplete* action, they should be called *Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect, Future Imperfect*. But as the present names are fixed by almost universal usage, we retain them ; advising the student to fix distinctly in his mind the principle that these forms properly express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*. The tense-forms for *completed* action will be given hereafter.]

(45.)

CONJUGATIONS.

(a) In Latin, the different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are expressed by various endings ; and the affixing of these to the proper *stem* of the verb is called conjugation. (21, Rem.)

(b) There are *four conjugations* of verbs, distinguished by their *infinitive-endings*.

(c) The infinitive-ending of the *first conjugation* is *ārē* (a long) ; e. g., *vōl-ārē, to fly ; ār-ārē, to plough.*

(d) To find the *stem* of any verb, strike off the *infinitive-ending* ; e. g., *vōl-ārē*, stem *vōl-* ; *ār-ārē*, stem *ār-*. To form any mood, tense, &c., of a verb, affix the proper ending to the stem thus found.

(46.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ārē</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. <i>āt.</i>	Imperfect. <i>ābāt.</i>	Future. <i>ābīt.</i>
3d Plural.	<i>ant.</i>	<i>ābant.</i>	<i>ābunt.</i>

(47.) By affixing these endings to the stem *vōl-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>vōl-ārē</i> , <i>to fly</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. <i>vōl-āt, he, she, it flies.</i>	Imperfect. <i>vōl-ābāt, he, she, it was flying.</i>	Future. <i>vōl-ābīt, he, she, it will fly.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>vōl-ant, they fly.</i>	<i>vōl-ābant, they were flying.</i>	<i>vōl-ābunt, they will fly.</i>

Rem. In Latin we need not use the personal pronouns *he, she, it, or they*, with the verb, as in English, because the person-endings *t* and *n t* indicate the person sufficiently.*

(48.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Girl, *puellā*, æ.

Forces, *cōpiæ*, † *ārum* (pl.).

Sailor, *nautā*, æ (m.).

A Belgian, *Belgā*, æ.

To hasten, *festin-ārē*.

To watch, *vigil-ārē*.

Galba, *Galbā*, æ.

To fly, *vōl-ārē*.

To dance, *salt-ārē*.

To cry out, *exclām-ārē*.

To sup, *cæn-ārē*.

To walk, *ambūl-ārē*.

II. Example.

The eagle flies. | *Āquīlā vōlāt.*

Rule of Position.—The subject nominative generally precedes the verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, *āquīlā* precedes *vōlāt*.

[In the above example, which word is the subject? Why? (41, a, 1.) Which the predicate? Why? (41, a, 2.) How does *vōlāt* agree with *āquīlā*? Why? (41, b.)]

III. Translate into English.

Cōlumbæ vōlant.—*Ancillā saltāt.*—*Puellæ exclāmant.*—*Rēgīnā cænābāt.*—*Puellā ambūlābāt.*—*Cōpiæ festinant.*—*Āquīlæ vōlābant.*—*Galbā festinābīt.*—*Rēgīnā saltāt.*—*Nautæ vigīlābant.*—*Filiā rēgīnæ saltābīt.*—*Belgæ festinant.*—*Filiā Gal-*

* But when a new subject is introduced, or emphasis is required, the personal pronoun must be used in Latin.

† *Cōpiā*, in the singular, means *abundance*; in the plural, *forces*.

bæ exclāmāt.—Puellæ ambulābant.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm festinābunt.—Saltābant.—Ambulābant.—Cœnābunt.—Nautæ ambulābit.—Vigilābunt.—Nautæ saltant.—Agricōlā cœnābīt.

IV. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

V. Translate into Latin.

The dove flies.—The girl walks.—The maid-servant hastens.—The sailors dance.—The queen's maid-servant cries out.—The farmer was supping.—The queen will sup.—The sailor was watching.—The farmer's daughter will dance.—The girl's dove will fly.—The queen's maid-servant will walk.—She was hastening.—They were watching.—He (or she) was supping.—The eagles were flying.—Galba was hastening.—The forces of the Belgians will hasten.—Eagles will fly.—The sailors were crying out.—The queen was walking.

LESSON IV.

First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, Transitives.

(49.)	To love,	ām-ārē.
	Queen,	rēgīnā.
	Daughter,	filiā.
(a)	The queen loves her daughter.	Rēgīnā filiām āmāt. The queen her-daughter loves.

Rem. The possessives, *his, her, &c.*, are not expressed in Latin, except for the sake of perspicuity or emphasis.

(50.) (a) It has been stated (41) that every sentence consists of two parts, *subject* and *predicate*; so the English sentence (49, a) contains the subject, *queen*, and the predicate, *loves*. But this predicate is *limited* by

* What is the quantity of the ultimate of *Cōlumbæ*? Why? (24, 3.) Of the penult? Why? (24, 2.) Of the ultimate *a* of *puella*? (36, a.) Of the penult? (24, 2.) Why? Of the antepenult? Why? (24, 1.) What kind of action does *vōlant* express? (44, a.) In what time? What kind does *ambulābāt*? (44, b.) In what time? In what tenses may incomplete action be expressed? (Pres., past, and fut.) What is the stem of *vōlant*? Of *exclāmant*? Of *cœnābant*? [The stem may be found by striking off any tense-ending.] Why can the personal pronoun be omitted in Latin? (47, Rem.) When must it be used? (47, Rem., N.)

the word *daughter*, which is called the *direct object* of the verb. So, in the Latin sentence (49, a), we have,

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Direct object.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Rēginā.	filīām.	āmāt.

(b) A verb thus taking an object is called a *Transitive* verb (42, a), and its direct object is said to be in the *Objective* case in English (e. g., daughter), and in the *Accusative* case in Latin (e. g., filīām). We have thus the following:

(51.) *Rules of Syntax.*

(a) The *Accusative* is the case of the *direct object*.

(b) *Transitive* verbs govern the *accusative*.

(52.) The accusative-endings of the first declension are,

Sing. ā m; e. g., filī-am, rēgin-am, *daughter, queen*.

Plur. ā s; e. g., filī-ās, rēgin-as, *daughters, queens*.

(53.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Moon, lūnā, æ.

To delight, dēlectārē.

Medicine, mēdicinā, æ.

To prepare, pārārē.

Shade or } umbrā, æ.

Shadow, }

To obscure, obscurārē.

To arm, armārē.

Through (prep.), pār (with acc.).

To take possession of; } occupārē.
or, to seize,

Island, insulā, æ.

To call, vōcārē.

To (prep.), ad. (with accus.).

Poet, poētā, æ.

To praise, laudārē.

To love, amārē.

Earth, terrā, æ.

II. Example.

The poet praises the queen. | Poētā rēginām laudāt.

Rule of Position.—The object accusative stands before the transitive verb; e. g., in the above example, the object rēginām stands before the transitive verb laudāt.

III. Translate into English.

Lūnā nautās dēlectāt.—Agrīcōlā filīās amāt.—Ancillæ mēdicinām pārant.—Umbra terræ (33, c) lūnām obscurāt.—Nautæ rēginām laudant.—Galbā cōpiās armābāt.—Umbra sylvārūm agrīcōlās dēlectāt.—Galbā sylvās occupāt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm sylvās occupābant.—Cōlumbæ pār sylvās vōlābant.—Rēginā ancillās vōcāt.—Ancillæ rēginām amant.—Agrīcōlā filīām vōcā-

bāt.—Rēginā poštām laudābīt.—Rōsæ ancillās dēlectant.—Cōpiās armābunt (47, Rem.).—Sylvās occūpābunt (47 Rem.).

IV. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

V. Translate into Latin.

The moon delights the farmer.—The farmer's daughter (38, b) prepares the medicine.—The eagle's feathers delight the queen.—The Belgians arm (their) forces.—The shade of the wood delights the poet.—Galba will take possession of the wood.—(They) walk through the woods.—(They) take possession of the island.—The farmer loves (his) daughter.—The farmer's daughter praises the poet.—The queen will call the maid-servants.—The queen loves (her) maid-servants.—The shadow of the earth will obscure the moon.—The poet will praise the sailors.

LESSON V.

First Declension.—Dative and Ablative Cases.

(54.) THE *dative* case of nouns expresses the object *to* or *for* which any thing is done ; *e. g.*, the man gives (*to*) the *boy* a book. Here *boy* is in the dative case.

Rem. The accusative case, *book*, is the *direct* object of the verb *gives* ; the dative, *boy*, the *remote* object.

(55.) (a) The *ablative* case of nouns expresses the person or thing *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* which any thing is done ; *e. g.*, he filled the cup *with wine*. Here, *with wine* would be expressed in Latin by one word, in the ablative.

(b) The ablative is also governed by prepositions expressing the relations *with*, *from*, *by*, &c.

(56.) The Dative endings are, *Sing.* æ : *Plur.* is (*long*).

* (1.) What pronouns are not expressed in Latin ? (47, R., 49, R.) For what purpose are they sometimes used ? (2.) By what is the transitive verb limited ? (By a direct object.) What is the case of the direct object in Latin ? (51, a.) What is the direct object of *āmāt*, *laudāt* ? &c.

The Ablative endings are, *Sing. ā (long)* : *Plur. is (long)*.

(57.)

FIRST DECLENSION.

CASE-ENDINGS AND PARADIGM COMPLETE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā.	ae.
Gen.	ae.	ārūm.
Dat.	ae.	is.
Acc.	ām.	ās.
Voc.	ā.	ae.
Abl.	ā.	is.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sylv-ā, a wood.	sylv-ae, woods.
Gen.	sylv-ae, of a wood.	sylv-ārūm, of woods.
Dat.	sylv-ae, to a wood.	sylv-is, to woods.
Acc.	sylv-ām, a wood.	sylv-ās, woods.
Voc.	sylv-ā, O wood !	sylv-ae, O woods !
Abl.	sylv-ā, with, &c., a wood.	sylv-is, with, &c., woods.

Rem. Some nouns of this declension are used only in the *plural* ; viz., *divitiæ*, riches ; *nuptiæ*, a marriage ; *insidiæ*, an ambush.

(58.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Way, viā, ae.

To show, monstrārē.

Ambush, or snares, insidiæ, ārum
(used only in the pl.).

Wild beast, fērā, ae.

To give, dārē.*

To beseech, obsēcrārē.

Letter, littērā, ārum.†

Friendship, amicitia.

To establish, } confirmārē.
To strengthen, }

With (prep.), cūm (governing the ab-
lative case).

To abound, abundārē, (with abl.).

Deserter, perfūgā, ae.

Tear, lācrimā, ae.

Inhabitant, incolā, ae (25, IV.).

II. Examples.

- (a) The farmer shows the way to the girls. | Agricolā puellis viām mon-
strāt.

Rule of Position.—The remote object usually precedes the direct ; e. g., in example (a), *puellis* precedes *viām*.

- (b) The queen walks with the maid-servants. | Reginā cūm ancillis ambū-
lāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition and its noun precede the verb ; e. g., in example (b), the words *cūm ancillis* precede *ambūlāt*.

* Dārē has ā short before rē.

† Littērā, *sing.*, means a letter (as of the alphabet) ; littēræ, *plur.*, a letter = an epistle.

III. *Translate into English.*

Galbā insīdiās pārāt.—Galbā Belgīs (54) insīdiās pārāt.—Belgæ āmicītiām confirmant.—Belgæ cum rēginā āmicītiām confirmant.—Insulā fērīs* ābundāt.—Poētā rēginæ (dat., 54) rōsam dābāt.—Cōpiæ pēr insulām festinant.—Pērfūgæ rēginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūgæ cūm lācrīmīs rēginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūga rēginæ (dat., 54) littērās dābāt.—Incōlæ rēginām obsēcrābant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The poet praises the queen.—Galba establishes friendship.—Galba establishes friendship with the Belgians.—The Belgians will prepare snares.—The Belgians will prepare snares for the inhabitants (54).—The islands abound (in) herbs (58, III., note).—Poets give roses to queens (54).—The Belgians are beseeching Galba.—The Belgians are beseeching Galba with tears.—The queen will establish friendship.—The queen will establish friendship with the Belgians.—The deserters will beseech the queen.—The deserters will beseech the queen with tears.—The Belgians were preparing snares.—The Belgians were preparing snares for the deserters (54).

* Fērīs is the abl. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *abl.* case is used with all verbs and adjectives of *abounding* and *wanting*.

§ 6.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (VI.—VIII).

LESSON VI.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculine.

(59.) *Examples.*

<i>Crassus,</i>	<i>Crass-ūs.</i>	<i>Of Crassus,</i>	<i>Crass-ī.</i>
<i>Messenger,</i>	<i>nunti-ūs.</i>	<i>messengers,</i>	<i>nunti-ī.</i>
<i>To hasten,</i>	<i>festināre.</i>		
<i>The messenger of Crassus</i>		<i>Nunti-ūs Crass-ī festināt.</i>	
<i>hastens.</i>			
<i>The messengers hasten.</i>		<i>Nunti-ī festinant.</i>	

(60.) The *Second Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ending is *ī* (*long*). The nom. has two endings, *ūs* for masc. gender, and *ūm* for the neut.

(61.) The *case-endings* for the masculine gender are as follows :

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	ūs.	Nom.	ī.
Gen.	ī.	Gen.	ōrūm.
Dat.	ō.	Dat.	īs.
Acc.	ūm.	Acc.	ōs.
Voc.	ē.	Voc.	ī.
Abl.	ō.	Abl.	īs.

Rem. The nouns in *ūs* of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the vocative-ending differs from the nominative.

(62.) By adding these endings to the stem *serv-* of the noun *serv-ūs* (a slave), we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>serv-ūs, a slave.</i>	<i>serv-ī, slaves.</i>
Gen.	<i>serv-ī, of a slave.</i>	<i>serv-ōrūm, of slaves.</i>
Dat.	<i>serv-ō, to or for a slave.</i>	<i>serv-īs, to or for slaves.</i>
Acc.	<i>serv-ūm, a slave.</i>	<i>serv-ōs, slaves.</i>
Voc.	<i>serv-ē, O slave!</i>	<i>serv-ī, O slaves!</i>
Abl.	<i>serv-ō, with, by, &c., a slave.</i>	<i>serv-īs, with, by, &c., slaves.</i>

[*Rem.* 1. Nearly all nouns in *ūs* are *masc.*; but the names of *trees, plants, &c.*, are *fem.* by the general rule (25, a). The four nouns, *alvūs*, *belly*; *cōlūs*, *distaff*; *hūmūs*, *ground*; *vannūs*, *fan*, are also *fem.* *Virūs*, *juice*; *pēlāgūs*, *the sea*; *vulgūs*, *the common people*, are *neuter*.

Rem. 2. *Filiūs*, *son*, and proper names in *iūs*, take *i* for the vocative-ending; e. g., *fili*, *O son*! *Tulli*, *O Tully*!

Rem. 3. *Dēūs*, *God*, has *deūs* for *voc. sing.*; and in the plural *N.* and *V. dii*, *G. deōrūm*, *D. and Abl. diīs*, *Acc. deōs*.]


[For Greek nouns of this declension, see Appendix.]

(63.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Master (of a family or of slaves), <i>dō-</i> <i>mīn-ūs</i> , I.	Captive, <i>captīv-ūs</i> , I.
Slave, <i>serv-ūs</i> , I.	A German, <i>Germān-ūs</i> , I.
Village, <i>vīc-ūs</i> , I.	To call, <i>vōcārē</i> .
Ambassador, or lieutenant, <i>lēgāt-ūs</i> , I.	To recall, <i>rēvōcārē</i> .*
Garden, <i>hort-ūs</i> , I.	To call together, <i>convōcārē</i> .*
To, <i>ād</i> (prep. with acc.).	An Æduan, <i>Ædu-ūs</i> , I.
In, <i>īn</i> (prep. with abl.).	To flog, <i>verbērārē</i> .
	To ride (on horseback), <i>ēquitārē</i> .

 He rides to the village, *ād vīcūm ēquitāt*. When *to* implies motion, it must be translated by *ad* with the accusative.

II. Translate into English.

Dōmīnūs servūm vōcāt.—*Servūs dōmīnō* (54) *mēdicīnām pār-āt*.—*Crassūs vīcūm occūpāt*.—*Nuntiūs Crassī vīgīlāt*.—*Servī ād vīcūm festinant*.—*Nuntiūs lēgātō* (54) *viām monstrāt*.—*Servī domīnōs laudant*.—*Āgrīcōlā ād vīcūm ēquitāt*.—*Captīvī festinābunt*.—*Galbā copīās* (48, I.) *Germānōrūm convōcāt**.—*Nuntiūs captīvōs rēvōcāt*.—*Servī īn hortō ambulābunt*.—*Æduī Crassō* (54) *īnsīdiās pārābant*.—*Nuntiūs cōpīās Æduōrūm rēvōcābāt*.—*Dōmīnūs servōs verbērāt*.

III. Translate into Latin.

[Recollect that words in parentheses () are not to be translated.]

The messengers call-together the Æduans.—The slaves prepare medicines for (their) master (dat., 54).—The Æduans take-possession-of the woods.—The master praises (his) slaves.—The slave is hastening to (ad, with acc.) the woods.—The ambassadors ride to the village.—Crassus will prepare an ambush for the

* The prefix *con* gives the verb the additional meaning of *together*; the prefix *re* of *back*, as in *rēvōcārē* and *convōcārē*.

Æduans.—The lieutenant calls together the Germans.—The messenger will show the way to the captives (54).—The slaves are watching.—The master flogs (his) slave.—Galba will recall the lieutenant.—The Germans were preparing an ambush for Galba (54).—The slave was showing the way to the messenger (54).—The messenger was hastening to the village.—The slaves are watching in the garden.

LESSON VII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculines continued.

(64.) ALL nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in *r* reject the ending *ūs* in the nom. and *ē* in the voc.; e. g., N. and V. *āgēr*, *field*, instead of *āgēr-ūs*, *āgēr-ē*. Moreover, most of those which have *e* in the nominative drop it in the oblique* cases; e. g., N. *āgēr*, G. *āgri* instead of *āgēr-ī*.

(65.) Learn the following

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.			
Nom.	āgēr, <i>field</i> (m).	puēr (m.), <i>boy</i> .	vīr, <i>man</i> .
Gen.	āgr-ī, <i>of the field</i> .	puēr-ī, <i>of the boy</i> .	vīr-ī, <i>of the man</i> .
Dat.	āgr-ō, <i>to or for field</i> .	puēr-ō, <i>to or for</i> .	vīr-ō, <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	āgr-ūm, <i>field</i> .	puēr-ūm, <i>boy</i> .	vīr-ūm, <i>man</i> .
Voc.	āgēr, <i>O field!</i>	puēr, <i>O boy!</i>	vīr, <i>O man!</i>
Abl.	āgr-ō, <i>with, by, &c., field</i> .	puēr-ō, <i>with, by, &c.</i>	vīr-ō, <i>with, by, &c.</i>
PLURAL.			
Nom.	āgr-ī, <i>fields</i> .	puēr-ī, <i>boys</i> .	vīr-ī, <i>men</i> .
Gen.	āgr-ōrūm, <i>of fields</i> .	puēr-ōrūm, <i>of boys</i> .	vīr-ōrūm, <i>of men</i> .
Dat.	āgr-īs, <i>to or for fields</i> .	puēr-īs, <i>to or for</i> .	vīr-īs, <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	āgr-ōs, <i>fields</i> .	puēr-ōs, <i>boys</i> .	vīr-ōs, <i>men</i> .
Voc.	āgr-ī, <i>O fields!</i>	puēr-ī, <i>O boys!</i>	vīr-ī, <i>O men!</i>
Abl.	āgr-īs, <i>with fields</i> .	puēr-īs, <i>with, by, &c.</i>	vīr-īs, <i>with, by, &c.</i>

Rem. Only the following nouns keep the *e* in all the cases, viz., *ādultēr*, *adulterer*; *puēr*, *boy*; *sōcēr*, *father-in-law*; *gēnēr*, *son-in-law*; *vespēr*, *evening*; *libērī* (used only in plural), *children*; with the compounds of *fēr* and *gēr*; e. g., *Lūcīfēr*, *Lucifer*; *cornīgēr*, *horned*.

* The oblique cases include all the cases except the nominative and vocative.

(66.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Boy, puēr, i.

Master (of a school), māgīstēr, trī (64).

Father-in-law, sōcēr, ī (65, R.).

Herb, herbā, æ.

Scholar, discipul-ūs, i.

Son, fili-ūs, ī (62, R. 2).

Man, vir, i.

Game, lūd-ūs, i.

Son-in-law, gēnēr, ī (65, R.).

Children, libērī, orum (rarely used in singular).

Field, āgēr, āgrī (64).

II. Example.

(a) *The wood abounds in* Sylvæ fōris ābundāt.*wild beasts.**The wood in-wild-beasts
abounds.*(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative case is used with adjectives and verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*.

III. Translate into English.

Puēr māgīstrūm āmāt.—Rēgīnā sōcērūm āmābīt.—Puērī in āgrō ambulābunt.—Āgrī herbīs (abl., 66, II., a) ābundant.—Āgrīcōlā pēr āgrōs (58, II., b) ēquītāt.—Āgrīcōlā sōcērūm vōcāt.—Pūellæ māgīstrūm laudant.—Virī in āgris ambulābant.—Lūdī puērōs delectant.—Rēgīnā gēnērōs āmābīt.—Virī ad vicūm festīnābant.—Āgrīcōlā libērōs āmāt.—Māgīstēr discipulōs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The girls walk in the fields.—The field abounds in herbs (66, II., a).—The sailor calls back the boys.—The queen loves (her) son-in-law.—The queen gives (her) son-in-law (dat., 54) a rose.—The scholars love (their) master.—The fields abound in herbs (66, II., a).—The farmers were walking through the fields.—The son of the master calls the boys.—The master walks in the garden with (his) sons.—The herbs of the field delight the poet.—Games delight girls.—The farmer shows the way to the boy.—The master will praise (his) scholars.—The master will flog (his) scholars.

C

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Neuter.—Verbs, Second Conjugation.

(67.)	<i>Slave.</i>	<i>servūs (masc.).</i>
	<i>Cup.</i>	<i>pōcŭlŭm (neut.).</i>
	<i>To fill.</i>	<i>implĕrĕ.</i>
<i>The slave fills his master's cup.</i>	<i>Servūs pōcŭlŭm dōmīni implĕt.</i>	
	<i>The slave the-cup of-his-master fills.</i>	

(68.) The case-endings of the second declension for the neuter gender are,

Nom. Acc., Voc.	Sing. ŭm.	Plur. ā.
Gen.	ī.	ōrŭm.
Dat., Abl.	ō.	īs.

Rem. The endings of the nom., acc., and voc. are *always* the same in neuter nouns. In this declension, those of dat. and abl. are alike also.

(69.) By adding these endings to the stem pōcŭl-, we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Gen.	pōcŭl-ī, <i>of a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ōrŭm, <i>of cups.</i>
Dat.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>to or for a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-īs, <i>to or for cups.</i>
Acc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Voc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>O cup!</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>O cups!</i>
Abl.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>with, by, &c., a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-īs, <i>with, from, &c., cups.</i>

THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

(70.) The second conjugation comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is ērĕ (*e long before rĕ*); *e. g.*, mōn-ērĕ, *to advise*; dōc-ērĕ, *to teach*.

(71.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE, ērĕ.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Futura.
3d Sing.	ēt.	ēbāt.	ēbit.
3d Plural.	ent.	ēbant.	ēbunt.

(72.) By affixing these endings to the stem *m ōn-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>mon-ēre</i> , to advise.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>mōn-ēt, he, she, &c., advises.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbāt, he, she, &c., was advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbit, he, she, &c., will advise.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>mōn-ēt, they advise.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbant, they were advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbunt, they will advise.</i>


(73.)

EXERCISES.


I. Vocabulary.

Assistance, auxiliū, ī (68).*To ask, entreat*, rōgārē.*Camp*, castrā, ōrūm (pl.)*To move*, mōvērē (70).*Cup*, pōcūlū, ī.*Wine*, vinū, ī.*To fill*, implērē (70).*Danger*, pēricūlū, ī.*To fear*, timērē (70).*Forum*, fōrūm, ī.*Town*, oppidū, ī.

II. Translate into English.

Lēgātūs auxiliū rōgāt.—Galbā cōpiās ād (63, I., ) castrā rēvōcāt.—Servūs pōcūlūm vinō (55, a) implēt.—Crassūs castrā mōvēt.—Cōpiā ād oppidūm festinābant.—Āgricōlā oppidūm laudāt.—Cōpiā Germānōrūm ād castrā festinābunt.—Nuntiūs pēricūlūm timēt.—Puerī pēr fōrūm ambulānt.—Germānī pēricūlā nōn timēt.—Lēgātī pēr oppidūm ambulābunt.—Āgricōlā oppidā Ēdūōrūm laudābāt.—Crassūs oppidūm occūpābāt.—Servī pōcūlā implēbant.

III. Translate into Latin.

The Ēduans were asking assistance.—The Germans will move (their) camp.—The Germans were praising the town.—The ambassadors of the Ēduans hasten to (63, I., ) the camp.—The forces of the Belgians fear the danger.—The messenger will recall the ambassadors to the camp.—Galba's messenger will recall the Germans to the town.—The ambassadors praise the towns of the Germans.—The farmers were walking through the forum.—The boy walks through the town.—The sailors will not fear the danger.—Crassus will not move (his) camp.—The Germans were-taking-possession-of the town.—The servant was filling the cup.

§ 7.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST CLASS. (IX.—X.)

LESSON IX.

Adjectives.—Class I, ū s, ā, ū m.

(74.) THE *Adjective* (14), in Latin, agrees with the noun in *gender, number, and case*, and therefore has *endings* to distinguish these; *e. g.*, *puēr* b ō n-ūs, *a good boy*; *pūella* b ō n-ā, *a good girl*; *dōnum* b ō n-ū m, *a good gift*.

(75.) We divide adjectives into *three classes*, according to their endings. Those of the *first class* have the *fem.* ending of the first decl. of nouns, and the *masc.* and *neut.* endings of the second. Thus,

(76.) ENDINGS.

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.						
N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
G.	ūs.	ā.	ūm.	bōn-ūs.	bōn-ā.	bōn-ūm.
D.	ī.	ae.	ī.	bōn-ī.	bōn-ae.	bōn-ī.
A.	ō.	ae.	ō.	bōn-ō.	bōn-ae.	bōn-ō.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	bōn-ūm.	bōn-ām.	bōn-ūm.
V.	ē.	ā.	ūm.	bōn-ē.	bōn-ā.	bōn-ūm.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	bōn-ō.	bōn-ā.	bōn-ō.
PLURAL.						
N.	ī.	ae.	ā.	bōn-ī.	bōn-ae.	bōn-ā.
G.	ōrum.	ārum.	ōrum.	bōn-ōrum.	bōn-ārum.	bōn-ōrum.
D.	īs.	īs.	īs.	bōn-īs.	bōn-īs.	bōn-īs.
A.	ōs.	ās.	ā.	bōn-ōs.	bōn-ās.	bōn-ā.
V.	ī.	ae.	ā.	bōn-ī.	bōn-ae.	bōn-ūm.
A.	īs.	īs.	īs.	bōn-īs.	bōn-īs.	bōn-īs.

(77.) Adjectives whose stem ends in *ēr* do not take the endings *ūs* of the nominative and *ē* of the vocative.

(a) Most of them drop the *ē* in inflection; *e. g.*,

pulchēr, *pulchr-ā*, *pulchr-ūm*, *beautiful*;
pulchr-ī, *pulchr-ae*, *pulchr-ī*, &c.

(b) But aspēr, rough; lācēr, torn; lībēr, free; mīsēr, miserable; prospēr, fortunate; tēnēr, tender (and the compounds of gēr and fēr; e. g., cornīgēr, flammīfēr), retain it; e. g.,

mīsēr, mīsēr-ā, mīsēr-ūm,
mīsēr-ī, mīsēr-æ, mīsēr-ī, &c.

(78.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Good, bōn-ūs, ā, ūm.

Great, magn-ūs, ā, ūm.

Many, mult-ūs, ā, ūm.

Thick, dens-ūs, ā, ūm.

Broad, wide, lāt-ūs, ā, ūm.

My, mē-ūs, ā, ūm.

They, tū-ūs, ā, ūm.

His, hers, its (own), su-ūs, ā, ūm.

To see, vidērē.

Master (of slaves), hērūs, ī.

To have, hābērē.

Example, exemplū, ī.

River, flūvīus, ī.

To frighten, terrērē.

II. Examples.

- (a) The slave fills the large cup. | Servūs pōcūlū m agnū m implēt.

Rule of Position.—(a) The adjective, unless emphatic, follows the noun; e. g., in the above example, magnū m follows pōcūlū m.

- (b) The slave fills the queen's cup. | Servūs magnū m rēginæ pōcūlū m implēt.

Rule of Position.—(b) When the noun governs another in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; e. g., in example (b), magnū m rēginæ pōcūlū m.

III. Translate into English.

Rēginā filiām suām amat.—Servūs pōcūlū m meū m implēt.—Servī pōcūlā magnā implent.—Puērī māgistrū m bōnū m amant.—Belgæ vicōs multōs hābent.—Agrīcōlā bōnūs viām monstrāt.—Māgister puērōs bōnōs docēbit.—Māgistrī bōnī exemplā bōnā puērīs (54) dant.—Lēgātūs magnā m rēginæ (78, II., b) cōrōnām vidēt.—Perfūgæ ad flūviū m lātū m festinant.—Servūs magnū m puērī (78, II., b) pōcūlū m implēbāt.—Sylvæ densæ nuntiōs terrent.—Puērī sylvā m densā m timēbunt.—Servūs bōnūs hērū m amat.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The Æduans have many villages.—The queen loves (her)

good son.—The farmer shows the thick wood.—Good slaves love (their) masters.—Good masters love (their) slaves.—The Belgians have many towns.—The broad rivers frighten the deserters.—The boy sees the large town.—Crassus recalls the good lieutenant.—The son praises the great queen.—The Germans have large villages.—He praises thy slave.—He loves thy daughter.—He will praise *his own* daughter.—The deserters were hastening to the broad river.—The slave will fill the large cup of his master (78, II., b).—The lieutenant will see many villages of the Belgians (78, II., b).—The thick wood will frighten the boys.

LESSON X.

Some Forms of Esse.—Adjectives continued.

(79.) Learn the following forms of the irregular verb *Esse*, to be :

INFINITIVE, esse, to be.			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. est, is.	Imperfect. erat, was.	Future. erit, he, she, it will be.
3d Plur.	sunt, are.	erant, were.	erunt, they will be.

(80.) (a) *Indolence is a vice.* | *Inertiā vitium est.*
Indolence a vice is.

Here *inertiā* is the *subject* of the sentence; *vitium* is the *predicate*; both in the nominative.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) The *noun* in the predicate must be in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

(81.) (b) *The rose is beautiful.* | *Rosā pulchrā est.*
The rose beautiful is.

Here *rosā* is the *subject*, and *pulchrā* the *predicate*; both in nom. sing. fem.

Rule of Syntax.—(b) The *adjective* in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

[As a general rule, a sentence should not end with a *monosyllable*; but in short passages, such as the above, especially when the word before *est* ends in a *vowel*, or *m*, it is admissible.]

(82.)

EXERCISE.

[Refer to Rules of Position (78, II.) and to Rem. on adjectives ending in *er* (77).]

I. Vocabulary.

Happy, beātūs, ā, ūm.
True, vērus, ā, ūm.
Friendship, āmicītia, æ.
Everlasting, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Labienus, Lābiēnūs, ī.
Foolish, stultūs, ā, ūm.
Tender, tēnēr, ā, ūm (77, a).
Flame, flammā, æ.
Red, ruddy, rūbēr, ā, ūm (77, a).
A leaf, fōliūm, ī.
Bull, taurūs, ī.
Horned, cornīger, ā, ūm (77, b).
Lamb, āgnūs, ī.
Miserable, miser, a, um (77, b).

Europe, Eurōpā, æ.
Peninsula, pēninsulā, æ.
Anger, ira, æ.
Illustrious, clārūs, ā, ūm.
Crow, corvūs, ī.
Black, nigēr, ā, ūm (77, a).
Not, nōn (always placed before the word which it qualifies)
Always, sempēr (adv.).
Cow, vaccā, æ.
Attica, Atticā, æ.
Britain, Brītanīā, æ.
Ireland, Hībernīā, æ.

Rem. In such phrases as *the good, the wise, &c.*, the noun (*men*) is omitted in Latin, as in English; *e. g.*, *good men* = bōnī; *fools* = stultī; *the happy* = beātī. Also, *many things* = multā (neut.); *all things* = omniā.

II. Examples.

The good are always happy.
True friendships are everlasting.
Labienus was a lieutenant.
The foolish are not happy.

Bōnī sempēr beātī sunt.
 Vēræ āmicītiæ sempiternæ sunt.
 Lābiēnūs lēgātūs ērāt.
 Stultī nōn sunt beātī.

III. Translate into English.

Puellā pulchrā est (81, b).—*Herbæ āgrōrūm tēnēræ sunt* (81, b).—*Ālæ āquillārūm māgnæ sunt*.—*Flammā rubrā est*.—*Fōllā rōsārūm pulchrā sunt*.—*Taurī cornīgērī sunt*.—*Āgnī tēnērī in āgrīs sunt*.—*Rēginā pulchrā in hortō ambulābāt*.—*Puēr āgnōs pulchrōs vidēt*.—*Vērā āmicītiā sempiternā est*.—*Stultī miserī sunt*.—*Eurōpā pēninsulā* (80, a) *est*.—*Atticā pēninsulā est*.—*Irā vitiūm est magnūm*.—*Crassūs lēgātūs ērāt*.—*Labiēnūs lēgātūs clārūs ērāt*.—*Corvūs plūmās nīgrās hābēt*.—*Stultī nōn sunt beātī*.—*Bōnūs sempēr beātūs est*.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The queen was beautiful.—The queen's daughter was beau-

tiful.—The beautiful daughter walks in the garden.—The fields abound in tender herbs (66, II., a).—The feathers of doves are beautiful.—The feathers of crows are black.—The flames were ruddy.—The leaves of roses are tender.—Cows are horned.—The queen walks in the garden with (*cüm*) her beautiful daughters (*filiäbüs**).—The girl will see the tender lambs in the fields.—The good are not always happy.—Fools are not always miserable.—Crassus was a great lieutenant.—Britain is an island.—Ireland is an island.—Geneva is a large town.—Anger is always a vice.—Everlasting friendships are true.—Friendships are not always everlasting.

* *Filiä*, daughter, and *deä*, goddess, have abl. pl. in *äbüs*, instead of *is*, to distinguish them from *filiis*, sons, *diis*, gods.

§ 8.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

LESSON XI.

Verbs.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(83.) **THE Third Conjugation** comprises all verbs whose infinitive ending is *ērĕ* (*ĕ* short before *rĕ*); *e. g.*, *scrib-ērĕ*, *to write*.

(84.) **SOME ENDINGS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.**

INFINITIVE, <i>ĕre</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
Singular.	Present. <i>ĭt.</i>	Imperfect. <i>ĕbĕt.</i>	Future. <i>ĕt.</i>
Plural.	<i>unt.</i>	<i>ĕbant.</i>	<i>ent.</i>

(85.) By affixing these endings to the stem *scrib-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>scrib-ĕre</i> , <i>to write</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>scrib-it, he, she, &c., writes.</i>	<i>scrib-ĕbat, he, she, &c., was writing.</i>	<i>scrib-ĕt, he, she, &c., will write.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>scrib-unt, they write.</i>	<i>scrib-ĕbant, they were writing.</i>	<i>scrib-ent, they will write.</i>

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(86.) **The Fourth Conjugation** comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is *ĭrĕ* (*ĭ* long before *rĕ*); *e. g.*, *aud-ĭrĕ*, *to hear*.

(87.) **SOME ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.**

INFINITIVE, <i>ĭre</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>ĭt.</i>	<i>ĭĕbat.</i>	<i>ĭĕt.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>iunt.</i>	<i>ĭĕbant.</i>	<i>ient.</i>

(88.) By affixing these endings to the stem *aud-*, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, and-ire, to hear.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	and-īt, <i>he, she, &c., hears.</i>	and-iēbat, <i>he, she, &c., was hearing.</i>	and-iēt, <i>he, she, &c., will hear.</i>
3d Plur.	and-iunt, <i>they hear.</i>	and-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>	and-ient, <i>they will hear.</i>

(89.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

To send, mitterē (83).*In* (prep.), in.**To sleep*, dormirē (86).*Bed-chamber*, cubiculū, l.*To run*, currērē (83).*To rule*, regērē (83).*A Gaul*, Gallūs, l.*Tower*, castellū, l.*Small*, parvūs, ā, ūm.*To come*, venirē (86).*A Roman*, Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.*To lead*, ducērē (83).*World*, mundūs, l.*To conquer*, vincērē (83).*To fortify*, mūnirē (86).*Divitiacus*, Divitiacūs, l.

II. Example.

Crassus comes to the large town. Crassūs magnūm ād oppidūm vēnit.

Rule of Position.—The adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition is frequently placed *before* the preposition, *e. g.*, magnūm in the example.

III. Translate into English.

Belgæ lēgātōs mittunt.—Belgæ lēgātōs ād Crassūm mittunt.—Puērī in cubiculō dormiunt.—Puellæ parvō (89, II.) in cubiculō dormiebant.—Rēginā magnūm ād oppidūm vēniēt.—Galbā cōpiās Rōmānōrūm dūcīt.—Dii (62, R., 3) mundūm rēgunt.—Deūs mundūm sempēr rēgit.—Rōmānī Gallōs vincēbant.—Lēgātūs castellā mūniebāt.—Æduī nuntiūm ad Labiēnūm mittunt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm ād oppidūm vēnient.—Divitiacūs cōpiās Æduōrūm dūcēbāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The horse runs.—The boy sleeps.—The boy was running.—The slave comes.—Crassus fortifies many towers.—The slave was coming to (63, I., 13) his master.—The beautiful boy will sleep in a little bed-chamber (89, II.).—The gods always govern

* *In*, signifying *into* or *unto*, governs the *accusative*; signifying *in* governs the *ablative*.

the world.—The Romans are coming to the large town.—The farmer was sleeping in the field.—Divitiacus was leading the forces of the Æduans.—The Belgians send messengers to Crassus.—Crassus sends a messenger to the Belgians.—The girls will sleep in a little bed-chamber.—Crassus will fortify the towers.—The Romans take-possession-of the towers of Gaul.

§ 9.

PASSIVE VERBS. (XII.—XIII.)

LESSON XII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

(90.) THE endings of the third persons of verbs, in the tenses for *incomplete* or *continued* action (44), are the same in the passive as in the active voice, with the addition of the syllable *ür*. Thus, we have in the

(91.) FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.		
	Active.	Passive.
3d Sing.	ām-āt, <i>he, she, it, loves.</i>	am-āt-ür, <i>he, she, it is loved.*</i>
3d Plur.	ām-ant, <i>they love.</i>	ām-ant-ür, <i>they are loved.</i>
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	ām-ābāt, <i>he was loving.</i>	ām-ābāt-ür, <i>he was loved.</i>
3d Plur.	ām-ābant, <i>they were loving.</i>	ām-ābant-ür, <i>they were loved.</i>
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	ām-ābīt, <i>he shall or will love.</i>	ām-ābīt-ür, <i>he shall or will be loved.</i>
3d Plur.	ām-ābunt, <i>they shall or will love.</i>	ām-ābunt-ür, <i>they shall or will be loved.</i>

(92.) SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.		
	Active.	Passive.
3d Sing.	mōn-ēt, <i>he advises.</i>	mōn-ēt-ür, <i>he is advised.</i>
3d Plur.	mōn-ent, <i>they advise.</i>	mōn-ent-ür, <i>they are advised.</i>
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	mōn-ēbāt, <i>he was advising.</i>	mōn-ēbāt-ür, <i>he was advised.</i>
3d Plur.	mōn-ēbant, <i>they were advising.</i>	mōn-ēbant-ür, <i>they were advised.</i>
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	mōn-ēbīt, <i>he will advise.</i>	mōn-ēbīt-ür, <i>he will be advised.</i>
3d Plur.	mōn-ēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>	mōn-ēbunt-ür, <i>they will be advised.</i>

* The English language has no forms for incomplete action in the passive voice. *He is loved, he was loved, &c., the house is built, &c.,* properly express action complete. An awkward periphrasis—*he is being loved,*

(93.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Game, sport, lūdus, l.
To delight, delectārē.

- | To teach, docēre.
Seize, occupārē.

II. Examples.

(a) Crassus calls the lieutenant. | Crassus lēgātū vocāt.

(b) The lieutenant is called by Crassus. | Lēgātus ā Crassō vocātūr.

In these examples, the same action is expressed (viz., the calling of the lieutenant) in (a) by the active form, in (b) by the passive. Every sentence in which a transitive verb occurs may thus be changed into the passive form. The agent (Crassus) is the subject nominative in (a); and in (b) is expressed by the ablative (Crassō) with the preposition ā, by.

Rem. If the subject be a thing, not a person, nor considered as a person, the preposition is omitted; e. g., Pōcūlūm vinō implētūr, the cup is filled with wine. (This is the abl. of cause or means.)

III. Translate into English.

Auxiliū ā lēgātō rōgātūr.—Auxiliū a lēgātō rōgābātūr.—Auxiliū ā lēgātō rogabitur.—Cōpiæ ā Galbā rēvocantūr.—Pōcūlūm ā servō implēbātūr.—Oppidā ā Crassō occupābantūr.—Mēdicinā ā ancillis parābātūr.—Puērī bonī ā māgistrō laudantūr.—Cōpiæ Germānōrū ā Labiēnō rēvocābantūr.—Pōcūlā vinō (93, II., R.) implentūr.—Puērī lūdīs (93, II., R.) delectantūr.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The master is loved by (his) scholars.—The master will be loved by (his) good scholars.—The cups will be filled (with) wine (93, II., R.).—The Germans were called together by Crassus.—The villages were seized by the Romans.—The towns will be seized by the Æduans.—Medicines are prepared by the slaves.—Good boys will be praised by their masters.—The good boys will be advised by their masters.—The scholars are taught by their master.—The scholar was taught by his

the house is *being built*—is sometimes employed, but is not to be approved. The house is *building* is a form sanctioned by usage, but in many verbs it would be ambiguous. The pupil must remember, then, that in the exercises in the First Part, the forms *is loved, is advised, was advised, &c.*, are used to express incomplete action.

38 PASSIVES OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

master.—The girls are delighted with games (93, II., R.).—The slaves will be delighted with games.—The queen is praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen was praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen will be praised by (her) maid-servant.

LESSON XIII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(94.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	rēg-īt, he, she, it rules.		rēgīt-ūr, he, she, it is ruled.
3d Plur.	rēg-unt, they rule.		rēgunt-ūr, they are ruled.
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling.		rēgēbāt-ūr, he was ruled.
3d Plur.	rēg-ēbant, they were ruling.		rēgēbant-ūr, they were ruled.
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēt, he shall or will rule.		rēgēt-ūr, he shall or will be ruled.
3d Plur.	rēg-ent, they shall or will rule.		rēgent-ūr, they shall or will be ruled.

(95.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, he hears.		audīt-ūr, he is heard.
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, they hear.		audiunt-ūr, they are heard.
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēbāt, he was hearing.		audiēbāt-ūr, he was heard.
3d Plur.	aud-iēbant, they were hearing.		audiēbant-ūr, they were heard.
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēt, he shall or will hear.		aud-iēt-ūr, he shall or will be heard.
3d Plur.	aud-ient, they shall or will hear.		audient-ūr, they shall or will be heard.

(96.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

A Roman, Rōmānus, I.
To lay aside, depōnērē.
Garrison, præsidiūm, I.

A Gaul, Gallus, I.
To distribute, } dispōnērē.
arrange, }

II. Translate into English.

Lēgātī ā Belgīs mittuntūr.—Mundūs ā Deō rēgītūr.—Cōpis

Rōmānōrūm ā Galbā dūcuntūr.—Gallī a Rōmānīs vincuntūr.—
 Irā ā rēgīnā dēpōnītūr.—Castellūm ā Labiēnō mūnītūr.—Præ-
 ōdiā ā lēgātō dispōnuntūr.—Lēgātī ād Æduōs mittēbantūr.—Cō-
 piæ Æduōrūm ad vicūm dūcentūr.—Epistōlā ā rēgīnā scribītūr.—
 Oppidā Belgārūm muniēbantūr.—Nuntīi ād Crassūm mittentūr.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

Galba is conquered by the Belgians.—The camp is fortified
 by Crassus.—The forces of Crassus are led to the camp.—The
 forces of the Ædui are sent to the village.—Anger will be laid-
 aside by the queen.—Galba was conquered by the Gauls.—Let-
 ters will be written by the queen.—Letters are written to (ad)
 Crassus.—The garrisons are not distributed by Crassus.—The
 towers are not fortified by the Belgians.—The world is always
 governed by God.—The Germans are ruled by a lieutenant.—
 A letter will be written by the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—PARTIAL TREATMENT. (XIV.—XV.)

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.

(97.) THE *Third Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. sing.* ends in *is*.

Rem. To find the stem of any noun of this declension, strike off *is* from the *gen. sing.*; e. g., *gen. hōmīnis* (*of a man*); stem *hōmīn*.

(98.) The case-endings are as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	M. & F.	Neut.	N.	M. & F.	Neut.
G.	<i>is.</i>	<i>is.</i>	G.	<i>ēs.</i>	<i>ā (iā).</i>
D.	<i>i.</i>	<i>i</i>	D.	<i>ūm (iūm).</i>	<i>ūm (iūm).</i>
A.	<i>ēm (im).</i>	like N.	A.	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>
V.	like N.	like N.	V.	<i>ēs.</i>	<i>ā (iā).</i>
A.	<i>ē (ī).</i>	<i>ē (ī).</i>	A.	<i>ibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs.</i>

Rem. 1. The nom. ending is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. Of the changes to which the stem is subject, see hereafter (Part II).

2. Of the endings *im*, *i* (in acc. and abl. sing.), and *ia*, *iūm* (plur.), see hereafter (Part II).

3. The *genders* of all nouns of this declension are marked in the vocabularies. The general rules of gender (25, a) of course apply to this declension: special rules are given (355). We give here only (99.) *Partial Rule of Gender*.—Most nouns which add *s* to the stem to form the nominative are feminine.

(100.) PARADIGMS—MASCULINE AND FEMININE FORMS.

Sing.	Speech (m.).	Honour (m.).	City (f.).	Nation (race), f.	Law (f.).
N. and V.	<i>sermō.</i>	<i>hōnōr.</i>	<i>urb-s.</i>	<i>gens (gents).</i>	<i>lex (legs).</i>
Gen.	<i>sermōn-is.</i>	<i>hōnōr-is.</i>	<i>urb-is.</i>	<i>gent-is.</i>	<i>lēg-is.</i>
Dat.	<i>sermōn-i.</i>	<i>hōnōr-i.</i>	<i>urb-i.</i>	<i>gent-i.</i>	<i>lēg-i.</i>
Acc.	<i>sermōn-ēm.</i>	<i>hōnōr-ēm.</i>	<i>urb-ēm.</i>	<i>gent-ēm.</i>	<i>lēg-ēm.</i>
Abl.	<i>sermōn-ē.</i>	<i>hōnōr-ē.</i>	<i>urb-ē.</i>	<i>gent-ē.</i>	<i>lēg-ē.</i>
Plur.	Speeches.	Honours.	Cities.	Races.	Laws.
N., A., V.	<i>sermōn-ēs.</i>	<i>hōnōr-ēs.</i>	<i>urb-ēs.</i>	<i>gent-ēs.</i>	<i>lēg-ēs.</i>
Gen.	<i>sermōn-ūm.</i>	<i>hōnōr-ūm.</i>	<i>urb-iūm.</i>	<i>gent-iūm.</i>	<i>lēg-ūm.</i>
D. and A.	<i>sermōn-ibūs.</i>	<i>hōnōr-ibūs.</i>	<i>urb-ibūs.</i>	<i>gent-ibūs.</i>	<i>lēg-ibūs.</i>

Rem. 1. Observe that *d* or *t* in the stem is *dropped* in the nom. before *s*; and *c* or *s* combined with *s* to form *x*; e. g., *laus*=*laud-s*; *arx*=*arc-s*; *lex*=*leg-s*; *gens*=*gent-s*.

2. All the endings are *short* but *i* (dat. sing.) and *es* (N., A., V. plur.).

(101.)

EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

[In the following vocabularies, the *stem* of every noun of the third declension is placed immediately *after* the nominative form, and *before* the genitive ending.]

King, *rēx*, (*rēg*) *is*, *m*.

Law, *lēx*, (*lēg*) *is*, *f*.

To abrogate, *ābrōgāre*.

Just, *iustū*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Worthy, *dignū*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Part, *pars*, (*part*) *is*, *f*.

Common-people, *plebs*, (*plēb*) *is*, *f*.

To leave, *rēlinquere*.

Rock, *pētrā*, *ae*.

Tree, *arbōr*, (*arbōr*) *is*, *f*.

To build a nest, *nidificāre*.

Cæsar, *Cæsār*, (*Cæsār*) *is*.

And, *et* (*conj.*).

Consul, *consul*, (*consul*) *is*, *m*.

General, *impērātōr*, (*impērātōr*) *is*, *m*.

A Helvetian, *Helvētiūs*, *i*.

II. *Translate into English.*

Rex lēg-es ābrōgāt.—*Cōpiæ ad urb-ēm festinant*.—*Lēg-es iustæ sunt*.—*Pars plēb-is urb-ēm rēlinquīt*.—*Magnā pars plēb-is urb-ēm rēlinquīt*.—*Āquilæ in pētris et arbōr-ibūs nidificant*.—*Lēg-es ā rēg-e ābrōgantūr*.—*Cōpiæ ad urb-ēm rēvocantūr*.—*Helvētī ad Cæsār-ēm lēgātōs mittunt*.—*Nundūs sermōn-ēm consul-is laudāt*.—*Impērātōr nuntiōs rēvocāt*.—*Rex dignis* (54, and 82, I., R.) *hōnōr-es dābit*.—*Cōpiæ Belgārūm urb-ēm rēlinquebant*.—*Cæsār ad vicōs festinābat*.—*Lēgāti ad impērātōr-ēm mittuntūr*.—*Impērātōr nuntiōs ad urb-ēm mittēt*.—*Lēgātūs part-ēm cōpiārūm rēvocābit*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The king will revoke the laws.—The general will leave the village.—The consuls send ambassadors.—The consuls recall the ambassadors.—Doves build their nests in gardens and trees.—The consuls are praised.—The city is fortified.—Honours will be given.—Honours are given to the worthy (82, I., R.).—Ambassadors will be sent to the consuls.—Honours are given to Cæsar (54).—The speech of the consul is praised.—Honours are given to the general.—A great part of the common-people will leave the city.—The consuls will recall the common-people.—The ambassadors will leave the city.—The general will be sent.—Cæsar will be recalled.—The laws were unjust.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(102.)

PARADIGMS.—NEUTER FORMS.

Sing.	Sea (n.).	Song (n.).	Work (n.).	Animal (n.).
N., A., V.	mār-ē.	carmēn.	ōpūs.	ānīmāl.
G.	mār-is.	carmīn-is.	ōpēr-is.	ānīmāl-is.
D.	mār-i.	carmīn-i.	ōpēr-i.	ānīmāl-i.
Abl.	mār-i.	carmīn-ē.	ōpēr-ē.	ānīmāl-i.
Plur.	Seas.	Songs.	Works.	Animals.
N., A., V.	mār-iā.	carmīn-ā.	ōpēr-ā.	ānīmāl-iā.
G.	mār-iūm.	carmīn-ūm.	ōpēr-ūm.	ānīmāl-iūm.
D., Abl.	mār-ībūs.	carmīn-ībūs.	ōpēr-ībūs.	ānīmāl-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Neuters whose nom. ends in *al*, *ar*, or *e*, take *i* for abl. sing. ending; *iā*, nom. plur., and *iūm*, gen. plur.

2. *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Nouns whose stems end in *al* or *ar* are neuter.

(103.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Name, nōmēn, (nōmīn) *is* (n.).

To enrol, conscribērē.

Treaty, fœdūs, (fœdēr) *is* (n.).

To violate, violārē.

Spoil or booty, prædā, æ.

Ally, sociūs, l.

Summer, æstās, (æstāt) *is* (f.).

Cold, frigūs, (frigōr) *is* (n.).

Burden, ōnūs, (ōnēr) *is* (n.).

To carry, portārē.

Wound, vulnūs, (vulnēr) *is* (n.).

To cure, heal, sārārē.

To mitigate, mītigārē.

River, flūmēn, (flūmīn) *is* (n.).

To swim across, transnārē (gov. acc.).

Work, ōpūs, (ōpēr) *is* (n.).

Fish, piscis, (pisc) *is* (m.).

Time, tempūs, (tempōr) *is* (n.).

To change, mūtārē.

Man, hōmō, (hōmīn) *is* (m.).

Stormy, turbid, turbidūs, ē, ūm.

II. Translate into English.

Consul nōmīnā conscribīt.—Cæsār fœdūs (acc.) violābāt, et prædām sociūs (54) dābāt.—Æstās frigūs (acc.) mītigāt.—Perfūgæ flūmēn (acc.) transnābant.—Magnūm ōpūs est.—Flūmēn piscībūs ābundāt (66, I., a).—Tempūs hōmīnēs mūtāt.—Tempōrā mūtāntūr.—Frigūs æstātē (93, II., R.) mītigābitūr.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm flūmīnā transnābant.—Servūs ōnūs (acc.) magnūm portāt.—Cæsār nōmīnā nōn conscribēt.—Ōnūs magnūm est.—Mēdicīnā vulnūs sārāt.—Carmīnā puellās delectant.—Nōmīnā hōmīnūm mūtābuntūr.—Māriā turbidā sunt.—Flūmēn magnūm erat turbidūm.—Magnā sunt ōnērā captīvōrūm.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The Germans violate treaties.—The consuls will not enrol the names.—The slaves were carrying great burdens.—The messenger was-swimming-across the river.—The boy swims-across the river.—Great burdens are carried.—The burden will be carried by the slave.—The rivers abound in fish (66, II., *a*).—The wounds are healed.—The burdens are great.—The lieutenant will not violate the treaty.—The names are enrolled by the consuls (93, II.).—The treaty is violated.—The treaty is violated by Cæsar.—The treaty will be violated, and the spoil will be given to the allies (*dat.*).—The consul enrols the names of the deserters.—The names of the deserters will be enrolled.

The wounds of the prisoners will be healed.

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

LESSON XVI.

Adjectives.—Second Class.—Two Endings.

(104.) ADJECTIVES of the *Second Class* have *is* in the nom. sing. for *masc.* and *fem.* endings, and *ě* for the *neuter*. They are declined throughout like the third declension of nouns; *e. g.*, *brěvīs*, *short*.

(105.)

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .	brěv- <i>ěs</i> .	brěv- <i>ěs</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .
G.	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .
D.	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .
Acc.	brěv- <i>ēm</i> .	brěv- <i>ēm</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .
Abl.	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .

Rem. 1. Twelve adjectives* of this class take *ěr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *is*; *e. g.*, *ācěr*, *ācěrīs*, *ācěrě*; *cělěběr*, *cělěběrīs*, *cělěběrě*.

Rem. 2. The abl. has *ě* instead of *i* in *jūvěnīs*, *a youth*; *śdilīs*, *edile*. The gen. pl. has *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *cělěr*, *swift*.

(106.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Father, *pătěr*, (*patr*) *is*.*Noble*, *nóbilīs*, *ě*.*Every*, } *omnīs*, *ě*.
All, the whole, }*Sweet*, *dulcīs*, *ě*.*To demand*, *poscěrě*.*Soldier*, *milēs*, (*milit*) *is* (m.).*Study*, *zeal*, *stūdīum*, *i*.*Kind*, *běnignūs*, *a*, *um*.*Dog*, *cānīs*, (*cān*) *is* (c., 25, IV.).*To endure*, *tělěrārě*.*Hostage*, *ōbsēs*, (*ōbsěd*) *is* (c., 25, IV.).*Uncertain*, *incertūs*, *ě*, *ūm*.*Useful*, *ūtīlīs*, *ě*.*Iron*, *ferrūm*, *i*.*Gold*, *aurūm*, *i*.*Severe*, *heavy*, *grāvīs*, *ě*.*Life*, *vītā*, *ě* (f.).*Brave*, *fortīs*, *ě*.*Patiently*, *pătientěr* (adv.).*Wolf*, *lūpūs*, *i* (m.).*Like*, *simīlīs*, *ě*.*A chief*, *princeps*, (*princp*) *is* (c., 25, IV.).* *Ācěr*, *sharp*.*Ālēcěr*, *cheerful*.*Campeštěr*, *of the plain*.*Cělěběr*, *famous*.*Cělěr*, *swift*.*Ēquestěr*, *equestrian*.*Pālustěr*, *marshy*.*Pědestěr*, *pedestrian*.*Sālūběr*, *salubrious*.*Sylvestěr*, *woody*.*Terrestěr*, *terrestrial*.*Vólūcěr*, *swift*.

II. *Examples.*

(a) *The father is kind to his son.* | Pătër filiō bēnignūs est.

(b) *The dog is like (to) the wolf.* | Cānis lūpō simīlis est.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The dative case is used with all adjectives that are followed by the words *to* or *for* in English: hence with adjectives expressing (a) *advantage* or *disadvantage*, (b) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

[Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* also take the gen.]

III. *Translate into English.*

Militēs omnēs pēriculū timent.—Impērātōr fortis militēs omnēs convocat.—Vitā brevīs est.—Vitā est brevīs et incertā.—Vinū est dulcē.—Principēs fortēs oppidā omniā muniēbant.—Cēsār obsidēs nobīlēs poscit.—Tempūs brevē est.—Nōn omnēs militēs sunt fortēs.—Ferrūm utīlē est.—Aurū et ferrū sunt utīliā hōmīnībūs (106, II., c).—Milēs vulnūs grāvē pātientēr tōlērāt.—Consul fortis pēriculā nōn timēbit.—Ferrū utīlē hōmīnībūs (106, II., c) est.—Militēs fortēs vulnērā grāviā pātientēr tōlērābunt.—Stūdīum est puērīs (106, II., c) utīlē.—Impērātōr militībūs (106, II., c) bēnignūs ērāt.—Cānis lūpō simīlis est.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The noble queen comes to the city.—The brave lieutenant endures patiently (his) severe wound.—All the soldiers hasten to the camp.—The brave chiefs will fortify many towns.—The noble hostages come to Cēsār (63, I., 57).—The time is uncertain.—Soldiers are not always useful.—Towns are useful for men (106, II., c).—Noble ambassadors are sent.—Many hostages are demanded by the consuls (93, II.).—All the soldiers will be called together.—Not all chiefs are noble.—Wine is sweet and iron is useful.—The dangers are not feared by the brave soldiers (93, II.).—The brave lieutenant praises the noble chief.—Dogs are like wolves (106, II.).—The study of *letters* (littērārūm) is useful for all (106, II.).—The soldiers are kind to the prisoners (106, II.).—Gold is heavy.—Iron is not like gold (106, II.).

Even in these, the ending *is* is sometimes found in nom. sing. masc.; e. g., *tumultus equestris*, Liv., xxix., 35.

§ 12.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD CLASS.

LESSON XVII.

Adjectives.—Third Class.—One Ending.

(107.) ADJECTIVES of the *Third Class* have but one ending in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, *fēlīx* (m., f., n.), *happy*; *audāx* (m., f., n.), *bold*; *paupēr* (m., f., n.), *poor*.

(108.) PARADIGM.—*Fēlīx*, *happy*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	<i>fēlīx.</i>	<i>fēlīx.</i>	<i>fēlīx.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ēs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ēs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īā.</i>
G.	<i>fēlīc-īs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īum.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īum.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īum.</i>
D.	<i>fēlīc-ī.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ī.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ī.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ībūs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ībūs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ībūs.</i>
Acc.	<i>fēlīc-ēm.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ēm.</i>	<i>fēlīx.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ēs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ēs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-īā.</i>
Abl.	<i>fēlīc-ī.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ī.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ī.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ībūs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ībūs.</i>	<i>fēlīc-ībūs.</i>

[*Rem. 1.* The abl. has *ē* instead of *ī* (a) in *paupēr*, *poor*; *sēnex*, *old* (gen. *sēnīs*); *princeps*, *chief*; *compos*, *possessed of*, and most ending in *ēs*; *e. g.*, *hospēs*, *guest*; *pubēs*, *grown up*, &c. Also in the compounds of *corpūs*, *cōlōr*, and *pēs*.

(b) Participles in *ns* have, as participles, *ē*, but as *adjectives* *ī*; *e. g.*, *flōrentē rōsā*, *the rose blooming*; *flōrentī rōsā*, *in a blooming rose*.

(c) Adjectives used as nouns take *ē*; *e. g.*, *sāpiens*, *a wise man*, abl. *sāpiētē*.

Rem. 2. The gen. pl. takes *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *vētūs*, *old* (*vētērūm*); *consors*, *partaking of*; *dēgēnēr*, *degenerate*; *dīvēs*, *rich*; *īnops*, *helpless*; *mēmōr*, *mindful*; *immēmōr*, *unmindful*; *sāplex*, *suppliant*; *ūbēr*, *rich*; *vīgīl*, *watching*. Also in all which take *ē* in the abl.; *e. g.*, *princeps*, *prīncipē*, *prīncipūm*.]

(109.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

War, bellūm, I.*Fierce*, ātrōx, (ātrōc) is (107).*To wage, carry on*, gērērē.*Horse-soldier*, ēquēs, (ēquīt) is (m.).*Tenacious*, tēnax, (tēnac) is (107).*Wise*, sāpiens, (sāpient) is (107).*Death*, mors, (mort) is (f.).*To renew*, rēdintēgrārē.*Rich*, divēs, (divīt) is (107).*Terrify*, tērērē.*Stag*, cervūs, I.*Powerful*, pōtens, (pōtent) is (107).*Scout*, explorātōr, is (m.).*To kill*, occidērē.*Battle*, praeliūm, I.*And*, et (conj.).*Swift*, vēlox, (vēlōc) is.*Horse*, equus, I.*Citizen*, civis, (civ) is (c., 25, IV.).

II. Example.

The inhabitants carry on a fierce war. | Incōlæ bellūm ātrōx gērunt.
[Refer to 78, II., a.]

III. Translate into English.

Incōlæ bellā magnā ēt ātrōciā gērunt.—Nuntiūs vēlox ād castrā vēnit.—Equitēs vēlōcēs ād sylvām festīnant.—Vir sāpiens mortēm nōn tīmēt.—Discipulūs mēmōriām tenācēm hābēt.—Mēmōriā in puēris est tēnax.—Impērātōr nuntiūm vēlōcēm mittēt.—Prīncipēs fortēs praeliūm ātrox redintegrābunt.—Cervūs vēlox est.—Equus vēlox currit.—Cānēs sunt vēlōcēs.—Sāpiens (82, I., R.) nōn sempēr divēs est.—Divītēs nōn sempēr beātī sunt.—Princeps pōtens lēgātōs mittīt.—Prīncipēs pōtentēs captīvōs occidunt.—Impērātōr prīncipēs omnēs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The thick woods terrify the swift messenger.—The fierce battle terrifies all the inhabitants.—The noble general was praising the swift messenger.—The illustrious consul sends ambassadors to (63, I., 13) the powerful chief.—The powerful chief will kill all the prisoners.—Rich (men) are not always wise.—The wise (man) does not fear the fierce battle.—The soldiers praise the rich citizen.—The memory in boys is always tenacious.—Dogs and horses are swift.—The consul will not renew the fierce battle.—The illustrious general will recall the swift horse-soldiers.—Rich citizens fear fierce wars.—The fierce battles were terrifying all the hostages.—The wise general calls-together all the ambassadors.—The fierce battle will be renewed.—All the prisoners will be killed by the powerful chiefs (93, II.).—The swift messengers are frightened.—Great wars are carried on.—Rich citizens are killed.

§ 13.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

(110.) THE *Fourth Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ends in ūs (*long*). The nom. ending for *masculines* is ūs, and for *neuters* ū; *e. g.*, fruct-ūs, *fruit*, masc.; corn-ū, *horn*, neut.

(111.) The case-endings are as follows:

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Plur.	Masc.	Neut.
N. and V.	ūs.	ū.	N. and V.	ūs.	ūā.
Gen.	ūs.	ūs or ū.	Gen.	tūm.	tūm.
Dat.	ūī.	ū.	Dat.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	tūm.	ū.	Acc.	ūs.	ūā.
Abl.	ū.	ū.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(112.) By adding these endings to the stems *fruct-* and *corn-*, we get the

PARADIGM.*

	Sing., fruit (m.).	Plur., fruit.		Sing., horn (n.).	Plur., horns.
N. and V.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūs.	N., A., V.	corn-ū.	corn-ūā.
Gen.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūm.	Gen.	corn-ūs, or ū.	corn-ūm.
Dat.	fruct-ūī.	fruct-ībūs.	Dat., Abl.	corn-ū.	corn-ībūs.
Acc.	fruct-ūm.	fruct-ūs.			
Abl.	fruct-ū.	fruct-ībūs.			

[*Rem.* 1. The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur. instead of ībūs, viz., ācūs (f.), *needle*; arcūs (m.), *bow*; artūs (m.), *joint*; ficūs (f.), *fig-tree*; lacūs (m.), *lake*; partūs (m.), *birth*; portūs (m.), *harbor*; quercūs (f.), *oak*; spēcūs (m.), *den*; tribūs (f.), *tribe*; pēcū (n.), *cattle*; vērū (n.), *a spit*.†]

2. The *feminine* nouns of this declension are, ācūs, *needle*; anūs,

* The fourth declension is only a contracted form of the third: thus,

N. fruct-ūs.
G. fruct-ūs, contr. fructūs.
D. fruct-ūī.
Acc. fruct-ūm, contr. fructūm, &c.

† The following verses embrace these:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērū,
Ficūs, lacūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs; also, pēcū,
Tribūs too, and partūs.

old woman; *dōmūs*, house; *ficūs*, fig; *mānūs*, hand; *nūrūs*, daughter-in-law; *porticūs*, gallery; *tribūs*, tribe; *quercūs*, oak. Also, *Idūs*, -ūm (used only in plural), the Ides.*

3. *Dōmūs* (f.), house, is thus declined:

	N., V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dōm-ūs.	-ūs. } -ī. }	-uī.	-ūm.	-ō.
Plur.	dōm-ūs.	-uūm. } -ōrum. }	-ībūs.	-ōs, -ūs (rarely). }	-ībūs.

4. The gen. *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*; e. g., *dōmī mēse*, at my home, at my house.

(113.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

To lead over, or across, *transducere*.

Approach, *adventus*, ūs (m.).

To await, *expectare*.

Singing, *cantus*, ūs (m.).

Fruit, *fructus*, ūs (m.).

To adorn, *ornare*.

Four, *quattuor* (indeclin.).

To build, *edificare*.

Horn, *cornu*, ūs (n.).

Army, *exercitus*, ūs (m.).

Harbour, *portus*, ūs (m.).

Enemy, *hostis*, (host) is (c., 25, IV.).

Bird, *avis*, (āv) is (f.).

Grief, *luctus*, ūs† (m.).

To lay aside, *deponere*.

Sadness, *mæror*, ōris† (m.).

Tempest, *procella*, æ.

To raise, *tollere*.

Wave, *fluctus*, ūs (m.).

Star, *sidus*, (sīdēr) is (n.) (102).

Shore, *littus*, (littōr) is (n.) (102).

Wind, *ventus*, i (m.).

Roll, *volvère*.

Boundary, *finis*, (fin) is (m.).

The Rhine, *Rhēnus*, i.

Ship, *navis*, (nav) is (f.).

II. Examples.

(a) The Helvetians lead part of their forces across the Rhine.

Helvētī partem cōpiarūm Rhēnū transducunt.

(b) Cæsar leads a great army of Germans across the Rhine.

Cæsār magnū Germānōrū exercitū trans Rhēnū transducit.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) Verbs compounded with the preposition *trans* are generally followed by two accusatives; e. g., *partem* and *Rhenum* in (a).

(b) But sometimes the preposition is repeated; e. g., *trans* in (b).

III. Translate into English.

Helvētī Cæsāris (38, b) *adventū expectābant*.—*Adventū*

* *Ācūs*, *mānūs*, *tribūs*, *dōmūs*, *porticūs*, and *Idūs*. The rest are fem. by the general rule (25, II.).

† *Mæror* = silent grief; *luctus* = mourning.

(abl., 55, a) *Cæsāris hostēs terrentūr.*—*Āvis puellām cantū (55, a) delectāt.*—*Fructūs arbōres (acc. pl.) ornant.*—*Fructūs terræ agrīcōlām delectant.*—*Pāter dōmūs (acc. pl.) quāttūr aedificābit.*—*Nāvēs in portū sunt.*—*Rēginā luctūm dēpōnīt.*—*Sāpientēs luctūm et mōrōrēm dēpōnunt.*—*Prōcellā magnōs fluctūs (acc. pl.) tollēbāt.*—*Prōcellā fluctūs (acc. pl.) ad sidērā tollīt.*—*Puēr taurūm cornū (abl., 55, a) tēnēt.*—*Cornuā cervī magnā sunt.*—*Fluctūs magnī ventis (55, a) volvantūr.*—*Lēgātūs exercitūm dūcīt.*—*Lēgātūs ab Ēduīs (from the Ēduans; i. e., their country) exercitūm dūcīt.*—*Āgrīcōlā taurūm cornībūs (55, a) tēnēbāt.*—*Adventūs patrīs puellām delectābit.*—*Cæsār exercitūm flūmēn transdūcīt (113, II., a).*—*Lēgātūs pār finēs Helvētiōrūm exercitūm dūcēt.*—*Ariōvistūs Germānōs trans Rhēnūm transdūcīt (113, II., b).*

Rem. Home is translated by dōmūm, the acc. of domus; thus, The sailor leads the boy home—Nautā puērūm dōmūm dūcīt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

My father will build four houses.—The tempest is rolling great waves to the shores (63, I., 137).—Vast waves are raised to the stars by tempests.—The turbid sea is rolling vast waves to the shores.—The farmer leads the girls home from (ab) the city.—Cæsar will lead the army over the turbid river.—Cassius leads the army through the boundaries of the Ēduans and Helvetians.—The Helvetians await the coming of Cæsar.—The boy will hold the bull by the horns (55, a).—The farmer is delighted by the fruits (55, a) of the earth.—The king lays aside his griefs and sadness.—The singing of the birds (āviūm) will delight the soldiers.—The trees are adorned by many fruits.—There are many large ships in the harbour.—The winds raise the great waves to the stars.—The lieutenant was leading the army of the Ēduans across the Rhine. (Repeat *trans* (113, II., b)).—The horns of bulls are large.—The queen will lay aside her grief and sadness.—The master sends his slaves home

§ 14.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

(114.) THE *Fifth Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. ending* is *ĕi*. The *nom. ending* is *ĕs*.

(115.) There are but few nouns of this declension, and they are all *feminine* except *diĕs*, *day*, and *meridiĕs*, *mid-day*; and even *diĕs* is *fem.* in the *sing.* when it means a *fixed day*.

(116.) The case-endings are as follows:

	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ĕs.	ĕi.	ĕi.	ĕm.	ĕ.
Plur.	ĕs.	ĕrĭm.	ĕbĭs.	ĕs.	ĕbĭs.

Rem. In the *gen.* and *dat.* the *e* in *ei* is *long* when a vowel stands before it; *e. g.*, *dī-ēi*: *short* when a consonant stands before it; *e. g.*, *fīd-ĕi*.

(117.) By adding the endings to the stems *r-* and *dī-*, we get the

PARADIGMS.

Thing (f.).	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Singular.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕm.	r-ĕ.
Plural.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕrĭm.	r-ĕbĭs.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕbĭs.
Day (m.).					
Singular.	dī-ĕs.	dī-ĕi.	dī-ĕi.	dī-ĕm.	dī-ĕ.
Plural.	dī-ĕs.	dī-ĕrĭm.	dī-ĕbĭs.	dī-ĕs.	dī-ĕbĭs.

Rem. Only *rĕs*, *diĕs*, *spĕciĕs*, have the *plur. complete*; the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. plur.* are wanting in all others.

(118.) EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Hope, *spĕs*, *ĕi*.

Day, *diĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

To appoint, *constitŭĕrĕ*.

To lead out, *ĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

To lead back, *rĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

Line of battle, *līciĕs*, *ĕi*.

To draw up, *instrŭĕrĕ*.

About, *cīrcitĕr* (*prep.* with *acc.*).

About mid-day, *cīrcitĕr meridiĕm*.

Victory, *victoriā*, *ĕ*.

Mid-day, *meridiĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

Sixth, *sextŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

Reward, *prĕmiŭm*, *i*.

Sun, *sōl*, (*sōl*) *is* (m.).

Setting, *occāsus*, *ŭs*.

Seventh, *septimŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

Out of, *ĕ* or *ex* (*prep.* with *ablative*).

Faith, *promise*, *fīdĕs*, *ĕi*.

The next, *postĕrtŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

To fight, *pugnārĕ*.

II. *Examples.*

- (a) *Cæsar draws up the line of battle.* | Cæsār āciēm instrūit.
 (b) *The next day they move the camp.* | Postērō dīē castrā mōvent.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative; *e. g.*, in (b) *postero die.*—*At sun-set* = sōlis occāsū.

III. *Translate into English.*

Spēs victoriæ militēs dēlectāt.—Militēs spēs (93, II., R.) victoriæ dēlectantūr.—Diēs vēnit.—Cæsār dīēm constitūt.—Cæsār dīēm cūm lēgātis constitūt.—Impērātōr fortis exercitūm ēdūcīt, ēt āciēm instrūit.—Circitēr mēridiēm pugnant.—Cæsār, circitēr mēridiēm, exercitūm in castrā rēdūcīt.—Sextō dīē (118, II., c) Cæsār exercitūm ex castris ēdūcīt.—Spēs prēmiorū pūrōs dēlectāt.—Pūrī spēs prēmiorū dēlectantur.—Sōlis occāsū Helvētīi castrā mōvēbant.—Septimō dīē Belgæ cōpiās omnēs ex castris ēdūcēbant.—Sōlis occāsū Ariovistūs āciēm instrūit.—Circitēr mēridiēm proeliūm rēdintēgrābunt.—Consul clārūs dīēm cūm lēgātis constitūt.—Prīncipēs nōbilēs fidēm vīolant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The hope of victory delights the noble chiefs.—The consul about mid-day leads out the army and renews the fierce battle.—The powerful chiefs, at the-setting-of-the-sun (118, II., c), kill all the prisoners.—The day will come.—The consul, at the setting of the sun, will renew the great battle.—At the setting of the sun the great battle will be renewed.—On the sixth day all the forces will be led back to the camp.—The Germans appoint a day with Cæsar.—The next day the Germans move (their) camp.—Ariovistus, on the next day, draws out the line of battle.—Cæsar appoints the mid-day with the ambassadors.—About mid-day the messengers come.—About mid-day the consul will come.—Cæsar will not violate (his) promise.

§ 15.

PRONOUNS. (XX.—XXXI.)

LESSON XX.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, First Person.

(119.) THE three pronouns *ĕg ō, I; tū, thou; suī, of himself, herself, itself*, are called *Substantive*, because they are used as substantives, not as adjectives; and *Personal*, because they express the person *speaking*, the person *spoken to*, and the person *spoken of*.

(120.) The *Substantive-Personal* Pronoun of the *first* person is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ĕg ō, <i>I.</i>	mĕī, <i>of me.</i>	mīhī, <i>to me.</i>	mĕ, <i>me.</i>	mĕ, <i>by me, &c.</i>
Plur.	nōs, <i>we.</i>	nostrī, nostrūm, } <i>of us.</i>	nōbīs, <i>to us.</i>	nōs, <i>us.</i>	nōbīs, <i>by us, &c.</i>

(121.) Derived from the *Substantive-Personal* Pronouns are the *Adjective-Personal* or *Possessive* Pronouns; called *Adjective*, because they agree with nouns; and *Possessive*, because they express possession (*my, thy, his, &c.*).

(122.) The *Adjective-Personal* Pronouns of the *first* person are declined, in both sing. and plur., like adjectives of the *First Class* (76, 77, a). They are,

(a) Derived from mĕī,	N. mĕūs, mĕā, mĕtūm, <i>my, mine.</i>
	G. mĕī, mĕā, mĕī, <i>of my (voc. masc. mī).</i>
	&c. &c. (like b ō n ū s, 76.)
(b) " from nostrī,	N. nostrēr, nostrā, nostrūm, <i>our, ours.</i>
	G. nostrī, nostrā, nostrī, <i>of our.</i>
	&c. &c. (like pulchēr, 77, a.)

(123.) The following forms of *Verbs in the first person* must now be learned:

FIRST CONJUGATION : FIRST PERSON ENDINGS.

INFIN. ACT., <i>ārē</i> .			INFIN. PASS., <i>ārī</i> .			
Indic. present.		Imperfect.		Future.		
	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>
1st Sing.	ō.	ōr.	ābām.	ābār.	ābō.	ābōr.
1st Plur.	āmūs.	āmūr.	ābāmūs.	ābāmūr.	ābīmūs.	ābīmūr.

(124.) Thus, from the stem *ām*, of *ām-ārē*, to love, we have :

INFIN. ACT., <i>āmārē</i> , to love.				INFIN. PASS., <i>āmārī</i> , to be loved.			
Indic. Pres.		Imperfect.		Future.			
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pass.</i>		
ām-ō, <i>I love.</i>	ām-ōr, <i>I am loved.</i>	ām-ābām, <i>I was loving.</i>	ām-ābār, <i>I was loved.</i>	ām-ābō, <i>I shall love.</i>	ām-ābōr, <i>I shall be loved.</i>		
ām-āmūs, <i>we love.</i>	ām-āmūr, <i>we are loved.</i>	ām-ābāmūs, <i>we were loving.</i>	ām-ābāmūr, <i>we were loved.</i>	ām-ābīmūs, <i>we shall love.</i>	ām-ābīmūr, <i>we shall be loved.</i>		

[Rem. The student will learn the *passive* endings readily by observing that *r* is the passive characteristic, which is added to the active; the consonant ending of the active, where it has one, being dropped.]

(125.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Book, *libēr*, *bri* (m.), (64).

Friend, *amicūs*, *i* (m.).

Brother, *frātēr*, (*fratr*) *is* (m.).

Cicero, *Cicērō*, (*Cicērōn*) *is* (m.).

Sister, *sōrōr*, (*sōrōr*) *is* (f.).

With (i. e., at one's house), *apud* (prep. acc.).

Fault, *culpā*, *æ*.

Yesterday, *hērī* (adv.).

All my (possessions), *omniā meā* (neut. pl.).

Five, *quinqvē*.

Sharply, *ācritēr*.

To-morrow, *crās* (adv.).

Very much, greatly, *valdē* (adv.).

To blame, *vītūpērārē*.

To sing, *cantārē*.

Three, *trēs*, *triā* (adj. of Class II.).

II. Examples.

(a) *I have a book.*

Est mihi libēr (i. e., there is a book to me).

Rule of Syntax.—The dative case is used with *est* or *sunt*, to denote the person who *has* or *possesses* something.*

The thing possessed is nom. to *est* or *sunt*.

(b) *The boy was walking with me in the garden yesterday.*

Puēr mēcūm in hortō hērī ambūlābāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition *cūm* is suffixed to the personal pronouns; e. g., *mēcūm*, with me; *nōbiscūm*, with us; instead of *cūm mē*, *cūm nōbīs*.

[Recollect that the personal and possessive pronouns are not expressed in Latin, unless emphasis or perspicuity demands it.]

* This is called the *Dative of Possession*, and should always be referred to as such by the pupil.

III. *Translate into English.*

Ēgō cantō, amicus audit.—*Ēgō ēt frātēr ambulāmūs.**—*Ēgō ēt filiūs meūs festināmūs.*—*Sunt mihī trēs librī (125, II., a).*—*Sunt mihī quattuōr equī ēt quinquē cānēs.*—*In hortō ambulābām.*—*Ā bōnīs (82, I., R.) amābōr.*—*Cicērō ā mē laudātūr.*—*Hostēs nobiscūm (125, II., b) acritēr pugnant.*—*Hērī in āgris ambulābāmūs.*—*Pātēr ād nōs nuntiūm mittēt.*—*Culpā nostrā est.*—*Crās in hortō cēnābīmūs.*—*Dēlectābāmūr.*—*Puērī in hortō nobiscūm ambulābunt.*—*Littērārūm studiūm† (38, b) mihī (106, II.) ūtilē ērit.*—*Ā māgistrō laudābār.*—*Omniā meā mēcūm portō.*—*Ēgō ā frātrē valdē amōr.*—*Nōs laudāmūr, puellæ vitāpērantūr.*—*Nōs ā māgistrō verbērābīmūr.*

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

We praise the beautiful girl.—We have (125, II., a) four large cups.—I have (= there are to me) four sons and three daughters (125, II., a).—We shall praise Cæsar's brave soldiers.—I walk, my friend rides.—I and my sister will ride.*—I and my brother will walk* in the king's garden.†—I and my father will sup* in the garden to-morrow.—We shall always praise the wise and good.—The works of Cicero will be praised by us (93, II., b), the works of Cæsar by the soldiers.—The fault is mine.—We have many large cups (125, II., a).—I have three beautiful sisters.—I have four brothers.—My father will walk with me in Cæsar's garden (*Cæsaris in hortō*).‡—The study of literature is useful to us (106, II.).—To-day we shall sup with (apud) Crassus.

LESSON XXI.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, First Person, continued.

(126.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *first person* in verbs of the

* If a predicate have two or more nominatives, connected by a conjunction, it takes generally the plural number; and if the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

† *Littērārūm studiūm* = the *pursuit* (or *study*) of *literature* (letters).

‡ In all such cases, put the prep. *between* the genitive and the noun governed by the prep.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	mōn-	eĉ.	eōr.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.
Imperfect.	mōn-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	mōn-	ēbō.	ēbōr.	ēbimūs.	ēbimūr.

[*Rem.* The student will learn these forms readily by observing that they differ chiefly from those of the *first* conjugation in having *ē* before the last syllable instead of *ā*. By adding the endings, as above given, to the stem *mōn-*, which stands at the left hand, he will form the paradigm of *mōnērē*, to *advise*.]

(127.) The following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in the third and fourth conjugations.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	rĕg-	ġ.	ōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	rĕg-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	rĕg-	ām.	ār.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.

[*Rem.* Compare these with the endings of the 2d conj., and observe that,

1. In the *pres.* *e* is dropped in the *sing.*, and *i* assumed in the *plur.*
2. The *imperfect* is precisely the same.
3. But the *future* is a new form.
4. By adding the endings to the stem placed at the left, you form the paradigm of *rĕgērē*, to *rule*.]

(128.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	aud-	iō.	iōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	aud-	iēbām.	iēbār.	iēbāmūs.	iēbāmūr.
Future.	aud-	iām.	iār.	iēmūs.	iēmūr.

[*Rem.* Observe that the endings of the 4th conj. differ from those of the 3d simply by prefixing the letter *i*. In the 1st plur. the *i* prefixed combines with that of the endings *īmūs*, *īmūr*, and forms *īmūs*, *īmūr*.]

(129.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Fierce, fērōx, (fērōc) *is* (107).
Nothing, nīhīl (neut. indecl.).
To be well, valērē.
To arrange, dispōnērē.

Wicked, imprōbūs, ā, ūm.
Garrison, præsidiūm, ī.
Latin, Lātīnūs, ā, ūm.
Antony, Antōniūs, ī.

II. Example.

I have nothing to do with | Nīhīl est mīhī cūm Antōniō
Antony (125, II., a). | (i. e., there is nothing to me
with Antony).

III. Translate into English.

2d Conjugation.—Ēgō ēt frātēr vālēmūs (125, III.*).—Ā māgistrō dōcēbimūr.—Linguām Lātīnām dōceō.—Ā pātrē mōneōr.—Ā māgistrō bōnō dōcēmūr.—Āb hostē tīmēbār.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn tīmēbō. *3d Conjugation.*—Rēgēbāmūr.—Præsidiā dispōnēbāmūs.—Ā Deō rēgimūr.—Ēgō exercitūm dūcām.—Ā filiō meō rēlinquār.—Lūpōs fērōcēs occidimūs. *4th Conjugation.*—Castellā mūniēmūs.—Āviūm cantūm audimūs.—Crās ād urbēm veniām.—Nihil est mihi cūm imprōbis.—Nihil est nobis cūm hostibūs.

IV. Translate into Latin.

2d Conjugation.—I and my son are well (125, III.*).—We shall see the brave soldiers.—I am taught by good masters.—We were fearing the approach of the enemy.—I was teaching the Latin language.—We shall be feared by the enemy.—We shall be advised by our father. *3d Conjugation.*—We were led by a brave general.—I was killing three wolves.—We are ruled by a good king.—We shall arrange the garrisons.—I shall bring (dūcērē) my daughter from (ab) the city.—We shall lead the forces of the Germans. *4th Conjugation.*—We were heard by the master.—We shall sleep in the little town (89, II.).—We shall come to the town to-morrow.—I shall be heard by the girls.—We were fortifying the towns.—We have nothing to do with the foolish (129, II.).—I have nothing to do with Cæsar.

LESSON XXII.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, Second Person.

(130.) THE Substantive-Personal Pronoun of the second person is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ref.
Sing.	tū, thou.	tui, of thee.	tibi, to thee.	tē, thee.	tū, thou.	tē, thy.
Plur.	vōs, you.	vestri, } of vestrūm, } you.	vōbis, to you.	vōs, you.	vōs, you.	vōbīs, by.

(131.) The following are some of the endings of the second person of verbs of the

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	am-	ās.	āris.	ātis.	āminī.
Imp.	am-	ābās.	ābāris.	ābātis.	ābāminī.
Fut.	am-	ābīs.	ābēris.	ābītis.	ābīmīnī.

(132.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Yesterday, hēri. (adv.).*To wound*, vulnerāre.*To-day*, hōdiē (adv.).*To fight*, pugnāre.

II. Translate into English.

Crās mecūm cōnābīs.—Tū mē āmās, ēgō tē āmō.—Vōs vōbiscūm pugnātīs.—Tū cantās, nōs audimūs.—In hortō ambūlābātīs.—Tū ā patrē valdē āmārīs.—Vōs vitūpērāminī, nōs laūdāmūr.—Nihil est tibi cūm Cēsārē.—Crās vōbiscūm cōnābō.—Nōs laudābīmūr, vōs vitūpērābīmīnī.—Nihil vōbīs est cūm bōnis.—Hēri ambūlābātīs.—Hōdiē pugnābītīs.—Laudābāminī.—Vulnerābīmīnī.—Vocātīs.—Vocāminī.—Āmātīs.—Āmāminī.—Cantābātīs.—Vocābāminī.

III. Translate into Latin.

To-day ye were supping with us (125, II., b).—Ye love us, we love you.—Ye were singing, we were hearing.—Ye have nothing to do with the king (129, II.).—Thou wast greatly loved by Cæsar.—Ye shall be praised by our master.—Ye shall be blamed by the good (82, I., R.).—Ye are called by the messenger.—Thou fightest with thyself* (125, II., b).—Ye shall sup with us to-morrow.—Thou wilt fight to-morrow.—Thou wast loving.—Thou wast loved.—Thou wilt blame.—Thou wilt be blamed.—Ye are praising.—Ye are praised.—Thou woundest.—Thou art wounded.

LESSON XXIII.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, Second Person, Second Conjugation.

(133.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *second person*, in verbs of the

* Tēcūm.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	mōn-	ēs.	ēris.	ētis.	ēmīni.
Imp.	mōn-	ēbā.	ēbāris.	ēbātis.	ēbāmīni.
Fut.	mōn-	ēbis.	ēbēris.	ēbitis.	ēbimīni.

(a) Derived from <i>tuī</i> ,	N. <i>tuūs</i> , ā, ūm, <i>thy, thine.</i> G. <i>tuī</i> , æ, ī, <i>of thy, &c.</i>
(b) Derived from <i>vestrī</i> ,	N. <i>vestār</i> , <i>vestrā</i> , <i>vestrūm</i> , <i>your.</i> G. <i>vestrī</i> , <i>vestræ</i> , <i>vestri</i> , <i>of your.</i>

<i>Thou art, es</i> (2d person sing. ind. pres. of <i>esse</i>).	<i>Of concerning, de</i> (prep. abl.).
<i>Ye are, estis</i> (2d person pl. of do.).	<i>To laugh, ridēre.</i>
<i>I was, eram</i> (1st imperf. do.).	<i>To rejoice, gaudēre.</i>
<i>Cause,</i> } causā.	<i>Safety, salūs, (sālūt) is (f.).</i>
<i>For the sake of,</i> } causā (abl.).	<i>Leader, guide, dux, (dūc) is (m.).</i>
<i>To learn, discere.</i>	<i>Why, cur (adv.).</i>
	<i>Because, that, quod (conj.).</i>

Videāne servū meūm? (135, II., 2).—Tuæ sālūtis causā (135, II., b) mōnēris.—Cūr ridētis?—Vestræ sālūtis causā mōnēmini.—Gaudeō quōd tū ēt patr tuus vālētis (125, III., *).

—Vidēbāsnē militēs?—Dē culpā tuā mōnēbāris.—Cūr ridēbātis.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn timēbis.—Tuæ sālūtis causā mōnēbēris.—Nōs discēmūs, vōs dōcēbimīnī.—Timētisnē Cæsāris adventūm?—Esnē tū beātūs?—Culpā tuā est (*the fault is thine*).—Puēri in hortō vōbiscūm ambūlābant.—Māgister ēgō vestēr eram (135, II., c).

IV. Translate into Latin.*

[The *emphatic* words are in italics.]

Did you *see* your master?—Do you *fear* the approach of Cæsar?—Are *you* happy?—You were warned (advised) for the sake of your own safety.—Are you and your father *well*? (125, III., *).—The fault was yours.—You shall see the enemy, but (sēd) shall not fear (them).—I am your friend.—I was your friend.—You teach, but we learn.—You shall teach, but we shall learn.—Why do you not (nōn) fear the master?—You were warned of (d e) your fault.—Do you *see* your slaves?—Are *you* Cæsar?—Why do you fear the master?—You shall see great cities and many men.—We shall sup with you to-morrow.—You shall be warned, for the sake of your own safety.—We rejoice that you and your daughter are well (125, III., *).

LESSON XXIV.

Verbs, Second Person, Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(136.) THE following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	reg-	īs.	ītīs.	ērīs.	īmīnī.
Imper.	reg-	ēbās.	ēbātīs.	ēbāris.	ēbāminī.
Fut.	reg-	ēs.	ētīs.	ērīs.	ēmīnī.

(137.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	aud-	īs.	ītīs.	īrīs.	īmīnī.
Imp.	aud-	īēbās.	īēbātīs.	īēbāris.	īēbāminī.
Fut.	aud-	īēs.	īētīs.	īērīs.	īēmīnī.

* When *you*, *your*, occur, translate them both in sing. and plur., for the sake of practice.

(138.) *Observe,*

(a) That the present endings of the 3d and 4th conjugations are nearly alike, the vowel (i) of the *fourth* being long (i).

(b) That the imperfect and future endings of the *fourth* conjugation differ from those of the third by prefixing the letter i.

EXERCISE.

(139.) *Vocabulary.*

Plant, plantā, æ.

To sow, to plant, sērērē.

To find, invēnirē.

Orator, ōrātōr, (ōrātōr) is (m.).

Voice, vox, (vōc) is (f.).

To read, lēgērē.

Whence, undē (adv.).

Long, longē (adv.).

Badly, malē.

To punish, pūnirē.

So, tām (adv.).

Bird, āvis, (āv) is (f.)

(140.) *Translate into English.*

3d Conjugation.—Cūr nōn scribīs.—Arbōrēs ēt plantās sērēbātīs.—Hōdiē ād Cæsārēm mittērīs.—Cūr tām malē scribīs?—Ād castrā rēducēmīnī.—Lēgīs-nē Cīcērōnīs ōpērā?—Scribīs-nē ēpistōlām ād Cæsārēm? *4th Conjugation.*—Undē vēnīs?—Cūr tām longē dormīs?—Māgistrūm bōnūm invēniēs.—Audis-nē māgistrī vōcēm?—Cūr nōn vēniētīs?—Ā Cæsārē audirīs.—Ā māgistrō pūniēmīnī.—Ōrātōrēm audiētīs.—In hortō dormiebātīs.—Cantūm āviūm audītīs.

(141.) *Translate into Latin.* [Refer to 135, II.]

3d Conjugation.—Are you writing a letter?—Thou wast planting a tree to-day.—*Were* (you) *reading* the works of Cicero?—Why do you read so badly?—Are you writing a letter to the messenger?—Thou wilt read Cæsar to-day.—Thou art sent to the camp.—Thou wilt be led by the ambassadors. *4th Conjugation.*—Why do you not come?—Ye shall hear the voice of Cæsar.—Thou wilt sleep in the camp.—Ye shall be heard by the master.—Thou shalt be punished.—Ye are heard.—Thou shalt hear the singing of the birds.

LESSON XXV.

Pronouns.—*Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal, Third Person.*

(142.) THE *Substantive Pronoun* of the *third person* is thus declined :

F

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	sui, of himself, herself, itself.	sibi, to himself, &c.	se, himself, &c.	se, by himself, &c.
Plur.	—	eui, of themselves.	sibi, to themselves.	se, themselves.	se, by themselves, &c.

(143.) The *Adjective Pronoun* of the *third person* is declined like an adjective of the first class: thus,

Derived from *sui*, | N. *suius*, *us*, *um*, *his*, *hers*, *its*, *his own*.
 | G. *sui*, *ae*, *i*, *of his*, *hers*, *its*, &c.

Rem. Observe that *sui* is not a regular pronoun of the third person, like the English *he*, *she*, *it*, but reflexive; e. g., *puer se laudat*, *the boy praises himself*. It therefore has no *nom.* case. [The *nom.* pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, are not often expressed in Latin; but when they must be, a *demonstrative pronoun*, generally *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is employed.]

EXERCISE.

(144.) Vocabulary.

Hand, *manus*, *us* (f.) (112, 2).
To love (with esteem), *diligere*.
To live, *vivere*.
To contend, *contendere*.
To defend, *defendere*.
To burn, *incendere*.
Townsmen, *oppidanus*, *us*, *uma*.
A Sequanian, *Séquanus*, *i*.

Among, *inter* (prep.).
Corn, *frumentum*, *i*.
From (prep.) *a* or *ab*.†
A legion, *legio*, (*legio*) *is* (f.).
To rule, *command*, *imperare* (with dat. of person).
To send away, } *dimittere*.
dismiss, }

(145.) Examples.

- (a) *Cæsar calls Divitiacus to himself.* Cæsar Divitiacum ad se vocat.
 (b) *The girl writes the letter with her own hand.* Puella epistolam manu sua scribit.
 (Rem. *se* is often doubled, for the sake of emphasis.)
 (c) *Men always love themselves.* Homines semper sese diligunt.
 (d) *The good live not for themselves, but for all.* Boni non sibi, sed omnibus vivunt.

(146.) Translate into English.

Hostes inter se contendunt.—*Oppidani se suaque ab hostibus defendebant.*—*Helvetii oppida sua omnia incendunt.*—*Cæsar tres legiones secum habet.*—*Consul legatos ab se dimittit.*—*Sapiens omnia sua* secum portat.*—*Helvetii et Sequani ob-*

* *Omnia sua* = *all his (property)*; the noun being understood.

† *A* is used before consonants only; *ab* before either vowels or consonants.

sēdēs intēr sēsē dābant.—*Bōnī sēsē nōn dīfīgunt.*—*Helvētī frūmentū omnē* sēcūm portābant.*—*Imprōbī sībī sempēr vīvunt.*—*Sāpiens sībī sempēr impērāt* (147).

(147.) *Rule of Syntax.*—The *Dative* is used with some verbs signifying *to command, to rule, to obey.*

(148.) *Translate into Latin.*

Good men do not praise themselves.—The townsmen were fighting with each other (*inter se*).—The wise man always carries *all* his (property) with him.—Bad men always love themselves.—The general has three legions with him.—The townsmen will carry all their corn with them.—Bad men do not rule themselves (147).—The *Æduans* will defend themselves and their (property) from the soldiers.—*Cæsar* was dismissing the messenger from himself.—The Germans will burn their villages.

LESSON XXVI.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

(149.) THE *Demonstrative Pronouns* are so called because they are used to *point out* an object; *e. g., this, that, these, those.*

(150.) *Is, that* (often used for *he, she, it* (143; R.), is thus declined; also *idēm, the very same*, compounded of *is* and *dem*.

	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.	is, eā, id.	ii, ēae, eā.	idēm, eādēm, Idēm.	iidēm, eaidēm, eādēm.
G.	ejūs.	eōrūm, eārum, eōrūm.	ejūsādēm.	eōrundēm, eārundēm, eōrundēm.
D.	ēi.	iis, or eis.	eidēm.	iisdēm.
Acc.	ēum, eām, id.	eōs, eas, eā.	ēundēm, eandēm, idēm.	eōsādēm, eaisādēm, eādēm.
Abl.	eō, eā, eō.	iis, or eis.	eōdēm, eādēm, eōdēm.	iisdēm.

(151.) The following forms of the verb *esse, to be*, must now be learned.

* *Frūmentū omnē* = *all their corn.*

TENSES.	SINGULAR.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he, she, &c., is.</i>
Imperfect.	ērām, <i>was.</i>	ērās.	ērāt.
Future.	ērō, <i>shall or will be.</i>	eris.	erit.
	PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estis, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperfect.	ērāmūs, <i>were.</i>	erātis.	erant.
Future.	erimūs.	eritis.	erunt.

EXERCISE.

(152.) Vocabulary.

To keep off, } prōhibēre.

To prevent, }

To refrain, tempērāre.

Merchant, mercātōr, (mercātōr) is (m.).

Colour, cōlōr, (cōlōr) is (m.).

And, atquē (conj.).

Plato, Plātō, (Plātōn) is.

Elegant, ēlēgans, (elegant) is.

Gladly, willingly, libentēr (adv.).

Way, journey, itēr, (itīnēr) is (n.).

Kingdom, regnūm, I.

Flower, flōs, (flōr) is (m.).

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) is (m.).

Never, nunquām (adv.).

(153.) Examples.

(a) The Helvetians contend with the Germans, and keep them off from their boundaries.

Helvētīi cūm Germānīs contendunt; eōs quē suis finībūs prōhibent.*

(b) The father calls his (own) son to him (self).

Pātēr filiūm suūm ad sē vōcāt.

(c) The father calls his daughter and her son to him (self).

Pātēr filiām suām et filiūm ejūs ad sē vōcāt.

☞ Observe carefully, that if *his, hers, its*, refers to the principal subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the *possessive* (suūs, ā, ūm); but if not, by the *genitive* (ejūs) of the demonstrative (is, eā, id).

(154.) Translate into English.

(1) Is, eā, id, used for *he, she, it* (personal).

Ii ab injuriā tempērānt.—Is est in provinciā tuā.—Mercātōrēs ad eōs sēpē vēniunt.—Ab iis multā (82, I., R.) poscimūs.—Belgæ cūm Æduīs contendunt, eōsqūe suis finībūs (153, a) prōhibent.

(2) Is, used as *demonstrative, this, that*; also, *Ad e m* is the same

* *Suis finibus* is in the ablative. All verbs of *separating, depriving, &c.* may take a noun in the ablative, with the direct object in the accusative.

In eō itinērē Cæsār Crassūm vidēt.—Dumnōrix, *eō* temporē (118, II., c) regnūm tēnēbāt.—Nōn sempēr *idēm* flōribus (125, II., a) est cōlōr.—In eā prōvinciā sunt quattuor lēgiōnēs.

(3) Distinction between *ējūs* and *suūs*, ā, ūm.

Cicēro est scriptōr *clārūs*; *ējūs* librōs libentēr lēgimūs.—Cæsār ad sē Dumnōrigēm atq̄e filiūm *ējūs* vocābīt.—Plātō est scriptōr *elēgans*; *ējūs* op̄erā libentēr lēgō.

Dux *egō* vestēr *ērām*.—*Ēs-nē* tū Sōcrātēs?—*Estis-nē* beātī?—Cæsār dux vestēr *ērāt*.

(155.) *Translate into Latin.*

They were walking in the garden yesterday.—The king will give them (dat., 54) rewards.—They are in Gaul.—Merchants never come to them.—We were demanding rewards of (ab) them.—In that province Cæsar finds many deserters.—In that province there are three legions.—At that time (abl., 118, II., c) Cæsar was leading the army.—Horses (125, II., a) have not always the *same* colour.—Cæsar calls Divitiacus and his brothers to him (self).—Cæsar is an elegant writer; we read his works with pleasure.—I am your leader.—You shall be our leader.—Cæsar was our leader.—The Æduans contend with the Helvetians, and keep them off their boundaries.

LESSON XXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

(156.) THE Demonstrative *hic, hæc, hōc, this*, points out an object which is present *to the speaker*, and is called demonstrative of the *first* person; e. g., *this book (of mine)*, *hic libēr*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hic, hæc, hōc.	hūjūs.	huic.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hāc, hōc.
Plur.	hi, hæ, hæc.	hōrūm, hārūm, hōrūm.	his.	hōs, hās, hæc.	his.

Rem. Hic is used also (as was stated 143, R.) for *he, she, it*; e. g., *hic dicīt, he (this man) speaks*.

(157.) *Istē, istā, istūd, this, that*, points out an

object which is present to the *person spoken to*, and is called the demonstrative of the *second* person; *e. g.*, *that book (of yours)*, *istē liber*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istē, istā, istūd.	istiūs.	istī.	istūm, istām, istūd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	istī, istae, istā.	istorūm, ārūm, orūm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istā.	istīs.

Rem. *Istē* is often used to denote contempt; *e. g.*, *istē-ne dicīt?*
Does *that fellow* speak?

(158.) *Illē, illā, illūd*, points out an object *remote* from the speaker (*that*, the *former*, opposed to *hic*), and is called the demonstrative of the *third* person. It is used often for the personal pronoun *he, she, it* (148, R.).

It is declined throughout like *istē, istā, istūd*.

Rem. In the genitives, *istiūs, illiūs, ipsiūs*, the penult *i* is long, contrary to the general rule (24, 1) that a vowel before another is short.

(159.) *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm*, is properly an *adjunctive* pronoun, as it is *added* to other pronouns; *e. g.*,

I (and not another) *praise myself.* | *Ēgō mē ipsē laudō.*
I praise myself (and not another). | *Ēgō mē ipsūm laudō.*

EXERCISE.

(160.) Vocabulary.

Opinion, *sententiā*, *ae.*
To please, *placēre*.
To displease, *displacēre*.
Soul, *ānimūs*, *l.*
Proverb, *prōverbīum*, *l.*
Lazy, *ignāvūs*, *ā. ūm.*
Excellent, } *praeclārūs*, *ā. ūm.*
Celebrated, }
Reason, *rātiō*, (*rātiōn*) *is* (*f.*).

Animal, *ānimāl*, (*ānimāl*) *is* (*neut.*).
Pleasing, *agreeable*, *grātūs*, *ā. ūm.*
Base, *turpis*, *ē* (104).
Friend, *amicūs*, *l.*
To boast, *prædicāre*.
To obey, *pārere* (with *dat.*, 147).
Old, *vētus*, (*vētēr*) *is* (108, R., 2).
Song, *carmēn*, (*carmīn*) *is* (*n.*).
Precept, *præceptūm*, *l.*

(161.) Examples.

(a) This opinion pleases me, | *Hæc sententiā mihi placēt*
that displeases (me). | *illā displacēt.*

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *pleasing, obeying, persuading, commanding, favouring, and the reverse*, take the *Dative* case.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| (b) That friend of yours is
an illustrious man. | Istē tuūs amīcūs vīr clārūs
est. |
| (c) The soul itself moves it-
self. | Ānimūs ipsē sē mōvēt. |
| (d) It is base to boast of one's
self. | Turpē est dē seipsō prae-
dicārē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used as the subject of a verb, and is then regarded as a noun in the neuter gender; *e. g.*, *prædicārē* (to boast), in (d), is *nom.* to *est*, and *turpē* (base) agrees with it in the neuter.

(162.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Hī puērī māgistrō pārent.*—*Hæ littēræ valdē mē dēlectant.*—*Cicēronis librī valdē mīhī plācent: eōs libentēr lēgō.*—*Hōc bellūm grāvē est.*—*Hīc puēr bōnus est, illē Ignāvūs.*

(b) *Istā tuā filiā pulchrā est.*—*Istūd tuūm carmēn mīhī* (106, II., c) *grātūm est.*—*Præclārā sunt istā tuā præceptā.*—*Vētūs illūd prōverbiūm mīhī plācēt.*

(c) *Omne animāl seipeūm diligit.*—*Impērātōr ipse mīltībūs* (147) *impērāt.*—*Ēgō mē ipse nōn laudābām.*—*Tū teipeūm laudābis.*—*Sāpiens sibi ipse impērāt.*

(d) *Jūcundūm est amārē.*

(163.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) That illustrious precept was-pleasing-to (placēbāt) Cato.—That brave general will command the soldiers.—The soldiers willingly obey this brave general.—This precept pleases me, that displeases (me).—The works of Cæsar please me very much; I read them gladly (libentēr).

(b) That horse of yours is a beautiful animal.—I keep in memory (mēmōriā teneō) that excellent precept of yours.—Those songs of yours are pleasing (grātā) to me.—That letter of yours was delighting me very much.

(c) The soul rules itself (161, c) by reason (ratiōnē, 55, a).—The poet himself praises himself (159).—Cæsar himself will command the legions (161, c).—The soldiers willingly (libentēr)

obey Cæsar himself.—Do *you* (135, II.; 1) praise yourself?—Wise men themselves always rule themselves (147).

(d) It is pleasant to love (one's) friends.—It is base to boast of (one's) friends.—It is agreeable to please (one's) father.

LESSON XXVIII.

(164.) THE *Relative Pronoun* (*who, which*), *quī, quæ, quōd*, is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quī, quæ, quōd.	cūjūs.	cūī.	quēm, quām, quōd.	quō, quā, quōd.
Plur.	quī, quæ, quæ.	quōrūm, quārūm, quōrum.	quībūs.	quōs, quās, quæ.	quībūs.

Rem. Quīcunquē, quæcunquē, quodcunquē (*whosoever, whichever, whatsoever*) is declined like quī, quæ, quōd: cunquē being simply annexed to the different cases.

(165.) The *Relative* commonly refers to some preceding word, which is therefore called the *antecedent*; *e. g.*, The *man, who* lives well, is happy. Here *man* is the antecedent; *who*, the relative. The sentence in which the *relative* occurs is called the *relative sentence*; the other the *principal or antecedent sentence*; *e. g.* (above), *the man is happy*, is the principal sentence: *who lives well*, the relative sentence.

EXERCISE.

(166.) *Vocabulary.*

Poor, ægens, (ægent) is (108).
Enough, sātīs (adv.).
Nearest to, neighbours to, proximūs, ā, ūm.
To dwell, incōlērē (*intrans.*).
To inhabit, incōlērē (*trans.*).
Blood, sanguis, (sanguīn) is (m.).
Also, etiām (conj.).
Heart, cōr, (cord) is (n.).
To despise, contemnērē.
Magnanimous, magnānīmūs, ā, ūm.
Honest, honourable, hōnestūs, ā, ūm.

Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Water, aquā, æ.
Winter-quarters, hibernā, ōrūm (pl.).
To winter, hiēmārē.
Arcthusa, Arēthūsā, æ.
To return, restore, reddēre.
Virtue, virtūs, (virtūt) is (f.).
To repel, prōpulsārē.
To vaunt, ostentārē.
Fame, fāmā, æ.
To do, to make, faciērē.
One, unūs, ā, ūm.

(167.) *Examples.*

(a) The boy, who reads, learns. | Puēr, quī lēgit, discit.

<i>The girl, who reads, learns.</i>	<i>Puellā, quæ lægit, discit.</i>
<i>(b) The boy, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	<i>Puer, quē vidēmus, est pulchēr.</i>
<i>The girl, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	<i>Puellā, quā vidēmus, est pulchrā.</i>

Rule of Syntax.—The Relative Pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number* (as in (a)), but its *case* is fixed by the construction of the relative sentence (e. g., in (a) *quī* is *nomin.* to *legit*: in (b) *quē* is *acc.*, governed by *vidēmus*).

<i>(c) I who write.</i>	<i>Egō, quī scribō.</i>
<i>We who write.</i>	<i>Nōs, quī scribimus.</i>

Rule of Syntax.—The *verb* in the relative sentence agrees with the relative in *number*, but takes the *person* of the antecedent.

<i>(d) He is poor who has not enough.</i>	(1) <i>Ægens est is, quī nōn sātis hābēt.</i>
	(2) <i>Is ægens est, quī nōn sātis hābēt.</i>
	(3) <i>Quī nōn sātis hābēt, is ægens est.</i>
	(4) <i>Quī nōn sātis hābēt, ægens est.</i>

Rule of Position.—The relative generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, and (1) as near to its antecedent as possible. (2) *Is* and *quī* are made emphatic when *is* begins the principal sentence and *quī* the relative sentence; (3) and still more emphatic when the relative sentence stands first. (4) The antecedent is often omitted entirely.

(168.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trans Rhēnūm incolunt.*—*Omnē ānimāl, quōd sanguinēm hābēt, hābēt etiām cōr.*—*Cæsār, trēs lēgiōnēs, quæ in prōvinciā hīēmābant, ex hibernīs edūcīt.*—*Omniā (82, I., R.) quæ pulchrā sunt, honestā sunt.*

(b) *Fēlix est rex, quē omnēs cīvēs āmant.*—*In hāc insulā est fons aquæ dulcis, cui nōmēn est Arēthūsā (125, II., a).*

—Ariōvistūs obsidēs reddīt, quōs hābēt āb Ædūiā.—Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quārum ūnām Belgæ incolunt.

(d) (1) Beātī sunt iī, quōrum vitā virtutē (abl., 55, a) rēgītūr.—(2) Is fortis est, quī injuriām propulsāt.—(3) Quī se ostentāt, is stultus dicitūr (*is called a fool*).—(4) Quī famām bonā contemnit, virtutē contemnit.—Fortis et magnānimus est, nōn quī facit, sēd quī propulsāt injuriām.

(169.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) The songs which we hear are pleasant (*grata*) to us (106, II., c).—The king who rules wisely is happy.—All animals which have blood have also hearts.—Cæsar leads across the Rhine the five legions which were wintering in the province.

(b) Happy is the teacher whom all (*his*) scholars love.—In that (*eā*) island (*there*) is a city whose name is (*to which the name is**, 125, II., a) Syracuse (*Syrācūsæ*).—In this (*hāc*) city there is a fountain whose name is Arethusa.—Of Britain (*there*) are three parts, of which (*gen.*) the English inhabit one.

(d) (1) Happy is he whose life is ruled by the precepts of virtue.—He is wise who diligently serves (*cōllit*) the gods.—(2) They are brave who repel an injury.—(3) They who vaunt themselves are called fools.—(4) Who repels an injury, is brave and magnanimous.

LESSON XXIX.

Interrogative Pronoun.

(170.) THE *Interrogative Pronoun* is precisely like the *Relative* in form, excepting that for the nom., sing., and *masc.*, it has *quīs*, and for the nom. and acc., *neut.*, *quīd*; thus, *quīs*, *quæ*, *quīd*.

(171.) *Quis nām*, *quæ nām*, *quid nām*, express a more emphatic interrogation than the simple *quīs*, *quæ*, *quid*, the syllable *nām* answering to our English "pray;" *c. g.*,

Pray, what are you doing? | *Quid nām agis?*

* *Sunt*, plural, because *Syracūsæ* is plural.

(172.) In asking questions, the different cases of *quis* can be used as substantives or as adjectives, excepting that

(1) In the nom. sing. masc., *quis* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. sing. masc., *qui* is used as an adjective.

(2) In the nom. and accus., neut., *quid* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. and accus., neut., *quod* is used as an adjective.

(1) *Who comes?*

What man comes?

Who is the man?

(2) *What do you fear?*

What danger do you fear?

Quis vēnit?

Qui hōmō vēnit?

Quis homo est?

Quid tīmes?

Quōd pēriculūm tīmes?

(173.) The answer *yes* is given by repeating the verb which asks the question; *no*, by repeating the verb with *nōn*. *Vērō* (*certainly*), added to the verb in an affirmative answer, gives it more emphasis; *e. g.*,

Are you writing?

I am writing.

Are you reading?

I am not reading.

Will you do what I ask?

I will certainly do (it).

Scribīs-nē?

Scribō.

Lēgis-nē?

Nōn lēgō.

Fāciēs-nē quæ rōgō?*

Fāciām vērō.

EXERCISE.

(174.) Vocabulary.

New, *nōvūs*, *ū*, *ūm*.

News, *nōvī* (neut. gen. of *nōvūs*, used with a neut. adj. or pronoun).

Nūm, *interrogative particle*, used when *no* is expected as the answer.

To do, *āgērē*.

To be among, *intēressē* (*inter + esse*); but *quid interest?* = *what is the difference?*

Between, among, *intēr* (prep., acc.).

Beast, brute, *bestiā*, *z*.

An evil, *mālūm*, *ī*.

Without, *sīnē* (prep., abl.).

Figure, *figūrā*, *z*.

Mortal, *mortalis*, *z*.

Certainly, *vērō* (*affirmative particle*).

To carry, *vēhērē*.

Immortal, *immortalis*, *† z*.

* *Hæc, quæ*, plural, should be translated *this, what*, singular.

† Observe the force of *in* prefixed to adjectives. *Mortalis* = *mortal*; *in + mortalis* = *immortalis*, *immortal*.

(175.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>What is the news?</i> | Quid est novī? (=What is there of new?) |
| (b) <i>Is there anything new?</i>
(There is not, is there?) | Nūm est quidnām novī?
(Num expects the answer no.) |
| (c) <i>Why do you laugh?</i> | Quid ridēs? |

(176.) *Translate into English.*

Quis nōs vocāt?—Cujus hic liber est?—Quem vidēs?—Quid agis.—Quid interest inter hominēm et bestiām?—Quām domū invenies sinē malis?—Quid legis?—Epistolām.—Quae amicitia est inter imprōbos?—Nūm Cēsārēm timēs?—Nōn timēd.—Quā in urbē (125, IV., N., †) sumus?—Quis homō est?—Ego sum Cēsār.—Nūm animus figurām habēt?—Sunt nē hominēs mortālēs?—Sunt verō.—Quid timēs? Cēsārēm vchis.

(177.) *Translate into Latin.*

Who calls me?—Whose are those books?—What men do you see?—What are you writing?—A letter.—What book are you reading?—What is the difference between the good and the wicked?—Who is the soldier?—What is the difference between wolves and dogs?—Do you not fear the enemy?—I do not fear (them.)—What man will you find without a fault (culpā)?—In what town are we?—Whose house is this?—What city will you find without evils?—What is the difference between men and beasts?—What do you fear? You are carrying the king.—Are men immortal (nūm)?—They are not.

LESSON XXX.

Indefinite Pronouns.

- (178.) THE *Indefinite Pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual; e. g., *any one, some one, &c.* They are,

1. Quidām, a certain one, &c., plural, some.

2. Quivis, } any you please.
Quilibet, }

3. *Quisquā*m, *any, any one* (e. g., when it is denied that there are any).
[Neut. *quicquā*m (*subst.*); *quodquā*m (*adj.*). This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]
4. *Quispiā*m, *somebody, some* (neut.).
5. *Āliquis*, *some one, something* (neut.); *any* (adj.).
6. *Quisquē*, *each, unusquisquē*, *each one* (stronger than *quisquē*).
7. *Ecquis?* used interrogatively, (does) *any one? anything?*

☞ Observe carefully that each of the above takes *quid* in neuter nom., and acc., when used *substantively*; and *quod* when used *adjectively*.

EXERCISE.

(179.) *Vocabulary.*

The tenth, dēcīmūs, ā, ūm.
A javelin, trāgūlā, æ.
To see, to notice, conspīcērē.
Judgment, discretion, consiliūm, i.
Eternity, æternitās, (æternitāt) is (f.).
Maker, artificer, fābēr, fābrī (m.).
Fifth, quintūs, ā, ūm.
Youth, jūventūs, (jūventūt) is (f.).
Fortune, fortunā, æ.
Forever, in æternūm.
Belong, pertinērē.

Art, ars, (art) is (f).
Form, formā, æ.
To discover, invēnīrē.
For, etēnīm, conj. (always stands first in its clause).
Cultivation, humanity, hūmānitās, ātis (f).
Common, commūnis, is, ē.
Bond, vinētilūm, i.
Dignity, dignitās, (dignitāt) is (f).
Body, corpūs, (corpōr) is (n.).

(180.) *Examples.*

- (a) *Something new.*
Each one of us.
A certain thing new.
Some dignity.

Āliquīd nōvī.
 Unusquisquē nostrūm.
 Quidā nōvī.
 Āliquīd dignitātis.

Rule of Syntax.—The indefinite pronouns may be used *partitively*, and then govern the genitive.

- (b) *A certain one of the soldiers.*
Some of the soldiers.

Quidā (sing.) ex militibūs.
 Quidā (plur.) ex militibūs.

Rem. The ablat. with *ex* is used instead of the genitive, especially with *quidā*.

(181.) *Translate into English.*

Quidā ex militibūs dēcimæ lēgiōnis veniebāt.—Quintō diē (118, II., c) trāgūlā ā quōdā militē conspīcitur.—Virī, in quibūs āliquīd consiliū (180, a) est, magnānīmī sunt.—Tempūs

est pars quædã æternitãtis.—Cuius (125, II., a) animã corpũ est.—Quilibet est faber fortunæ suæ.—Unicuique* (125, II., a) nostrũ (180, 120) est animũ immortalis.—Quisque nostrũ (180) in æternũ vivet.—Animũ non habet formã aliquã, nec figurã.—Aliquid novi inveniẽs.—Etẽnim omnes artẽs, quæ ad humanitãtẽ pertinent, habent quoddã communẽ vincũlum.

(182.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The pronouns of the lesson are italicized in the exercise.]

Some of the soldiers of the fifth legion are wounded (pres.).—On the fifth day (118, II., c) the enemy is noticed by a *certain* soldier of the tenth legion.—Men, in whom there is *some* dignity (180), are magnanimous.—To *each* man (= of men) there is a soul and a body.—I will give the book to *any-one-you-please* of the scholars. *Each one* of us shall live forever.—You will discover a *certain thing new*.—Some of the soldiers are in the city.—For all the arts which belong to cultivation have a *certain* common bond.—Youth is a *certain* part of life.—Is not (estne) *any man-you-please* the maker of his own fortune?—Has the soul (*use num*) *any* form or figure?

LESSON XXXI.

Correlative Pronouns.

(183.) CORRELATIVE Pronouns are such as *answer* to each other; e. g., *how great? so great. How many? so many, &c.*

[This correlation is often expressed in English by adverbs or conjunctions: *such a man as: as is the general, so are the troops, &c.*]

(184.) The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.
talis, <i>such.</i>	qualis; <i>as, of what kind.</i>	qualiscunque, <i>of whatever kind.</i>
tantũs, <i>so great, so much.</i>	quantũs, <i>as great.</i>	quantuscunque, <i>however great.</i>
*tũt, <i>so many.</i>	*quũt, <i>as many.</i>	aliquantũs, <i>somewhat great.</i>
*tũtidẽm, <i>just so many.</i>		*aliquũt, <i>some.</i>
		*quotquũt, <i>however many.</i>

* Ūnus and quisquẽ are both declined in ūnusquisquẽ. Ūnũs has gen. ūnũs, dat. ūnũ.

Rem. 1. Quālis? of what kind? quantū? how great? quōt? how many? are also used interrogatively.

2. Those marked thus () are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.*

EXERCISE.

(185.) Vocabulary.

Where, ubi (adv.).

Toil, ōpērā, æ.

Pleasure, vōluptās, (vōluptāt) is (f.).

Reward, præmiū, I.

Gold, aurū, I.

Money, pecūniā, æ.

Fear, timōr, (timōr) is (m.).

Or, vël (conj.).

Advantages, bonā (neut. adj.).

To afford, præbērē.

To covet, expētērē. [is (f.).

Liberality, libērālītās, (libērālītāt)

(186.) Examples.

(a) *So much toil (= of toil).*

How much pleasure? (= of pleasure?)

No reward (= nothing of reward).

Much gold (= of gold).

A pretty large piece of ground.

Tantū ōpērā.

Quantū vōluptātīs?

Nihil præmiī.

Multū aurī. (But, much money = magnā pecūniā, not multū pecūniæ.)

Aliquantū āgrī.

Rule of Syntax.—The neuters, tantū, quantū, āliquantū; also, multū, nihil, quā, āliquid, and others, are used as *neuter nouns*, and followed by the genitive (Synt., 695, b., R.).

Obs. Tantū, quantū in neut., with genitive = *so much, so many, how much, how many*; but in masc. and fem., agreeing with the noun, *so great, how great*; e. g., *how many books?* quantū librōrū; *so great fear*, tantū timōr.

(b) *As is the master, so are the scholars.*

Quālis est māgistr, tālēs sunt discipulī; or (with est and sunt omitted), quālis māgistr, tālēs discipulī.

(187.) Translate into English.

Qualēs sunt dūcēs, tālēs sunt milītēs.—*Fortūnā bonā* (82, II.), *quantūcūquē sunt, incertā sunt.*—*Tantū timōr omnēm exercitū occupābāt.*—*Ubi tantām virtutēm invēniēs?*—*Quantū vōluptātīs virtūs præbēt!*—*Fratrī est* (125, II., a) *āliquan-*

tūm pecūniæ.—Virtūs nihīl prēmii vėl pecūniæ expēdit.—Pātēr mīhī magnām pecūniām dābit.—Quantūm (186, *Obs.*) lībrōrūm hābēs ?—Quōt hominēs, tōt sententiæ.

(188.) *Translate into Latin.*

As are the generals, so are the soldiers.—As is the king, so are the leaders.—As are the masters (herī), so are the slaves.—As are the fathers, so are the children.—So great an army is coming.—The advantages of the body, however great they may be (sunt), are uncertain.—Where will you find so great liberality ?—How many (186, *Obs.*) rewards does virtue afford ?—Good (men) covet no (186, *a*) reward.—Will your father give (135, II.) you much money ?—Has your brother much gold ?—As are the chiefs, so are the citizens.—My father has (125, II., *a*) a pretty large piece of ground.

§ 16.

NUMERALS. (XXXII.—XXXIII.)

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.—Partial Table.

(189.) NUMERALS are divided into the four classes following, of which the first three are *adjectives*, the fourth, *adverbs*.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
	One, two, &c.	First, second, &c.	One a piece, one by one, one at a time, &c.	Once, twice, &c.
I.	ūnūs, ā, ūm.	primūs, ā, ūm.	singūli, ae, ā.	sēmēl.
II.	duō, ae, ō.	sēcundūs, ā, ūm.	binī, ae, ā.	bis.
III.	trēs, ēs, triā.	tertiūs, ā, ūm.	ternī, ae, ā.	tēr.
IV.	quattuōr.	quartūs, ā, ūm.	quāternī, ae, ā.	quatēr.
V.	quinque.	quintūs, ā, ūm.	quinī, ae, ā.	quinguiēs.
VI.	sēx.	sextūs, ā, ūm.	sēni, ae, ā.	sexies.
VII.	sēptēm.	septimūs, ā, ūm.	septēni, ae, ā.	septies.
VIII.	ōctō.	octāvūs, ā, ūm.	octōni, ae, ā.	octies.
IX.	nōvēm.	nōnūs, ā, ūm.	nōvēni, ae, ā.	nōvies.
X.	dēcēm.	dēcimūs, ā, ūm.	dēni, ae, ā.	dēcies.
XI.	undēcīm.	undēcimūs, ā, ūm.	undēni, ae, ā.	undēcies.
XII.	duōdēcīm.	duōdēcimūs, ā, ūm.	duōdēni, ae, ā.	duōdecies.

Rem. For the declension of *ūnūs* and *duō*, see 194. *Trēs* is declined like a plural adjective of *second* class, 194. The remaining cardinals are undeclined. The ordinals and distributives are declined like adjectives of the first class.

EXERCISE.

(190.) *Vocabulary.*

In all, altogether, omninō.

Multitude, multītūdō, (multītūdīn)

is (f.).

Hour, hōrā, ae.

To be distant, distārē.

Millē, millia,* (mill) iūm (pl. n.).

Year, annūs, i.

Month, mensīs, (mens) is (m.).

Another, altēr, ā, ūm (194, R. 1.).

Thirty-six, sex et trigintā.

To levy, conscribērē.

Night-watch, vigīlīa, ae.

From, after, dē (with abl.).

To strive, to hasten, contendērē.

Italy, Itālīa, ae.

* Millē, plur. millia = 1000. Millia (passuūm, of paces understood) = a mile.

(191.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (a) <i>They fight four hours.</i> | Hōrās quattuōr pignant. |
| (b) <i>The city is distant five miles.</i> | Urbs distāt quinquē milliā. |
| (c) <i>A ditch eleven feet wide.</i> | Fossā undēcīm pēdēs lātā. |

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative answers to the questions *how long?* (whether of *time* or *space*), *how broad?* *how high?* &c.; *e. g.*, in (a) hōrās; in (b) milliā; in (c) pēdēs.

- (d) *How long?* may also be expressed by a noun in the genitive, depending on another noun; *e. g.*, *a ditch of ten feet*, fossā dēcēm pēdūm.

(192.) *Translate into English.*

Ērant omnīnō ītīnērā duō.—Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quarum unām incolunt Belgæ, altērām Āquitānī.—Ūnūs ē multitudīnē vulnerātūr.—Hōrās sēx pugnābant.—Urbs distāt dēcēm milliā.—Īn annō duōdēcīm mensēs sunt.—Cæsār duās lēgiōnēs conscribīt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs quæ īn Galliā hiēmābant ēdūcīt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs ēx hiberniis ēdūcīt.—Sunt omnīnō ītīnērā quattuōr.—Cæsār dē quārtā vigiliā lēgiōnēs ēdūcīt.—Consul lēgiōnēm dēcīmām īn castrā rēdūcīt.—Cæsār cūm quinquē lēgiōnībūs īn Ītālīām contendīt.—Ērāt omnīnō īn Galliā lēgiō ūnā.

(193.) *Translate into Latin.*

There are in all three ways.—There are of Gaul three parts, of which the Sequanians inhabit one.—There are of the city five parts.—Four of (= out of) the multitude are wounded.—The soldiers fight seven hours.—In three years are thirty-six months.—The villages are distant nine miles.—The wood is distant four miles.—The consuls will levy six legions.—Cæsar will lead out five legions from Italy.—The general was levying two legions in Gaul.—Cæsar will lead out the soldiers in the second watch.—The consul, in the third watch leads back the soldiers into the camp.—The tenth legion fights (pugnat).—There are altogether in Gaul two legions.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion after the second watch.

LESSON XXXIII.

Numerals, continued.

(194.) DECLENSION of ūnūs, duō, and trēs.

One, Sing.		Two, Plur.		Three, Plur.
N.	ūnūs, ā, ūm.	N. V.	duō, duae, duō.	trēs, trēs, triā.
G.	ūniūs, iūs, iūs.	Gen.	duōrūm, duārum, duōrūm.	triūm, triūm, triūm.
D.	ūnī, ī, ī.	D. Ab.	duōbus, duābus, duōbus.	tribūs, tribūs, tribūs.
the rest regular.		Acc.	duōs and duō, duās, duō.	trēs, trēs, triā.

Rem. (1.) Like ūnūs are declined

Āliūs, ā, ūd, *another.**

Altēr, ā, ūm, *the one, the other (of two).*

Neutēr, trā, trām, *neither of the two.*

Nullūs, ā, ūm, *no one.*

Sōlus, ā, ūm, *alone.*

Tōtūs, ā, ūm, *the whole.*

Ullūs, ā, ūm, *any one.*

Ūtēr, trā, trām, *which of the two.*

Ūterquē, traquē, trumque, *each of the two, both; and other compounds of ūtēr.*

(2.) Like duō is declined ambō, ē, ō, *both.*

EXERCISE.

(195.) Vocabulary.

What one, quōtūs, ā, ūm.

Most, plērusquē, āquē, dūmquē; e. g.,
most men, hōmīnēs plērīquē, most
insects, insectā plērāquē.

Virgil, Virgiliūs, ī.

More, māgis (adv.):

A beam, trabs, (trāb) īs (f.).

Insect, insectūm, ī.

Horace, Hōrātiūs, ī.

To migrate, migrārē.

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) īs (m.).

Mother, mātēr, (matr) īs (f.).

[Refer to the column of distributives (189).]

(196.) Examples.

(a) My father will give us
two books apiece.

(b) What hour is it? The
third.

(c) He will come for my sake
alone.

(d) Which pleases you?
Neither.

(e) The beams are three
feet distant (apart) from
each other.

Pātēr nobīs binōs librōs dā-
bit.

Quōtā hōrā est? Tertiā.

Meā uniūs causā (abl.) vē-
niēt.

Ūtēr tibi plācēt? Neutēr.

Trabēs intēr sē distant ternōs
pēdēs (191, c).

* When āliūs is repeated, it means *some, others.*

(197.) *Translate into English.*

Mātēr nōbīs quāternōs librōs dābīt.—Nōbīs sunt (125, II., a) ternī ēquī.—Binæ omnībūs āvībūs ālæ sunt.—Insectā plērāquē sēnōs, āliā octōnōs, pēdēs hābent.—Quōtā hōrā est? Nōnā.—Militēs utriusquē exercītūs sunt fortēs.—Tuā ūniūs causā vēnient.—Virgiliūs atquē Horātiūs poētæ sunt prælārī; ūtēr tibi māgis plācēt? (161, a.) Virgiliūs.—Bis in annō militēs vēniunt.—Septembēr est nōnūs annī mensīs.—Trābēs intēr sē distant binōs pēdēs (191, c).

(198.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Some of the words will be found in 194, R. 1.]

We have (125, II., a) four dogs apiece (196, a).—The master gives us five books at a time.—All men have (125, II., a) two eyes apiece.—Most insects have six (senos) feet; some (194*) nine, others (194*) ten, others (194*) twelve.—What o'clock (hour) is it?—The fifth.—The eighth.—The eleventh.—The twelfth.—The generals of each army are brave.—Why do you come? For your sake alone (196, c).—Cicero and Cæsar are excellent writers; which pleases you? Neither.—Which pleases you more? Cæsar.—The birds migrate twice in the year.—The soldiers will come eight times a year.—October is the tenth month of the year; November the eleventh; December the twelfth.—The beams are four feet distant from each other.—The beams are seven feet apart from each other.

§ 17.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iă*.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation in iă.

(199.) SOME verbs of the third conjugation, instead of taking the simple verb-stem for the tense-stem in the tenses for incomplete action, add *i* to the verb-stem in these tenses. They form the infinitive, however, in *ěre*, like other verbs of the third.

(200.) **INFIN. ACTIVE, *căp-ěřě*, to take.**

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-ă.</i>	<i>căp-ěs.</i>	<i>căp-ět.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ěbăm.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbăs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbăt.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ăm.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēt.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-mūs.</i>	<i>căp-i-tīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-unt.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ěbămūs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbatīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbant.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ēmūs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ētīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēnt.</i>

INFIN. PASSIVE, *căp-i*, to be taken.

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-ăr.</i>	<i>căp-ě-rīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-tăr.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ěbăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbarīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbatăr.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěrīs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ětăr.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-măr.</i>	<i>căp-i-mīnī.</i>	<i>căp-i-untăr.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ěbămăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbamīnī.</i>	<i>căp-i-ěbantăr.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ēmăr.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēmīnī.</i>	<i>căp-i-ēntăr.</i>

E X E R C I S E.

(201.) *Vocabulary.*

[In all cases, verbs of the class described above will be indicated in the vocabularies by the ending *iă*, after the infinitive form; e. g., *to make, făcěre (iă)*.]

Pardon, favour, vĕniā, æ.

Excuse, excūsātiō, (excūsātiō) is
(f.).

To receive, accept, accĭpĕrĕ (ið).

Way, road, itĕr, (itĭnĕr) is (neut.).

To undertake, suscĭpĕrĕ (ið).

To make, faciĕrĕ (ið).

*And, quĕ.**

Ship, nāvĭs, (nāv) is (f.).

To repair, to renew, to rebuild, rĕfĭ-
cĕrĕ (ið).

Long, longūs, ā, ūm.

Wall, mūrūs, ī.

Harbour, portūs, ūs (m.).

(202.) Example.

Willingly Cæsar gives par-
don and receives the excuse.

Lĭbentĕr Cæsār dāt vĕniām,
excūsātiōnemquĕ accĭpĭt.*

(203.) Translate into English.

Labiĕnūs multā Germānōrūm (78, II., b) oppida cāpiēbāt.—
Helvĕtĭi pĕr prōvinciām nostrām itĕr faciunt.—Vulnĕrā grāviā
ā milĭtibūs accĭpiuntūr.—Æduī bellūm magnūm suscĭpiēbant.
—Lĭbentĕr Cæsār nuntĭōs accĭpĭt, ĭisque (201, N.) vĕniām dāt.
—Impĕrātōr obsidēs civitatĭs lĭbentĕr accĭpiēt.—Nuntĭūm ā
patrĕ crās accĭpiēs.—Crassūs nāvēs longās, quæ in portū sunt,
rĕfĭcīt.—Consul mūrōs urbĭs rĕfĭcīt.

(204.) Translate into Latin.


The enemy were making (their) way through our province.—
The Romans were rapidly (cĕlĕritĕr) making their way through
Gaul.—We shall receive a messenger from the city to-day.—
The Helvetians were undertaking a severe and great war.—
The soldiers receive many and severe wounds.—We shall make
(our) way through Britain.—Cæsar will willingly receive the
excuse of the Æduans, and grant them (ĭisque) favour.—The
gifts of a father are gladly (lĭbentĕr) received.—The long ships
are repaired by Cæsar.—The general was rebuilding the old
(vĕtĕrēs) ships which were in the harbour.—We shall re-
build the old walls.

(205.) Observe the formation of the following words:

Accĭpĕrĕ (to receive), = ād (to)+cāpĕrĕ (to take).

Suscĭpĕrĕ (to undertake), = sub (under)+cāpĕrĕ.

Rĕfĭcĕrĕ (to rebuild), = rĕ+facĕrĕ (to make again).

 In the composition of verbs with prepositions, ā frequently passes into ĭ, as in these examples.

* Ėt joins words or sentences which are considered *independent* and of equal importance with each other; quĕ joins a word or sentence *closely* to another, as an *appendage* to it.

DEPONENT VERBS.

LESSON XXXV.

Deponent Verbs.

(206.) DEPONENT verbs are such as have the *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; e. g., hortör, *I exhort* (not *I am exhorted*).

(207.) The forms of deponents in the tenses for incomplete action of the indicative mood are precisely the same as those of passive verbs (Lessons XII., XIII.); we therefore need only give the *first* persons.

(208.) DEPONENT FORMS.

INDICATIVE.			
1st conj.	hortör, <i>I exhort.</i>	hortäbär, <i>I was exhorting.</i>	hortäbör, <i>I will exhort.</i>
2d conj.	fäteör, <i>I confess.</i>	fätëbär, <i>I was confessing.</i>	fätëbör, <i>I will confess.</i>
3d conj.	sëquör, <i>I follow.</i>	sëquëbär, <i>I was following.</i>	sëquär, <i>I will follow.</i>
4th conj.	mëtiör, <i>I measure.</i>	mëtiëbär, <i>I was measuring.</i>	mëtiär, <i>I will measure.</i>
INFINITIVE.			
	1. hort-äri, <i>to exhort.</i>	2. fät-ëri, <i>to confess.</i>	3. sëqu-i, <i>to follow.</i>
			4. mëti-iri, <i>to measure.</i>

[In the vocabularies deponent verbs are always given by the *infinitive* forms. Observe that the ending -äri shows that the verb is of the 1st conj.; -ëri, the 2d; -i, the 3d; -iri, the 4th.]

EXERCISE.

(209.) Vocabulary.

[Transitive deponents govern the accusative, unless it is otherwise mentioned in the vocabularies.]

To embrace, amplect-i.

To gain, to possess one's self of, pöt-iri (with gen. or abl.; generally gen. in Cæs.).

To endeavour, cön-äri.

To follow, sëqu-i.

As; as if, tanquam (adv.).

To strive after, pursue, persëqu-i (për + sëqui, *to follow through*).

Glory, glöriä, æ.

All, töttüs, ä, üm (194, R., 1).

Bravery, virtue, virtüs, (virtüt) is (f.).

Long, diu (adv.).

Sin, fault, peccatum, i.

(210.) *Example.*

<i>The Helvetians endeavour to pass (= to make way) through our province.</i>	<i>Helvëtiī pār prōvinciām nos-trām itēr fācērē cōnantūr.</i>
---	---

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used in Latin (as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain verbs; *e. g., I wish, I can, I hasten, I endeavour, &c., as fācērē in the above example.**

(211.) *Translate into English.*

Pāter filiū et filiā amplectūtūr.—*Impērātōr milītes diū hortābātūr.*—*Dumnōrix tōtiūs (194, R. 1) Galliæ pōtītūr.*—*Peccatā meā fātēbōr.*—*Princīpēs totiūs Galliæ pōtīri cōnābantūr.*—*Rōmānī per Brītanniā itēr fācērē cōnantūr.*—*Glōriā virtūtēm tanquām umbrā sēquitūr.*—*Magnōs hōmīnēs virtūtē (55) mētīmūr, nōn fortunā.*—*Milītes sempēr glōriām persēquantūr.*—*Milītes dūcēm libentēr sēquēbantūr.*

(212.) *Translate into Latin.*

The father will embrace (his) sons and daughters.—The chiefs possess themselves of all the province.—Do you *confess* (135, II.) your fault?—The Helvetians were endeavouring to pass through Gaul.—Glory will follow bravery as a shadow.—We were exhorting the soldiers yesterday.—We shall gladly follow Cæsar.—They are rapidly making their way through our province.—You measure men by (their) fortune, not by (their) bravery.—The chiefs will endeavour to lead the army across the Rhine (113, II., a).—Generals always strive after glory.—Are you *exhorting* (135, II.) your son?—The Romans always followed glory.

* Observe carefully that a *purpose* is *never* expressed by the simple infinitive in Latin. It would not be Latin to say *discērē vënīt, he comes to learn.*

§ 19.

ADVERBS.

LESSON XXXVI.

Adverbs.

[THIS section need not be learned by heart in the first course, but the distinction of *primitive* and *derivative* should be acquired; and the section should be afterward referred to whenever examples occur.]

(213.) *Adverbs* (17) are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

[We give but a few here; a fuller list will be given hereafter.—See *Summary of Etymology*, 678.] §. 7.

(214.) *Primitive Adverbs*:

1. *Negative*.—Nōn, *not*; haud, *not*; ne (interrog. or imper.), *not*; nē-quidēm (always separated by some word), *not even*.
2. *Of Place*.—Ūbī, *where*; ībī, *there*; quō? *whither?* hūc, *hither*, illūc, *thither*; undē, *whence*; indē, *thence*, &c.
3. *Of Time*.—Nunc, *now*; tum or tunc, *then*; nūp̄r, *lately*; crās, *to-morrow*; hōdiē, *to-day*; hērī, *yesterday*, &c.
4. *Of Quality*, &c.—Admōdūm, *very*; ān, *whether*; cār, *why* (interrog.); ētiām, *also*; fērē, *almost*, &c.

(215.) *Derivative Adverbs* are nearly all formed from adjectives or participles by adding ē or ĭtēr to their stems.

1. Add ē to the stem of adjectives of the *first class*; e. g.,

Adjectives.		Adverbs.
Alt-ūs, <i>high</i> .		Alt-ē, <i>high</i> .
Lībēr, <i>free</i> .		Lībēr-ē, <i>freely</i> .
Clār-ūs <i>illustrious</i> .		Clār-ē, <i>illustriously</i> .
&c.		&c.

Rem. Bōnūs makes bēnē, *well*, and mālūs (*bad*), mālē, *badly*. All others end in ē (*long*).

2. (a) Add ĭtēr to the stem of adjectives of the *second* and *third classes*; e. g.,

Adjectives.		Adverbs.
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i> .		Celer-ĭtēr, <i>swiftly</i> .
Brēv-īs, <i>brief</i> .		Brev-ĭtēr, <i>briefly</i> .

- (b) But those which end in ns do not take the connecting vowel ĭ;
e. g.,

H

Prūdēns, *prudent*.
Sāpiēns, *wise*.

Prūden-tēr, *prudently*.
Sāpien-tēr, *wisely*.

Rem. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tēr, *boldly*.

3. Some are derived from *nouns* by adding tūs or tīm to the stem by means of a connecting vowel, *e. g.*, cael-itūs, *from heaven*; fund-itūs, *from the ground, totally*; grēg-a-tīm, *by flocks, &c.*

(216.) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter* gender, are often used as adverbs; *e. g.*, dulcē, *sweetly*; primūm, *first*; falsō, *falsely*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(217.) Vocabulary.

Well, bēnē, derived irregularly from bōnūs, *good*.
Bravely, fortītēr, derived regularly (215, 2, a) from fortis, *brave*.
Sharply, spiritedly, acritēr, derived regularly from acēr (acr-is), *sharp*.
Swiftly, cēlērītēr, derived regularly from cēlēr, *swift*.
Happily, beātē, derived regularly (215, 1) from beātūs, *happy*.
Honestly, hōnestē, derived regularly from hōnestūs, *honest*.

Almost, fērē.
Rightly, rectē, derived regularly from rectūs, *right*.
Impiously, impiē, derived regularly from impiūs, *impious*.
In flocks, grēgātīm.
To labour, lābōrārē.
To blame, to accuse, find fault with, incūsārē.
Socrates, Sōcrātēs, (Sōcrāt) is.
Not even, nēquidē (always separated by one or more words).

(218.) Examples.

(a) *To live honestly and rightly is to live well and happily.* | Hōnestē et rectē vivērē est bēnē et beātē vivērē.

Rule of Position.—The adverb is generally placed *before* the word which it qualifies.

(b) *Almost all men love themselves.* | Omnēs fērē hōmīnēs sēsē dīlgunt.

Fērē is generally placed *between* the adjective and noun.

(c) *He does not praise even Socrates.* | Nē Sōcrātēm quīdē laudāt.

(219.) Translate into English.

Hostēs nobiscūm (125, II., b) acritēr pugnābant.—Ēquī in āgrīs cēlērītēr currēbant.—Bēnē vivērē est beātē vivērē.—Cervi grēgātīm sempēr currunt.—Sempēr sāpiens rectē vivit.—Diū

et acriter militēs pugnābant.—Omnēs fēre hōmīnēs impiē vivunt.—Omnēs fēre āvēs bis in annō mīgrant.—Nē Cicērōnēm quidēm laudābit.—Nē hōc quidēm (not even with this) dēlectābitūr.

(220.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans were fighting long and bravely.—Cæsar sharply accuses the Helvetians.—Horses and stags run swiftly.—The farmers were labouring long in the fields.—Almost all men love their (own) children.—Cæsar led almost all the Germans across the Rhine (113, II., a).—I waited for you long.—The bad do not live happily.—To live happily is to live rightly.—You will not be delighted even with this.—Not even this will delight (my) father.—Not even Cæsar will be praised.—Almost all birds fly in flocks.—They do not praise even Virgil.—Almost all wise (men) live happily.—Almost all men strive-after glory.—To live prudently is to live happily.—The commander will blame the lieutenant sharply.

PREPOSITIONS. (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)

LESSON XXXVII.

Prepositions.

[THIS section (221) need not be learned by heart in the first course, but should be constantly referred to whenever examples occur.]

(221.) The following prepositions govern the *accusative* case :

Ad, to.	Juxtā, near to, beside.
Apud, at.	Ob, on account of.
Antē, before (of time and place).	Pōnēs, in the power of.
Adversus, adversum, against.	Pēr, through.
Cis, citra, on this side.	Pōnēs, behind.
Circā and circū, around, about.	Post, after (both of time and space).
Circitēr, about, towards (indefinitely of time or number).	Prætēr, beside.
Contrā, against.	Prōpē, near.
Ergā, towards.	Proptēr, near, on account of.
Extra, beyond, without.	Sēcundū, after, in accordance with.
Infra, beneath, below (the contrary of supra).	Sūpra, above.
Intēr, between, among.	Trans, on the other side.
Intrā, within (the contrary of extrā).	Versūs (is put after its noun), towards a place.
	Ultra, beyond.

(222.) The following govern the *ablative* case :

Ā, ab, from, by.	Præ, before, owing to.
Clām, without the knowledge of.	Prō, before, for.
Cōrām, in the presence of.	Sinē, without.
Cū, with.	Tēnūs (is put after its noun), as far as, up to.
Dē, down from, concerning.	
Ē, ex (ē before consonants only, ex before both consonants and vowels), out of, from.	

The following lines contain the prepositions governing the *ablative*, and can be readily learned by heart :

Absquē, a, ab, abs, and dē,
Cōrām, clām, cū, ex, and ē,
Tēnūs, sinē, prō, and præ.

(223.) The following govern the *accusative* or *ablative* :

1. In, (a) with the *accus.*, (1) into, on, to (to the question *whither*?) (2) against. (b) With the *ablative*, in, on (to the question *where*?)
2. Sūb, (a) with the *accus.*, (1) under (to the question *whither*?) (2) about

or towards (indefinitely of time). (b) *With the ablative*, under (to the question *where?*)

3. *Sūp̄er*, (a) *with the accus.*, above, over. (b) *With the ablative*, upon, concerning.

4. *Subt̄er*, under, beneath (but little used).

EXERCISE.

(224.) *Vocabulary.*

The Garonne (river), *Gárumnā*, æ.

An Aquitanian, *Āquitānūs*, ī.

Aquitania, *Aquitāniā*, æ.

The Leman, or *Geneva* (lake), *Lēmannūs*, ī.

Jura (mountain), *Jūrā*, æ (m. 25, a).

To extend or carry, *perduc̄erē* (p̄er + dūc̄erē).

State, *civitās*, (civitat̄) īs (f).

Royal power (kingdom), *regnūm*, ī.

History, *histōriā*, æ.

Fable, *fabulā*, æ.

To bound (limit), *continēre* (con- + tēnēre).

Part or side, *pars*, (part) īs (f).

On one side, *unā ex partē*.

The Rhone (river), *Rhōdānūs*, ī.

To divide, *dividēre*.

Lake, *lacūs*, ūs (m.), (112, R. 1).

To remain, *manēre*.

(225.) *Examples.*

(a) *The river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.*

Gallōs āb Āquitāniā Gárumnā flūmēn dividit.

Rule of Syntax.—Two nouns expressing the same person or thing take the same case, and are said to be in *apposition* with each other; *e. g.*, in the above example, *Gárumnā flūmēn*.

(b) *Cæsar hastens into Gaul.*

Cæsār īn Galliām contendit.

(c) *There was altogether in Gaul one legion.*

Ērāt omnīnō īn Galliā lēgiō ūnā.

(226.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār ā lacū ād montē, mūrūm perdūcit.—*Āpud* Hērōdōtūm, pātrēm histōriæ, sunt multæ fabulæ.*—*Cæsār ā lacū Lēmannō ād montē Jūrām, mūrūm perdūcit.*—*Mercātōr īn urbē mānēt.*—*Puērī īn dōmō sunt.*—*Princeps regnūm īn civitatē occupāt.*—*Consul exercitūm īn finē Sēquānōrūm dūcit.*—*Helvētīi continētūr ūnā ex partē (125, IV., N.†) flūminē Rhēnō; altērā ex partē montē Jūrā, tertiā ex partē lacū Lēmannō ēt flūminē Rhōdānō.*

* *Apud* is used with the names of authors (instead of *in*, with the name of their works); *e. g.*, *āpud Cicerōnē* *lēgimūs*, we read in *Cicero*.

(227.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar was extending walls and ditches (*fossasque*) from the river to the camp.—The soldiers remain in the camp.—Cæsar will seize the royal power in the state.—The river Rhine separates the Gauls from the Germans.—Cæsar hastens into Italy and levies (*conscribērē*) five legions.—The deserters remain in the town.—The general will lead the soldiers into Italy.—Aquitania is bounded on one side by the river Garumna; on another side by mountains; on the third side by the river Rhone.—You will find (*invenies*) many fine (*præclārā*) precepts in (*apud*) Cicero.—You will find many fables in Herodotus, the father of history.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Prepositions in Composition.

(228.) Most of the prepositions given in Lesson XXXVII. are used *as prefixes* in composition with verbs, and modify their signification; e. g., *pōnērē*, *to place*; *post-pōnērē*, *to place after*.

(229.) The following prepositions are never used alone, but always as *prefixes* in composition:

1. *Amb*, round, about (from *ambo*, both); *ambīrē* (from *amb+īrē*, to go round), to walk round, to canvass for votes.
2. *Con*, together (a variation of *cum*, with); *con-jungērē* (*con+jun-gērē*), to join together, to unite.
3. *Dis* or *dis*, asunder (a variation of *dē*, from); *dis-cēdērē* (*dis+cē-dērē*, to give place asunder), to depart.

In, with adjectives, means *not*; *in-doctūs*, unlearned; with verbs, means *in, into*; e. g., *ir-rumpērē* (*in+rumpērē*), to burst into.

4. *Re*, back, again; *rē-ficērē* (*rē+fācērē*, to make again), to refit
5. *Sē*, aside; *sē-dūcērē* (*sē+dūcērē*, to lead astray), to seduce.

EXERCISE.

(230.) *Vocabulary.**Again* (adv.), rursus.*To join together*, conjungere.*To burst inw*, irrumpere.*To burst into the camp*, in castrā irrumpere.*Mediterranean*, Mediterraneus, ō, ūm.*To separate*, separare (se+parare).*Cohort*, cohors, (cōhort) is (f).*To station*, collocare (con+locare).*To distribute*, distribuere (dis+tribuere).*Africa*, Africa, ō.*Europe*, Europa, ō.*Horseman*, eques, (equit) is (m.).(231.) *Translate into English.*

Consul rursus legiones in hibernā reducit.—Legatus quinque cohortes cum exercitū conjungit.—Milites omnes in oppidum irrumpunt.—Mare Mediterraneum Africam ab Europa separat.—Belgae se cum Germanis conjungebant.—Imperator exercitum in hibernis collocat.—Germani equites in castrā (223, 1, a) irrumpere conantur.—Galba exercitum in hibernis collocat, legionibus in civitates distribuit.

(232.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar will lead the cohorts back again into winter-quarters.—All the Germans were bursting into the camp.—The Belgians will unite themselves with Cæsar.—The brave soldiers were trying to burst into the town.—The illustrious general was stationing the soldiers in winter-quarters.—The legions are distributed among (In, with accus.) the states.—The legions are led back into winter-quarters.—The Mediterranean Sea separates Spain (Hispaniā) from Africa.—Cæsar will join all the horsemen with the army.

§ 21.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATIONS. (XXXIX —XLI.)

LESSON XXXIX.

Active Voice.

(233.) (a) THE student must have observed that in *all* the tenses for incomplete action in the active voice the *person-endings* are as follows :

Sing.	1st person, <i>o</i> or <i>m</i> .	2d person, <i>s</i> .	3d person, <i>t</i> .
Plur.	1st person, <i>mūs</i> .	2d person, <i>tīs</i> .	3d person, <i>nt</i> .

(b) He must have observed, also, that these endings are added to the proper *tense-stem* in each tense. We take up the tenses in order.

(234.) PRESENT TENSE.

(a) *Person-endings*, *o*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *Tense-stem* is the simple verb-stem.

(c) To connect the person-endings with the tense-stems, certain *connecting vowels* are used. In the present tense these are, for

(1.) First conjugation, *a*; e. g., *ām-a-t*.

(2.) Second “ *e*; e. g., *mōn-e-t*.

(3.) Third “ *i*; e. g., *rēg-i-t*.

(4.) Fourth “ *i*; e. g., *aud-i-t*.*

Rem. 1. Observe that in the 1st person of the 1st and 3d conjugations the connecting vowel does not appear; *a m-o*, *reg-o* (not *am-a-o*, *reg-i-o*).

Rem. 2. In the 3d person plural, the third conjugation uses *u* instead of *i*; e. g., *reg-u-nt*; the fourth inserts *u*; e. g., *aud-i-unt*.

* *Ama*, *mone*, *audi*, are the proper *crude forms* of these verbs respectively. They are classed together, in a philosophical treatment of the language, as *one* conjugation of *pure* verbs; while those of the *third* conjugation form the conjugation of *consonant* verbs.

(235.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connect. Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ām-	a.	o.	āmo (ama-o).	mōnē-o.	rēg-o.	audī-o.
2.	mōn-	e.	s.	āmā-s.	monē-s.	rēg-is.	audī-s.
3.	reg-	i.	t.	āmā-t.	monē-t.	rēg-i-t.	audī-t.
			mus.	āmā-mus.	mōnē-mūs.	rēg-i-mūs.	audī-mūs.
4.	aud-	i(u).	tis.	āmā-tis.	mōnē-tis.	rēg-i-tis.	audī-tis.
			nt.	āmā-nt.	mōnē-nt.	rēg-u-nt.	audī-u-nt.

Rem. Observe that the *vowels* are long before the person-endings in 1st, 2d, and 4th conjugations, except where they come before *o* or *t*. In those before *o*, the general rule (24, 1) prevails; and it is also an invariable rule, in Latin, that no vowel in a final syllable can be long before *t*.

(236.)

EXERCISE.

[The pupil should hereafter analyze the tense-forms, as they occur, somewhat as follows:]

Āmās: *verb-stem*, am-; *pres. tense-stem*, ām-; *connecting vowel*, a; *2d pers. ending*, s.

Mōnēmūs: *verb-stem*, mon-; *pres. tense-stem*, mōn-; *connecting vowel*, e; *1st plur. ending*, mūs.

Rēgītīs: *verb-stem*, rēg-; *pres. tense-stem*, rēg-; *connecting vowel*, i; *2d plur. ending*, tīs.

Audīunt: *verb-stem*, aud-; *pres. tense-stem*, aud-; *connecting vowels*, i and u; *3d plur. ending*, nt.

In like manner, analyze

Festīnās,	hābēt,	vidētīs,	convōcō,	festīnātīs,
Vīgīlāmūs,	prōhibēt,	lēgīt,	hābētīs,	pugnāt,
Vōcātīs,	poscīmūs,	dormīmūs,	mūniunt,	laudant,
Rēvōcānt,	vēnīunt,	audītīs,	ambulāmūs,	vulnerāmūs.

LESSON XL.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

Active.

(237.)

IMPERFECT TENSE.

(a) *Person-endings*, m, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.

(b) *The tense-stem*,

- (1.) In 1st conj. adds āb to the verb-stem; e. g., ām-āb.
- (2.) In 2d conj. " ēb " e. g., mōn-ēb.
- (3.) In 3d conj. " ēb " e. g., rēg-ēb.
- (4.) In 4th conj. " iēb " e. g., aud-iēb.

(c) The *connecting vowel* *a* is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; *e. g.*, *āmāb-ā-m*.

	Tense-Stem.	Con. Vow.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
			m.	1. <i>āmāb-m.</i>	2. <i>mōnēb-m.</i>	3. <i>rēgēb-m.</i>	4. <i>audiēb-m.</i>
1.	<i>ām-āb-</i>	<i>a</i>	s.	<i>āmāb-s.</i>	<i>mōnēb-s.</i>	<i>rēgēb-s.</i>	<i>audiēb-s.</i>
2.	<i>mōn-ēb-</i>		t.	<i>āmāb-t.</i>	<i>mōnēb-t.</i>	<i>rēgēb-t.</i>	<i>audiēb-t.</i>
3.	<i>rēg-ēb-</i>		mūs.	<i>āmāb-mūs.</i>	<i>mōnēb-mūs.</i>	<i>rēgēb-mūs.</i>	<i>audiēb-mūs.</i>
4.	<i>aud-iēb-</i>		tīs.	<i>āmāb-tīs.</i>	<i>mōnēb-tīs.</i>	<i>rēgēb-tīs.</i>	<i>audiēb-tīs.</i>
			nt.	<i>āmāb-nt.</i>	<i>mōnēb-nt.</i>	<i>rēgēb-nt.</i>	<i>audiēb-nt.</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

(238.) I. We treat the 1st and 2d conjugations first. In these,

(a) The *person-endings* are, *o, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.*

(b) The *tense-stems*, precisely like the *imperf.* in the same conjugations,

(1.) In 1st conj., add *āb* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, *ām-āb.*

(2.) In 2d conj., “ *ēb* ” *e. g.*, *mōn-ēb.*

(c) The *connecting vowel* *i* is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; *e. g.*, *āmāb-ī-t*; *mōnēb-ī-t*. But in the third person plural, *u* is used instead of *ī*; *e. g.*, *āmāb-u-nt.*

Rem. In the 1st person the connecting vowel is dropped (as in 234, *c. R. 1*); thus, *āmāb-o* (not *āmāb-i-o*).

(239.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connecting Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
			<i>o.</i>	1. <i>āmāb-o.</i>	2. <i>mōnēb-o.</i>
1.	<i>ām-āb-</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>āmābī-s.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-s.</i>
			<i>t.</i>	<i>āmābī-t.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-t.</i>
2.	<i>mōn-ēb-</i>		<i>mūs.</i>	<i>āmābī-mūs.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-mūs.</i>
			<i>tīs.</i>	<i>āmābī-tīs.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-tīs.</i>
		<i>u.</i>	<i>nt.</i>	<i>āmābū-nt.</i>	<i>mōnēbū-nt.</i>

(240.) II. The 3d and 4th conjugations present some irregularity in the future.

(a) The *person-endings* are, *m, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.*

(b) The *tense-stem*,

(1) In the 3d conj., is the simple verb-stem; *e. g.*, *rēg.*

(2) In the 4th conj., it adds *ī* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, *aud-ī.*

(c) The connecting vowel *e* is used to join the tense-stem and person-endings; *rĕg-ĕ-mūs*, *aud-ĭ-ĕ-mūs*. But in the *first* person *a* is substituted for *e* in both conjugations; *e. g.*, *rĕg-ā-m*, *aud-ĭ-ā-m*, not *reg-ĕ-m*, *audĭ-ĕ-m*.

(241.)

TABLE.

Tense-Stem.	Con'g. Vowel.	Per. Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
rĕg-	a.	m.	3. <i>rĕg-ā-m.</i>	4. <i>audĭā-m.</i>
		s.	<i>rĕg-ē-s.</i>	<i>audĭē-s.</i>
audĭ-	e.	t.	<i>rĕg-ē-t.</i>	<i>audĭē-t.</i>
		mūs.	<i>rĕg-ē-mūs.</i>	<i>audĭē-mūs.</i>
		tis.	<i>rĕg-ē-tis.</i>	<i>audĭē-tis.</i>
		nt.	<i>rĕg-ē-nt.</i>	<i>audĭē-nt.</i>

(242.) (a)

EXAMPLES.

Āmābātis: verb-stem, *ām-*; tense-stem, *āmāb-*; imperf. con. vowel, *a*; 2d plur. ending, *-tis*.

Āmābītis: verb-stem, *ām-*; tense-stem, *āmāb-*; fut. con. vowel, *ī*; 2d plur. ending, *-tis*.

Audĭēmūs: verb-stem, *aud-*; fut. tense-stem, *audĭ-*; connecting vowel, *e*; 1st plur. ending, *-mūs*.

[The pupil should keep up the habit of finding any tense-form which he may need to use, by putting together its proper parts; *e. g.* stem, ending, &c., rather than by recurring to the paradigms.]

(b) Analyze the following:

Laudābām,	laudābō,	laudābītis,
Dōcēbāmūs,	munĭēbāmūs,	lōgām,
Occidēbant,	dormiēbātis,	scribēmūs,
Dormiām,	audĭēt,	dōcēbunt,
&c.	&c.	&c.

LESSON XLI.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

PASSIVE VOICE.

(243.) THE passive-endings are,

Sing. 1st person, *r*; 2d person, *rīs* or *rē*; 3d person, *tūr*.Plur. 1st person, *mār*; 2d person, *minī*; 3d person, *ntūr*.

(244.) These endings are affixed to the tense-stems, formed as in the active voice, and with the same con-

necting vowels. Only the following apparent irregularities are to be noticed.

(a) In the 1st pers. pres. indic. the ending *r* is added to the full present active form; *e. g.*, *āmo*, *āmo-r*; *dōceo*, *dōceo-r*, &c.

(b) In the 3d conj., 2d pers. sing., pres., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *rēg-ē-ris*, *rēg-ē-rē*, instead of *rēg-ī-ris*, &c.

(c) In the 1st and 2d conj., future, 2d pers. sing., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *mōneb-ē-ris*, *āmāb-ē-ris*, instead of *āmāb-ī-ris*, *mōneb-ī-ris*.

(245).

EXERCISE.

Examples.—*Dōcentūr*: verb-stem, *dōc-*; pres. tense-stem, *dōc-*; connecting vowel, *e*; 3d plur. pass. ending, *-ntūr*.

Āmābāmūr: verb-stem, *am-*; imperf. tense-stem, *āmāb-*; imperf. conn. vowel, *a*; 1st plur. pass. ending, *-mūr*.

Audientūr: verb-stem, *aud-*; fut. tense-stem, *audi-*; fut. conn. vowel, *e*; 3d plur. pass. ending, *-ntūr*.

Rēgōr: verb-stem, *rēg-*; pres. act. 1st pers., *rego-*; 1st pers. pass. ending, *-r*.

(246.) Analyze

Rēgēbāmūr,

Dōcēbīmūr,

Tīmēbāris,

Dōcēbāmīnī,

&c.

occīdēmūr,

audiēmīnī,

dōcēbēris,

āmātūr,

&c.

laudantūr,

vidēbīmūr,

dōcēbuntūr,

rēgītūr,

&c.

PART II

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

§ 1.

ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

LESSON XLII.

[THE student should now learn thoroughly the following rules of quantity, most of which he has seen illustrated frequently already.]

GENERAL RULES.

(246.) (1) A vowel before another is short; *e. g.*, vĭ-a.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, bĕllum.

Rem. A mute followed by a *liquid* in the same syllable renders the preceding *short* vowel common in verse; *e. g.*, volĕ-cris. (In *prose*, the *short* vowel remains short.)

(3) All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long; *e. g.*, ā ū-rŭm, c ō-go (for co+ago).

SPECIAL RULES.

(1.) Final Syllables.

1. Monosyllables.

(247.) (a) Most monosyllables ending in a *vowel* are *long*; but the particles quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, ptĕ, &c., attached to other words, are *short*.

(b) Most monosyllables ending in a *consonant* are *long*; but the nouns cŏr, fĕl, mĕl, vĭr, ōs (ossis); the pronouns quĭs, quĭd, quŏt; and the particles nĕc, ĭn, ān, ād, sĕd, with all ending in *t*, are *short*; also ĕs, 2d person of sŭm.

2. Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(A) Final Vowels.

(248.) *a* final is *short* in nouns, except the abl. of the 1st declension; *long* in verbs, and in indeclinable words, except ĭtā, quĭā, ĕjā.

(249.) *e* final is *short* in nouns (except 5th declension) and verbs (except imperatives); *long* in adverbs derived from adjectives of the first class, with fermĕ, ferĕ, ohĕ.

(250.) *i* final is *long*; but mĭhĭ, tĭbĭ, sĭbĭ, ĭbĭ, ūbĭ, are common; nisĭ, quasĭ, *short*.

(251.) *o* final is *common*; but *long* in dat. and abl. cases of nouns and adjs. used as adverbs (*e. g.*, fals ō, &c.); *e g ō*, *du ō*, *ōct ō*, are *short*.

(252.) *u* final is always *long*; *e. g.*, di ū.

(B) *Final Consonants.*

(253.) All final syllables ending in a consonant (except *s*) are *short*.

Rules for a final.

(254.) Final *ās*, *ēs*, *ōs*, are generally *long*; *e. g.*, am ās, doc ēs, equ ōs.

Rem. 1. *ās* is *short* (1) in nouns which have short penult in the gen.; *e. g.*, mil ēs (milīt-īs).

2. *ōs* is *short* in comp ōs, imp ōs.

(255.) Final *īs* and *ūs* are generally *short*; *e. g.*, reg-īs, domin-ūs.

Rem. 1. *īs* is *long* (1) in dat. and abl. plural of nouns; (2) in 2d pers. sing. of verbs of 4th conjugation; (3) compounds of *vīs*; *e. g.*, mavīs, quam vīs, &c.

2. *ūs* is *long* (1) in nouns of 3d decl. which have *ū* long in the penult of gen.; *e. g.*, virtūs (ūtīs), palūs (ūdīs); (2) in gen. sing. and N., A., V. plur. of 4th declension.

(2.) *Derivation and Composition.*

(256.) Derivative and compound words generally retain the quantity of the primitive and simple words; *e. g.*, āmo, āmicus; p ōno, imp ōno.

(3.) *Increase.*

[A noun is said to *increase* when it has more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. (*e. g.*, mil-ēs, mil-īt-īs; here *īt* is the increase); a *verb*, when it has more syllables than the 2d pers. sing. indic. (*e. g.*, ām-as, ām-at-īs; here *at* is the increase.)]

(257.) In the increase of *nouns*, *a* and *o* are generally *long*; *e, i, u, y*, *short*.

(258.) In the increase of *verbs*, *a, e, and o* are generally *long*; *i, u*, *short*.

(4.) *Penults.*

(259.) Every perfect tense of two syllables has the first *long* (as *vīdī*), except *bībi*, *fīdī*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, *stēti*, and *scīdī*.

(260.) Penults of adjectives, (1) *īdus*, *icus*, *short*; (2)

In us, *doubtful* (often *long*); (3) *ilis* and *bilis*, derived from *verbs*, *short*; from *nouns*, *long*.

[All exceptions to the above rules that are not stated will be marked in the vocabularies.]

(261.)

EXERCISE ON QUANTITIES.

[Give the quantity of the *unmarked* syllables of the following words, with the rule for each.]

1. *Final Vowels*.

Ipsē, *agmīne*, *diē*, *rēgēre*, *rēge*, *dōcēbēre*, *re*, *mōve*, *mōvēre*, *bēne* (*adv.*, from *bōnūs*), *Cēsāre*, *optīme* (*adv.*, from *optīmūs*), *me*, *dōmīni*, *vīgīlia*, *audi*, *adventu*, *ire*, *hi*, *consīlio*, *consūle*, *de*, *tertia*, *vīgīliæ*, *contra*, *rōga*, *mōneo*, *ita*, *fractu*, *āmo*.

2. *Final Consonants*.

Obsides, *bōnas*, *vīgīlias*, *āmat*, *mīles* (*mīlītis*), *mīlītes*, *rōgāvēras*, *has*, *bōnum*, *lampas* (*lampādīs*), *pedes* (*pēditis*), *pēdītes*, *illas*, *adventus* (*gen.*), *rēgis*, *sīmul*, *audis*, *linter*, *auditis*, *vīgīliis*, *cāput*, *virtus* (*virtūtis*), *dōmīnis*, *mānus*, *rēgītur*, *rēgītis*, *mānis*, *mūnivēras*.

3. *Increase*.

Āmatīs, *mīlītīs*, *audiris*, *obsidem*, *mōnemus*, *monebātis*, *ītineris*, *rōgabās*, *mōnebāmur*, *audimus*, *mōnebīmīni*, *vōluptātīs*, *sermonīs*, *murmure*, *pēdītes*, *clāmōrem*, *mīlītes*, *vultarem*, *āmatīs*, *mōnebātīs*, *mōnetote*, *audite*, *lēgimus*, *pedem*, *sēgetīs* (from *sēges*).

4. *Penults*.

Mālēdicus, *mīrīficus*, *bēnēficus*, *fācilis* (from *fācio*), *puērīlis* (from *puer*), *āmābilis* (from *āmo*), *servīlis* (from *servus*).

§ 2.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PARTIAL STATEMENT. (XLIII.—XLVI.)

LESSON XLIII.

Tense Forms for Completed Action.—Indicative.

(262.) IN Part I. we made use only of those tenses of the verb which express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*, viz., the present, imperfect, and future. There are three tenses also for *completed* action, viz., perfect (*I have written*), pluperfect (*I had written*), future perfect (*I shall have written*). The stem for all these is the same.

(263.) The endings for these three tenses are,

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Perfect.	ī.	istī.	īt.	īmūs.	istīs.	ērunt, or ērē.
Pluperf.	ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātīs.	ērant.
Fut. Perf.	ērō.	erīs.	erīt.	erimūs.	erītīs.	erint.

(264.) By adding these endings to the perfect-stem *fu-* of the verb *essē*, to be, we obtain the forms perfect (*I have been*), pluperfect (*I had been*), future perfect (*I shall have been*).

Tense-Stem.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
Fu-	ī.	ērām.	ērō.
	istī.	ērās.	erīs.
	īt.	ērāt.	erīt.
	īmūs.	ērāmūs.	erimūs.
	istīs.	ērātīs.	erītīs.
	ērunt, or ēre.	ērant.	erint.

(265.) *Double use of the Perfect.*—It must be carefully observed that the Latin perfect has two uses, one answering to the English perfect, and the other to the English imperfect.

Thus, *fui* means not only *I have been*, but *I was*. We call the former the perfect *present*; the latter the perfect *aeorist*,* which expresses *momentary action in past time*; e. g., *Crassus* was chief of the embassy—*Crassus princeps legationis fuit*.

EXERCISE.

(266.) Vocabulary.

To be over, to preside over, to command, *prae-esse* (*prae+esse*, to be before).

To be wanting, *de-esse* (*de+esse*, to be from).

To be in, to be present at, *inter-esse* (*inter+esse*, to be among).

Sick, *aeger*, *gra*, *grum* (77, a).

Praise, laus, (laud) is (l).

After, post (prep. acc.).

Before, ante (prep. acc.).

Because, quia (conj. 248).

How long? quamdiu (adv.).

Afterward, postea.

Virtuous, probus, a, um.

(267.) Examples.

(a) If we shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also we shall be happy.

Si in vita semper probi fuerimus, etiam post mortem beati erimus.

(b) The Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

Milites Romani praeliis multis interfuerunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of *esse* with the prepositions *prae*, *inter*, *ob*, *pro*, *de*, take the *dative* case.

(268.) Translate into English.

Themistocles vir magnus et clarus fuit.—*Cur heri in schola non fuisti?*—*Quia cum patre in hortu fui.*—*Quamdiu in urbe fuistis?*—*Sex dies* (191, c).—*Ante bellum in urbe fueramus.*—*Crassus legatus* (225, a) *copiis Romanorum praeuerat.*—*Nunquam deerit tibi laus hominum, si semper probus fueris.*—*Aegene* (135, II., a) *fuisti heri?*—*Ante Ciceronis aetatem oratores multi et clari fuerant, nec postea defuerunt.*—*Caesar praeliis multis interfuit.*

(269.) Translate into Latin.

[Recollect the double use of the perfect (*present* and *aeorist*, 265).]

Divitiacus commanded (prae fuit) the forces of the Aduans.

* The *aeorist* use of the perfect is more common in Latin than the *present*.

—If you shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also you shall be happy.—If we are always virtuous, the praise of men shall never be wanting to us.—We were not in school yesterday, because we had been in the garden with (our) father.—*Had you been* (135, II., a) in our garden?—Have you been sick?—How long have you been in the city? Four days (191, c).—The lieutenant had been in the city before the war.—Before the age of Cæsar there had been many and great generals; nor were they wanting afterward.—Cæsar and the Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

LESSON XLIV.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, continued.

(270.) THE tense-stem of the perfect tense is formed in most verbs as follows:

- (1) In 1st conj. by adding *āv* to the verb-stem; e. g., *ām-āv*.
 (2) In 2d conj. “ *ū* “ e. g., *mōn-ū*.
 (4) In 4th conj. “ *iv* “ e. g., *aud-iv*

[The *third* conjugation is treated in the next lesson.]

(271.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the tense-stems formed (as in 270), we obtain the following perfect-tense forms of *āmārē*, *to love*; *mōnērē*, *to advise*; *audirē*, *to hear*.*

	PRF.-STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
		<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
1st conj.	<i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>i, istī, It, imūs, istīs, erunt, or ērē,</i>	{ <i>have loved. have advised. have heard.</i>
2d conj.	<i>mōnū-</i>		
4th conj.	<i>audiv-</i>		

* In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, it is obvious that the perfect is made up of the crude-form of the verb and *fui*; e. g., *ama-fui* = *āmāvi*; *monē-fui* = *monui*; *audi-fui* = *audivi*.

EXERCISE.

(272.) Vocabulary.

<i>Preceptor</i> , præceptōr, (præceptōr) is (m.).	<i>Pleasant</i> , jūcundus, ā, ūm.
<i>Tribune</i> , tribūnūs, ī (m.).	<i>All night</i> , pēr tōtām noctēm.
<i>Sister</i> , sōrōr, (sōrōr) is (f.).	<i>Diligently</i> , diligētēr (215, 2, b).
<i>Disgrace</i> , ignōmīniā, æ (f.).	<i>From every side</i> , undīquē (adv.).
	<i>To excite</i> , excitārē.

(273.) Examples.

(a) <i>I loved the boy.</i>	Puērūm ā m ā v ī.
(b) <i>From my boyhood I have loved my mother.</i>	Ā puerō (i. e., from a boy) matrēm ā m ā v ī.

[Obs. In (a) the perfect aorist is used; in (b) the perfect present.]

(274.) Translate into English.

Cæsār omnēs undīquē mercātōrēs ād sē (145, a) convōcāvīt. —Ā puērō fratrēm et sōrōrēm āmāvī. —Cūr per tōtām noctem vīgīlāvīstī? —Quīā pātēr ægēr fuit. —Milītēs diū et ācītēr pug-nāvērunt. —Hōs puerōs* magistēr diligētēr docuīt linguām Latīnām.* —Tuā ipsiūs (159) causā (135, II., b) tē sæpē monuī. —Tīmōr ignōmīniæ Germānōs ad virtutem excitāvīt. —Jūcun-dūm āviūm (78, II., b) cantūm audīvimūs. —Dormīvistīnē? —Nōn dormīvī. —Cæsāris adventūs oppidānos terruīt.

[Inflect all the verbs in this lesson through the perfect tense, and form the perfect according to (270).]

(275.) Translate into Latin.

Cæsar called together all the lieutenants from every side to himself (145, a). —From my boyhood I have loved my precep-tors. —The good preceptor taught me* the Greek language. —Cæsar called-together all the lieutenants and tribunes (tribunōs-quē, 202, N.) of the soldiers to himself. —The slaves have watched all night. —(Your) father has often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b). —The Gauls took-possession-of Rome. —The love of glory has always excited the Romans to bravery. —We have diligently taught the boys. —Why did you not sleep? Because my mother was sick. —They have heard the pleasant singing of the birds. —We have fortified all the

* Verbs of teaching take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

towers of Gaul.—The coming of Cæsar terrified the Æduans and Helvetians.—I have often walked in Cæsar's garden, on-the-other-side-of the Tiber (trans Tibērīm).

LESSON XLV.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued. — Perfect Tense, Third Conjugation.

(276.) THE perfect tense-stem of most verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *s* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*,

		Perfect-stem.
rĕg-ĕrĕ,	to rule,	rĕg-s = rex-
scrib-ĕrĕ,	to write,	scrib-s = scrips-
lūd-ĕrĕ,	to play,	lūd-s = lus-

(277.) *Rules of Euphony.*

(1) A *c*-sound before *s* forms *x*; dū *c*-s = dū *x*; rĕg-s = rex.

Rem. *c*, *g*, *h*, *gu*, *qu*, are classed among *k*-sounds. *v* also (generally) before *s* forms *x*; vīv-s = vīx.

(2) *b* before *s* is changed into *p*; *e. g.*, scrib-s = scrips; nūb-s = nups.

(3) A *t*-sound is (generally) dropped before *s*; lūd-s = lūs; claud-s = claus.

Rem. *t* and *d* are the *t*-sounds.

(278.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the stems of rĕg-ĕrĕ, scrib-ĕrĕ, lūd-ĕrĕ, we obtain the perfect tense-forms (*have ruled, have written, have played*).

PERFECT-STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
(rĕg-s =) rex-	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
(scrib-s =) scrips-	{ <i>i, istī, it, imūs, istīs, erant, or</i>	{ <i>have ruled.</i>
(lūd-s =) lūs-	<i>ĕrĕ.</i>	{ <i>have written.</i>
		{ <i>have played.</i>

EXERCISE.

(279.) *Vocabulary.*

Suddenly, sūbitō.

To say, dicērē.

To draw (as a sword), stringērē.

Sword, glādiūs, ī.

Trial, iūdiiciūm, ī.

To lead together, condūcērē.

To divide, diuidērē.

Household, fāmiliā, æ.

Orgetorix, Orgētōrix, (Orgētōrig) īs.

A dependent, cliens, (client) īs (c.).

Nature, nātūrā, æ.

Stoic, stoicus, ī.

(280.) *Examples.*

(a) *Did not Cæsar say these things?*

Non nē Cæsār hēc dixit?

(Nonnē is used in asking questions when the answer *yes* is expected.)

(b) *Did Cæsar say this (i.e., is it possible that he did)?*

Num Cæsār hēc dixit?

(Num is used when the answer *no* is expected.)

(281.) *Translate into English.*

[Recollect double use of perfect (265).]

Cæsār duās legiōnēs conscripsit; trēs ex hiberniis eduxit.—Principēs Germānōrūm omnēs suās cōpiās Rhenum (113, II., a) transduxerunt.—Consul glādiūm strinxit.—Nonnē (280, a) glādiōs strinxistis?—Num impērātōr glādiūm strinxit?—Orgētōrix ad iūdiiciūm omnēm suām fāmiliām et omnēs clientēs conduxit.—Cæsār exercitūm in duās partēs diuisit.—Nonnē epistolām ad patrēm scripsisti?—Stoici diuiserunt nātūrām hominīs in ānimūm et corpūs.—Multās littērās hōdiē scripsimūs.

[What is the force of *ē* in eduxit? of *con* in conduxit? of *trans* in transduxit? Describe the formation of the perfect, and the euphonic changes, in all the verbs of this lesson.]

(282.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers *suddenly* drew their swords.—Cæsar levied five legions in Italy.—Cæsar levied six legions in Italy, and led out four from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Æduans endeavour to *lead* (113, II., a) all their forces *across* the Rhine.—The general divided the army into five parts.—Did Cæsar say these (things) yesterday (280, b)?—*Did* you not write a letter to your brother?—*Have* you written a letter to the king (280, b)?—Orgetorix led-together all his household to the trial.

—Orgetorix led-together to the trial all his household and all (his) dependents.—Why have you drawn (your) sword?—Why have you not written to (your) father?—The Æduans levied many soldiers.—We have divided the nature of man into soul and body.

LESSON XLVI.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued.—Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.

(283.) (a) The *pluperfect* tense simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *imperfect* of *esse* (to be); viz., *ērām*, *ērās*, &c.

(b) The *future perfect* simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *future* of *esse*; viz., *ērō*, *erīs*, &c.; but in 3d plural it changes *u* into *i*; viz., *erint*, instead of *erunt*.

(284.) Thus, from *ām-āre*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē* *aud-irē*, we have,

PRF-STEM.	PLUPERFECT-ENDING.	
1. <i>āmāv-</i> 2. <i>mōnū-</i> 3. <i>rex-</i> 4. <i>audīv-</i>	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i> } <i>ērām, ērās, ērāt, ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant,</i>	<i>had loved.</i> <i>had advised.</i> <i>had ruled.</i> <i>had heard.</i>
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāv-</i> 2. <i>mōnū-</i> 3. <i>rex-</i> 4. <i>audīv-</i>	} <i>ērō, erīs, erit, ērimūs, eritīs, erint,</i>	<i>shall have loved.</i> <i>shall have advised.</i> <i>shall have ruled.</i> <i>shall have heard.</i>

EXERCISE.

(285.) *Vocabulary.*

Defiles, *angustiae*, *arum* (pl.).

To err, *errare*.

To draw, *ducere*.

A principle, *principium*, *I*.

To attack, *oppugnare*.

Near, *juxta* (prep. acc.).

Already, *jā* (adv.).

To take by storm, *expugnare*.

(286.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Pluperfect*.—*Militēs diū et acritēr pugnāverant*.—*Pātēr filiūm sēpē mōnūerāt*.—*Duās lēgiōnēs in Italiā conscripserāmūs*.—*Helvētīi jā* pēr *angustiās cōpiās suās transduxerant*.—

Cæsar castellâ Galliæ munivêrât êt trës lëgiônës ex hiberniis êduxêrât.

(b) *Future Perfect.*

Rem. The *future perfect* is sometimes used in Latin, when in English we should use the simple perfect or future; e. g.,

When I (shall) have written the letter, I shall come to you. | Quum êpistolâm scripsêrô, ad tē vëniâm.

Quum âmicûm in hortûm duxêrô, ad tē vëniâm.—Haud errâvêrô, sî â Platônë princîpiûm duxêrô.—Quum hostës castellâ expugnâvêrint, urbem ipsâm (159) oppugnâbunt.—Haud errâvêris, sî â Cicêronë princîpiâ duxêris.

(287.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Pluperfect.*—The general had drawn his sword.—Near the city the soldiers had fought long and spiritedly.—Cæsar had levied one legion in Italy, and led-out seven from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Helvetians had already led their forces across the Rhine (113, II., a), through the boundaries of the Sequanians.—I had often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b).

(b) *Future Perfect* (R., 286, b).—When we have written the letters, we shall come to the city.—We shall not have erred, if we shall have drawn (ducêrê) our principles from Plato.—When Cæsar shall have taken-by-storm the city, he will attack the tower itself (159).

K

§ 3.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION.—FULLER TREATMENT. (XLVII.—LVII.)

[THE third declension contains more nouns than all the others together. It also involves greater difficulties; and we therefore give it a full treatment in the following section, which should be carefully studied.]

LESSON XLVII.

(288.) THE *genitive-ending* of the third declension is *is*.

Rem. To find the *stem* of any noun of this declension, strike off *is* from the *gen.*; e. g., *G.*, *nōminis* (*of a name*), *stem*, *nōmīn*.

(289.) ENDINGS FOR ALL THE CASES.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	—	—	N.	ēs.	ē (īā).
G.	is.	is.	G.	ūm (iūm).	ūm (iūm).
D.	i.	i.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.
A.	ēm (im).	like Nom.	A.	ēs.	ē (īā).
V.	like Nom.	like Nom.	V.	ēs.	ē (īā).
A.	ē (i).	ē (i).	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(290.) The *nom.-ending* is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. The most common *nom.-ending* is *s*; but the *stem* itself is often employed as the *nom.*; and is often, again, changed. We make *six* classes, which must be carefully distinguished, viz.:

(291.) CLASSES.

- I. Nouns which add *s* to the *stem* in the *nominative* without any vowel change. (*Feminines*.)
- II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*. (*Feminines*.)
- III. Nouns which change the *stem-vowel* (*i* into *e*) before adding *s*. (*Masculines*.)
- IV. Nouns which add *ē* to the *stem*. (*Neuters*.)

V. Nouns which present the *unchanged stem* in the nominative without adding *s*. (*Masculines*, except *-al*, *-ar*, *-ur*, which are *Neuter*.)

VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative without adding *s*. (*Masculines*, *Feminines*, and *Neuters*.)

(292.) [Before entering upon the paradigms, the student should learn thoroughly the following *rules of euphony*, which prevail generally in Latin nouns and verbs.]

(1) *c* or *g* before *s* unites with it to form *x*; *e. g.*, *leg-s* is written *lex*; *arc-s*=*arx*; *voc-s*=*vox*, &c.

(2) *d* or *t* before *s* is dropped; *e. g.*, *laud-s*=*laus*; *quiet-s*=*quies*; *parent-s*=*parens*.

(293.) CLASS I.—*The Nominative adds s to the Stem, without any Vowel change. (Feminines.)*

Sing.	City (f.).	Citadel (f.).	Praise (f.).	Race (nation), f.	Quiet (f.).
N. and V.	urb-s.	arx (arc-s).	laus (laud-s).	gens (gent-s).	quies.
Gen.	urb-īs.	arc-īs.	laud-īs.	gent-īs.	quies-īs.
Dat.	urb-ī.	arc-ī.	laud-ī.	gent-ī.	quies-ī.
Acc.	urb-ēm.	arc-ēm.	laud-ēm.	gent-ēm.	quies-ēm.
Abl.	urb-ē.	arc-ē.	laud-ē.	gent-ē.	quies-ē.
Plur.	Cities.	Citadels.	Praises.	Races (nations).	
N., A., V.	urb-ēs.	arc-ēs.	laud-ēs.	gent-ēs.	quies-ēs.
Gen.	urb-īum.	arc-īum.	laud-īum.	gent-īum.	quies-īum.
D. and A.	urb-ībūs.	arc-ībūs.	laud-ībūs.	gent-ībūs.	quies-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully that,

(294.) As to the *case-endings*, *iūm* is the gen. plur. ending of those nouns whose stems end in *two* consonants; *e. g.*, *urb-s*, *urb-īs*, *urb-ium*; *nox*, *noct-īs*, *noct-iūm*; *cōhors*, *cohort-īs*, *cōhort-iūm*.

(295.) As to *gender*, they are mostly feminine. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add *s* to the stem, without changing the stem-vowel, to form the nom., are *feminine*.

[*Rev. Exceptions*. The following are *masculines* :

1. *dens* (dent-īs), *tooth*.
mons (mont-īs), *mountain*.
fons (font-īs), *fountain*.
pons (pont-īs), *bridge*.
rūdēns (rudent-īs), *rope*.

**bīdens* (bident-īs), *hoe*.
 **torrens* (torrent-īs), *torrent*.
 **trīdens* (trident-īs), *trident*.
 **ōriens* (orient-īs), *east*.
 **occīdens* (occident-īs), *west*.

* These nouns in *ens* are properly adjectives, with a masc. noun understood; *e. g.*, *oriens sol*, *torrens amnis*, &c.

2. *Grex*, (grĕg) *is*, a *flock*; also a few nouns in *ix* and *ax*.
 3. *Pariēs*, (pāriet) *is*, *wall*; *pēs* (pĕd-*is*), *foot*; *lāpis*, (lāpīd) *is*, *stone*,
vās (vād-*is*), *surety*.]

[13] The rules of gender should be learned by heart; the lists of exceptions need not be, unless they are very short. All exceptions are marked in the vocabularies; and the lists should be referred to whenever cases occur.]

To Class I. belong the nouns of the following endings, of which the pupil has had frequent examples:

Libertās, *libertāt-is*, *liberty*; *dignitas*, *dignitāt-is*, *dignity*; and, in short, all nouns in *ās*, *ātis*.

Virtūs, *virtūt-is*, *virtue*; and all others in *ūs*, *ūtis*.

Pālūs, *palūd-is*, *swamp*; and others in *ūs*, *ūdis*.

In the following exercise several of the exceptions will be found.

EXERCISE.

(296.) Vocabulary.

Highest (the top), *summus*, ā, ūm.

Middle, *mēdiūs*, ā, ūm.

To leave, *relinquĕrĕ* (perf.-stem, *rēli-*qu-).

To secede, *sēcēdĕrĕ* (perf.-stem, *sēc-*ess-).

To take care of, *cūrāre*.

To touch upon, to reach, *attingĕrĕ*.

To seek, to aim at, *pētĕrĕ*.

To cut down, *rescindĕrĕ*.

Romulus, *Rōmulus*, ī.

Hercynian, *Hercynius*, ā, um.

Senate, *sēnātūs*, ūs (m.).

Agrippa, *Agrippā*, æ (m.).

Where, *ubīnām*?

The common people, *plebs*, (plĕb) *is*.

Patricians (of Rome), *patrēs*, (patr) ūm (pl.).

An interreign, *interregnūm*, ī.

Speedy, *cītūs*, ā, ūm.

[The nouns which occur in the preceding lesson are not named in the vocabulary: the learner will find them, and observe their gender.]

(297.) Examples.

(a) *On the top of the mountain.* | *Īn summō montē.*

(b) *On the tops of the trees.* | *Īn summīs ārbōribūs.*

(c) *In the middle of the city.* | *Īn mediā urbē.*

(d) *Where in the world?* | *Ubīnām gentiūm?*

(298.) Translate into English.

Magnā pars plēbis urbēm reliquit, ēt īn montēm (295, R. 1) *sēcēssit*.—*Tūm patrēs Agrippām ad plēbēm mīserunt* (401, 3, b).—*Hercyniā sylvā finēs multārūm gentiūm attingit*.—*Cassiūs, lēgātus* (225, a), *trēs cohortēs īn arcēm oppidi duxit*.—*Ūbīnām gentiūm sūmūs?*—*Deūs cūrāt gentēs*.—*Āquillae īn sum-*

mīs montībūs nidificant.—Magnūs (78, II., b) āviūm grex (295, R., 2) summām arcēm pētunt.—Milītes pontēm (295, R., 1) rescindunt.—Lēgēs Rōmānōrum justae fuērunt.—Summūs mons (295, R., 1) ab hostibus tēnētūr.—Cēsār ad utramquē (194, R. 1) partēm pontis præsidiūm rēliquit.—Post Rōmūli mortēm uniūs (194) annī interregnūm fuit.—Sāpientēs mortem nōn timent.—Mors citā vēniēt.

[All the nouns should be declined, the rule of gender given, and the exceptions referred to if necessary. The formations of the verbs should be carefully analyzed.]

(299.) *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The fountain was beautiful.—The Hercynian forest touches the boundaries of five nations.—The common-people left the city, and seceded to the mountain.—The doves built-their-nest in the top of the citadel (297, a).—A large flock of birds flew over the city.—The soldiers fought long on the middle of the bridge (297, c).—Then the senate sent an ambassador to the common-people.—God takes care of cities and nations.—The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another.—Where in the world (297, d) are we? in what city do we live?—Cæsar fortified each part of the bridge.

LESSON XLVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(300.) CLASS II.—*The Nominative inserts a Connecting-vowel (ē or ī) before adding s to the Stem. (Feminines.)*

	e inserted.	i inserted.
Singular.	Cloud (ċ).	Ship (ċ).
N. and V.	nūb-ē-s.	nāv-ī-s.
Gen.	nūb-īs.	nāv-īs.
Dat.	nūb-ī.	nāv-ī.
Acc.	nūb-ēm.	nāv-ēm or īm.
Abl.	nūb-ē.	nāv-ē or ī.
Plural.	Clouds.	Ships.
N. A. V.	nūb-ēs.	nāv-ēs.
Gen.	nūb-iūm.	nāv-iūm.
D. and Abl.	nūb-ībūs.	nāv-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully,

(301.) As to the *case-endings*: [(1) The acc.-ending *im* instead of *em* is used: 1. *sometimes* (but rarely) in the words *clavis*, *key*; *messis*, *harvest*; *navis*, *ship*: 2. *commonly* in *febris*, *fever*; *pelvis*, *basin*; *puppis*, *stern*; *restis*, *rope*; *sēcūris*, *axe*; *turris*, *tower*: 3. *always* in *amussis*, *a rule*; *sitis*, *thirst*; *tussis*, *cough*; *vis*, *force*.]

[(2) The abl.-ending *i* instead of *e* is used (not, however, to the exclusion of *e*) in all those words which take *im* in the acc.; e. g., *turris*, *turrim*, *turri*: *vis*, *vim*, *vī* (always). Also in *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*.]

(3) The gen. plur. ending *iūm* instead of *ūm* is used in most nouns which insert *e* or *i* before adding *s* to the stem. [*Prolēs*, *canis*, *panis*, *vatīs*, *juvēnis* have *ūm*.]

(302.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s* in the nominative are *feminines*.

[*Rem. Exceptions*:

<i>Amnis</i> (m.), <i>river</i> .	<i>fascis</i> (m.), <i>bundle</i> .	<i>panis</i> (m.), <i>bread</i> .
<i>Axīs</i> (m.), <i>axle</i> .	<i>foliis</i> (m.), <i>bellows</i> .	<i>piscis</i> (m.), <i>fish</i> .
<i>Callis</i> (m.), <i>path</i> .	<i>fūnis</i> (m.), <i>rope</i> .	<i>postis</i> (m.), <i>post</i> .
<i>Cānalis</i> (m.), <i>canal</i> .	<i>fustis</i> (m.), <i>club</i> .	<i>sentis</i> (m.), <i>bramble</i> .
<i>Collis</i> (m.), <i>hill</i> .	<i>ignis</i> (m.), <i>fire</i> .	<i>unguis</i> (m.), <i>finger nail</i> .
<i>Crinis</i> (m.), <i>hair</i> .	<i>mensis</i> (m.), <i>month</i> .	<i>vectis</i> (m.), <i>lever</i> .
<i>Ensīs</i> (m.), <i>sword</i> .	<i>orbis</i> (m.), <i>circle</i> .	<i>vermis</i> (m.), <i>worm</i> .]

EXERCISE.

[In the vocabularies, the Roman numerals I, II, &c., placed after nouns, refer to the *class* to which they belong.]

(303.) Vocabulary.

To dread, *formidārē*.
Pilot, *gubernatōr*, is (m.).
To bring, *agērē* (perf.-stem, *ēg-*).
To procure, *compārārē*.
A Carthaginian, *Carthāgīniensīs*, is.
To raise, *to kindle*, *excitārē*.
Power, *pōtestās*, (*pōtestāt*) is (f, I).
Barbarian, *barbārūs*, I.
Vehemently, *greatly*, *vēhēmentēr*
 (215, 2, b).
To build, *œdificārē*.

A fleet, *classis*, is (f, II).
And, *ac*.
Twenty, *viginti* (indecl).
Lofty, *altūs*, ē, ūm.
Thirteen, *trēdecim* (indecl).
The Druids, *Druīdes*, ūm (m., pl).
Thirst, *sitis*, (*sīt*) is (f, II).
To relieve, *lēvārē*.
To dispute, *dispūtārē*.
To terrify, *terrērē* (perfect-stem, *terrū-*).

(304.) Translate into English.

Nūbēs *sæpē* *kūnām* *obscurant*.—*Civēs* *classēm* *hostiūm* *for-*

midant.—Cæsār nāvēs longas ædificāvit, ēt nautās gūbernātō-rēsque (202, N.) compārāvit.—Crassūs ad oppidūm turrēs altās ēgit.—Vētērēs Romānī vim Carthāgīniensium non formī-dāverunt.—Cæsār turrēs trēdēcim excitāvit.—Milītēs ignēs magnōs in summō montē (297, a) excitāverunt.—Druides dē deōrūm immortalīūm vī ac potestātē dispūtant.—Classis adven-tūs cīvēs terruit.—Āquā sitim (301, 1) lēvāt.—Nōvā nāvīūm figūrā vēhēmentēr (215, 2, b) barbārōs terruit.

(305.) *Translate into Latin.*

Lofty towers are raised by Cæsar.—The general prepared twenty long ships.—The lieutenant brought the towers to the wall of the city.—The power of the Romans terrified the Gauls.—Wine does not relieve thirst.—The sun is often obscured by the clouds.—The approach of the fleet and the soldiers ter-rified the citizens.—A great fire is kindled on the top of the mountain by the Æduans.—The general stationed the ships near the wall of the city.—The clouds are black.—The coming of our fleet and the strange (n ō v a) figure of the ships terrified all the barbarians.

LESSON XLIX.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(306.) CLASS III.—*The Nominative changes the Stem-vowel (ī into ĕ) before adding s to the Stem.*

Vowel i changed into e.		
Singular.	Soldier (m.).	Book (m.).
N. and V.	mīl- s (milet-s).	cōdē x (codecs).
Gen.	milit- is .	cōdic- is .
Dat.	milit- i .	cōdic- i .
Acc.	milit- ēm .	cōdic- ēm .
Abl.	milit- ē .	cōdic- ē .
Plural.	Soldiers.	Books.
N. A. V.	milit- ēs .	cōdic- ēs .
Gen.	milit- ūm .	cōdic- ūm .
D. and A.	milit- ibūs .	cōdic- ibūs .

On this class, observe that,

(307.) As to the *case-endings*, they are all regular.

(308.) As to *gender*, they are *masculine*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *i* into *ē* before adding *s* in the nominative are *masculine*.

Exc. *Mergēs* (f.), (*mergītis*), *a sheaf*.

EXERCISE.

(309.) Vocabulary.

To double, dūplicārē.

Brutus, Brūtūs, ī.

Sharp, spirited, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē
(105, R. 1).

Defender, vindex, (vindīc) īs (m.,
III.).

Liberty, libertās, (libertāt) īs (f., I.).

Foot-soldier, footman, pēdēs, (pēdīt)
īs (m., III.).

Embark upon, conscendērē, con-
scandere (perf-stem, conscend),
(for *upon*, in with the accusative).

To depart, discēdērē.

I began, cōpī. Perfect, *defective*.

To sustain, sustīnērē (sub and tē-
nērē), perf-stem, sustinu.

At his own expense, sumptū suō
(abl.).

Expense, sumptūs, ūs.

To support, ālērē (perf-stem, alu).

Greatness, magnitūdō, (magnitūdīn)
īs (f.).

A Briton, Brītanūs, ī.

Guest, hospēs, (hospīt) īs (m. and f.,
25, a).

To injure, to maltreat, violārē.

Companion, cōmēs, (cōmīt) īs (m.
and f., 25, a).

Narrow, angustūs, ā, ūm.

Place, lōcūs, ī (nom. pl., lōcī and
lōcā).

Conspiracy, conjuratio (nīs) (f.).

(310.) Translate into English.

Cæsār nūmērūm obsidūm dūplicābīt.—Brūtūs ērāt ācēr
libertātīs vindex.—Ēquitēs ēt pēdītēs īn nāvēs con-
scendērunt.—Dumnōrix cūm ēquitībūs discēdērē cōpīt.—
Dumnōrix magnūm nūmērūm equitūm suō sumptū āluīt.—
Milītēs omnēs magnitūdīnēm sylvārūm tīmuērunt.—Brī-
tannī antīquī hospītēs nunquām violāvērunt.—Cōmītēs
principīs angustō īn lōcō ēquitūm nostrōrūm vīm diū
sustīnuērunt.

(311.) Translate into Latin.

The chiefs began to go away with all the horsemen.—The
horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers did not sustain the attack (vim)
of the enemy.—The general supported the soldiers at his own
expense.—The companions of Dumnōrix sustained bravely the
attack of our footmen.—The Germans maltreated the ambas-
sadors.—The companions of the lieutenant are embarking-upon
the ships.—The greatness of the woods terrifies the horsemen
and the footmen.—Dumnōrix always maltreats (his) guests.—
The messenger began to depart with all the guests.—Brutus,

the defender of liberty, made (fēcīt) a conspiracy.—The townsmen for a long time supported a large number of footmen at their own expense.—The chiefs doubled the number of horsemen.

LESSON L.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(312.) CLASS IV.—*The Nominative adds ě to the Stem.*

	Sea (n.).	Seas.	Net (n.).	Nets.
N., A., V.	mār-ĕ.	mār-ĭā.	rēt-ĕ.	rēt-ĭā.
Gen.	mār-ĭs.	mār-iŭm.	rēt-ĭs,	rēt-iŭm.
Dat., Abl.	mār-ī.	mār-ībŭs.	rēt-ī.	rēt-ībŭs.

On this class, observe that,

(313.) As to the *case-endings*, the abl. is always ī, the nom. plur. ĭā, and the gen. plur. iŭm.

(314.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add e to the stem (instead of s) in the nom. are *neuter*.

EXERCISE.

(315.) *Vocabulary.*

By sea and land, terrā mārīque, *abl.*
(not mārī et terrā).

To wash, alluere (ad+luere).

To use, ūtī (dep. — governs *abl.*).

To be accustomed, consuescere (*perfect-stem*, consuēv).

Navigation, navigatiō, (*navigatiōn*)
is (f.).

Vast, vastŭs, ā, ūm.

Open, āpertŭs, ā, ūm.

Ocean, ōceānus, ī.

The Venetians, Vēnētī, orum (pl.).

Broad, latus. ā, ūm.

But, autē (not so strongly adversative as sēd, and always placed after one or more words of the sentence).

Other, different, ālius (194, R. 1).

Bed, cubilē, (cūbīl) is (IV.).

Splendid, splendīdŭs, ā, ūm.

A dock-yard, nāvālē, (nāval) is (IV.).

To commit, to join (as battle), committēre (*perf.-stem*, commīs).

In the mean time, intērīm (*adv.*).

Huntsman, venātor (is), m.

Far, longē (*adv.*).

(316.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>For Marseilles is washed on three sides by the sea.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>In our sea (i. e., the Mediterranean) we were accustomed to use long ships.</i></p> | <p>Massilia enim tribus ex partibus marī (abl., 93, II., b, R.) alluitur.</p> <p>Nostrō marī (55) longis navibus uti consuevimus.</p> |
|---|---|

Rule of Syntax.—The deponent verb *ūtī*, *to use*, governs the ablative; e. g., *navibus*, in (b).

(317.) *Translate into English.*

Longē aliā nāvigātiō est in angustō marī atquē in vastō atquē āpertō ōceānō.—Longæ fuērunt navēs quibus (abl., 316, b) nostro marī (55) utī (infin.) consuevimus.—Venētī autem lātīs navibus utī consueverunt.—Mihī (125, II., a) cubilē est terrā.—Rōmānōrūm cubiliā magnā fuerunt et splendīdā.—Imperātōr quinquē nāves ex navālī edūxīt et praelium commisit.—Turrīs erāt proximā portuī (106, II., c) nāvālibūsque.—Cæsār, intērīm, omnēs nāves quæ erant in navālibūs incendit.—Venātōr rētē diligentēr pārābat.—Venātōres rētiā cervīs (54) pārābant.

(318.) *Translate into Latin.*

The farmers were preparing nets for the (54) doves.—Corinth is washed on two sides by the sea.—The ships which (316, b) the Venetians were accustomed to use in our sea were long.—In the vast and open ocean we use broad ships.—Navigation is far different (longē aliā) in a narrow river and in the open sea.—I had (125, II., a) a high tree (for my) bed.—Cæsar was pursuing Pompey by sea and land.—The tower was very near to the dockyard.—The general, in the mean time, was rebuilding all the old ships in the port and dockyards.

LESSON LI.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(319.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

Singular.	Honour (m.).	Consul (m.).	Goose (m.).	Brother (m.).
N. and V.	hönör.	consul.	ansër.	frätër.
Gen.	hönör-is.	consul-is.	ansër-is.	frätër-is.
Dat.	hönör-i.	consul-i.	ansër-i.	frätër-i.
Acc.	hönör-ëm.	consul-ëm.	ansër-ëm.	frätër-ëm.
Abl.	hönör-ë.	consul-ë.	ansër-ë.	frätër-ë.
Plural.	Honours.	Consuls.	Geese.	Brothers.
N., A., V.	hönör-ës.	consul-ës.	ansër-ës.	frätër-ës.
Gen.	hönör-üm.	consul-üm.	ansër-üm.	frätër-üm.
D. and Abl.	hönör-ibüs.	consul-ibüs.	ansër-ibüs.	frätër-ibüs.

On these, observe,

(320.) As to *case-endings*, they nearly all take the *regular* endings throughout; but those whose stem ends in *ter* or *ber* drop the *e* in all cases but the *nom.*; *e. g.*, frätër, frätëris; imbër (*a shower*) imbrës.

Rem. Imbër, lintër, ventër, take *lüm* for *gen. pl.* ending.

(321.) As to *gender*,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the *nom.* (except those whose stems end in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, *ör*) are *masculine*.

[Exception (1.) In *or*: arbër, öris (*tree*), is *feminine*; and ädër, öris, (*pure wheat*), æquër, öris (*sea*), marmër, öris (*marble*), are *neut.* (Obs., masculines have *ö* (long) in the stem; neutrals *ö* (short)). The ending *al* generally belongs to names of male beings (*e. g.*, consul): if applied to females, it may be *feminine* also (*e. g.*, exul, a female exile).

Exception (2.) *ör*: liater (*boat*) is *masc.* or *fem.*: the following are *neuter*: eädaver (*corpses*), äber (*tears*), ver (*the spring*), verber (*lash*) also, all names of *plants* in *er*: *e. g.*, piper (*pepper*), zingYber (*ginger*), &c.]

EXERCISE.

(322.) *Vocabulary.*

Noise, clämör (öris, V., 1).

Cassius, Cassius, i.

Yoke, jügüm, i.

Archer, sägittariüs, i.

Slénger, funditor (öris, V., 1).

Succour, subslidüm, i.

Rain, imbër (la, 390).

Continuance, continüatið, (continüation) is (f.).

Skin, tent made of skins, pellis, (pell) is (f. II.).

Desert, dösertüm, i.

Shepherd, pastör (öris, V., 1).

Hunter, vänätör (öris, V., 1).

(323.) *Translate into English.*

Imp̄r̄ator ad se merc̄atōres undīque convōcavit.—Militēs omnes māgno cum clāmōre in oppīdum irrupērunt.—Helvētīi Cassium consūlem occidunt, exercītumque ejus (153, c) sub jūgum* mittunt.—Cāsār sagittāriōs et fundītores subsidiō† (dat.) oppīdānis† (dat.) mīsit.—Militēs continuātione imbrīum (320, R.) sub pellībus continentur.—Incōlæ desertōrum sunt pastōres, venatōres, et merc̄atōres.—Divitiæ merc̄atōrum sunt incertæ.—Cāsār omnem ēquitātum funditores s̄agittāriosque pontem (113, II., a) transduxit et ad hostes contendit.

(324.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Britons slew the general, and sent all the soldiers under the yoke.—The archers and slingers killed the chief.—By the continuance of the rains, the merchants are kept in the town.—The townsmen burst into the tents (pelles) with a great noise.—The archers and the slingers hasten to the town.—The consul Cassius led all the slingers over the bridge.—The Britons killed the scouts (exploratores), and sent the archers and slingers under the yoke.—The scouts hasten to the consul.—The general sent twenty soldiers for a succour† (dat.) to the merchants.†—The inhabitants of the town are merchants.—The riches of merchants, however great (184) they are, are uncertain.—The soldiers slew all the inhabitants of the desert.—The illustrious consuls led all the footmen over the bridge (113, II., a).

* A conquered army was made to march under a sort of yoke or gallows as a mark of disgrace.

† *Rule of Syntax.*—*Double Dative.* Two datives, one of the person, the other of the thing, may be used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, &c.

LESSON LII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.(325.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

2. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	Animal (n.).	Spur (n.).	Lightning (n.).	Marble (n.).
N., A., V.	ănimăl.	calcăr.	fulgăr.	marmăr.
Gen.	ănimăl-îs.	calcăr-îs.	fulgăr-îs.	marmăr-îs.
Dat.	ănimăl-i.	calcăr-i.	fulgăr-i.	marmăr-i.
Abl.	ănimăl-i.	calcăr-i.	fulgăr-ê.	marmăr-ê.
Plural.	Animals.	Spurs.	Lightnings.	Marbles.
N., A., V.	ănimăl-îă.	calcăr-îă.	fulgăr-ă.	marmăr-ă.
Gen.	ănimăl-iŭm.	calcăr-iŭm.	fulgăr-um.	marmăr-ŭm.
D. and Abl.	ănimăl-îbŭs.	calcăr-îbŭs.	fulgăr-îbŭs.	marmăr-îbŭs.

On these, observe,

(326.) (a) As to *case-endings*, those in *al*, *ar*, make *abl. I*, *nom. plur. îă*, *gen. plur. iŭm*.(b) As to *gender*, they are *neuter*. Hence,*Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which present in the *nom.* the unchanged stem in *al*, *ar*, *ŭr*, and *ôr* (short), are *neuter*.Exceptions in *al*: *Săl* (*salt*) is *masc.* and *neut.* in the *sing.*, and *masc.*, *sălês*, in *plur.* *Lăr*, *lărîs* (*household god*), *masc.*Exceptions in *ŭr*: *Făr* (*thief*), *furfăr* (*bran*), *turtur* (*turtle-dove*), *vultur* (*vulture*), are *masc.*Exceptions in *ôr*. (Recollect that *ôr*, *ôrîs* (with *o long*), is a *masc.* ending (321); and that *ărbôr*, *ôrîs* (*tree*), is *fem.*)*Rem.* *Ôs*, *ossîs* (*bone*), is *neut.*

EXERCISE.

(327.) Vocabulary.

Level, plain, *planŭs*, *ă*, *ŭm*.*A plain, the sea*, *œquôr*, *îs* (V., 2), (derived from *œquŭs*, *plain*: see below, 328).*Revenue, tax*, *vectigăl*, (*vectigăl*) *îs* (V., 2).*To create*, *creărê*.*Hatred, odium*, *ôdiŭm*, *î*.*Many, very many*, *complărês*, *ă* or *îă* (*gen. ŭm* or *iŭm*), used only in plural.*Class, gënŭs*, (*gënêr*) *îs*, *neut.**Temple, templum*, *î*.*To place*, *pônôrê*.*Abode, domiciliŭm*, *î*.*To goad, concitărê*.*Frugality, parsimônia*, *œ*.*Indeed, quidêŭm* (*adv.*).*Placid, plăcidŭs*, *ă*, *ŭm*.*A marble temple, a temple of marble*, *templŭm de marmôrê*.*Sharp, ăcŭtŭs*, *ă*, *ŭm*.*Glare, splendôr*, (*splendôr*) *îs* (V., 1).*To farm, rēdîmêre* (*rēdēm*).

(328.) *Example.*

<i>The sea is level, from which also the poets call it æquor (the sea).</i>	<i>Mārē planūm est; ex quō etiā æquor illūd poetæ vōcant.</i>
---	---

☞ Here the antecedent of quo is the sentence mārē planūm est.

(329.) *Translate into English.*

Magnūm hōc fuit vectīgāl, sēd magnūm creāvit ōdiūm.—
Dumnōrix, complūrēs annōs (191, a, Rule) omniā Æduōrum
vectīgālīā rēdēmērāt.—Complūrā (or complūriā) sunt gēnē-
rā animāliūm.—Templūm de marmōrē in fōrō pōnām.
Crassūs dōmūm magnām de marmōrē splendīdō ædificāvit.
—Fulgūrā mīltēs vēhēmentēr terruērunt.—Terrā est dōm-
iciliūm hōmīnūm ēt animāliūm.—Mīltēs subitō ēquōs cal-
cāribūs (abl., 55, a) concītārē cōpērunt.—Calcāria ācūtā
sunt.

(330.) *Translate into Latin.*

Glory is a great spur to brave men.—The horses fear the
sharp spurs.—The glare of the lightnings terrified the horses.
—Almost (fere, 218, b) all animals are useful to men.—These
were great revenues indeed, but they created great hatreds.—
The seas were level and placid.—Frugality is a great revenue.
—We shall place a temple of splendid marble in the midst (in
mediō fōrō, 297, c) of the forum.—The poets call (mārē) the
sea æquor, because (quīā) it is level.—The woods are the
abode of many animals.—Pompey for many years had farmed
the revenues of Asia.—The cavalry (ēquitēs) began to put
spurs to their horses (= to goad the horses with spurs).

LESSON LIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(331.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

1. Masculine Forms.

(a) n of the Stem dropped.		(b) r of the Stem changed to s.		(c) Verbals in io (all fem.).
Singular.	Speech (m.).	Dust (m.).	Flower (m.).	Reason (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	pulvis.	flōs.	rātiō.
Gen.	sermōn-īs.	pulvēr-īs.	flōr-īs.	rātiōn-īs.
Dat.	sermōn-ī.	pulvēr-ī.	flōr-ī.	rātiōn-ī.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	pulvēr-ēm.	flōr-ēm.	rātiōn-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	pulvēr-ē.	flōr-ē.	rātiōn-ē.
Plural.	Speeches.		Flowers.	Reasons.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	pulvēr-ēs.	flōr-ēs.	rātiōn-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	pulvēr-ūm.	flōr-ūm.	rātiōn-ūm.
D. & Abl.	sermōn-ībūs.	pulvēr-ībūs.	flōr-ībūs.	rātiōn-ībūs.

On this class, observe,

(332.) As to *case-endings* : 1. Final n of the stem is *generally* dropped in Latin nouns in the nominative. (In sanguis, sanguin-īs (*blood*), it is changed into s.)

2. Final r of the stem is *often* changed into s, as in pulvis, flōs, mōs, &c.

(333.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which simply drop n of the stem in the nom. are *masculine* (except abstract nouns in io).

Special Rem.—Abstract nouns in io (ōnīs) are feminine ; e. g., ratio, reason ; ultio, revenge. (They are a very large class, formed by adding io to the supine-stem of verbs.)

(334.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which change ōr of the stem into īs, ōr into ōs, are *masculine* ; e. g., pulvis (pulvēr), flōs (flōr).

EXERCISE.

(335.) Vocabulary.

Manner, custom, mōs, (mōr) īs (VI., 1, b).	Speech, language, sermō, (sermōn) īs (VI., 1, a).
Robber, latrō, (latrōn) īs (VI., 1, a).	Surrender, dēditiō, (deditiō) īs (VI., 1, c).
Pirate, præddō, (præddōn) īs (VI., 1, a).	Rebellion, rēbelliō, (rēbelliōn) īs (VI., 1, c).
Centurion, centūriō, (centuriōn) īs (VI., 1, a).	The Sacred Way, Viā Sacra.
Lion, leō, (leōn) īs (VI., 1, a).	

Speech (in the abstract), or *an oration*, oratĭo, (oration) is (VI., 1, c).
Dust, pulvis, (pulvēr) is (VI., 1, b).
Egyptian, Ægyptūs, i.
Sweet, pleasant, suavis, is, ō.
To wander, errāre.
To employ, ūti (with abl., 316, b).
To finish, conficĕre (io).
The rest, the remaining, reliquūs, ō, ūm.

To slay, trucidāre.
Nurse, natrix, (nutric) is (I.).
Devoid of, experts, (expert) is (107).
To draw, trāhĕre (trax-; 277, 1).
Eloquent, disertūs, ō, ūm.
Adorned, ornātūs, ō, ūm.
To go, irĕ.
By chance, fortē (adv.).
As, sicut.
Kind, blandūs, ō, ūm.

(336.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| (a) <i>After the manner of robbers.</i> | Mōrē latrōnūm. |
| (b) <i>After his (her or their) own manner.</i> | Mōrē suō. |
| (c) <i>Devoid of reason.</i> | Rātiōnis expers. |

Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives signifying *abounding, want, privation, &c.*, govern the genitive (sometimes abl.).

- (d) We say, *a cloud of dust*; the Latin says, *a power of dust*—vis pulvērīs.

(337.) *Translate into English.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—Centuriōnēs milītūm Labiēnūm libentēr sēquēbantūr.—Lēgātūs sermōnem longūm conficīt.—Multī Æduī Cēsāris sermonī (dat., 267, b) interfuerunt.—Impērātōr reliquōs latrōnēs prädōnēsque trucidāvit.—Africā nutrix est leōnūm fērocīūm.

2. (*Verbal Nouns in ion, all Feminine.*)—Helvĕtī lēgātōs dē (concerning) dēditiōne ad Cēsārēm misērunt.—Barbārī rēbelliōnēm turpēm fēcērunt.—Lēgātūs, orātiōnē acri (abl., 55, a), barbārōs ad dēditiōnēm traxīt.—Orātiō disertā ēt ornātā omnībūs (161, a) plācēt.—Fēræ sunt rātiōnis et orātiōnis expertes.

3. (*Nouns changing ēr of the Stem into is, or into ōs; all Masculines.*)—Pulvis et umbrā sūmūs.—Milītes, eōdēm temporē (118, II., c) magnām vim pulvērīs vidēbant.—Ībām fortē viā sacrā (abl., 55, a) sicut meūs est mōs.—Ægyptī, mōrē prädōnūm (336, a), nāvēs incendĕre (infin., 210) consuevērunt.—Suāvēs tui mōrēs mihī (161, a) valdē plācent.—Prädōnēs, mōrē suō, oppidā incendĕrē cēpērunt.

(338.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—Cæsar employs kind language* (abl., 316, *b*), and draws the barbarians to a surrender.—Many of the Helvetians heard the severe speech (78, II., *b*) of Cæsar.—The bands of robbers and pirates wander by sea and land.—The general slew all the wicked pirates.—Is (135, II., *a*) Africa the nurse of lions?—Is Europe (*n* *u* *m*, 280, *b*) the nurse of fierce lions?

2. (*Verbals in io, all Feminine.*)—Cæsar drew-out from (their) winter-quarters the four legions which he had levied (conscripturät) in Italy.—The eloquent oration pleased all.—The barbarians made a base rebellion after (their) surrender.—Lions are devoid of reason and speech.

3. (*Nouns changing ö or of the Stem into is, ö or into ös; Masculines.*)—The flowers are beautiful.—The customs of the Germans were good.—Death turns (vertit) all things into dust.—At the same time (118, II., *b*), a great cloud of dust (336, *d*) was seen by the soldiers.—I was sleeping in the garden, as is my custom.—The Æduans, after the manner of pirates, slew the ambassadors.

LESSON LIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(339.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

2. *Feminine Forms.*

n of the Stem dropped, and i changed into ö.		
Singular.	Image (f.).	Hail (f.).
N. and V.	imägd.	grandö.
Gen.	imägin- <i>is</i> .	grandin- <i>is</i> .
Dat.	imägin- <i>i</i> .	grandin- <i>i</i> .
Acc.	imägin- <i>öm</i> .	grandin- <i>öm</i> .
Abl.	imägin- <i>ö</i> .	grandin- <i>ö</i> .
Plural.	Images.	Hail.
N., A., V.	imägin- <i>ös</i> .	grandin- <i>ös</i> .
Gen.	imägin- <i>üm</i> .	grandin- <i>üm</i> .
D. and Abl.	imägin- <i>ibüs</i> .	grandin- <i>ibüs</i> .

* Sermo.

On these, observe,

(340.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which drop *n*, and change *i* into *o* in the nom., are *feminine*.

Exceptions. *Ordō* (*order*), *cardō* (*hinge*), *turbō* (*whirlwind*), are *masculine*. *Nēmō* (*nobody*), *margō* (*margin*), are *common*. (*Homo*, *man*, is *masc.* by the general rule, 25, *a*.)

Rem. *Cārō* (*flesh*) makes *gen.* *carnīa*, *dat.* *carnī*, &c., contracted from *carinīa*, *carinī*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(341.) *Vocabulary.*

Sleep, *somnūs*, *i*.

Same, *idēm*, *eādēm*, *Idēm* (150).

Multitude, *multitūdō*, (*multitādīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

To set forth, *expōnērē*.

Swallow, *hīrūdō*, (*hīrūdīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

Harbinger, *prænuntiā*. *æ*.

Spring, *vēr*, *is* (321, exc. 2).

Resemblance, *similitūdō*, (*similitādīn*) *is* (VI., 2).*

To preserve, *keep*, *servārē*.

To call (*name*), *appellārē*.

Council, *conciliūm*, *i*.

Lily, *liliūm*, *i*.

Virgin, *virgō*, (*virgīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

Prayer, *prex*, *nom.* not used, (*prēc*) *is* (I.).

To celebrate, *to extol*, *cēlebrārē*.

Origin, *origō*, (*origin*) *is* (VI., 2).

To collect, *cōgērē*, *cōn+āgērē* (*perf.* stem, *coēg*).

Order, *rank*, *ordō*, (*ordin*) *is* (VI., 2) (*m*).

Whirlwind, *turbō*, (*turbīn*) *is* (VI., 2, 340, exc.).

Safe, *salvūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

(342.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Somnūs imāgō mortīs est.*—*Lēgātī eādēm quæ Cæsār dixērāt multitūdīnī expōnunt.*—*Hīrūdīnēs prænuntiæ vērīs sunt.*—*Gallī oppidūm ex similitūdīnē flōrīs Liliūm appellābant.*—*Consul mātrūm virgīnum-que prēcībūs excitātur.*—*Poētæ cēlebrant Rōmūlūm, ōrigīnēm gentīs.*

2. *Prīncīpes Æduōrūm magnām multitūdīnēm hōmīnūm ex agrīs coēgerunt.*—*Militēs ordinēs nōn servant.*—*Cæsār centūrionēs primōrūm ordinūm ad conciliūm convocat.*—*Cicērō in magnīs turbīnībūs nāvēm reipublicæ (351, 3) gubernāvit, et salvām in portū collocāvit.*

(343.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Speech (sermō) is the image of the mind.*—*Sleep is often the harbinger of death.*—*The soldiers feared the force of the*

* *Similitūdō flōrīs* = *resemblance to a flower*.

hail.—The centurions were setting-forth the same (things) which the general had commanded.—The brave soldiers are moved by the prayers of the mothers and the virgins.

2. The consuls collect a great multitude of men from the towns.—Cæsar dismisses from (ab) the council the centurions of the first ranks.—The archers and the slingers did not keep their ranks.—Cæsar calls (vöcārē) to the council the centurions of all the ranks.—The brave consul in the great whirlwinds will govern the ship of state (351, 3).—Cæsar will place the ship of state safe in the port.

LESSON LV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(344.) CLASS VI.—The Nominative presents the Stem changed.

3. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	(a) Vowel changed.		(b) Vowel and Cons. changed.		(c) Cons. changed.
	Song (n.).	Strength (n.).	Work (n.).	Body (n.).	Law (n.).
N., A., V.	carmen.	röbūr.	öpūs.	corpūs.	jūs.
Gen.	carmin-īs.	röbör-īs.	öpēr-īs.	corpör-īs.	jür-īs.
Dat.	carmin-i.	röbör-i.	öpēr-i.	corpör-i.	jür-i.
Abl.	carmin-ē.	röbör-ē.	öpēr-ē.	corpör-ē.	jür-ē.
Plural.	Songs.		Works.	Bodies.	Laws.
N., A., V.	carmin-ä.	röbör-ä.	öpēr-ä.	corpör-ä.	jür-ä.
Gen.	carmin-üm.	röbör-üm.	öpēr-üm.	corpör-üm.	jür-üm.
D., Abl.	carmin-ibūs.	röbör-ibūs.	öpēr-ibūs.	corpör-ibūs.	jür-ibūs.

On this class, observe,

(345.) As to gender, they are all neuter. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which, in the nominative, change the stems *ln* into *ēn*, *ör* into *ür*, and *ēr*, *ör*, or *ür* into *us*, are neuter.

Exceptions. (1) In *ēn*: only *pectēn*, *pectinūs* (masc.), *a comē*.

(2) *ör* into *ür*: none.

(3) *ēr* into *ūs*: none.

(4) *ör* into *ūs*: only *lēpūs*, *lēpörīs* (masc.), *a hare*.

(5) *ür* into *us*: *mūs*, *murīs* (masc.), *mouse*; *tellus*, *ārīs* (fem.), *earth*.

(346.) Under this head may be classed the following nouns of rare endings:

1. Poēmă, *ătis* (*neuter*), a poem. Nouns of this form are derived from the Greek, and are all neuters. They prefer the ending *is* to *ibūs* in the dat. and abl. plur.

2. Hălăc (*neuter*), hălăcīs, brine, and lăc (*neuter*), lactīs, milk, are the only Latin nouns ending in *c* in the nom.

3. Căpăt, capătīs, head, is the only Latin noun ending in *t* in the nom. It is neuter.

EXERCISE.

(347.) Vocabulary.

Arrogance, *arrôgantiă*, *œ*.

Crime, *crimën*, (*crimîn*) *is* (VI., 3, a).

To want (lack), to be free from, *cărërë* (with abl.).

Folly, *stultitiă*.

Wonderful, *mîrîficūs*, *ă*, *üm* (*mirus* +*facio*).

Naked, *nūdūs*, *ă*, *üm*.

Strong, *vălidūs*, *ă*, *üm*.

The whole affair, *omnīs rēs*.

To delay, *tardărë*.

Gift, *mănūs*, (*munër*) *is* (VI., 3, b).

Quickly, *cîtö* (adv.).

Hare, *löpūs*, (*lepör*) *is* (m., 345, 4).

Milk, *lăc*, (*lact*) *is* (n., 346, 2).

Flesh, *cărö*, (*carn*) *is* (f., 340, R.).

Young man, *jüvenis*, *is* (m.): gen. pl., *üm*.

Danube, *Dănăbiūs*, *i* (m.).

Jugurtha, *Jugurthă*, *œ*.

If, *si* (conj.).

(348.) Examples.

(a) To condemn to death.

Căpătīs (or căpătö) *condemnărë* (= to condemn of the head).

Rule of Syntax.—With verbs of condemning, the punishment (if capital) is put in the gen. or abl.

(b) To be free from a crime.

Crîmînö *cărërë* (= to want crime).

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative case is used with verbs (and adjectives) of abounding and wanting.

(349.) Translate into English.

Socrătës *arrôgantiæ* et *stultitiæ* *crîmînö* *cărëbăt*.—Rhênūs et Rhödănūs *magnă* sunt *flumînă*.—*Magnă* et *mîrîfică* sunt *omniă* *Dei* *öpëră*.—*Galli* *sempër* *nüdö* *corpörö* (synt., 716, 2) *pugnăbant*.—*Corpöră* *Germănörüm* *vălidă* et *mîrîfică* *fuërunt*.—*Magnitüdö* *öpërüm* *omnëm* *rëm* *tardăbat*.—*Si* *münëră*

tardās, nihīl das ; bīs dāt, quī cītō dat.—Vēnātōr lēpōrēs tīmīdos in sylvis persēquūtūr.—Athēniensēs Socratēm cāpītē condemnārunt.*—Cūr tālēm vīrūm cāpītis condemnāstis?—Britannī lactē et carnē vivunt.

(350.) *Translate into Latin.*

The bodies of the young men were strong.—The man (vir) was free from the crime of folly.—The Danube and the Rhine are great rivers.—Do the Gauls (num, 280, b) fight with naked body?—The works of Cicero are excellent: I read them (eos) with pleasure (libentēr).—The Romans condemned Jugurtha to death (348, a).—Did the Athenians (280, b) condemn Socrates to death?—The captives were condemned (imperf. pass.) to death.—The timid hare was wandering in the woods and fields.—Is-it-possible-that (280, b) the Britons live (on) (abl.) milk and flesh?—Your pleasant songs (161, b) delighted (delectāre) me.

LESSON LVI.

Irregular Nouns.

(351.) WE give here the declension of a few irregular nouns.

1. Jūpītēr.

Nom.	Jūpītēr.
Gen.	Jōvis.
Dat.	Jōvī.
Acc.	Jōvēm.
Abl.	Jōvē.

* The *perf.* and *plup.* tenses are often thus contracted: *amārdt* for *amāvērat*; *vigilastis* for *vigilavistis*.

2. Bōs, *an ox or cow.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Gen.	Bōvīs.	Boūm.
Dat.	Bōvī.	Bōbūs or Būbūs.
Acc.	Bōvēm.	Bōvēs.
Voc.	Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Abl.	Bōvē.	Bōbūs or būbūs.

[In double nouns, each noun is inflected; e. g.,]

3. Rēspublīcā (rēs+publīcā), *a republic, state.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Rēspublīcā.	Rēspublīcæ.
Gen.	Rēipublīcæ.	Rērumpublīcārūm.
Dat.	Rēipublīcæ.	Rēbuspublīcis.
Acc.	Rempublīcām.	Rēspublīcās.
Voc.	Rēspublīcā.	Rēspublīcæ.
Abl.	Rēspublīcā.	Rēbuspublīcis.

4. Jusjūrandūm (jūs+jūrandūm), *an oath.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Jusjūrandūm.	Jūrajūrandā.
Gen.	Jūrisjūrandī.	_____
Dat.	Jūrījūrandō.	_____
Acc.	Jusjūrandūm.	Jūrajūrandā.
Abl.	Jūrējūrandō.	_____

Rem. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are not used.

EXERCISE.

(352.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Faith, promise, fidēs, ei.</i>	<i>Apis, Āpīs, is (f.).</i>
<i>To bind, obstringērē, (ōb+stringērē) (perf.-stem, obstrinx).</i>	<i>Sacred, sanctūs, ū, ūm.</i>
<i>To take care of, cūrārē.</i>	<i>Formerly, ōlim.</i>
<i>Folly, stultītiā, æ.</i>	<i>Guardian, custōs, (custōd) is (m. and f.).</i>
<i>To lose, amittērē, (ā+mittērē) (perf.-stem, amis).</i>	<i>Juno, Jūnō, (Jūnōn) is (f.).</i>
<i>To intrust, committērē, (con+mittērē) commīs (with dat.).</i>	<i>Husband or wife, conjux, (conjūg) is (m. and f.).</i>
<i>Especially, maximē (adv.).</i>	<i>Nation, nātiō, (nātiōn) is (f.).</i>
<i>To worship, cōlērē (perf.-stem, cōlū-).</i>	<i>An Egyptian, Ægyptūs, i.</i>
	<i>But especially, maximē antēm.</i>
	<i>Minerva, Minervā, æ.</i>

(353.) *Translate into English.*

Principēs inter se fidem et iusjurandum dabant.—Ariovistus civitatem iurejurando (55) et obsidibus obstrinxit.—Apud Romanos, consules rempublicam curaverunt.—Multae nationes per stultitiam republicae suae amiserrunt.—Veteres maxime Iovem coluerunt.—Aegypti Apim, sanctum bovem (225, a), olim coluerunt.—Iupiter est huius urbis custos.—Junō erat Jovis conjux.—Cives iram Jovis timeant.—Cornua bovm sunt magna.

(354.) *Translate into Latin.*

The robbers will give an oath among themselves.—Caesar binds all the Germans by a promise and an oath.—Caesar bound the chiefs of the state by an oath and by hostages.—The senate intrusts (committit) the whole republic to Cicero.—The consuls will take care of our republic.—The ancients worshipped many gods, but especially Jupiter.—We have lost the republic by (per) our own folly.—Jupiter is the guardian of our house.—Apis, the sacred ox, is the guardian of this city.—Minerva was the daughter of Jupiter.—Good men do not fear the anger of Jupiter.

(355.)

LESSON LVII.

*Summary of Rules of Gender from the Nominative Formation.****I. MASCULINES either**

1. Add *s*, and change the stem-vowel before it; *e. g.*,
gurgēs, gurgīt-*is*, *whirlpool*; mīlēš, mīlīt-*is*, *sol-*
dier; cōdēx, cōdīc-*is*, *book*. }
2. Present the stem *er*, *ul*, or, without adding *s*; *e. g.*,
ansēr, ansēr-*is*, *goose*; consul, consūl-*is*, *consul*;
hōnōr, honōr-*is*, *honour*.
3. Drop *n* without adding *s*; *e. g.*, sermo, sermōn-*is*,
speech; carbo, carbōn-*is*, *coal*.
4. Change *ēr* of the stem into *īs*, *ōr* into *ōs*; *e. g.*,
cīnīs, cīnēr-*is*, *ashes*; pulvīs, pulvēr-*is*, *dust*;
flōs, flōr-*is*, *flower*. }

II. FEMININES either

1. Add *s* without changing the stem-vowel; *e. g.*, urb-*s*,
urb-*is*, *city*; nox (noct-*s*), noct-*is*, *night*; vox
(vōc-*s*), vōc-*is*, *voice*; quies, quīet-*is*, *quiet*.
2. Insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*; *e. g.*, nūb-e-*s*,
nub-*is*, *cloud*; nāv-ī-*s*, nav-*is*, *ship*.
3. Drop *n*, and change *ī* into *o*; *e. g.*, īmāgo, īmāgīn-*is*,
image; grando, grandīn-*is*, *hail*.

III. NEUTERS either

1. Add *e* to the stem; *e. g.*, mārē, mār-*is*, *the sea*.
2. Present the unchanged stem *al*, *ar*, *ur*, *ōr*; *e. g.*, ānī-
māl, animāl-*is*, *animal*; calcār, calcār-*is*, *spur*;
fulgūr, fulgūr-*is*, *lightning*; æquōr, æquōr-*is*, *sea*.
3. Change *īn* of the stem into *ēn*, *ōr* into *ūr*, and *ēr*, *ōr*,
or *ūr* into *us*; *e. g.*, carmēn, carmīn-*is*, *song*; ēbūr,
ēbūr-*is*, *ivory*; ōpūs, ōpēr-*is*, *work*; corpūs, cor-
pōr-*is*, *body*; crūs, crūr-*is*, *leg*.

* Abundant illustrations of these rules have been given. The student should now learn them thoroughly by heart, and apply them in the subsequent lessons.

Exceptions.

I. 1. Only *mergēs*, *mergītis* (f.), *sheaf*.

{ *er*, *feminine* : *lintēr*, *boat*.
er, *neuter* : *cādāvēr*, *ūbēr*, *vērbēr*, *vēr*, *tūbēr*, *spin-*
thēr, with all the names of plants in *ēr*.

I. 2. { *ör*, *feminine* : *arbör*, *tree*.

ör, *neuter* : *cör*, *ādör*, *æquör*, *marmör*.

Rem. The *neuters* have *ö* (*short*) in the stem ; the *mas-*
culines, *ō* (*long*).

I. 3. { The *abstract nouns* in *io* are all *feminine* ; *e. g.*, *rätio*
 (f.), *ratiōnis*, *reason*.

I. 4. None.

II. 1. { *Masculines.* Viz., *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *dens* and its
 compounds, *torrens*, *occidens*, *oriens*.
Grex, *Greek nouns* in *ax*, and a few in *ix* ; *lāpis*,
vās, *pāriēs*, *pēs*.*

{ *Masculines.* Latin nouns ending in *nīs* ; *e. g.*, *ignīs*
 (m.), *fire* ; with
 II. 2. { *Piscīs*, *orbīs*, *callīs*, and *canālīs* ;
Unguīs, *caulīs*, *axis*, and *annālīs* ;
Fascīs, *sentīs*, *fustīs*, *canīs*, *ensīs* ;
Vectīs, *vermīs*, *postīs* ; also *mensīs*.

II. 3. { *Masculines.* *Ordo*, *cardo*, *homo*, *turbo*.
Common. *Nēmo*, *margo*.

III. 1. None.

III. 2. { *Sāl*, *masculine* and *neuter* in singular ; *masculine* in
 plural. *Lār*, *lārīs*, *masculine*.

{ *Fūr*, *furfūr*, *turtūr*, *vultūr*, *masculine*.
 III. 3. { *Masculine* : changing *īn* into *ēn*, only *pectēn*, *comb* ;
 changing *ör* into *ūs*, only *lēpūs*, *hare* ; chang-
 ing *ūr* into *us*, only *mūs*, *mouse*. *Feminine* :
tellūs, *earth*.

* There are also a few *Greek words* that are *masculine*. *As*, *assis*,
coin, is *masculine* ; *vās*, *vāsīs*, *vase*, is *neuter*.

§ 4.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. (LVIII.—LX.)

(356.) ADJECTIVES are inflected both in English and Latin to express *degrees* of quality ; e. g.,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Brave,</i>	<i>braver,</i>	<i>bravest.</i>
Fort-is,	fort-iör,	fort-issimüs.

LESSON LVIII.

The Comparative Degree.

(357.) The *comparative* has the ending iör for the *masculine*, and iüs for *neuter*. These endings are added directly to the *stem* of the adjective ; e. g.,

	<i>Masculine.</i>	
<i>Brave</i> , fort-is ;	<i>braver</i> , fort-iör ;	fort-iüs.
<i>Hard</i> , dūr-us ;	<i>harder</i> , dūr-iör ;	dūr-iüs.
<i>Beautiful</i> , pulch-er } (<i>stem</i> , pulchr-); }	<i>more beautiful</i> , pulchr-iör ;	pulchr-iüs.

Rem. If the stem ends in a vowel, the comparative is formed by the use of *māgis*, *more*, instead of the ending ; e. g.,

<i>pious</i> , pi-us ;	<i>more pious</i> , māgis piüs.
<i>fit</i> , idōne-us ;	<i>more fit</i> , māgis idōneüs.

(358.) DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. and V.	dūr-iör.	dūr-iüs.	dūr-iörës.	dūr-iörë.
Gen.	dūr-iöris.	dūr-iöris.	dūr-iörüm.	dūr-iörüm.
Dat.	dūr-iöri.	dūr-iöri.	dūr-iöribüs.	dūr-iöribüs.
Acc.	dūr-iörëm.	dūr-iüs.	dūr-iörës.	dūr-iörä.
Abl.	dūr-iörë.	dūr-iörë.	dūr-iöribüs.	dūr-iöribüs.

Rem. In the later writers, *i* is used for abl. sing. ending frequently instead of *ë*.

EXERCISE.

(359.) Vocabulary.

Like, similar to, similis (takes *dat.*, sometimes *gen.*, 106, II., c).

Amiable, amabilis, is, ē.

Eloquent, eloquens.

Excellent, præstans.

Ignorance, ignōrātiō, (ignorance) is.

Knowledge, scientia, æ.

Silver, argentum, l.

Vile, paltry, vilis, is, ē.

Justice, justitiā, æ.

Dear, precious, cārūs, ā, ūm.

Few, pauci, æ, ū (used only in pl.).

Indeed, quidem (adv.; always stands next after the word to which it refers).

Swift, celer (105, B. 1).

Than, quā (conj.).

To seek, quærere.

Antonine, Antoninus, l.

Future, futurūs, ā, ūm.

(360.) Examples.

(a) *A pirate is more like a wild beast than a man.*

Prædo fēræ (106, II., b) est simīlior quam hōmīni (dat.).

(b) *Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Nihil est amābilius quam virtūs, or

(c) Nihil est virtutē amābilius.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The conjunction *quam* (*than*) is frequently omitted, and then the noun with the comparative must be put in the *ablative* case.

Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar.

Cicero fuit Cæsāre eloquentior.

(361.) Translate into English.

Nihil est virtute præstantius.—Virtus est præstantior quam robur (344).—Ignoratio malorum utilior est quam scientia.—Aurum gravius est argento.—Argentum vilius est auro, virtutibus aurum.—Lupi ferociōres sunt quam canes.—Tullus Hostilius ferocior erat Romulo.—Justitiam quærimus; rem (app., with justitiam, 225, a) auro cariorē.—Paucis (dat. gov. by carior, 106, II., b) carior fides est, quam pecunia.—Mihi (dat.) amicus fuit me ipso carior.—Omnēs suos (i. e., his friends) caros habet (he holds); me (acc.) quidem se ipso cariorē.—Nemo Romanorum (partitive gen.) eloquentior fuit Cicerone.

(362.) Translate into Latin.

1. *With quā*.—The horse is swifter than the dog.—Igno-

rance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).—Lions are fiercer than wolves.—Antonine was more pious (357, R.) than Cæsar.—The son was more amiable than the father.—A robber is more like a wolf (dat., 106, II., b) than a man.

2. *Without quam* (with *ablative*).—Justice is a thing more precious than gold.—Gold is more paltry than virtue.—Nothing is more amiable than virtue.—To Crassus his friends were dearer than himself.—He (*had*) held all his own (*friends*) dear, but Cicero even dearer than himself.—What (170) is heavier than water? Gold.—What is more excellent than strength? Virtue.

LESSON LIX.

Superlative Degree.

(363.) THE *superlative* ending is *issimŭs*, which is added to the stem of the adjective.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dear, cār-us ;	dearer, cār-ior ;	dearest, cār-issimŭs.
Brave, fort-is ;	braver, fort-ior ;	bravest, fort-issimŭs.
Happy, fēlix (fēlic-s) ;	more happy, fēlic-ior ;	most happy, fēlic-issimŭs.

(364.) But adjectives whose stems end in *e r* add the ending *rīm ŭs*.

Unhappy, mīser ; *most unhappy*, mīser-rīm ŭs.

Swift, cēlēr ; *swiftest*, cēlēr-rīm ŭs.

Beautiful, pulcher ; *most beautiful*, pulcher-rīm ŭs.

(365.) Several adjectives whose stems end in *l* add *līm ŭs*.

Easy, fācīl-is ; *easiest*, fācīl-līm ŭs.

EXERCISE.

(366.) *Vocabulary.*

Cyrus, Cŷrŭs, l.

Hannibal, Hannibāl, (Hannibāl) is.

Difficult, difficīlis (di-fācīlis).

Moderation, mōdŭs, l.

Darius, Dārius, l.

To preserve moderation, mōdŭm hābērē (= *to have moderation*).

Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) is.

Metal, mētallum, l.

To stain, mēcŭlārē.

(367.) *Examples.*

- (a) *Socrates was very wise.* | *Sōcrates sāpientissimus fuit.*

A high degree of quality (*very good, very wise, &c.*) is expressed in Latin by the *superlative*.

- (b) *Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest.* | *Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.*

Rule of Syntax.—The genitive plural is used with the superlative degree: the *most learned* of the *Romans*; *doctissimūs Romanōrum* (partitive gen., synt., 697).

- (c) *Among the Helvetians the noblest was Orgetorix.* | *Āpud Helvētios nōbīlissimus fuit Orgētōrix.*

(368.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs Syracusæ (app., 225, a) *Græcārum urbium est pulcherrimā.*—*Præstantissimī Persārum rēges fuērunt Cyrus et Darius.*—*Pompeius magnam bellī glōriam mortē* (55, a) *turpissimā mǎculāvit.*—*Hannībal fortissimūs erat omnium Carthāgīniensium.*—*Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.*—*Cicēro eloquentissimus fuit Romānōrum.*—*Difficillimum est mōdum hābērē* (161, d).—*Āpud Ēduos nōbīlissimus et fortissimus fuit Divitiācus.*

(369.) *Translate into Latin.*

Plato was very wise (367, a).—Plato was the wisest of all the Greeks (367, b).—The city Rome was the most beautiful of all the Roman cities.—Of all these, the Britons are the bravest.—The most excellent leaders of the Romans were Cæsar and Pompey.—Carthage was a very beautiful city.—Of all things, the most difficult is to preserve moderation.—Of all (men), the most happy (beatus) is the wise (man).—The hardest of all metals is iron.—Among the Greeks Themistocles was the noblest.—Cæsar led the bravest soldiers across the very broad river.

LESSON LX.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

(370.) SEVERAL adjectives are quite *irregular* in their comparison. The following are the most important.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>good</i> , bōnūs.	<i>better</i> , mēliōr.	<i>best</i> , optimūs.
<i>bad</i> , mālūs.	<i>worse</i> , pējor.	<i>worst</i> , pessimūs.
<i>great</i> , māgnūs.	<i>greater</i> , majōr.	<i>greatest</i> , maximūs.
<i>much</i> , multūs.	<i>more</i> , { plūs (n. sing.). { plūrēs, ē (pl.).	<i>most</i> , { plūrimūs.
<i>small</i> , parvūs.	<i>less</i> , minōr.	<i>least</i> , minimūs.
<i>old</i> , sēnex.	<i>older</i> , sēniōr.	<i>wanting</i> .
<i>young</i> , juvenīs.	<i>younger</i> , jūniōr.	<i>wanting</i> .
<i>outward</i> , extērus.	<i>more outward</i> , extērior.	<i>outermost</i> , extrēmūs.
<i>below</i> , infērus.	<i>lower</i> , infērior.	<i>lowest</i> , infimūs, or imūs.
<i>above</i> , supēriūs.	<i>higher</i> , supēriōr.	<i>highest</i> , suprēmūs, or summūs.
<i>hind</i> , postērūs.	<i>hinder</i> , postēriōr.	<i>hindmost</i> , postrēmūs.

(371.) Several adjectives have no positive, but form the *comparative* and *superlative* from a preposition, adverb, or obsolete word.

	Comparative.	Superlative.
(<i>on this side</i> , citra.)	<i>nearer</i> , citēriōr.	<i>nearest</i> , citimūs.
(<i>within</i> , intra.)	<i>inner</i> , intēriōr.	<i>inmost</i> , intimūs.
(<i>beyond</i> , ultra.)	<i>farther</i> , ultēriōr.	<i>farthest</i> , { ultimūs.
(<i>near</i> , propē.)	<i>nearer</i> , propiōr.	<i>nearest</i> , { proximūs.
(<i>bad</i> , deter.)	<i>worse</i> , detēriōr.	<i>worst</i> , deterrimūs.
	<i>former</i> , priōr.	<i>first</i> , primūs.

Rem. 1. Dīvēs, rich; richer, ditiōr, divitiōr; richest, ditissimūs, tissimūs. (Cicero uses the longer form, Cæsar the shorter.)

2. Compound adjectives in dīcus, fīcus, vōlus, add *entior* for the comp., and *entissimus* for the superl.; e. g., bēnē-vōlus (*benevolent*), bēnēvōl-entior, bēnēvōl-entissimūs.

EXERCISE.

(372.) *Vocabulary.*

Disgraceful, unworthy, indignūs, ē, ūm (in+dignus).

Infamy, disgraceful crime, flāgi-tiūm, ī.

Wisdom, sapiētiā, s.

The Suevians, Suēvī, ōrum.

Warlike, bellicōsūs, ē, ūm.

Condition, conditio, (conditiō) īs.

America, Amērica, s.

Emperor, impērātōr, ōris (355, I., 2).

(373.) *Examples.*

- (a) *It is disgraceful to be conquered by a superior ; more disgraceful (to be conquered) by one inferior and lower.* | Indignum est a sup̄eriore vincī ; indignius ab inf̄eriore atque hūmiliore.

[Here the infin. pass. vincī is used as a neut. noun, nom. to est, and indignum agrees with it in the predicate.]

- (b) *What is better for man than wisdom ?* | Quid est hōmīni mēliūs sapiētiā (360, c) ?

[Here hōmīni is in the dat. (advantage or disadvantage, 106, II, b).]

(374.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est mēlius quam (360, b) sapiētiā.—Hiberniā mīnor est quam Britanniā.—Nihil est p̄jūs flāgiō.—Hostēs celerit̄ locā (309) sup̄eriōra occūpābant.—Maximā pars Aquitaniā obsidēs ad Cæsarem misit.—Suevōrum gens est longē maximā et bellicosissimā Germānōrum omnium (367, b).—Ariovistus agrum Sēquānum, quī optimus erat tōtius Galliæ occūpavit.—Infimā est conditio et fortunā servōrum.—Primus et maximus rēgum Romanōrum fuit Rōmulus.

(375.) *Translate into Latin.*

It is disgraceful to be conquered by a junior, more disgraceful by a senior.—What is better than virtue ? what worse than vice ?—What is better for man than honour ? Wisdom.—Europe is less than Asia ; Asia than America.—The bravest of the Belgians were seizing the higher grounds (locā).—The greatest part of Gaul made (fecit) a surrender.—The first and greatest of the Roman emperors was Cæsar.—The poor are often more benevolent (371, R. 2) than (quam) the rich.—The worst (men) are often more-happy than (quam) the best.—Among the Helvetians (by) far the richest and noblest was Orgetorix.

§ 5.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(376.) ADVERBS *derived from adjectives* admit of comparison. The *comp.* is the *neuter* form of the comparative of the adjective: the *superlative* substitutes ē for u s.

<i>Learnedly,</i> doct-ē;	<i>more learnedly,</i> doct-i ũ s;	<i>most learnedly,</i> doct-issim ē.
<i>Joyfully,</i> læt-ē;	<i>more joyfully,</i> læt-i ũ s;	<i>most joyfully,</i> læt-issim ē.
<i>Happily,</i> fēlic-īt ě r;	<i>more happily,</i> fēlic-i ũ s;	<i>most happily,</i> fēlic-issim e.
<i>Well, bĕnĕ;</i>	<i>better, mĕli ũ s;</i>	<i>best, optim ē.</i>

[No separate exercise upon these is necessary.]

§ 6.

SUPINE.

(377.) THE *Supine* presents the action of the verb under the form of a noun in two cases, the *accusative* and *ablative*. The *former supine* ends in ūm, the *latter* in ū; which endings are added to the *supine-stem* of the verb.

LESSON LXI.

Supines.

(378.) THE SUPINE-STEM is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

- (1) In 1st conj., āt; e. g., ām-āt-.
- (2) In 2d conj., it; e. g., mōn-it-.
- (3) In 3d conj., t; e. g., reg-t = rect-.
- (4) In 4th conj., it; e. g., aud-it-.

[*Rem.* Many supines, however, use different connecting vowels, or take s (and not t) before um and u. For this reason, therefore, all supine-stems will be given in the following vocabularies. Where no supine-stem is given, it is to be understood that the verb has no supine.]

(379.) The supine in ūm is a verbal noun of the accusative case, and is put after verbs of motion to express the *design* of that motion; e. g.,

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(a) <i>Ambassadors come to Cæsar to ask assistance.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>To go to sleep (to sleeping).</i></p> | <p>Lēgātī ād Cæsārēm vēniunt
rōgātūm* auxiliūm.</p> <p>Irē dormitūm.</p> |
|--|--|

(380.) The supine in ū is a verbal noun of the ablative case, and is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, &c.

* Rōgātūm = accus. answering to the question *whither*.

- (a) *It is (a thing) easy to do* | *Est facilis factū.**
 (or, to be done).
 (b) *It is (a thing) wonderful* | *Est mirabilis dictū.*
 to tell (or, to be told).

(381.) The following are nearly all the supines in *u* which are in use: *dictū, auditū, cognitū, factū, inventū, mēmōrātū.*

EXERCISE.

(382.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To ask, demand, postulāre</i> (postulāt).	<i>To besiege, oppugnāre</i> (oppugnāt).
<i>To congratulate, grātulārī</i> (grātulāt), <i>dep.</i>	<i>Hand, band of men, mēnus, ūs.</i>
<i>To come together, convēnīre</i> (convēnīre, convēn-, convent-).	<i>Wonderful, mirābilis, ē</i> (104).
<i>To complain, querōr</i> (quest).	<i>Very easy, perfacilis, ē</i> (104).
<i>Custom, consuetūdō, (consuetūdīn)</i>	<i>To do, facere</i> (fact).
<i>is</i> (f., 353, II., 3).	<i>To say, tell, dicere</i> (dict).
<i>To collect corn, frumentārī</i> (frumentāt).	<i>Best, optimus, ē, ūm</i> (370).
<i>A Treviran, Trēvir, ī</i> (85).	<i>To find, invenire</i> (in+vēnīre), invent.
	<i>To happen, accidere.</i>
	<i>To endure, tolerare</i> (tolerāt).
	<i>Senate, senātus, ūs.</i>

(383.) *Example.*

<i>Divitiacus came to Rome to ask assistance.</i>	<i>Divitiācūs Rōmām vēnit auxiliūm postulātūm.</i>
---	--

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative is used with the names of towns and small islands, to answer to the question *whither*; e. g., in (a) *Rōmām*.

(384.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Supine in ūm.*—*Principēs civitātis ad Cēsārem grātulātūm convēnerunt.*—*Trēvirī magnā mēnū* (55, a) *castrā oppugnātūm vēnerunt.*—*Lēgātī ab Aeduīs vēnerunt, questūm.*—*Cēsār ex consuetūdīnē ūnām lēgiōnēm misit frumentātūm.*—*Lēgātī Rōmām ad senātūm vēnerunt auxiliūm postulātūm.*

2. *Supine in ū.*—*Est perfacilis factū.*—*Est iucundū auditū.*—*Quādā (178, 1) sunt turpiā dictū.*—*Quōd optimū est factū, faciām.*—*Virtus difficilis est inventū.*—*Multī accidunt durā tolerātū.*

* *Factū* = ablative of respect, wherein.

(385.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Words in Italic to be rendered by supines.]

1. *Supine in um.*—The consuls, according to (ex) custom, sent a large band *to collect corn*.—All the chiefs of the Æduans were coming to Rome *to ask* assistance.—All the ambassadors, according to custom,* came-together to Cæsar *to congratulate* (him).—The soldiers of the tenth legion came to the general *to complain*.—The Germans came (in) a large band *to attack* the town.

2. *Supine in u.*—It is (a thing) wonderful *to be heard*.—What (quod) is base *to be said*, I will not say.—What is difficult *to be done*, I will do.—A true (verus) friend is difficult *to be found*.—Some-things are very easy *to be done*.

* According to custom = ex consuetudine.

§ 7.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.—FULLER STATEMENT. (LXII.—LXIX.)

(386.) It has been stated (262) that the *tense-stem* of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses is the same. In Lessons XLIV., XLV. we gave *one* mode of forming this tense-stem for each conjugation. There are several other modes, which we now proceed to state, taking up the conjugations separately. To make the tables complete, we shall repeat the *first* method at the head of each.

LESSON LXII.

Forms of Perfect-stem.—First Conjugation.

(387.) THERE are *four* ways of forming the perfect-stem in the *first conjugation*.

- I. By adding *äv* to the verb-stem ; äm-ärë, äm-äv
- II. " *ü* " sön-ärë, sön-ü
- III. *reduplicating* the first con-*
 sonant with ë ; } d-ärë, dëd-.
- IV. *lengthening the stem-vowel ;* jüv-ärë, jüv-.

On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the first conjugation.
- II. contains *eleven* simple verbs (of which a list may be found, 664).
- III. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *därë, to give, and stårë, to stand.*
- IV. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *jüvärë, to assist, and lävärë, to wash.*

(388.) To form the *perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect* of a

* To *reduplicate* a consonant is to *prefix* it to a stem with some connecting-vowel ; thus, *mord-*, reduplicate with *o*, *momord* ; *st-äre*, reduplicate with *e*, *stët-*, but the *second s* is dropped, *stët-*.

verb of any of the above classes, simply add the endings of those tenses respectively to the perfect-stem; thus :

	Infinitive.	Perfect-stem.	Perfect tense.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
			i.	eram.	erō.
<i>To forbid,</i>	vēt-ārē,	vētū-	isti.	erās.	erīs.
<i>To give,</i>	d-ārē,	dēd-	it.	erāt.	erīt.
<i>To help,</i>	jūv-ārē,	jūv-	imūs.	erāmūs.	erimūs.
			istīs.	erātīs.	erītīs.
			erunt, or ere.	erant.	erint.

EXERCISE.

(389.) [Hereafter, in all the vocabularies, the perfect and supine stems of verbs will be given in parentheses, immediately after the infinitive. When no perfect or supine stem is given, it will be understood that those forms of the verb are wanting; and where two are given, that the verb uses both. Thus: *to help*, jūvārē (jūv-, jūt-); *to glitter*, micārē (micū-); *to fold*, plicārē (plicāv-, plicū-, plicat-, plicīt-). In these examples micārē has no supine; plicārē has two perfect and two supine forms.]

(390.) Vocabulary.

To demand (command), impērāre (āv-, āt-).
To give, dāre (dēd-, dāt-, 387, III.).
Hunger, fāmēs (īs), (300).
To tame, dōmāre (dōmū-, dōmīt-, 387, II.).
To shine, or flash forth, ēmicāre (ēmīcū-, ē+micāre, 387, II.).
To surround, circumstāre (stīt- and stēt-).
The sand, dry ground, āridum, I (neut. of āridus, dry).
An attack, impētūs, ūs (110).
To assist, adjūvārē (jūv-, jūt-, ad+juvāre).

Door, fōrīs, (fōr) īs (300).
To creak, crepārē (crepū-, crepīt-).
To chide, reprove, increpare (in+crepārē, crepū-, crepīt-).
A little while, paullispēr (adv.).
To withstand, rēsistērē (restit-, rē+stāre).
To halt, constārē (constīt-, con+stāre).
As soon as, sīmūlatque (adv.).
To slay, kill, interficēre (interfēc-, interfect-).
To make, faciēre, id (fēc-, fact-, 199).

(391.) Examples.

- (1) Stāre=*to stand*; con-stāre, *to stand together, to halt*; circum-stāre, *to stand-around, to surround*. (The compounds of stāre, with prepositions of one syllable, have stīt- for perfect-stem; those with two, stēt-.)
- (2) *To resist or withstand* | Ālicui rēsistēre.
any one.

Partial Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs compounded with prepositions govern the dative.

- (3) *To put any one to flight.* | *Āliquem in fūgam dāre*
 (= to give unto flight).
 (4) *To make an attack.* | *Impētum faciēre.*

[The Latin words in the following exercises which illustrate the lessons are spaced.]

(392.) *Translate into English.*

Oppidāni, obsides quos Cæsār impērāv-ērāt, dēd-ērunt.—Vēnātōres fāmē (abl., 55, a) lūpos dōmu-ērunt.—Ex monte subitō (adv.) flammā ēmicu-ērunt.—Impērator oppidānos frumentō (55) adjūv-it.—Num crēpu-ērunt fōrēs?—Cæsār vēhēmenter (215, II., b) mīlītēs incrēpu-it.—Hostes nostrīs paullisper restit-ērunt.—Hostes mīlītibus (391, 2) circumstēt-ērunt, multosque interfēc-ērunt.—Nostri in hostes impētum fēc-ērunt, atque eōs (391, 3) in fūgam dēd-ērunt.—Nostri simūlatque in aridō constit-ērunt, in hostes impētum fēc-ērunt atque eōs in fūgam dēd-ērunt.

(398.) *Translate into Latin.*

The flame shone-forth.—From (ex) the-top-of the mountain (297, a) the flame suddenly shone-forth.—The huntsman had tamed the wolf.—The townsmen had given the hostages.—The Belgians gave all the hostages that (*rel. pron.*) Cæsar had demanded.—The general had reproved the lieutenant and (que) the soldiers.—Our (men) were-withstanding the enemy (dat.)—Our (men) bravely withstood the enemy, and (que) killed many.—The Belgians surrounded our (*men*) (dat., 391, 2), and killed many.—The Romans often put the Belgians to flight.—Our men halted upon (*in*) the dry-ground.—As-soon-as our men halted upon dry-ground, they bravely withstood the enemy (391, 2).—Our men put-to-flight the enemy whom (dat., 391, 2) they had bravely withstood.

LESSON LXIII.

Perfect-stem.—Second Conjugation.

(394.) THE perfect-stem in *second conjugation* is formed in *five* ways.

- I. By adding *ū* to the verb-stem ; mōn-ērē, mōn-ū-.
- II. " ēv " dēl-ērē, dēl-ēv-.
- III. " s " mān-ērē, man-s-.
- IV. reduplicating the first con- }
sonant and vowel ; } mōrd-ērē, mō-mōrd-.
- V. lengthening the stem-vowel ; vīd-ērē, vīd-.

(395.) On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the second conjugation.*
- II. contains only flērē, *to weep* ; nērē, *to spin* ; dēlērē, *to destroy* ; with the compounds of the obsolete words plērē, *to fill* ; ōlērē,† *to grow* ; suērē,† *to be accustomed*. [For a list, see 663, II.]
- III. contains *many* verbs, of which a list may be found (663, III). The rules of euphony must be applied here.
- (a) *b* before *s* sometimes passes into *s*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To command,</i>	jub-ēre,	jub-si = jussi,	jussūm (jub-sum).
- (b) *t*-sound before *s* dropped.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To laugh,</i>	rid-ēre,	rid-si = risi,	risūm (rid-sum).
- (c) *c*-sound + *s* = *x*. Any *c*-sound before *t* = *c*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To increase,</i>	aug-ēre,	aug-si = aux-i,	auctūm (aug-tum).
- (d) *c*-sound after *l* or *r* dropped before *s*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To glitter,</i>	fulg-ēre,	ful-si (ful(g)s-i),	ful-sum (ful(g)sum).
- IV. contains *four* simple verbs. See list (663, IV.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bite, champ,</i>	mord-ēre,	mō-mōrd-i,	morsūm (mōrd-sum).
<i>To vow, promise,</i>	spond-ēre,	spō-pond-i,	sponsūm (spond-sum).
- [The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication ; e.g.,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To answer, respondere,</i>	rēspōd-ēre,	rēspōd-i,	rēspōsum (rēspōd-sum).]
- V. contains *eight* simple verbs, for which see list (663, V.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To favour,</i>	fāv-ērē,	fāv-i,	fāūtum.
<i>To move,</i>	mōv-ērē,	mōv-i,	mōtum.

EXERCISE.

[Refer to 386 and 389.]

(396.) Vocabulary.

Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) is	<i>To fill up, complere</i> (complēv, complēt-, 395, II.) [con+plēre].
(399).	
<i>To destroy, dēlērē</i> (dēlēv-, dēlēt-, 395, II.).	<i>Good will, vōluntās, (voluntāt) is</i> (293).

* Many examples of this class have already occurred.

† Some of these have *sco* in present indicative : *adolescō, consuescō*.

To remain, *mānērē* (mans-, mans-, 394, III.).

To come, *vēnērē* (vān-, vent-).

A slayer, interfectoꝛ, *ōris* (319).

To see, *vidēre* (vid-, vis-, 395, V.).

To open, *āpērērē* (apērū-, apert-).

Gate, *portā*, æ.

To flee, *fūgēre* (io), (fūg-, fugit-).

Bit, bridle, *frēnum*, I (plur. i and æ).

Saguntum, *Sāguntum*, I.

Hill, *collis*, is (m., 302, R.).

Scipio } *Scipio*, nis.
(surnamed) }

Africanus, } *Africānūs*, I.

Numantia, *Nūmantia*, æ.

A defence, fortification, *mūnitio* (nis),
(f., 333, R.).

Even up to, as far as, *usquē* (adv.).

Great, ingens, (ingent) *is* (107).

Standard, *signū*, I.

Tooth, *dens*, (dent) *is*, (m., 295, R.).

(397.) Example.

On the very day of his ar-
rival.

E oodem quo vēnērat diē
(= the very day on which
day he had come).

(398.) Translate into English.

Hannibal *Sāguntum* *dēlevit*, *Scipio* *Carthāginem*.—*Scipio* *Africānus* *urbes* *duas* *pōtentissimas*, *Carthāginem* *ēt* *Nūmantiam* *dēlevit*.—*Cæsār* *hās* *mūnitiones* *diligentēr* *auxit*.—*Gallī* *partem* *collis*, *usquē* *ād* *mūrum* *oppidī*, *castris* (55, a) *complēvērunt*.—*Adventūs* *lēgātī* *summā* *spē* *et* *vōluntātē* *urbēm* *complēvit*.—*Diū* *barbārī* *in* *fidē* *mansērunt*.—*Itā* *complēres* *diēs* (191, a) *mansērunt* *castrā*.—*Cæsār* *eōdem* *diē* (118, II., c) *in* *Æduōs* *castrā* *mōvit*.—*Imperātor*, *eōdem* *quō* *vēnērat* *diē* (397) *castrā* *mōvit*.—*Brūtus* *et* *Cassius*, *interfectōres* (225, a) *Cæsāris*, *bellum* *ingens* *mōvērunt*.—*Lēgiōnes*, *sīmūlatquē* *nostrā* *signā* *viderunt*, *portās* *āpēruērunt*.—*Equus* *frēnōs* *mōmordīt*.—*Spōpondistinē* *prō* *amicō*? *Spōpondī*.

(399.) Translate into Latin.

Scipio destroyed *Carthage*, a most powerful city.—God has filled the world with all blessings (*bona*, *neut.*).—*Socrates* never laughed.—The forces of the Gauls had filled the whole (*omnem*) place, even-up to the wall of the town.—The Gauls had filled-up the higher (*sūpērior*) part of the hill with (their) very-crowded (*densissimus*) camp.—The coming of *Cæsar* filled the army with the highest hope and good-will. For many years the barbarians had remained in friendship and

* In the sense of excited, stirred up.

fidelity (fideque).—Cæsar moved (his) camp into the (territory of the) Æduans on the very day of his arrival.—The enemy saw our soldiers, and fled.—The horses were champing the bits.—The wolf bit the dog with his teeth (55, a).

LESSON LXIV.

Perfect-stems.—Third Conjugation.

(400.) THE perfect-stem in the *third conjugation* is formed in *six* ways.

- I. *By adding s to the verb-stem*; scrib-erë, scrip-s-.
- II. " ü " cöl-ërë, cöl-ü-.
- III. " v, or iv " pët-ërë, pet-iv-.
- IV. *reduplication*; curr-ërë, cūcurr-.
- V. *lengthening the stem-vowel*; fūg-ërë, fūg-.
- VI. *taking the simple verb-stem*; volv-ërë, volv-.

We shall take up these separately, treating in this lesson only the first.

(401.) CLASS I.—*Perfect-stem formed by adding s to the Verb-stem.*

Most verbs of the third conjugation come under this class. It has already been illustrated, but we here give a fuller account of the rules of euphony, in connexion with the various stem-endings.

1. b before s or t passes into p.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To write,</i>	scrib-ërë,	scrips-i (scrib-s-i),	scriptum (scrib-tum).
<i>To marry,</i>	nūb-ërë,	nups-i (nub-s-i),	naptum (nub-tum).

2. A c-sound +s = x (c, g, h, v, gu, qu are classed with c-sounds. If a stem ends in ct, the t is dropped, and the c unites with s to form x). Any c-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To lead,</i>	dūc-ërë,	dux-i (duc-s-i),	duc-tum.
<i>To cover,</i>	tēg-ërë,	tex-i (teg-s-i),	tec-tum (teg-tum).
<i>To draw,</i>	trāh-ërë,	trax-i (trah-s-i),	trac-tum (trah-tum).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To live,</i>	viv-ērē,	vix-ī (viv-s-ī),	vic-tum (viv-tum).
<i>To quench,</i>	extingu-ērē,	extinx-ī (extingu-s-ī),	{ extinc-tum (extingu-tum).
<i>To boil,</i>	cōqu-ērē,	cox-ī (coqu-s-ī),	coc-tum (coqu-tum).

We class here also,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To flow,</i>	flu-ērē (fluv-),	flux-ī (fluv-s-ī),	flux-um (fluv-sum).
<i>To build,</i>	stru-ērē (struc-),	strux-ī (struc-s-ī),	struc-tum.

3. d or t before s either (a) is dropped, or (b) passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
(a) <i>To divide,</i>	divid-ērē,	divis-ī (divid-s-ī),	divi-sum (divid-sum).
(b) <i>To yield, go,</i>	cēd-ērē,	cess-ī (cēd-s-ī),	ces-sum (cēd-sum).
<i>To send,</i>	mitt-ērē,	mis-ī (mit-s-ī),	mis-sum (mit-sum).

4. (a.) m or r before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To press,</i>	prēm-ērē,	press-ī (prem-s-ī),	pres-sum (prem-sum).
<i>To bear,</i>	gēr-ērē,	gess-ī (ger-s-ī),	ges-tum (ger-tum).

(b.) But if m be retained, it assumes p before it.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To take,</i>	sūm-ērē,	sum-ps-ī (sum-s-ī),	sump-tum (sum-tum).

5. If the stem ends in rg, the g is dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To scatter, sow,</i>	sparg-ērē,	spars-ī (sparg-s-ī),	spar-sum.

EXERCISE.

(402.) Vocabulary.

<i>To bind, surround,</i> cingere (cinx-, cinct-, 401, 2).	<i>Rampart,</i> vallūm, ī.
<i>To draw up,</i> instruere (instrux-, instruct-, 401, 2).	<i>Triple, triplex,</i> (triplic) īs (107).
<i>To shut,</i> claudere (claus-, claus-, 401, 3, a).	<i>Janus,</i> Jānus, ī.
<i>To retreat,</i> recedere (re+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>Numa,</i> Numā, æ.
<i>To approach,</i> accedere (ad+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>Veteran,</i> vēterānus, ā, ūm.
<i>To grant,</i> concedere (con+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>In three divisions,</i> tripartitō (adv.).
<i>To bear, carry on,</i> gerere (401, 4, a).	<i>Suddenly,</i> repente (adv.).
<i>To spend, consume</i> (con+sumere, sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b).	<i>By-night,</i> noctū (adv.).
	<i>There,</i> ibi (adv.).
	<i>Dragon,</i> drāco, (drācōn) īs (333).
	<i>Arms,</i> armā, ōrum (used only in plural).
	<i>Neighbouring,</i> finitimus, ā, ūm.
	<i>State,</i> civitas, (civitāt) īs (293).

(403.) Examples.

(a) <i>In all directions.</i>	In omnes partes.
(b) <i>Upon an expedition.</i>	In expeditiōnem.

(404.) *Translate into English.*

In tuā epistolā nihil mīhi scripsisti de tuis rebus.—Barbāri vallō et fossā (55, a) hibernā cinxērunt.—Cāsār triplicem āciem instruxit lēgiōnum vētērānarum.—Rōmāni templum Jāni his post Numae regnum clausērunt.—Impērātor exercitum in duas partes dīvisit.—Cāsār tripartitō milites ēquitesque in expēditionem misit.—Prīncipes rēpentē ex oppidō cum cōpiis recessērunt.—Milites noctū usquē ad castrā accessērunt.—Cāsār obsidibus (54) libertātem concessit.—Germāni cum Helvētiis bellum gesserunt.—Māgnū et grāvē ōnūs armōrum milites pressit.—Explorātor ad castrā hostium accessit, atque ibi māgnam partem diēi consumpsit.—Cadmus dentēs drācōnis sparsit.

(405.) *Translate into Latin.*

The ambassador wrote nothing concerning his own affairs.—The scout approached even-up to the walls of the town.—The lieutenant sent-away messengers in all directions.—Cæsar sent-away the horsemen in three divisions into the neighbouring states.—Cadmus slew (interfēcit) the dragon and sowed his (ejus) teeth.—Cæsar drew up the veteran legions in (abl.) a triple line.—The soldiers spent a great part of the day in the camp.—The enemy approached the town by-night.—The townsmen shut the gates.—The Helvetians retreated by night with all (their) forces.—Cæsar sent-away the scouts in three divisions upon an expedition.—The general sent-away the messengers by night in all directions.—The soldiers approached even-up to the rampart, and there spent a great part of the day.

LESSON LXV.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(406.) CLASS II.—*Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.*

(a) *Without change of the verb-stem (see list, 666, II., a);*

e. g.,

To nourish, maintain,

al-ērē,

āl-ū-i,

al-tum.

To honour, cultivate,

cōl-ērē,

cōl-ū-i,

cul-tum.

(b) *With change of verb-stem* (666, II., b).

<i>To place,</i>	pōn-ěřě,	pōs-ŭ-i,*	pōs-i-tum.
<i>To beget,</i>	gign-ěřě,	gēn-ŭ-i,	gēn-i-tum.

CLASS III.—*Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.*

(a) Adds *v* (and lengthens stem-vowel, if short). (List, 666, III., a.)

[These generally drop *n*, *r*, or *sc*,† or change the order of the letters. They must be carefully observed, as they occur in the vocabularies.]

<i>To despise,</i>	spērn-ěřě,	sprēv-i,	sprē-tum (spērn-tum).
<i>To be accustomed,</i>	suesc-ěřě,	suēv-i,	suē-tum.

(b) Adds *iv* (list, 666, III., b).

<i>To seek, strive after,</i>	pēt-ěřě,	pēt-iv-i,	pēt-i-tum.
-------------------------------	----------	-----------	------------

EXERCISE.

(407.) *Vocabulary.*

Spaniard, Hispanūs, i.

Command, jussūs, ūs.

Against, contrā (prep., acc.).

People, pōpulus, i.

Immediately, stātīm.

Avienus, Āviēnūs, i.

To instigate, stir up, instigare (āv-, āt-).

To place in, to put into, impōnēřě (im+ponēřě, 406, b).

To remove, rēmōvēřě (rēmōv-, rēmōt-, re+movēřě).

To arrange, distribute, dispōnēřě (dis+ponēřě, 406, b).

To relate, commēmōrāřě (āv-, āt-, con+memōrāřě).

Property, fāmīlia, ō.

To cross over, transire (trans+irē, iv-, it-).

To decree, determine, dēcernēřě (dēcērēv-, decrēt-, de+cernēřě).

To discourse, dissertēřě (dissēra-, dissert-, dis+sērēřě).

To plunder, diripēřě (ripa-, rept-di+rāpēřě)‡

A beast of burden, jumentum, i.

Sacred rites, sacrā, ōrum (n., pl.).

Instead of, prō (prep., abl.).

Advice, counsel, consiliū, i.

On account of, ōb (prep., acc.).

To despise, spērnēřě (406, III., a).

Winter, hiems, (hiēm) is (293).

(408.) *Examples.*

(a) *By the command of Cæsar.* | Jussū (abl., 55, a) Cæsāris.

* Pōnd=pōsīno; pōsuī=pos-iv-i.

† In these verbs the *n* or *sc* does not properly belong to the root, but is employed simply to *strengthen* the present indicative and infinitive; to *know*, nō-ere, strengthened nosc-ere, &c.

‡ Observe that the compounds of rāpēřě, făcēřě, cāpēřě, with *prepositions*, change *a* into *i* in the infinitive; diripēřě, conficēřě, accipēřě.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (b) <i>To place on shipboard.</i> | In nāvēs impōnērē (put into ships). |
| (c) <i>With (near) the army.</i> | Ād exercitum. |
| <i>On the borders of the Æduans.</i> | Ad fines Æduōrum. |

Ād is often used by Cæsar in the sense of *near* or *with* (i. e., *along with*).

(409.) *Translate into English.*

Hispani, jussu Cæsaris, eos exercitus quos (165) contra populum Romanum multos jam annos (191, a) aluerant, statim dimiserunt.—Avienē (voc.), quod (because) in Italiā milites populi Romani contra rempublicam instigasti (349, N.); et, pro militibus, tuam familiam in naves impesuisti; ob eas res, ab exercitu meo te removeo.—Cæsar legiones quas in Italiā, hibernorum causā (135, II., b), disposuerat, ad se revocavit.—Cur consilium meum spravisti?—Cæsar, his de causis quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat.—Multi salutem sibi (dat.) in fugā petiverant (or petierunt, 349, N.).—Cæsar totam hiemem (191, a) ipse ad exercitum (408, c) manere decrevit.—Cæsar duas legiones ad fines Æduorum posuit.

(410.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Spaniards had maintained an army (for) many years (191, a).—Orgetorix maintained, at-his-own-expense (sumptu suo), a large number of soldiers.—Cæsar placed the camp on-the-borders-of (408, c) the Sequanians.—Socrates discoursed concerning (de) the immortality of the soul.—The pirates plundered many towns.—Cæsar distributed three legions in Italy, for-the-sake-of winter-quarters.—Thou-hast-despised my counsels; thou-hast-instigated the soldiers against the republic; thou hast put beasts-of-burden instead of soldiers into the ships: on-account-of these things, I remove thee from my army.—The Romans honoured most-religiously (maximā religione) the sacred-rites of Jupiter.—Cæsar, for (de) these reasons, had determined to cross the Rhine.—Many soldiers sought safety for themselves (by) flight.—The inhabitants sought peace from (a) the Romans.

LESSON LXVI.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(411.) CLASS IV.—*Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

[Some of these present *vowel-changes*, which must be carefully observed. (a) When the first vowel is *i* or *u*, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs, with *ē*. (c) The compounds of *dārē*, *to give*, with *l*.]

(a) First vowel *i*, *o*, or *u*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To learn</i> ,	disc-ērē,	dī-dīc-ī (<i>s dropped</i>),	(no supine).
<i>To demand</i> ,	posc-ere,	pō-posc-ī,	(no supine).
<i>To beat</i> ,	tund-ērē,	tū-tūd-ī,	tū-sum (<i>tud-sum</i>).

(b) Other verbs reduplicate with *e* (note *vowel-changes* in stems).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To fall</i> ,	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-ī (<i>i short</i>),	cā-sum (<i>cad-sum</i>).
<i>To drive, repel</i> ,	pell-ērē,	pē-pul-ī,	pul-sum.
<i>To fell, kill</i> ,	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-ī (<i>i long</i>),	cās-um.

(c) Compounds of *dārē*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To add</i> ,	ad-dērē,	ad-dīd-ī,	ad-dī-tum.
<i>To lose</i> ,	per-dērē,	per-dīd-ī,	per-dī-tum.

EXERCISE.

(412.) *Vocabulary.*

The whole, ūniversus, ā, ūm.

Duty, service, mānus, (mānēr) is (345).

Walls, mœniā, ūm (pl., neut.).

Coming together, conflict, congress-ūs, ūs.

Seventy, septuaginta (indecl.).

To touch, tangērē (tētīg-, tact-, 411, b).

To spare, parcērē (pēpero-, parcīt-, pars-; governs *dative*).

To surround, cingēre (401, 2).

Nobody, nēmo, (nemīn) is (m. and f., 25, a).

Woman, mūlier, is (f., 25, a).

Child, infant, infans, (infant) is (c., 25, a).

Thirty, trīginta.

Eighty, octoginta.

Immense, immensus, ā, ūm.

Sum-of-money, pēcūnia, æ.

To add, addēre (411, c).

(413.) *Examples.*


(1) *To demand peace of* Cæsar.

(a) Cæsārēm pācēm poscērē; or (b) pācēm a Cæsārē poscērē.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *demanding* (*a*) govern two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; but (*b*) the *person* may be put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (2) <i>About twenty.</i> | <i>Circiter viginti.</i> |
| (3) <i>To give one's self wholly up.</i> | <i>Tōtum sē dārē (= to give one's self whole up).</i> |
| (4) <i>The leader spared women.</i> | <i>Dux mulieribus pēpercit.</i> |

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *sparing* govern the dative.

 Observe, the perfect of *cādērē*, *to fall*, is *cēcīdī*; of *cōdērē*, *to fell or kill*, *cēcīdī*.

(414.) *Translate into English.*

Lēgātī ad Cēsarem vēnērunt, eumque pācem (413, 1, *a*) *pōpscērunt.*—*Hōc ā mē* (413, 1, *b*) *mūnus ūniversā prōvinciā pōpscit.*—*Pueri linguam Latinam didicērant.*—*Ā Grācis Galli urbes mēnibus cingērē didicērunt.*—*Nostri, in primō congressū, circiter septuaginta cēcīdērunt; in his Quintus Fulgīnius.*—*Arbōr vētus cēcīdīt, quam* (165) *ferrō* (55, *a*) *nēmo cēcīdit.*—*Lēgātus, simūlac prōvinciam tētigit, inertiae* (dat.) *tōtum se dēdit.*—*Postquam Cēsār vēnit, obsīdes, armā, servos pōpscit.*—*Mīlites nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus, pēpercerunt.*—*Cēsār lēgiōnibus cohortēs circiter triginta addīdit.*—*Mors nulli* (194, R. 1) *homīnum* (*partit. gen.*) *pēpercit* (413, 4).

(415.) *Translate into Latin.*

The *Æduans* demanded peace of *Cæsar* (413, 1, *b*).—The whole province demanded peace of the Romans (413, 1, *a*).—Of-our-men (*nōstri*, nom., pl.) about eighty fell; among them, *Labienus*.—Have you (135, II., *a*) learned the Latin language?—The farmer felled very-many (*plurimas*) trees in the wood.—As soon as the lieutenant touched the province, he plundered many towns.—The general demanded seventy hostages, and an immense sum of money.—The old trees fell.—This service the general demanded of me.—The leader spared all the temples of the gods; but the soldiers spared not (*nōn*) women nor (*nōn*) children.—*Cæsar* added to the foot-soldiers about twenty cohorts.—*Cæsar* added to the foot-soldiers thirty horse-soldiers.

LESSON LXVII.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(416.) CLASS V.—*Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.*(a) *Without vowel-change.*

<i>To read, gather,</i>	<i>lĕg-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>lĕg-i,</i>	<i>lec-tum.</i>
<i>To conquer,</i>	<i>vinc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>vic-i,</i>	<i>vic-tum.</i>

(b) *With vowel-change.*

<i>To drive,</i>	<i>ag-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>ĕg-i,</i>	<i>ac-tum.</i>
<i>To break,</i>	<i>frang-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>frĕg-i,</i>	<i>frac-tum.</i>

(c) *io verbs (199).*

<i>To fly,</i>	<i>fŭg-iĭ,</i>	<i>fŭg-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fŭg-i,</i>	<i>fŭg-i-tum.</i>
<i>To take,</i>	<i>căp-iĭ,</i>	<i>căp-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>cĕp-i,</i>	<i>cap-tum.</i>
<i>To cast,</i>	<i>jăc-iĭ,</i>	<i>jăc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>jĕc-i,</i>	<i>jac-tum.</i>
<i>To dig,</i>	<i>fŏd-iĭ,</i>	<i>fŏd-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fĕd-i,</i>	<i>fos-sum.</i>
<i>To make, do,</i>	<i>făc-iĭ,</i>	<i>făc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fĕc-i,</i>	<i>fac-tum.</i>

EXERCISE.

(417.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Remains, remnant, reliquiae, ūrum</i> (pl.) (57, R.).	<i>To hurt, conſicĕrĕ</i> (jĕc-, ject-, con+ jăcĕrĕ).
<i>To collect, colligĕrĕ</i> (lĕg-, lect-, con+ lĕgĕrĕ).	<i>To undertake, suscipĕrĕ</i> (cĕp-, cept-, sub+căpĕrĕ).
<i>To receive, take back, rĕcipĕrĕ</i> (cĕp-, cept-, rĕ+căpĕrĕ).	<i>To finish, conficĕrĕ</i> (fĕc-, fect-, con+ facĕrĕ).
<i>Headlong, praeceps, (praecepit) is</i> (adj., 107).	<i>To begin, incipĕrĕ</i> (incĕp-, incept-, in+căpĕrĕ).
<i>To receive, accipĕre</i> (cĕp-, cept-, ad+ căpĕre).	<i>Safe, tătus, ŕ, ūm.</i>
<i>To bring-together, to compel, cŏgĕrĕ</i> (cŏĕg-, coact-, con+ăgĕrĕ).	<i>Cappadocia, Cappădŏcia, ŕ.</i>
<i>To break through, perfringĕrĕ</i> (frĕg-, fract-, per+frangĕrĕ).	<i>A district, păgus, i</i>
<i>Dart, javelin, tĕlum, i.</i>	<i>Egypt, Aegyptus, i</i> (f.).
	<i>Easily, făcilĕ</i> (adv.).
	<i>Trial, jŭdiciŭm, i.</i>
	<i>Family of slaves, fămilia, ŕ.</i>

(418.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>To betake one's self back.</i>	<i>Sĕ rĕcipĕrĕ.</i>
<i>He went back to his house.</i>	<i>Sĕ dŏmŭm rĕcepit.</i>
(b) <i>Within the memory of our</i>	<i>Patrum noſtrŏrum mĕ-</i>
<i>fathers.</i>	<i>mŏriă</i> (abl., 55, a).

(c) *Lucius Cassius, the consul.* | *L. Cassius, consul.*

The (*prænomen*) first name is rarely written out. *L.* stands for *Lucius*, *T.* for *Titus*, &c. *Consul* is in apposition (225, a) with *L. Cassius*.

(d) *In mid-summer.* | *Mēdiā æstātē* (118, II., c).

(419.) *Translate into English.*

Servus meus orationes et historias et carmina legit.—Lēgātus reliquias exercitus colligit, itinēribusque tūtis per Capadociam sē in Āsiam rēcēpit.—Nostri acriter impetum fecerunt atque precipites hostes agerunt.—Labienus, cum his copiis quas a Cæsare accēperat, ad fines Ēduorum contendit.—Pompeius magnam ex Asiā et Ēgyptō classem cōgerat.—Milites faciliē (adv.) hostium aciem perfrēgerunt atque in eos impetum fecerunt.—Hic pagus unus, patrum nostrorum mēmoriā, L. Cassium consulem (418, c) interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum (323, N.) miserat.—Hostes subito tela in nostros conjecerunt.—Pompeius bellum verē (in the spring, 118, II., c) suscepit, mediā æstātē confecit.

(420.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general had collected (*cōgēre*) great forces.—Pompey brought-together a great army from Asia and Egypt.—Have you read the books of Cicero?—The general collected the remnant of his army, and betook himself into Gaul.—Our (men) drove the enemy headlong, and slew many.—Labienus had received four legions from Cæsar.—Labienus, with the legions which he had received from Cæsar, hastened to the confines of the Ēduans.—Orgetorix brought-together to the trial all his family-of-slaves from every side.—The enemy brought-together all (their) ships into one place.—The Romans easily broke-through the line-of-battle of the Ēduans.—Cæsar finished the great war in-mid-summer (418, d) which he had begun in-the-spring (118, II., c).

LESSON LXVIII.

Perfect-stem. — Third Conjugation, concluded.(421.) CLASS VI.—*Perfect-stem = simple Verb-stem.*

(a) Stems ending in u or v (list, 666, VI., a).

<i>To sharpen,</i>	ścū-ērē,	ścū-i,	acū-tum.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-ērē,	volv-i,	volū-tum.

(b) Consonant-stems (list, 666, VI., b).

<i>To turn,</i>	vert-ērē,	vert-i,	ver-sum.
-----------------	-----------	---------	----------

(c) Compounds of cando and fendo (*obs.*) belong here ;

e. g.,

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-ērē,	incend-i,	incen-sum.
<i>To defend, ward off,</i>	dēfend-ērē,	dēfend-i,	dēfen-sum.

EXERCISE.

(422.) Vocabulary.

*The back, tergum, i.**To flow together, conflūere (conflux-, conflux-, con+fluēre, 401, 2).**Discipline, disciplinā, æ.**Austerity, severity, sēvēritas, (severitat) is (293).**To dissolve, dissolvēre (solv-, solūt-, dis+solvēre).**To return, rēvertēre (rēvert-, revers-, rē+vertēre).**To appoint, to station, to determine, constituēre (stitū-, stitūt-, con+stātūēre).**To divide, to distribute, distribuēre (bū-, būt-, dis+tribūēre).**Desirous, covetous, cūpidus, ā, ūm (governs genitive).**To know, learn, cognoscēre (cognōv-, cognīt-, con+noscēre).**To turn, vertēre (421, b).*

(423.) Examples.

(a) *The general appointed a day for the council.*

Impērātor diem conciliō (dat.) constituit.

(b) *What (number of) long ships he had.*

Quidquid nāvium (180) longārum habēbat.

(c) *To divide or distribute among.*

Distribuere (with acc. of thing, and dat. of person).

(424.) Translate into English.

Hostes tergā vertērunt.—Divitiæ (57, R.) quæ ad Rōmam confluxērunt, mōrum disciplinam sēvēritatēque dissolvērunt.—Cæsar diem cum lēgātis constituit.—Dies, quam Cæsar constituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum

(150) *rēvertērunt*.—*Mīlites sēse* (145, c) *fortīter* (215, 2) *dēfendērunt*.—*Hostes cōpias suas in tres partes distribuerant*.—*Cæsar, quidquid nāvium longārum hābēbat, lēgātis præfectisque* (423, c) *distribuit*.—*Prōcellæ fluctūs vastos ad littorā volvērant*.—*Cæsar exercitum flūmen* (113, II., a) *transducere constituit*.—*Cæsar Dumnōrigem Æduum sēcum* (125, II., b) *ducere constituit, quod (conj.) eum cupidum impērii* (synt., 698, b, 1) *cognōverat*.—*Æduī ex itinere dōmum* (113, III., R.) *revertērunt*.

(425.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers defended the city very bravely (376).—The general stationed the foot-soldiers near (ad, 408, c) the wall of the town.—On-the-next-day (118, II., c) Cæsar stationed all the horse-soldiers in-front-of (prō) the camp.—The chiefs of the states returned to Cæsar.—The day which Cæsar had appointed for the council came, and the chiefs of the states returned to him.—Our (men) turned their backs.—The riches of the Romans had dissolved (their) discipline and austerity of manners.—What money (423, b) he had he distributed among (423, c) the lieutenants and soldiers.—The Æduans divided their forces into two parts.—The tempests rolled vast waves to the stars.—The general determined to take (ducere) the lieutenant with him.—The seas were rolling great waves to the shores.

LESSON LXIX.

Perfect-stem.—Fourth Conjugation.

(426.) THE perfect-stem in the fourth conjugation is formed in five ways.

- | | | | |
|------|--|------------------|-----------------|
| I. | By adding <i>iv</i> to verb-stem ; | <i>aud-irē,</i> | <i>aud-iv-.</i> |
| II. | “ <i>ū</i> “ | <i>āpēr-irē,</i> | <i>āpēr-ū-.</i> |
| III. | “ <i>s</i> “ | <i>sēp-irē,</i> | <i>sep-s-.</i> |
| IV. | lengthening stem-vowel ; <i>vēn-irē,</i> <i>vēn-.</i> | | |
| V. | taking simple verb-stem ; <i>compēr-irē,</i> <i>compēr-.</i> | | |

(427.) On this table, observe that *Class*

I. contains *most* of the verbs of the fourth conjugation.

[Numerous examples have already occurred. Any peculiar supines are given in the vocabularies.]

II. contains *four* simple verbs (see list, 667, II.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To open, uncover,</i>	āpēr-irē,	āpēr-ŭ-i,	āper-tum.
<i>To leap,</i>	sāl-irē,	sāl-ti-i,	sal-tum.

III. contains *nine* simple verbs (see list, 667, III.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-irē,	vinx-i (vinc-s-i),	vinc-tum.
<i>To think,</i>	sent-irē,	sens-i (sent-s-i),	{ sen-sum (sent-sum).

IV. contains *but one* verb.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To come,</i>	vēn-irē,	vēn-i,	ven-tum.

V. contains *two* verbs.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To ascertain, find,</i>	compēr-irē,	compēr-i,	comper-tum.
<i>To discover,</i>	rēpēr-irē,	rēpēr-i,	rēper-tum.

EXERCISE.

(428.) *Vocabulary.*

To leap down, dēsillire (dēsillū- and dēsili-, dēsult-, dē+salīre).

To come near, to approach, appropinquāre (ad+propinquāre, av-, at-), with *dat.*

To agree, consentīre (con+sentīre, 427, III.).

To disagree, dissentīre (dis+sentīre, 427, III.).

To come to, reach, arrive at, pervēnīre (pēr+vēnīre, 427, IV.).

To come together, assemble, convenire (cōn+venīre, 427, IV.).

To find, invēnīre (in+vēnīre, 427, IV.).

Thither, to that place, eō (*adv.*).

To open, āperīre (427, II.).

When, quum.

Youth, jūventūs, (jūventūt) is (f.).

To lay waste, pōpūlārī, dep. (pōpūlāt-).

After that, postquam (adv.).

Example.

(a) *In a battle of cavalry.* | Œquestri praeliō.

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used to express the manner of an action, especially with an adjective.

(429.) *Translate into English.*

Mīlites ex nāvibus dēsillērunt et hostibus (391. 2) appropinquārant (349, N.).—Oppidāni portas āperuērunt, et se, atque oppidum Cæsāri dēdērunt.—Hostes inter se dissensērunt.—Omnes cīves unā mentē (abl., 428, a) consensērunt.

runt.—*Helvëtii jam per angustias cōpias suas transduxērunt, et in Æduorum fines pervēnērunt, eōrumque agros pōpūlabantur.*—*Cæsar cum Lābiēno Nūmantiam (713) pervēnit, ibique consūles invēnit.*—*Quum milītes eō convēnērunt, nāves ūnum in lōcum coegērunt.*—*Eō postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsides et arma pōposcit.*

(430.) *Translate into Latin.*

After-that the townsmen saw the standards, they opened the gates, and gave themselves (up) to Cæsar.—The Germans, in the cavalry battle (428, *a*), leaped-down from (their) horses.—The general led the army through the straits, and on the seventh day arrived at the boundaries of the Germans.—The townsmen leaped-down from the wall.—All the soldiers agreed (with) one mind and voice (*v o x*).—When Cæsar arrived-at the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—When the general reached Numantia, he called together the citizens.—When the horsemen reached the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—The lieutenant led-back the soldiers to the town, and there found the general.

§ 8.

FORMS OF TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION, PASSIVE.

LESSON LXX.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action.—Indicative Passive.

(431.) THE tenses for completed action, passive (*perfect, pluperfect, future perfect*), are compounded of the perfect participle passive and of the tenses of the verb *esse, to be*: thus, *āmātūs sum, I have been loved; āmātūs es, thou hast been loved, &c.*

(432.) (a) The perfect participle of any verb is the form of which the *supine* is the accusative, and is inflected (like an adjective of three terminations) with the endings *ūs, ā, ūm*; thus :

<small>Supines.</small>	<small>Perf. Part.</small>	
Āmāt-ūm,	āmāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>loved.</i>
Mōnīt-ūm,	mōnīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>advised.</i>
Rect-ūm.	rect-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>ruled.</i>
Audit-ūm,	audit-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>heard.</i>

(b) The perfect participle, then, of any verb, is formed by adding the inflection-endings *ūs, ā, ūm* to the supine-stem.

(433.)

PARADIGM.

PERFECT PASSIVE.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. sūm, <i>I have been loved.</i> ēs, <i>thou hast been loved.</i> est, <i>he, she, it, has been loved.</i>
	Plural. sūmūs, <i>we have been loved.</i> estis, <i>ye or you have been loved.</i> sunt, <i>they have been loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. ērām, <i>I had been loved.</i> ērās, <i>thou hadst been loved.</i> ērāt, <i>he, she, it, had been loved.</i>
	Plural. ērāmūs, <i>we had been loved.</i> ērātis, <i>ye or you had been loved.</i> erant, <i>they had been loved.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. ēro, <i>I shall have been loved.</i> ēris, <i>thou wilt have been loved.</i> ērit, <i>he, she, it, will have been loved.</i>
	Plural. ērimūs, <i>we shall have been loved.</i> ēritis, <i>you will have been loved.</i> erunt, <i>they will have been loved.</i>

(434.) Vocabulary.

To rout, to defeat, pellere (pēpūl-, puls-, 411, b).	Beginning, initium, i.
To divulge, enuntiare (ē+nuntiāre, āv-, āt-).	Casticus, Casticus, i.
Sure, certain, certus, a, um.	Conference, colloquium, i.
To drive back, repellere (rēpūl-, repuls-, rē+pellere).	To hold, obtinere (obtinu-, obtent-, ob+tēnere).
Private information, indicium, i.	Departure, discessus, ūs.
	Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) is (f, 293).

(435.) Examples.

(a) To inform any one.	Āliquē certiorē facere (= to make any one more certain).
(b) Cæsar was informed.	Cæsar certior factus est (= Cæsar was made more certain).
(c) All Gaul is divided into three parts.	Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.

The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with *est* as an adjective, and is then to be rendered as a *present tense*; e. g., in (c), *est divisa*=*is divided*.

(436.) *Translate into English.*

Miles vulnerātus est.—Bella gesta erant.—Exercitus Cassii ab Helvitiis pulsus erat, et sub iugum missus erat.—Ea res Helvitiis (54) per indicium enuntiata est.—Helvetii de Cæsaris adventu certiores facti sunt.—Ubi de Cæsaris adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum miserunt.—Barbāri telis (93, II., b, R.) et munitione repulsi sunt.—Initium fugæ a Dumnorige et ejus equitibus factum est.—Legati a Divitiaco, Æduo (225, a) ad Cæsarem missi erant.—Pater Castici regnum in Sequānis multos annos (191, *Rule*) obtinuerat et a senātu populi Rōmāni amicus (80, a) appellatus erat.—Dies colloquio (54) constitutus est, ex eō diē quintus.

(437.) *Translate into Latin.*

The centurions of the first ranks were wounded on the same day (118, II., c).—Cæsar was informed (435, a) of (de) the approach of the enemy.—The general had been informed of the departure (discessus) of the Germans.—The beginning of the flight had been made by the soldiers of the tenth legion.—The tenth legion had been defeated by the Germans, and had been sent under the yoke.—The conspiracy of the nobility was divulged to the Helvetians through private-information.—The war had been carried-on (for) many years (191, *Rule*).—The enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—Ambassadors were sent by Cassius the consul (225, a) to the chiefs.—The Æduans were called friends (80, a) by the senate of the Roman people.—The townsmen were wounded by the darts of the soldiers.—The horsemen of the enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—A day had been appointed for the conference.

§ 9.

PARTICIPLES. (LXXI.—LXXV.)

(438.) THE *Participle* presents the idea of the verb under the form of an adjective : (a) the *rising* sun ; (b) I saw the boy *writing* a letter. Sometimes, as in (a), its use is wholly adjective ; again, as in (b), it governs the case of its verb. There are two *active* participles in Latin, the participle of the *present* and the participle of the *future* ; two *passive*, the *perfect* and the *verbal* in *dus*.

LESSON LXXI.

Present Participle Active.

(439.) (a) THE endings of the present participle active for the four conjugations are,

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ans,	-ens,	ens,	-iens.

(b) By adding these endings to the stems respectively of the verbs *ā m-āre*, *mō n-ēre*, *rē g-ērē*, *aud-īrē*, we obtain the present participle active :

<i>Loving,</i>	<i>advising,</i>	<i>ruling,</i>	<i>hearing.</i>
Ā m-ans,	mō n-ens,	rē g-ens,	aud-iens.

(440.) The present participle is declined like an adjective of the third class (108).

Singular.		Plural.
N. V. Āmans.		N. V. Āmantēs, āmantiā.
Gen. Āmantīs.		Gen. Āmantiūm.
Dat. Āmanti, &c.		Dat. Āmantiūbūs, &c.

Rem. The abl. sing. ending is *i* when the part. is used strictly as an adj. ; e. g., in *florenti rosā*, in a *blooming* rose.

(a) Observe carefully that the Latin present participle active expresses *incomplete* or *continued* action; the language has no *active* participle to express *complete* action. We cannot translate the English *having loved* by any Latin active participle.

(b) But *deponent* verbs (206) have both participles, the *present* and the *perfect*; *exhorting*, hort-ans; *having exhorted*, hort-âtus.

EXERCISE.

(441.) Vocabulary.

To rise, ōriri (dep., ort-).

To desire, cūpērē (iō-, iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

Labour, toil, lābōr, (lābōr) is (m., 319).

Watching, watchfulness, vigilantia, æ.

Especially, præsertim (adv.).

To depart, discēdērē (dis+cēdere, 401, 3, b).

To weep, flērē (flēv-, flēt-, 395, II.).

To look upon or at, intueri (dep.).

All, the whole, cunctus, ā, ūm.

To worship, adore, adorare.

Eye, oculus, i.


A Persian, Persā, æ.

To doubt, dubitārē (av-, at-).

To set out, prōficisci (dep., prōfect-).

To sit, sēdērē (sēd-, sess-, 394, V.).

Firmament, heaven, cælum, i.

To shine, micāre (389, , æ).

The sun, sōl, (sōl) is (m., 319).

Full, plēnus, ā, ūm (with gen.).

To be wanting, de-essē (with dat.).

Star, stellā, æ.

To set (e. g., as the heavenly bodies), occidērē (occid-, occās-, ob+cādērē).

To throw before, prōjicērē (jēc-, ject-, pro+jacēre).

(442.) (a) Recollect that, to form pres. part. act., you add to the stem ans in 1st conj.; e. g., am-ans: ens in 2d and 3d conj.; e. g., mōn-ens, dic-ens: iens in 4th conj.; e. g., aud-iens. Also, add iens in the iō verbs (199) of 3d conj.; e. g., cūp-io, cūp-iens; fac-io, fac-iens.

(b) In *deponent* verbs, the same rules apply: hort-āri, hort-āns: ōr-iri, ōr-iens; intu-ēri, intu-ens, &c. The perf. act. part. in deponents adds ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem: hort-āri, hort-āt-ūs, &c.

(c) The participle is used to *abridge* discourse.

(1) He heard me when I { He heard me saying that.
said that= { Mē id dicentēm audīvīt.

(2) God, who governs all { God, governing all things.
things= { Deūs, omniā gūbernāns.

(3) To him that desires= { (The man) desiring.
Cāpiēnti.

(d) He threw himself at { *He threw himself before Cæsar, at
his feet.*
Cæsar's feet, { *Sē Cæsari ad pēdēs prōjēcit.*

(e) Can enim, vero, or autem stand first in a clause or sentence? (No.)

(443.) *Translate into English.*

Mē id dīcentem audīvistīne?—*Persæ sōlem ōrientem* (442, c) *ādōrant.*—*Lābiēnus, suos (his men) hortātus, cūpientibus signum dat.*—*Nōn enim lābor aut vīgīlantia, cūpienti præsertim aliquid* (178, 5), *Cassio deērat* (267, b).—*Cæsar ab hibernis in Itāliam discēdens, lēgātōs convōcat.*—*Mūlieres flentes sēse Cæsari* (442, d) *ad pēdēs prōjēcērunt.*—*Nēmo, cunctam intūens terram, dē dīvinā prōvidentiā dūbitābit.*—*Cæsar, in Italiā prōfīciscens, lēgātōs omnes ad sē rēvōcāvit.*—*Divitiācus, flens, ā Cæsare hęc (these things) pētēbat.*—*Cicēro Cātōnem vidit in hortō sēdentem.*—*Quantā* (184, R. 1) *est sāpientia Deī, omniā gūbernantis?*

(444.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The words which illustrate the lesson are in *Italic*.]

The firmament is full of *shining* (438, a) stars.—No one, *when he looks at* (= looking, 442, c, 1) the firmament and stars, will doubt respecting (d e) the wisdom of God.—Did they hear me (135, II., a) *when I said* (= saying) that (i d)?—The barbarians were-worshipping the *setting* sun.—Labienus, *having exhorted* (440, b) his men, made an attack upon the enemy (i n hostes).—Cæsar willingly gave the signal to the soldiers *when they desired it* (= desiring).—To *him that desires* (= desiring) anything, no labour will-be-wanting (267, b).—Cæsar, *departing* from winter-quarters, gives rewards to the soldiers.—The eye, not *seeing* itself (s ē, acc.), sees other-things (ā l i ā).—The Æduans, *weeping*, threw themselves at the feet of Cæsar (442, d).—I saw my brother *sitting* in the garden yesterday.—How-great is the power of God, *who governs* (= governing) the world?

LESSON LXXII.

Participle Future Active.

(445.) THE ending of the future participle active is ūrūs, which, added to the *supine-stem*, forms the participle; e. g.,

About to love, or one who will love, amāt-ūrūs.

About to advise, or one who will advise, mōnīt-ūrūs.

(446.) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The different tenses of *esse* (*to be*), joined with the participle future active, form what is called the *periphrastic conjugation*.

Pres.	{	amātūrūs sūm, <i>I will love, am about to love, intend to love.</i>		
		amātūrūs es, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		
Past.	{	amātūrūs ēram, <i>I was about to love, intended to love, &c.</i>		
		amātūrūs erās, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		
Fut.	{	amātūrūs ero, <i>I shall be about to love, shall be on the point of loving, &c.</i>		
		amātūrūs eris, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		

EXERCISE.

(447.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To call upon, invocāre (in+vocāre, āv-, āt-).</i>	<i>Alone, sōlus, ā, ūm (194, 1).</i>
<i>To collect into a flock, congrēgāre (āv-, āt-).</i>	<i>To cross over, trājicere (trājēo-, trājēct-, trans+jācere).†</i>
<i>Foreign, āliēnus, ā, ūm.</i>	<i>Ammon, a surname of Jupiter, Hammōn, Is.</i>
<i>To procure, comparāre (āv-, āt-, con+parāre).</i>	<i>To behold, spectāre (āv-, āt-).</i>
<i>To last, dūrāre (dūrāv-, dūrāt-).*</i>	<i>To proceed, pergēre (perrex-, perrect-).</i>
<i>To implore, implōrare (in+plorāre, āv-, āt-).</i>	<i>To consult, consūlāre (consūlu-, consult-).</i>

(448.) *Example.*

<i>The Athenians sent ambassadors to consult the oracle.</i>	<i>Athēniensēs lēgātos mīsērunt, ōrācūlum consultūrōs.</i>
--	--

* Dūrāre, transitive, = *to harden*; intrans., = *to become hard, i. e., to last.*

† Transjicere, transit., = *to convey over*; intrans., = *to cross over.*

Rule of Syntax.—The future active participle is used after a verb of motion to express the *design* of that motion.

(449.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Āvēs, in āliēnas terras migrātūræ, congregantur.*—*Cæsar, in Galliam prōfectūrus, centuriōnes convocat.*—*Germānī, bellum gestūrī, Deōs invōcāvērunt.*—*Sapiens bōnā (neut. pl.) compārat semper dūrātūrā.*

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—*Cæsar dē quartā vīgiliā castrā mōtūrus est.*—*Scripturus sum.*—*Dumnōrix impērium suæ civitātis obtentūrus erat.*—*Impērātor, cum solā dēcimā lēgiōne prōfectūrus erat.*—*Æduī auxiliū ā jōpūlo Rōmano implōrātūri sunt.*—*Germānī bellum gestūrī erant.*

3. *Future Participle used to express a purpose* (448).—*Scīpio in Africam trājēcit, Carthāginem dēlētūrus.*—*Ingens hōmīnum multitūdō in urbem congrēgātur, lūdōs spectātūrā.*—*Alexander in Asiam contendit, regnum Persārum occupātūrus.*—*Alexander ad Jōvem Hammōnem pergit, consultūrus dē ōrigine suā.*

(450.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. The soldiers, *when-about-to-set-out* for (in) Spain, called-upon the gods.—Many (men) have procured possessions (*bōnā*) *which-will-not-last* (=not about-to-last).—The general, *when-about-to-cross* the river, sends-away the horse-soldiers.—*Cæsar, intending-to-send* a messenger, calls together the centurions.

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—*Dumnōrix was about-to-seize-upon* the royal-power.—The general is *about-to-set-out* from the camp with five legions.—The *Æduans* are *about-to-carry-on* a fierce war.—The hostages were *intending-to-implore* aid from the general.

3. *Future Participle to express a purpose.*—The *Æduans* sent ambassadors *to-implore* help from *Cæsar*.—The enemy crossed the river *in-order-to-besiege* the town.—The men flock (*congregor*) from-every-side to the town, *to-behold* the games.

P

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Participle Passive.

(451.) (a) THE perfect passive participle is formed (as stated 432, b) by adding the adjective-endings ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem; e. g.,

Inf.	Supine-stem.	Perf. Part.	
amāre,	amāt-	amāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	loved, or having been loved.
vincere,	vict-	vict-ūs, ā, ūm,	{ conquered, or having been conquered.

(b) It is declined throughout like an adjective of the first class (76), and must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case; e. g., puer laudātūs, puellā laudātā.

(c) The deponent verbs use the perfect participle form actively; e. g., hortātus, having exhorted.

EXERCISE.

(452.) *Vocabulary.*

Sudden, rēptinūs, ā, ūm.
To alarm, perturbāre (āv-, āt-).
To seize, snatch up, arripere (arrip-
 io, arripū-, arripit-, ad+ripere).
Auxiliaries, auxiliā, ōrum.*
To put-to-flight, discomfit, figare.
To drive-on or together, compellere
 (compul-, compulsi-, con+pellere).
To induce, adducere (dux-, duct-,
 ad+ducere).
Influence, auctoritas, (auctoritāt) is.
To prevail upon, permovere (mōv-,
 mōt-, per+movere, i. e., to move
 thoroughly).

A wagon, carrūs, i.
To buy up, cōmēre (ēm-, empt-,
 con+ēmēre).
Aristides, Aristides (Aristid) is.
Pharsalus, Pharsalus, i (f., 25, a).
To depart-out-of, excēdere (excess-,
 excess-, ex+cēdere).
Rhetoric, rhētoricā, m.
To expel, expellere (expul-, ex-
 puls-).
To stimulate, inducere (dux-, duct-).
Strong-desire, cōpīditas, (tāt) is
 (393).

(453.) *Examples.*

(a) *At Corinth.*

At Rome.

At Carthage.

At Athens.

Corinthi.

Rōmæ.

Carthaginē.

Athēnis.

Rule of Syntax.—The place where is put in the ablative,

* Auxilium in sing. = aid, assistance; in plur. = auxiliary troops.

if the name be of the *third* declension or plural number ; otherwise in the *genitive*.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| (b) <i>From Rome.</i> | R o m ā. |
| <i>From Carthage.</i> | C a r t h ā g i n ē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whence* is put in the *ablative*.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| (c) <i>To Rome.</i> | R ō m ā m. |
| <i>To Athens.</i> | A t h ē n ā s. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whither* is put in the *accusative* if it be a town or small island.

Rem. With the names of countries or large islands, the prep. *in* or *ad* is employed: *to Italy*, in *Itāliam*; *to Egypt*, ad *Ægyptum*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (d) <i>The soldiers, having been defeated, took to flight.</i>
(<i>Lat.</i> The soldiers, <i>defeated</i> , threw themselves into flight.) | Mīltēs, pulsī, in fūgam sē
conjēcērunt. |
| (e) <i>The chief, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Rome.</i> | Princeps, patriā expulsūs,
Rōmam fūgit. |
| (f) <i>As large a number as possible.</i> | Quam maximus nūmērus. |
| (g) <i>A sudden occurrence.</i> | Rēpentinā rēs. |

(454.) *Translate into English.*

Nostri (*our men*), rēpentinā rē (55, a) perturbāti, armā arripiunt.—Auxiliā perturbātā, in fūgam sē conjēcērunt.—Mīlites hostes fūgātos in flūmen compulērunt.—Helvētii, his rēbus adducti, lēgātos ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Galli, his rēbus adducti, et auctōritatē Orgetorigis permōti, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numērum coēmērunt.—Prīncipēs, adventū Romanōrum permōti, lēgātos ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Āristīdes, patriā expulsūs, Lācēdāmōnem fūgit.—Diōnysius, Sýracūsīs expulsūs, Cōrinthī pūeros dōcēbat.—Prīncipēs, oppidō expulsī, Rōmam (453, c) vērērunt.—Lēgātus, rēpentina rē perturbātus, centuriōnes convocāt.

(455.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Helvetians, prevailed upon by the influence of Cæsar, led (their) army across the Rhine.—The chiefs, induced by

these considerations (= things), give hostages and an immense sum-of-money to the lieutenant.—Pompey, *when he had been defeated* (= defeated, 453, d) at Pharsalus, fled to Alexandria.—Jugurtha, *when he was expelled from Africa*, came to Rome.—The soldiers, *alarmed* by the sudden occurrence (453, g), take to flight (453, d).—For (enim) Pompey, *although-he-had-been-defeated* (= defeated) (in) no (nullō) battle, departed-out-of Italy.—Our (men) drove on the *alarmed* and *discomfited* enemy into the River Rhine.—The Helvetians, *induced* by these considerations (= things), bought-up as large a number as possible (453, f) of horses and beasts-of-burden.—The orator, *having-been-expelled-from* Athens, taught rhetoric at Carthage (453, a, R.).—The general, *induced* by these considerations, gave great rewards to the soldiers.—Orgetorix, *stimulated* by a strong-desire of royal-power, made a conspiracy of the nobility.

LESSON LXXIV.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

[THE ablative absolute is a very important part of Latin construction, and should be thoroughly learned.]

(456.) The participle is used in the *ablative with a noun*, when it is independent of the subject and object of the sentence.

(a) <i>When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.</i>	Pythāgōras, Tarquīnio regnante, in Itāliam vēnit.
---	---

Here *Tarquin* is independent of *Pythagoras*, the subject of the sentence.

(457.) The want of a perfect active participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the *ablative absolute* with a passive participle.

(b) <i>Labienus, having taken possession of the mountain, was waiting for our men.</i>	Lābiēnus, montē occupātō, nostrōs expectābat.
--	---

Here it would be impossible to say *Labiēnus, occupatus montem*, as *occupatus* is passive, not active.

(458.) A noun may be put in the ablative absolute with another noun *without* a participle.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>In the prætorship of Cæsar.</i> | Cæsāre prætorē (= Cæsar being prætor). |
| (b) <i>In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.</i> | M. Messālā et M. Pisōnē consūlibus (= Messala and Piso being consuls). |

[This construction is used mostly to designate the *time* of an event.]

EXERCISE.

 (459.) *Vocabulary.*

To avail, vālērē (vālā-).

Tiberius, Tībērius (ī).

To die, mōriri and mōri (mortū), dep.

A pleading, dictio, (dictiō) is (333).

Catiline, Cātīlinā, æ.

Christ, Christūs, i.

To finish, perficere (per+facere, perfēc-, perfect-); also, conficere (fēc-, fect-).

To reign, regnāre (āv-, at-).

Night, nox, (noct) is (294).

Territories, fines (pl. of finis, 300).

 (460.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil præceptā vālent, nisi adjuvante nātūrā (456, a).—Deō juvante, facilis est labor.—Tībērio regnante, Christus mortuus est.—Concilio dīmisso, principes ad Cæsarem revertērunt.—Diē constitūtā causæ dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit.—Cæsar, opere perfecto, præsiidiā disposuit.—Cæsar, hostibus pulsīs (457, b) in finēs Æduorum pervēnit.—Cæsar, duobus bellis confectis, in hibernā exercitum duxit.—Bellō confectō, principēs civitātum ad Cæsārem, grātulātum (379), convēnērunt.—Cātīlinā, Cīcērōnē consūlē (458), conjurātiōnem fēcit.—Nātūrā dūcē, nunquam errabimūs.—Orgetorix, Marcō Messālā et Marcō Pisōnē consūlibus, conjurātiōnem nobilitātis fēcit.

 (461.) *Translate into Latin.*

Our precepts will avail, *when nature assists* (= *nature assisting*).—*When the sun rises* (= *the sun rising*), the night flees.—*When the council was dismissed* (= *the council being dismissed*), the chiefs began to beseech Cæsar.—*When the council was dismissed*, Cæsar called the lieutenants to himself.—

Cæsar, when the work was finished (= the work being finished), fortified the towers.—Cæsar, having defeated Pompey (= Pompey being defeated), returned to Rome.—Cæsar, having finished the war, led-back his army into the territories of the Æduans.—In the consulship of Cicero, Catiline was expelled from Rome.—When God assists (= God assisting), it is not difficult to labour.—With God for our guide (= God leader), we shall never err.

LESSON LXXV.

Ablative Absolute, continued.

EXERCISE.

(462.) *Vocabulary.*

To abstain from, abstinere (abstinũ, abstent-, abs-tēnere), with abl.

A plan, purpose, consilium, i (not concilium).

To harass, læcessere (iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

From higher ground, e locō sup̄riorē.

A dart, pilũm, i.

Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is (293).

To hinder, prohibere (hibũ, hĩbit-, pro-hĩbere).

Cnæus Pompey, Cnæus Pompēiũs.

Of one's own accord, ultro (adv.).

To change, commutare (av-, at-)

To be born, nasci (natus), dep.

Senate-house, cūria, æ.

Augustus, Augustus, i.

(463.) *Translate into English.*

Labiēnus, montē occupāto, nostrōs expectābat, præliōque abstinēbat.—Barbārī, consilio commūtātō, nostrōs læcessere cœperunt.—Milites, e locō sup̄eriore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregērunt (416, b).—Cognitō Cæsāris adventũ, Āriōvistus lēgātos ad eum mittit.—Cnæo Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō consūlibus, Germani flūmen Rhenum transivērunt.—Nullo hoste prohibente, Crassus legiōnem in Helvētios perduxit, ibique hiemāvit.—His rebus cognitīs, imp̄rator ipsē ad exercitum contendit.—Hāc audītā pugnā, magna pars Aquitanie obsides ultro misit.—Belgæ, omnibus vicis oppidisque incensis, ad castrā Cæsāris contendērunt.—Augustō regnante, Christus natus est.

(464.) *Translate into Latin.*

The barbarians, *having changed their plan* (= plan being changed), made an attack upon our men.—The soldiers, *having-broken-through the phalanx*, began to harass the enemy.—The Belgians, *having heard of this battle*, sent ambassadors to Cæsar.—The soldiers, *having taken-possession-of the mountain*, easily put the enemy to flight (391, 3).—Cicero, *when he knew of the conspiracy*, went to the Senate-house.—*As no enemy hindered* (= no enemy hindering), the lieutenant led the army across the Rhine.—*When this battle was heard (of)*, the Belgians, of-their-own-accord, sent hostages and ambassadors to Cæsar.—*In the consulship of Cicero and Antony*, Augustus was born.

§ 10.

INFINITIVE.—(LXXVI.—LXXIX.)

LESSON LXXVI.

Infinitive Forms.

(465.) THE infinitive expresses action as completed or incomplete, but without reference to person or time; *e. g.*,

ACTIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, { to love, or to be loving, loving,
(Inf. Pres. Act.) { *ām-āre.*
Action *Completed*, { to have loved,
(Inf. Perf. Act.) { *āmāv-issē.*

PASSIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, { to be loved,
(Inf. Pres. Pass.) { *ām-ārī.*
Action *Completed*, { to have been loved,
(Inf. Perf. Pass.) { *āmātūs, ā, ūm, esse or fuisse.*

[*Rem.* The names *present* and *perfect* do not distinguish properly the two forms of the infinitive, but, as they are in universal use, we have to adopt them. The student must remember that the *present* expresses action incomplete, and the *perfect* action complete; but that the *time* of the action must depend upon the verb with which the infinitive is connected in the sentence.]

(466.)

FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
1. <i>ām-ārē.</i>	<i>ām-ārī.</i>	<i>āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv-</i> } <i>issē.</i>	<i>āmātūs, ā, ūm, mōnītūs, ā, ūm, rectūs, ā, ūm, auditūs, ā, ūm,</i> } <i>essē (or fuisse).</i>
2. <i>mōn-ārē.</i>	<i>mōn-ārī.</i>		
3. <i>rēg-ārē.</i>	<i>rēg-ī.</i>		
4. <i>aud-irē.</i>	<i>aud-irī.</i>		

Rem. Observe that *perf. inf. act.* simply adds the ending *-issē* to the *perf. stem* of the verb; and *perf. inf. pass.* is formed by the *perf. pass. part.* of the verb, combined with *essē* (sometimes *fuisse*).

EXERCISE.

(467.) *Vocabulary.**To lay waste, vastāre* (āv-, āt-).*Ought, debere* (dēbu-, dēbit-).*To be vacant, vacare* (intransit.).*I am able, possum; I was able, potui.**Peace, pax, (pāc) is* (293).*A very few, perpauci, æ, a.**Evil deed, malefīcium, i.**To break through, perrumpere* (perrūp-, perrupt-).(468.) *Examples.*(a) *I wish to learn.**The enemy began to cross the river.*

Cūpio discere.

Hostes flūmen transire cōperunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used, as in English, to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by many words.

☞ Such words are, *to wish, to be able, ought, to be accustomed, to hasten, to determine, &c.*; also, the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax, &c.*

(b) *The Helvetians intend.*(c) *Sometimes by day, oftener by night.*(d) *To keep-off-from the road.*(e) *In sight of.*Helvētiis est in ānīmō (= *it is in mind to the Helvetians*).

Nonnunquām interdiū, sæpiūs noctū.

Itinēre prōhibere (153, a).

In conspectū.

(469.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit.—Ædui se suaque ab Helvētiis dēfendere non potuērunt.—Agri vastāri non debent.—Hostes per mūnitiones perrumpere cōnāti sunt.—Agri Suēvorum vacare dicuntur.—Milites incōlas expellere non potuērunt.—Multitudo puērorum muliērumque fugere coepit.—Helvētii maximum nūmērum jūmentōrum et carrōrum cōemere constituērunt.—Germāni cōpias suas Rhēnum transducere cōnāti sunt.—Helvētii cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare constituērunt.

(470.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Place the infinitive before the verb on which it depends.]

Our towns ought not to-be-taken-by-storm.—In sight of our army, the fields ought not to be laid-waste.—The enemy endeavoured sometimes-during-the-day, oftener by-night, to burst-

through the fortifications.—The Æduans were not able to expel the enemy from (their) territories (153, *a*). On one side,* the lands are said to be vacant.—The boys and the women began to fly-in-every-direction (*passim*, adv).—The Helvetians intend to make (their) way through our province.—A very few are able to keep-off the Helvetians from the road.—The Helvetians ought to cross-over without any (*ullo*) evil-deed.—The remaining multitude of boys and women began to fly in-every-direction.

LESSON LXXVII.

Accusative with Infinitive.

(471.) VERBS signifying *to know, to see, to feel, to think, to say*, with some others, have frequently a sentence depending on them, the subject of which is in the *accusative*, and the verb in the *infinitive*.

<i>He saw that war was preparing on all sides.</i>		Undique bellum parari videbat.
--	--	--------------------------------

Here *bellum*, the subject, is accusative before the infinitive *parari*; after the verb *videbat*, *he saw*.

(472.) Many dependent sentences which are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, are expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and *infinitive*. To translate such sentences into Latin, observe the following method :

1. Omit the word *that*.
2. Change the nominative following *that* into the Latin accusative.
3. Change the English verb into the Latin infinitive.

The messenger says that the horsemen are hurling darts.		Nuntius dicit, equites tela conjicere.
---	--	--

(473.) If the predicate of the sentence containing the accusative and infinitive be an adjective, it must agree with the accusative subject in gender, number, and case.

* Una ex partē.

He knows that Cicero is eloquent.	Scit Cicerōnem esse eloquentem.
I perceive that the water is cold.	Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

EXERCISE.

(474.) Vocabulary.

To think, existimāre (av., at-).
To encamp, considere (consēd-, concess-, con+sidere).
To know, scire (sciv-, scit-).
Stone, lāpis, (lāpid) is (m.).
Nearer, prōpius (adv., 376).

To favour, fāvere (fav-, faut-, 395, V.), (governs dat.).
While, dūm (adv.).
To lose, amittēre (a+mittere, 401, 3, b).

(475.) Examples.

(a) The messenger says that the horsemen are hurling darts.	Nuntius dicit equites tela conjicere.
(b) The messenger said that the horsemen were hurling darts.	Nuntius dixit equites tela conjicere.
(c) The messenger said that the horsemen had hurled darts.	Nuntius dixit equites tela conjecisse.
(d) Word is brought to Cæsar.	Cæsari nuntiātum est (=it is told to Cæsar).
(e) To have about himself.	Circum se habere.

(476.) Translate into English.

Helvētīi existimant, Rōmānos discēdere.—Explōrātor dixit, hostes consēdisse.—Cæsar scit, Dumnōrigem fāvere Helvētiis.—Helvētīi dicunt, se omnem sēnātum amisisse.—Cæsari nuntiātum est, milites magnitudinem sylvarum timere.—Nuntius dixit, equites tela conjicere.—Galba certior factus est, Gallos omnes discessisse.—Explōrātōres dicunt, oppidum ab hostibus tenēri.—Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsari nuntiātum est, equites Ariovisti prōpius accēdere, et lapides telaque in nostros conjicere.

[Be careful, in translating the following English into Latin, to write first the leading sentence, and after it the accusative and the infinitive, observing the rules in (472), and following the order of words in the examples given above.]

(477.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar knows that *this* (thing) *is true* (473).—The scouts say that *the horsemen of Ariovistus are approaching* (475, a).—The ambassadors said that *the Helvetians had lost* all their cavalry and all their senate.—Word was brought to Cæsar that *the horsemen of Ariovistus were hurling stones against* (in, with accus.) *our* (men).—Word-was-brought to Cæsar that *Ariovistus had-departed* from the camp.—Cæsar was informed by the scouts that *the enemy had encamped* under (s ũ b, with abl.) the mountain.—The lieutenant says that *the mountain is held* by the enemy.—The general thinks that *our plans are told* to the enemy.—Word was brought to the general that *all the Gauls had departed* by night.—The chiefs say that *Divitiacus* always has a great number of horse-soldiers about himself.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Accusative with Infinitive.—Perfect Infinitive Passive.

(478.) It has been stated (466, R.) that the perfect infinitive passive is formed by the perfect participle passive, combined with *esse* (sometimes *fuisse*).

When the accusative is used with this infinitive, the participle must agree with the accusative in *gender, number, and case*; e. g.,

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>The messenger says that the Æduans have been conquered.</i> | Nuntius dicit, Æduos victos esse. |
| (b) <i>Ariovistus said that all the forces had been routed in one battle.</i> | Ariovistus dixit, omnes cōpias ũno prælio fūsas esse. |
| (c) <i>The horsemen brought-back-word that the town had been taken-by-storm.</i> | Œquites rēnuntiāvērunt, opīdum expugnātum esse. |

☞ Observe that in (a) the part. *victos* agrees with the accus. *Æduos*; in (b), *fūsas* with *cōpias*; in (c), *expugnātum* with *opīdum*.

EXERCISE.

(479.) *Vocabulary.**To find-out, rēpērire* (427, V.).*To frighten completely, perterrere*
(perterru-, perterrīt-, per + ter-
rere).*Tributary, stipendiārius, ā, ūm.**To bring back word, rēnuntiāre* (āv-,
āt-).*To rout, fundere* (fūd-, fūs-, 416, a)*To overcome, sup̄erare* (āv-, āt-).*Bond, chain, vinculum, l.**To hold in memory, to remember,*
*mēmōria tēnere.**To put (or cast) in chains, in vincū-*
la conjicere.(480.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar rēpēriēbat īnitium fūgæ a Dumnōrige factum esse.
—Impērātor dixit, ēquītātum esse perterrītum.—Cæsar mēmōriā tēnēbat, L. Cassium consulem occisum esse ab Helvetiis.—Ariōvistus dicit, Æduos sibi (54), stipendiārios esse factos.—Cæsar certior factus est, lēgātos in vincula coniectos esse.—Ēquītes rēnuntiāvērunt, castra esse m ū n i t a.—Dixit bella gesta esse.—Rēpēriēbat ētiam Cæsar, īnitium fūgæ a Dumnōrige atque ējus ēquītibus factum esse; eorumque fūgā (55, a) rēliqum ēquītātum perterrītum esse.—Ariōvistus dixit omnes Galloꝝ cōpias ūno abe sē prælio (55, a), fūsas ac sup̄eratas esse.

(481.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar found-out that the cavalry had been completely-frightened by the flight of Dumnorix.—The Æduans say that they (s e) have been routed by the Germans.—Cæsar remembered (= held in memory) that the consul's army had been defeated by the Helvetians.—Cæsar remembered that the consul had been slain, and his (ējus) army sent under the yoke (323, N.).—Cæsar was informed by the chiefs that hostages had been given.—The lieutenant said that the ambassador had been cast into chains.—Ariovistus said that all the forces had been overcome by himself.—Ariovistus said that the Gauls had been overcome by himself in one battle.—The Æduans say that they (s e) have been made tributary to Ariovistus (*dat.*).

Q

LESSON LXXIX.

Infinitive Future Active and Passive.

(482.) By the combination of the *future participle active* with *essē* (or *fuissē*), an *infinitive future active* is formed; e. g.,

āmātūrūs, ā, ūm, essē, to be about to love, to intend loving.

āmātūrūs, ā, ūm, fuissē, { to have been about to love, to
have intended loving.

(483.) Finally, by combining the *supine* with the verb *īrī*,* we form the *infinitive future passive*; e. g.,

āmātūm īrī, to be about to be loved.

doctūm īrī, to be about to be taught.

Rem. 1. This form, being derived from the *supine*, is applied alike to nouns of all genders and of both numbers.

2. As there is no *future infinitive* in English, we must translate the Latin *future infinitive* by a periphrasis, as above.

EXERCISE.

(484.) *Vocabulary.*

To persuade, *persuadere* (*per*+*sua-*
dere, *sua-*, *sua-*); governs *dat.*

To refrain, *temperare* (*ā-*, *āt-*, fol-
lowed by *āb* with *abl.*).

To neglect, *negligere* (*nēglex-*, *nēg-*
lect-, *nēc*+*lēgere*).

To compel, *cogere* (*coēg-*, *coact-*,
cōn+*ēgere*).

To restore, *reddere* (*reddid-*, *reddid-*,
rē+*dare*, 411, c).

Unfriendly, *inimicus*, *ā*, *ūm* (*in*+
amicus).

To demand-back, *repetere* (*repētiv-*,
repētīt-, *rē*+*pētēre*).

To refuse, *recusare* (*ā-*, *āt-*).

(484, a.) *Example.*

*The general said that he
would come with the tenth
legion alone.*

*Impērātor dixit sē cum sōlā
dēcīmā lēgione ventūrum.*

Rem. The *essē* in the *future infinitive* is frequently omitted; e. g.,
in the above, *ventūrum*.

* *Irī* is the infinitive passive form of the verb *īrē*, to go. It is not in use, except in combination as above.

(485.) *Translate into English.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Dumnōrix existimat sē regnum obtentūrum esse.—
 Helvētīi existimābant sē finitīmis (dat.) persuāsūros.—
 Cæsār existimābat, finitīmos tempēratūros ab injuriā.—
 Cæsār dicit, se Æduorum injūrias non neglectūrum.—
 Helvētīi existimābant, sē Æduos vī (301) coactūros.—
 Ariōvistus dixit, Æduis (54) sē obsides redditūrum
 esse.—Cæsār dicit sē, proximā noctē (118, II., c), de quartā
 vigiliā, castrā mōtūrum.—Impērātor, hōmines inimicō animō
 (428, a) tempēratūros ab injuriā et mālēficio, non existī-
 mabat.

(486.) *Translate into Latin.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Cæsar said that he would move his camp.—Dumnorix thought
 that he would hold the military-command of his own state.—
 The general says that he is-about-to-demand-back the host-
 ages.—The Æduans say that they-are-about-to-implore assist-
 ance from (a) the Roman people.—Dumnorix assures (them)
 that he is-about-to-seize the royal-power with his own (suō)
 army.—Ariovistus said that he would not restore the hostages.
 —Cæsar did not think that the allies would-refrain from injury.
 —Cæsar thought that he would-compel the Germans by force.
 —Ariovistus said that he would-refuse the friendship of the
 Roman people.

§ 11.

THE GERUND.

LESSON LXXX.

(487.) (a) The *gerund* expresses the action of the verb under the form of a noun of the second declension, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative* cases (ī, ō, ūm, ō).

(b) The *gerund-stem* is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

In the 1st conjugation,	-and;	<i>e. g.</i> , ām-and-.
“ 2d “	-end;	<i>e. g.</i> , mōn-end-.
“ 3d “	-end;	<i>e. g.</i> , rēg-end-.
“ 4th “	-iend;*	<i>e. g.</i> , aud-iend-.

(c) The gerund of any case is formed by annexing the case-ending to the gerund-stem; *e. g.*, *gen.*, āmand-ī; *dat.*, āmand-ō; *acc.*, āmand-um; *abl.*, āmand-ō.

(488.) As the infinitive is used as a verbal noun in the *nominative* and *accusative* cases, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases; *e. g.*,

Nom.	Scribērē,	<i>writing.</i>
Gen.	Scribendī,	<i>of writing.</i>
Dat.	Scribendō,	<i>to or for writing.</i>
Acc.	{ Scribērē,	{ <i>writing.</i>
	{ Scribendūm,	
Abl.	Scribendō,	<i>with writing.</i>

(489.) The rules for the use of the cases of nouns apply also to the cases of the infinitive and gerund; *e. g.*,

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful,</i>	scribēre est ūtile.
Gen.	<i>The art of writing is useful,</i>	{ ars scribendi est ūtilis.

* Also in the *io* verbs (199); *e. g.*, cāp-*io*, cāp-*iendī*.

Dat.	<i>Paper is useful for writing,</i>	{ charta scribendō est ūtilis.
Acc.	{ <i>I learn writing,</i> <i>I learn during writing,</i>	{ scribere disco. inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	<i>We learn by writing,</i>	scribendō discimus.

Rem. With a preposition, the *accusative gerund* must be used, and *not* the infinitive; *ad* (inter, ob) scribendum, *not* *ad* (inter, ob) scribere.

(490.) The gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived; *e. g.*,

<i>The art of training boys is difficult.</i>		<i>Ars puerōs educandī difficilis est.</i>
---	--	--

EXERCISE.

(491.) Vocabulary.

<i>To make war, bellare (av-, at-).</i>		<i>To deliberate, deliberare (av-, at-).</i>
<i>To plunder, to obtain-booty, prædari (prædat-), dep.</i>		<i>To take, sumere (sumps-, sumpt-).</i>
<i>Wearied, defessus, æ, um.</i>		<i>Agriculture, agricultūra, æ.</i>
<i>Sufficiently, satis.</i>		<i>Desire, studium, i.</i>
<i>To think, cogitare.</i>		<i>Life, age, ætas, (ætāt) is (292).</i>
<i>Opportunity, time for, spātium, i.</i>		<i>Mind, mens, (ment) is (355, II., 1.)</i>

(492.) Examples.

(a) <i>Time was given for (= opportunity was given of) taking-up arms.</i>		<i>Spātium armā capiendī dātum est.</i>
(b) <i>For the sake of collecting-corn.</i>		<i>Frumentandī causā (ablat.).</i>

(493.) Translate into English.

Spes prædandī hōmīnes ab agricultūrā revocābat.—Spātium defessus ex pugnā excedendī nōn dātum est.—Brève tempus ætātis satis est longum ad bēnē beātēque vivendum.—Hōminis mens discendō alitur.—Pars equitātūs, prædandī causā, missa est.—Nox finem oppugnandī fecit.—Magna pars equitātūs, frumentandī causā, missa erat.—Cognōverat enim Cæsar, magnam partem equitātūs, prædandī frumentandīque causā, trans Rhēnum missam fuisse (471).

—Impērātor diem ad dēlibērandum sūmit.—Impērātor dixit, sē diem ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (484, a).—Spes prædandī, stūdiūquē bellandī incōlas ab āgricultūrā et lābōre rēvocābat.—Dōcendō dōcēmur.

(494.) *Translate into Latin.*

The desire of *plundering* and *making-war* has recalled the farmers from (their) fields.—Time for (492, a) *hurling* the darts was not given to the soldiers.—Time for (of) *fighting* was not given to the horsemen.—The horsemen were sent into the territories of the Æduans for the sake of *collecting-corn*.—The mind of man is nourished by *thinking*.—Time for *departing-out-of* the town was not given to the wearied citizens.—The citizens ask time for (of) *deliberating*.—Wisdom is the art of *living* well.—Cæsar recalled the tenth legion into Gaul, for-the-sake-of *wintering*.—We learn by *teaching*.—Opportunity of *attacking* the town was not given to the soldiers, though they desired it (= desiring it).

§ 12.

THE GERUNDIVE, OR VERBAL ADJECTIVE IN DŪS, DĀ, DŪM.

(495.) (a) THE gerundive expresses the action of the verb (generally with the additional idea of *necessity* or *continuance*) under the form of an adjective of the *first class* (76).

(b) The gerundive-stem is precisely the same as the gerund-stem. The cases are formed by adding the endings of the adjective ; *e. g.*,

N. āmand-ūs, ā, ūm.

G. āmand-i, æ, ī, &c.,

and so through all cases and both numbers.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Gerundive used instead of the Gerund.

(496.) THE gerundive is used (to express continued action) as a verbal adjective, *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun ; *e. g.*,

Gen. *Of writing a letter.*

Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of scribendi epistolam.

Dat. *To or for writing letters.*

Scribendis epistolis, instead of scribendo epistolas.

Acc. *To write a letter.*

Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of ad scribendum epistolam.

Abl. *By writing a letter.*

Scribendā epistolā, instead of scribendo epistolam.

Rem. The gerundive must be used for the dative or accusative of the gerund when it has an active government. It may be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; e. g., of learning the true = *vēra discendi*, not *verorum discendorum*; of hearing this, *hoc audiendi*, not *huius audiendi*.

EXERCISE.

(497.) Vocabulary.

To choose, *dēligere* (*dēleg-*, *dēlect-*, *dē+ligere*).

To pursue, *consēqui* (*consēcūt*), *dep.*

To fail, to be insufficient, *dēficere* (*dēfēc-*, *dēfect-*, *dē+fācere*).

To form a design, *consilium cāpere* (*io*).

Space-of-two-years, *biennium*, *i.*

To reckon, *decem, dācere* (*dux-*, *duct-*).

To discern, *cernere* (406, CL III., a).

Care, *cūra*, *æ*.

To apply, *adhibere* (*adhībā-*, *adhīb-*, *it-*).

Negligent, *negligens*, (*negligent*) *is* (107).

(498.) Examples.

(a) The Helvetians reckoned that the space-of-two-years was enough for themselves.

Helvētīi biennium sibi sātis esse duxerunt.

(b) The space of three-days.

Trīdūi spātium.

(c) The house was given to the robbers to plunder.

Dōmus latrōnibus dirīpiendā dātā est.

The farmer gave his house to the robbers to plunder.

Āgricolā dōmum latrōnibus dirīpiendam dedit.

☞ After verbs of giving, going, sending, receiving, and the like, the gerundive expresses a purpose or object.

(d) For completing (= finishing) these things.

Ād eas res conficiendās.

(499.) Translate into English.

Urbs ā dūce mīlitibus dirīpienda dātā est.—Urbem dux mīlitibus dirīpiendam dedit.—Subitō Galli consilium belli gērendi cēperunt.—Subitō Galli lēgiōnis oppugnandæ consilium cēperant.—Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētorix dēligitur.—Helvētīi, ad eas res conficiendas, biennium sibi sātis esse duxerunt.—Crassus lēgātos tribunosque militum in finītīmas civitātes frūmentī pētendī causā dimisit.—Plātō Rōmam (453, c) ad cognoscendas Numæ lēges contendit.—In vōluptāte spernendā virtūs maximē cernitur.—Multi.

in ōquis pārāndis, adhībent cūram, sed in āmicis dēlligendis negligentes sunt.—Milites, ad urbem expugnandam, trīdūi spātium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.

(500.) *Translate into Latin.*

For completing these things (498, *d*) Cæsar gave to the Gauls the space of three days.—The Æduans had suddenly formed the design of besieging the town.—Crassus is chosen for carrying-on the war (498, *d*).—Pythagoras went to Sparta (453, *c*) to learn (498, *¶*) the laws of Lycurgus.—Cæsar reckoned that the space of two years was enough for himself, for overcoming the Gauls and finishing the war.—The general sent all the cavalry across the Rhine, for the sake of seeking corn.—Ariovistus hastened (contendēre), with all his forces, to attack the town (498, *¶*).—The Britons sent ambassadors to Cæsar, in-order-(ad)-to-see (498, *¶*) peace.

LESSON LXXXII.

The Gerundive used to express Necessity, &c.

THE GERUNDIVE AS SUBJECT.

(501.) (a) The gerundive in the nominative neuter (dūm) is used with esse to express necessity or duty. If the person be expressed, it must be put in the dative.

One must write.

Scribendū est.

I must write.

Scribendū est mīhi.

¶ Here the gerundive is the subject of the sentence (the duty of writing is to me).

(b) This neuter nominative may be combined with all the tenses of esse; e. g.,

Scribendū est mīhi, *I must write.*

Scribendū erat mīhi, *I had to write.*

Scribendū erit, *I must write hereafter.*

&c.,

&c.

(c) This neuter nominative may govern the case of its verb ;
e. g.,*

<i>We must help the citizens.</i>	Civibus (dat.) subvĕniendum est.
<i>One must use reason.</i>	Ratiōne utendum est.

THE GERUNDIVE AS PREDICATE.

(502.) The gerundive is also used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express necessity or worthiness ; e. g., *I am to be loved*, amandus sum ; *thou art to be loved*, amandus es, &c. The person, if specified, is put in the dative.

<i>I must love Tullia (= Tullia is to be loved by me.)</i>	Tulliā mihi amandā est.
<i>All things had to be done by Cæsar (= Cæsar had to do all things).</i>	Omniā Cæsari erant agendā.

☞ Here the gerundive is the predicate.

EXERCISE.

(503.) Vocabulary.

<i>Flag, vexillum, i.</i>	<i>To send for, arcessere (arcessiv-, arcessit-).</i>
<i>To set-up, prōponere (prō+ponere, pōsū-, pōsūt-, 406, b).</i>	<i>To understand, perceive, intelligere (intellex-, intellect-).</i>
<i>To go-forward, prōcedere (prō+cēdere, 401, 3, b).</i>	<i>To determine, statuere (stātū-, stātūt-).</i>
<i>A little too far, paulō longius (adv.).</i>	<i>In vain, frustra.</i>
<i>To think, putare (av-, at-).</i>	<i>More widely, latius (adv., 376).</i>

(504.) Examples.

(a) <i>Cæsar causes a bridge to be made (= takes care that a bridge should be made).</i>	Cæsar pontem faciendum (esse) cūrat.
<i>I must hear.</i>	Mihi audiendum.
Est is often omitted with the gerundive, as in (a).	
(b) <i>The centurions thought that nothing should be done rashly.</i>	Centuriōnes nihil tēmere agendum (esse) existimābant.

* The accusative is hardly ever used after the neut. gerundive.

(505.) *Translate into English.*(1.) *Gerundive in the nominative neuter (dũm).*

Militibus de nāvibus erat dēsiliendum. — Militibus simul et de nāvibus (erat) dēsiliendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun.*

Cæsari omnia tũo tempore (118, II., c) erant agenda; vexillum prōponendum; rēvocandi milites; qui paullo longius processerant arcessendi; acies instruenda; milites hortandi; signum dandum. — Prōhibenda est ira. — Bellum nobis est suscipiendum. — Cæsar sibi lātius distribuendum exercitum putat. — Impērator dicit, jam sibi lēgatos audiendos. — Cæsar ubi intellexit frustrā tantum lāborem sūmi (471), stāuit expectandam classem. — Cæsar pontem faciendum cūrat atque itā exercitum trādūcit.

(506.) *Translate into Latin.*(1.) *Gerundive in nominative, neuter (dũm).*

We must leap-down from the ships. — We must read. — You must hear. — You must fight for liberty (pro libertate). — All must hear; we must read. — With whom (quibuscum) must I fight? — We must leap down from the walls and fight with the horsemen.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective.*

I must do all things at once (= all things must be done by me at one time). — You must give the signal. — We had to set up the flag. — Cæsar must send ambassadors. — The soldiers must fortify the camp. — The general must encourage the soldiers. — The Helvetians cause bridges to be made over the river. — Cæsar thought that the army must be led-over. — Cæsar thought that the army must be divided by him (sibi), and distributed more-widely. — The general says that he must wait-for the fleet. — Divitiacus says that this-thing (hōe) must be done by all the Gauls.

§ 13.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

LESSON LXXXIII.

(507.) THE imperative mood expresses the action of the verb as a *command, wish, entreaty, &c.*; *e. g., Love thou! Hear thy parents.*

(508.) FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.				
	2d Sing.	3d Sing.	2d Plur.	3d Plur.
ăm-	ă or âto.	âto.	ătă or âtôtă.	ânto.
môn-	ē or êto.	êto.	êtă or êtôtă.	ênto.
rég-	ě or یتو.	یتو.	یتă or یتôtă.	ünto.
aud-	ī or یتو.	یتو.	ită or itôtă.	iânto.
PASSIVE.				
ăm-	ăre or âtôr.	âtôr.	ămîni or ămînôr.	antôr.
môn-	ērē or êtôr.	êtôr.	ēmîni or ēmînôr.	entôr.
reg-	ērē or یتôr.	یتôr.	imîni or imînôr.	untôr.
aud-	irē or itôr.	itôr.	imîni or imînôr.	iuntôr.

Rem. 1. Observe that the 2d pers. sing. act. can be obtained from any verb by striking off *ră* from the infinitive; *e. g., inf., ămă ră; imper., ămă*; and that the 2d pers. sing. pass. is the infinitive form precisely.

2. The longer forms of the 2d person are used especially in reference to future time; *e. g., in laws, statutes, and the like.*

3. The *io* verbs of 3d conj. take the imperative endings of the 4th in the 3d pers. plur.: thus, *căpiunto, let them take; căpiuntor, let them be taken. Făcio* has 2d pers. sing. *făc.*

EXERCISE.

(509.) Vocabulary.

[Deponents take, of course, the *passive* endings.]

Enmity, inimicîiă, ă.

*To despise, contemnere (con+tem-
nērē, temps-, tempt-).*

Fleeing, fugax, (fugac) is (107).

*To pursue, follow, persăqui (persă-
căt-), dep.*

*Association, fellowship, sôciătă (ătă,
293).*

<i>Frail, perishable, cādūcūs, ā, ūm</i> (from <i>cāđērē</i> , to fall).	<i>Show, spēciēs, spēciei</i> (117).
<i>To shun, avoid, vitārē (āv-, at-).</i>	<i>To trust, crēdere</i> (crēdīd-, crēdīt-, 411, c); governs <i>dat.</i>
<i>Judge, jūdex, (jūdīc) īs</i> (306).	<i>Admire, admirārī (at-), dep.</i>
<i>To revere, vērērārī (vērērāt-), dep.</i>	

(510.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Do not hear.</i>	<i>Nē audī.</i>
<i>Do not trust appearance</i> (colour).	<i>Nē crēdē cōlōrī.</i>

Rule.—With imperatives, *nē* must be used for *not*.
(*Nōn* would be very bad Latin.)

(b) <i>Let the judge neither give nor take rewards.</i>	<i>Judex prēmia nē dātō nēvē capīto.</i>
---	--

Neither — nor = nē — nēvē.

(c) <i>Instead of parents =</i>	<i>Pārentum lōcō (abl.)</i>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------

(511.) *Translate into English.*

Pueri (*voc.*), *pārentēs ā mātē*.—*Magistrī puerōs linguām Lātinām dōcento*.—*Magnā vīs est in virtūtibus*; *ēās* (150) *excitā, sī fortē dormiunt*.—*Abstīnētōtē omnī injuriā (abl.) atque inīmicitiis*.—*Impērā irā* (147).—*Nē persēquere omnia, quā spēciem gloriā hābent*.—*Hēc omnia, quā hābent spēciem gloriā contemnē*: *breviā, fūgāciā, cādūcā existimā*.—*Nē creditē omnibus*.—*Judīces prēmium nē capīunto, nēvē danto*.—*Vitā sociētātem imprōbōrum*.—*Vērērārē Deum, vērērārē pārentes, et quōs pārentum lōcō* (55, a) *tibi* (54) *nātūrā dedit*.—*Pueri prāceptōres, ā quibus doctī sunt, ā manto et vērērāntōr*.

(512.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys, *revere* (your) parents.—*Let the master teach the boys the Greek language*.—*Do not rouse-up* (your) *vices*: *rouse-up* (your) *virtues*, if perchance they sleep.—*Abstain ye from* (*abl.*) *all vices and enmities*.—*My son, rule* (your) *anger* (*dat.*, 147).—*Do not admire* *all things* which have the show of glory.—*Do not ye fear death*.—*Do not trust* *to the show of glory*.—*Love* those whom Nature has given to you in place of parents.—*Do not seek* the association of the wicked.—*Neither take* (*capere*) *nor give* a reward.—*Hear* the wise and good.

§ 14.

SENTENCES.

[THE student should now be made to understand something of sentences. The following simple statements can readily be understood.]

(513.) (a) The sentence, "*the messenger fled*," is a *simple* sentence, as it contains but one subject and predicate.

(b) The sentence, "*the messenger, who saw me, fled*," is a *compound* sentence, as it contains more than one subject and predicate.

(c) In the last example, "*the messenger fled*" is called the **PRINCIPAL SENTENCE**; and "*who saw me*," the **SUBORDINATE** sentence.

(514.) The following are some of the classes of subordinate sentences :

(a) *The accusative with the infinitive* ; e. g., *Nuntiūs dixit, ēquitēs tēlā conjiçērē* (The messenger said that the horsemen were hurling darts). Here *ēquitēs tēlā conjiçērē* (that the horsemen were hurling darts) is the *subordinate* sentence ; *nuntius dixit*, the *principal* sentence.

(b) *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time ; e. g., *Cæsar, when he had crossed the river, drew up his army*. Here, *Cæsar drew up his army* is the *principal* sentence ; *when he had crossed the river*, the *subordinate* sentence.

(c) *Relative sentences* ; e. g., *Nuntius, qui missus est, dixit* (The messenger, who was sent, said). Here *nuntius dixit* is the *principal* sentence ; *qui missus est*, the *relative subordinate* sentence.

(d) *Interrogative sentences* (i. e.), such as are introduced by an interrogative word ; e. g., *Tell me what you are doing?* Here *what you are doing* is a *subordinate interrogative* sentence.

§ 15.

CONJUNCTIONS.—(LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)

LESSON LXXXIV.

Copulative Conjunctions.

(515.) COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS unite words or sentences together. They are,

And.

Neither, nor.

Also.

Ēt, quē, ac, atquē.

Nēc, nēquē.

Etiām, necnōn, quōquē, itēm,
itīdēm.

EXERCISE.

(516.) *Vocabulary.*

Only, solum; *not only, nōn solum*.

A debtor, dēbitor, i.

Formerly, at one time, quondam.

Rich, opulens, (opulent) is (107).

*To hasten, to march rapidly, prōpē-
rārē (āv., āt.).*

*To give largess, to bribe, largiri
(largit-), dep.*

*Once and again, sēmēl atquē itē-
rum.*

Estate, rēs familiāris, e (104).

A wheel, rōtā, æ.

*Some (some persons), nōnnulli, æ, i
(nōn+nulli).*

Javelin, trāgūlā, æ.

*To hurl under, subjicere (jēo., ject-,
sub+jacere).*

I profit, benefit, prōsum (prō+sum);
governs dat.*

To the same place, eodēm (adv.).

Too much, nimius, i, ūa.

*Top, summit, culmēn, (culmīn) is
(345).*

To pray, orāre (āv., āt.).

(517.) *Examples.*

(a) *Darius equipped a fleet,
and placed over it Datis and
Artaphernes.*

Dārius classem compāravit,
eīquē Dātim prāfecit ēt
Artāphernem.

(a) Ēt connects independent words and sentences; quē joins one word or sentence to another rather as an appendage. Thus, in (a), ēt

* Prōsum is inflected like sum, but inserts d before the vowels;
e.g., prod-esse, prōd-ēs, prod-est (not pro-es, pro-est).

joins *Datim* and *Artāphernem*; and *quē* joins the sentence "*placed over it*," &c., as an appendage to the *equipment* of the fleet.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (b) <i>Fierce and barbarous men were coming into the province, and were hastening into Italy.</i> | <i>Hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri in prōvinciam vēniēbant atquē in Italiā contendēbant.</i> |
|---|--|

(b) *Āc* is used before *consonants*, but not before *vowels* or *h*. *Atquē* may be used before either *vowels* or *consonants*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (c) <i>Cæsar both had indulged and was greatly confident in the tenth legion.</i> | <i>Dēcīmæ lēgiōnī Cæsar ēt indulserat ēt confidēbat maxīmē.</i> |
|---|---|

(c) *Ēt* followed by *another ēt* means *both—and*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (d) (1) <i>Again and again.</i> | <i>Ētiām atquē ētiām.</i> |
| (2) <i>And again.</i> | <i>Ēt ētiām.</i> |
| (3) <i>Not only—but also.</i> | <i>Nōn sōlūm—sēd ētiām.</i> |

(518.) *Translate into English.*

Orgētōrix ād iūdicium omnēm suām familiam coēgit, ēt omnēs clientēs obērātōsquē eōdēm (*adv.*) conduxit.—*Carthāgo* ēt *Cōrīnthūs* atquē *Numantia*, opulentissimæ quōndām ēt vālidissimæ civitātes, delētæ sunt ā Rōmānis.—*Cæsar* finem prōpērandī (489) facit, pontem quē ād flūmēn *Rhēnum* pōnit.—*Discipuli* ēt audiunt ēt āmant præceptōrēs.—Rōmāni nōn sōlūm iūnērū causā (135, II., R.) sēd ētiām possessionis, culminā montium occupāvērunt.—Nōn sōlūm virēs (*plural of vis*) sēd ētiām telā nostris (*dat.*) dēficiēbant.—His rēbus *Dumnōrix* ēt suam rēm familiārem auxerat ēt facultātes ād largiendū magnās compārāvērat.—*Hostes* ēt ē lēcō supēriore in nostros tela conjiciēbant ēt nonnulli intēr carrōs rōtas quē trāgūlās subjiciēbant, nostros quē vulnerābant.—Contemnuntūr iī quī nēc sibi nēc alterī (194, R. 1) prōsunt.—Nēc mēliōr vir fuit *Scīpiōne* (360, c) quisquām, nēc clāriōr.—*Æduī* nēquē obsides rēpētīvērunt nēquē auxiliū implōrāvērunt.—Sāpiētēm nēquē paupertās nēquē mors nēquē vinculā terrent.—Nīmius somnūs nēquē corpōri nēquē ānīmō (*dat.*, 516) prodest.—Rōgo tē, ēt ōro; ētiām ātquē ētiām tē rōgo.—*Æduī* sēmēl atquē itērū cūm Germānis contendērant.—*Mīlites* ex castris ērūpērunt (ērumpēre) atquē omnem spēm sālūtis in virtūtē pōsuērunt.

LESSON LXXXV.

Disjunctive and Adversative Conjunctions.

(519.) I. THE disjunctive conjunctions (meaning *or*) are *aut*, *vĕl*, *vĕ*, and *sĭvĕ* or *seu*.

Rem. 1. *Aut* indicates a *real* difference of object; *e. g.*,
Here, soldiers, we must conquer or die! | *Hic vincendū aut moriendū, mī-*
litēs!

When *aut* is used, but *one* of the conditions can be fulfilled, as in the above example.

Rem. 2. *Vĕl* (derived from *vellĕ*) means *if you wish*, or *rather*. (Hence it is used for *even*.)

The nobles can either corrupt or correct the morals of the state (i. e., they can do whichever they please). | *Vīri nobīlēs vĕl corrumpĕre mōrēs*
civitatīs, vĕl corrīgĕre possunt.

Rem. 3. *Vĕ* is always affixed to another word; *duō*, *trēs* *vĕ* = *two* or *three*.

Rem. 4. These conjunctions are frequently *repeated*.

<i>Either—or,</i>	{	<i>aut—aut.</i>
		<i>vĕl—vĕl.</i>
		<i>sĭvĕ—sĭvĕ.</i>
<i>Whether—or,</i>		<i>seu—seu.</i>

(520.) II. The adversative conjunctions express opposition (*but*).

The most important are,

Āt, *atquĭ*, *autĕm*, *cĕtĕrūm*, *sĕd*, *vĕrūm* (*but*).

Tāmen (*however*); *vĕrō* (*truly*).

EXERCISE.

(521.) *Vocabulary.*

To run up, *accurrĕre* (*accurr-* and *accŭcurr*, *accurs-*, *ad+currĕre*).

Very rich, *perdivēs*, (*divīt*) *is* (*per+divēs*), 107.

Chance, *cāsūs*, *ūs*. *By chance*, *cāsū* (*abl.*).

Goodness, *bōnītās* (*ātīs*).

To pay up, *persolvĕre* (*solv-*, *sōlūt-*).

To suffer full punishment, *pōnās persolvĕre*.

Handsome, *formōsūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Eloquent, *fācundūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Ulysses, *Ulyssēs*, (*Ulyss*) *is*.

<i>To possess, possidēre</i> (possēd-, poss- sess-).	<i>Daily, quōtidianūs, ā, ūm.</i>
<i>Weeping, flētūs, ūs.</i>	<i>A living being, animans, (animant) is</i> (107).
<i>Effect, effectūs, ūs.</i>	<i>Motion, mōtūs, ūs.</i>
<i>Sorrow, sadness, tristitiā, m.</i>	<i>Various, diversus, ā, ūm.</i>
<i>Generally, plerumquē</i> (adv.).	<i>To swim, nātārē</i> (av-, āt-).
<i>Joy, gaudiū, l.</i>	<i>Sometimes; interdum.</i>

(522.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>Those are to be esteemed brave, not who do, but who ward off injury.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>Gyges was seen by nobody, but he himself saw all things.</i></p> | <p>Fortēs sunt hābendī, nōn quī faciunt, s ē d quī prōpulsant injūriām.</p> <p>Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, ipsē aut ē m omniā vidēbāt.</p> |
|---|---|

(a) S ē d indicates a *strong* opposition; it always stands first in its clause, as in (a).

(b) Aut ē m expresses a weaker opposition than s ē d. Aut ē m and v ē r o never stand first in a sentence, but always after one or more words.

(523.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī cēlērītēr accurrērunt; ā t Germāni fortīter impētum glādiōrum excēpērunt.—Āmici rēgis duō trēs v ē (519, R. 3) perdivītes sunt.—Sī v ē cāsū (55, a) sī v ē consiliō deōrum immortalīum, pēnās persolvērunt.—Nonnulli, sī v ē fēlicitāte (abl.) quādām, sī v ē bōnitāte nātūræ, rectām vitæ sēcūti sunt viām.—Fortēs ē t magnānīmi sunt hābendī, nōn quī faciunt s ē d quī prōpulsant injūriam.—Nōn formōsus ērat, s ē d ērat facundus Ulyssēs.—Āvārus nōn possidēt divitiās (57, R.) s ē d divitiās possident eūm.—Flētūs plērūquē est effectūs tristitiæ; interdū v ē r o ē t i a m (even) gaudiū.—Helvētīi fēre quōtidianis prēliis (55, a) cūm Germānis contendunt, quūm a u t suis finibus eōs prōhibent, a u t ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gērunt.—Ānimantium mōtūs diversus est; v ē l ambulant ē t currunt, v ē l vōlant, v ē l nātant.—Corpūs mōritūr (dcp.), v ē r ū m ānīmūs nunquam mōriētūr.—Milītes nostrī fortēs fuērunt, s ē d āvāri.

§ 16.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—(LXXXVI.—XCII.)

(524.) THE subjunctive mood expresses affirmation *doubtfully, indefinitely, or as conceived by the mind*; e. g., *I may write; I might write; I might have written; if I should write; if I had written.*

Rem.—The subjunctive has no future tense-form.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Subjunctive Present.

(525.) Forms of *ess ě (to be)* in subjunctive present.

Pres.	sĭm, <i>I may be.</i>	sis, <i>thou may- est be.</i>	sĭt, <i>he, she, it may be.</i>	sĭmūs, <i>we may be.</i>	sĭtis, <i>ye may be.</i>	sĭnt, <i>they may be.</i>
-------	--------------------------	--------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------------

(526.) Forms of regular verbs.

(a) The subjunctive present adds the person-endings
m, s, t, mūs, tis, nt, for the *active*, and

r, ris or re, tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,
to the verb-stem by means of the following connecting vowels, viz.,

		Active.	Passive.
1st conj.,	e; e. g.,	ām-ĕ-m,	am-ĕ-r.
2d conj.,	ĕa; e. g.,	mōn-eā-m,	mōn-eā-r.
3d conj.,	ā; e. g.,	rĕg-ā-m,	rĕg-ā-r.
4th conj.,	ĭa; e. g.,	aud-ĭa-m,	aud-ĭa-r.

(b) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may love, advise, rule, hear.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ām-	ĕm.	ĕs.	ĕt.	ĕmūs.	ĕtis.	ĕnt.
mōn-	ĕām.	ĕās.	ĕāt.	ĕāmūs.	ĕātīs.	ĕānt.
rĕg-	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ānt.
aud-	ĭām.	ĭās.	ĭāt.	ĭāmūs.	ĭātīs.	ĭānt.
PASSIVE.— <i>I may be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ām-	ĕr.	ĕris or ĕrĕ.	ĕtūr.	ĕmūr.	ĕmīni.	ĕntūr.
mōn-	ĕār.	ĕārīs or ārĕ.	ĕātūr.	ĕāmūr.	ĕāmīni.	ĕāntūr.
rĕg-	ār.	ārīs or ārĕ.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīni.	āntūr.
aud-	ĭār.	ĭārīs or ārĕ.	ĭātūr.	ĭāmūr.	ĭāmīni.	ĭāntūr.

EXERCISE.

(527.) Vocabulary.

Value, pretium, i.

To obey, parere (pari-); governs dat.

To despair, desperare (av-, at-).

Otherwise, aliter (adv.).

To hinder, impedire (iv-, it-).

Carefully, studiosè (adv.).

To exercise, exercere (exerci-, exercit-).

To grieve, dolere (doli-, doli-).

Would that, utinam (conj.).

To fear, metuerè (meti-).

Incredible, incredibilis, e (104).

Mind (talent), ingenium, i.

To be ignorant, ignorare (av-, at-).

To deny, negare (av-, at-).

To know, noscere (nov-, not-).

To afford, praebere (praeb-, praebit-).

To make one's self a judge, se iudicem praebere.

To apply, to employ, adhibere (ū-, it-).

Cautious, cautus, ā, ūm.

Rashly, temerè (adv.).

Ever, unquam (adv.).

Truly, obviously, prorsus (adv.).

Finally, denique (adv.).

(528.) Examples.

[The principal use of the subjunctive in Latin is in dependent sentences; but in this lesson we show its uses in *principal* sentences, in which it occurs only when something is said without *definiteness* or *certainty*.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) 1. No sane man can doubt about the value of virtue. | Nemo sanus de virtutis pretio dubitet. |
| 2. May I be safe! | Sim salvus! |
| 3. I hope you are well (= may you be safe). | Salvus sis! |
| 4. May I not be safe, if I write otherwise than I think. | Nē sim. salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio. |
| 5. I hope my father is alive (= would that my father may be alive). | Utinam pater vivat. |
| 6. I wish he would come. | Utinam veniat. |

(a) The subjunctive present is used for the English potential, *may*, *can*, &c., and also to express a *wish*, when the thing wished is *possible*. A *negative wish* is expressed by *nē* prefixed, as in (4).

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| (b) 1. Let us believe. | Crēdāmūs. |
| 2. Let us obey virtue. | Virtutē pāreāmus. |
| 3. Do not despair. | Nē despēres. |

(b) The subjunctive present is used, instead of the imperative, to soften a command. *Nē* is used for prohibition.

(c) *Who would not love virtue?* | *Quis virtutem nōn āmet?*

What can I do?

Quid faciāmus?

Who is ignorant?

Quis ignōret?

Who can doubt?

Quis dūbitet?

(c) The subjunctive present is used in *direct* questions when any doubt is implied. (In English, we generally use *can*, *will*, *would*, &c., in such questions.)

(529.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Use of subjunctive as *potential*, or to express a *wish* (the latter indicated by !).

Tempus vēniat. — Salvūs sīs! āmicē. — Fāveāt fortunā! — Ūtinam hōc vērūm sīt! — Diū vivās! — Nēmo bōnus dē Prōvidentiā Deī dūbitēt. — Mōriār, sī ālīter scribo āc sentio. — Ūtinam nēmo tē impēdiat! — Ūtinam dōmum meam vēris āmicīs (55, a) impleam!

(b) Use of subjunctive as *imperative*.

Sē quisquē studiōsē exerceat. — Nātūram, optīmam ducem, sēquāmur, eīquē pāreāmus. — Amēmus pātriam, pāreāmus sēnātui, consūlāmus bōnīs. — Suum quisquē noscāt ingēnium, ācremquē sē ēt bōnōrum ēt vītiorum suōrūm jūdicēm prābeāt. — Nē āmētis imprōbos. — Prudentiam adhībeāmus. — Cautiōrem adhībeāmus prudentiam. — In rēbus grāviōribus cautiōrem adhībeāmus prudentiam, sēd nēc in lēviōribus tēmērē unquam āgāmus. — Nē dōleās.

(c) Use of subjunctive in *direct* questions.

Quīs hōc crēdat? — Quīs fābūlās istās crēdat? — Quīs imprōbōs āc stultōs dīlīgat? — Quis eūm dīlīgāt quēm mētuit? — Quīs crēdat illūd quōd prorsūs incrēdibīlē est? — Quīs dē virtūtis prētiō dūbitet? — Quid faciāmus? — Quīs nēget omnēs lēvēs, omnēs āvārōs, omnēs dēnīque imprōbōs essē servōs?

(530.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) No wise (man) can doubt concerning the benevolence of God. — My friends, I hope you are well (= may you be safe).

—I hope that (*utiam*) the commander is alive (= may live).—
I hope our friends may come!—May these things be true!—
May the citizens be wise.

(b) Let us not believe this.—Do not believe these fables.—
Let us exercise ourselves diligently.—Let us love our friends,
let us obey our parents, let us worship God.—Know your (own)
mind.—Let the soldiers take possession of the mountain.—Let
us not love the wicked.

(c) Who can say this?—Who can love a fool?—Who would
obey a wicked king?—What good (man) can doubt concerning
the value of virtue?—Who can deny that all avaricious men
are slaves?

LESSON LXXXVII.

Subjunctive Perfect.

(531.) Form of *esse* (to be) in subjunctive perfect.

<i>fuērim,</i> <i>I may have been.</i>	<i>fuēris,</i> <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	<i>fuērit,</i> <i>he, she, it may have been.</i>	<i>fuērimūs,</i> <i>we may have been.</i>	<i>fuēritis,</i> <i>ye may have been.</i>	<i>fuērint,</i> <i>they may have been.</i>
---	---	---	--	--	---

(532.) Forms of regular verbs.

1. The subjunctive perfect active adds the endings

ērīm, ēris, ērit, ērimūs, ēritis, ērint,

to the indic. perf. stem of the verb; *e. g.*, *āmāv-ērīm*, &c.

2. The subjunctive perfect passive is formed by combining
the perfect participle with the subjunctive present of *esse*;
e. g., *āmātūs sīm*, &c.

[] Deponents, of course, are formed like passives.]


3. PARADIGM, SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv- }	ērīm.	ēris.	ērit.	ērīmūs.	ēritis.	ērint.
PASSIVE.— <i>I may have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Sing.	{ āmātūs, ā, ūm, mōnītūs, ā, ūm, rectūs, ā, ūm, auditūs, ā, ūm,		{ sīm. sis. sīt.	Plur.	{ āmāti, æ, ā, mōniti, æ, ā, recti, æ, ā, auditi, æ, ā,	{ sīmtūs. sītis. sīnt.

EXERCISE.

(533.) Vocabulary.

*Health, vāletūdō, (valetudin) is (339).**So, thus, itā (adv.)**Kindness, pardon, vēniā, æ.**To take captive, cāpērē (io, cāp-, capt-, 199).**Patience, pātientia, æ.**To slay, cut to pieces, cædērē (cæcid-, cæs-, 413, [P]).**It makes no difference, it matters not, nihīl rēfert.*

 Form the subjunctive perfect active and passive of the following verbs :

*Absūm, to be absent (no passive).**Prōsūm, to profit (do.).**Dēsūm, to be wanting (do.).**Vōcārē, to call.**Confirmārē, to assert.**Dicērē, to say (dix-, dict-).**Tradērē, to assert, deliver (tradid-, tradit-).**Laudare, to praise.**Vidēre, to see.**Invenīre, to find (invēn-, invent-).**Scribērē, to write.**Fācērē (io-, fēc-, fact-), to do.**Lōquī (lōcūt-), to speak (dep.).**Censērē (censū-, cens-), to think.**Opprimērē (press-, press-), to repress, crush.**Constituēre (stitū-, stitūt-), to place.**Oppugnārē, to assault.**Rēvōcārē, to recall, restore.*

(534.) Examples.

(a) *Do not do it.**N ē fēcērīs.*

(a) The subjunctive perfect (as well as the present) may be used in prohibitions, with *n ē*, or *nihīl*, instead of the imperative.

(b) *By your leave I would say.**Pācē tuā dixērīm; or, Vēniā tuā dixērīm.**Epicurus may have said.**Dixērīt Epīcūrus.**Perchance some one may say.**Forsītān āliquis dixērīt.*

(b) The subjunctive perfect may be used with or without an adverb, to express a supposed case (that may be true).

(c) *I think I can assert this.**Hōc confirmāvērīm.**You will scarcely find a man of any nation.**Vix ullius gentis hōmīnem invēnērīs.*

(c) The subjunctive perfect (as well as present) is used to soften an assertion. (Such phrases as, *Probably I might, I think I can, I would, perhaps, &c.*, can be expressed in Latin by one word in the perfect subjunctive, as above.)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (d) (1) <i>Why do you laugh?</i> | Cūr rīdēs? |
| (2) Tell me <i>why you laugh.</i> | Dic* mīhi cūr rīdeās. |
| (1) <i>Where have you been?</i> | Ūbi fuisti? |
| (2) I do not know <i>where you have been.</i> | Nescio ūbi fuēris? |

The sentences marked (1) are *direct* interrogative sentences, and take the indicative mood; those marked (2) are *indirect* (or *subordinate*) interrogative sentences, and take the subjunctive. Hence,

(e) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive mood is used in all indirect interrogative sentences.

Rem. Such sentences are introduced by the interrogative pronouns quis, qui, quantus, qualis, uter, &c., or the adverbs ubi, unde, quando, quo, cur, num, utrum, an, &c.

(535.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Quōd dūbītas, nē fēcēris.—Id nē dixēris.—Nihil incommōdō (to the injury) vāletūdīnis tuæ fēcēris.—Cūm improbis ac stultis nē locūtus sis.

(b) Fāciat hōc āliquis.—Fēcērit hōc āliquis.—Dixērit Epīcūrūs, Deum esse nullum.—Forsītan eūm āmāvēris.—Forsītan itā censuēris.—Puerūm magistrī mōnuērint.—Urbēm hostes oppugnāvērint.

(c) Frātēr (voc.), bonā tuā vēniā dixērim, meā sententiā mēliōr est.—Pātientiam laudāvērim boum (351, 2) atque ēquōrum.—Ingēniā studiāquē oppressēris facilius (376) quāmrēvocāvēris.

(d) Nescio cūr rīdeās.—Dic, cūr ād mē nōn vēnēris.—Helvētiū ibi ērunt, ūbi eōs Cēsar constitūerit.—Magnō cūm periculō (89, II.) id fēcit.—Intelligit, quantō cūm periculō id fēcērit.—Multī in praelio cāsī sunt.—Multī in praelio captī sunt.—Ūbi (when) victōriā āmissā est (is lost) nihil rēfert, quōt in praelio cāsī aut in fugā captī sint.—Dic mīhi tūbi fuēris.

(536.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Do not love the wicked.—Do not hear the foolish.*

* The imperative of dicere is dic, not dicē.

(b) Some philosophers *may-have-denied* the soul to be immortal.—*Perhaps-you-have-advised* the young-man.

(c) *I think-I-can-advice* the young man.—*You may easily repress* the minds of young men.—*You cannot easily recall* the industry (studium) of men.

(d) The mind itself knows-not *what* (quālis) *the mind is*.—Tell me *where you were*.—*I-do-not-know* why you *did not come* to me.—Tell (me), *were you* (fuerisne) in school yesterday?—It makes no difference *how many are taken-captive*.—The boy will remain (erit) there, *where the master may appoint* him.—I will tell you *what I have seen*.—I will tell you *what I have heard*.—Tell me *what you have done*.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. — Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(537.) THE subjunctive imperfect simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*,

r, ris (re), tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,
to the *present infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Inf. Pres.	Imperf. Subj. Act.	Imperf. Subj. Pass.
esse, to be.	essem, I might be.	
amārē, to love.	amāre-m.	amāre-r.
rēgērē, to rule.	rēgēre-m.	rēgēre-r.

(538.) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

1. <i>Essem.—I might, could, would, or should be.</i>							
essēm.		essēs.		essēt.	essēmūs.	essētis.	essēnt.
2. <i>ACTIVE.—I might, could, would, &c., love, advise, rule, hear.</i>							
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audir- }	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētis.	ēnt.	
3. <i>PASSIVE.—I might, could, would, &c., be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>							
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audir- }	ēr.	ērīs or ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	ēntūr.	

Rem.—The vowel *e* of the ending is *long*, except where it comes before *m* or *t* final, when it is short of necessity.

(539.) (a) The subjunctive pluperfect *active* simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt,

to the *past infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Past Infinitive.

fuissē, to have been.

āmāvissē, to have loved.

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

fuissēm, I might have been.

āmāvissēm, I might have loved.

(b) The subjunctive pluperfect *passive* is formed by combining the perfect participle with the subjunctive imperfect of *essē*;

E. g., āmātūs essēm (sometimes with the subjunctive pluperfect of *essē*; *e. g., āmātūs fuissēm, &c.*).

(c) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

1. <i>I might, could, would, should have been, &c.</i>						
<i>fuissēm.</i>		<i>fūissēs.</i>	<i>fūissēt.</i>	<i>fuissēmūs.</i>	<i>fuissētīs.</i>	<i>fuissēnt.</i>
2. ACTIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
<i>āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv.</i>	<i>issēm.</i>	<i>issēs.</i>	<i>issēt.</i>	<i>issēmūs.</i>	<i>issētīs.</i>	<i>issēnt.</i>
3. PASSIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Sing. {	<i>āmātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	{	<i>essēm.</i>	{	<i>āmātī, æ, ā,</i>	<i>essēmūs.</i>
	<i>mōnītūs, ā, ūm,</i>		<i>essēs.</i>		<i>mōnītī, æ, ā,</i>	<i>essētīs.</i>
	<i>rectus, ā, ūm,</i>		<i>essēt.</i>		<i>rectī, æ, ā,</i>	<i>essēnt.</i>
	<i>auditūs, ā, ūm,</i>				<i>auditī, æ, ā,</i>	

Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(540.) (a) The conditional conjunctions are *sī, if*; *sīn, but if*; *nīsī, or nī, if not, unless*.

(b) A conditional sentence is one which is introduced by a conditional conjunction; *e. g., if men were good, they would be happy*.

Rem. The sentence introduced by *if* is called the *conditional sentence*; the other, the *consequent sentence*: *if men were good* is the conditional; *they would be happy*, the consequent.

EXERCISE.

(541.) Vocabulary.

To diminish, mīnuere (mīnū-, mī- nūt-).	To subdue, sūbīgēre (subēg-, sūbact-, sūb+āgēre).
To cross over, transīre (irreg.).	Longer, diutius (adv., compar.).
The world, orbis terrarūm.	I wish that, ūtinam (conj.).

(542.) Examples and Rules.

(a) Would that my father were alive!	Ūtinam pāter vīvōret!
I wish he could come!	Ūtinam vñīret!

☞ In these examples (which refer to *present time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

I wish he had lived!	Ūtinam vixisset!
I wish he had come!	Ūtinam vñisset!

☞ In these examples (which refer to *past time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

(a) *Rule of Syntax*.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used to express an *impossible supposition*, or a *vain wish*; the *imperfect*, with reference to *present* or *future time*; the *pluperfect*, with reference to *past time*.

(b) Conditional Sentences.

(1) If he has (any) money, he gives (it).	Sī pēcūniam hābet, dāt.
--	-------------------------

Here the man is supposed to *have* money; the condition expressed by 'if' is therefore *real*.

(2) If he has (any) money, he will give (it).	Sī pēcūniam hābeat, dābit.
--	-------------------------------

Here the condition is *possible*, if not *real*. The man *may have* money.

(3) If he had any money, he would give it.	Sī pēcūniam hābēret, dāret.
---	--------------------------------

Here the man is supposed to have *no* money: the condition is *unreal*. (Observe that it refers to *present* or *future time*.)

(4) If he had had any money, he would have given it.	Sī pēcūniam hābūisset, dēdisset.
---	-------------------------------------

Here the man is supposed not to *have had* any money; the condition is therefore *unreal* (referring to *past time*). Hence,

(b) *Rule of Syntax*.—In conditional sentences (1), a *real*

condition is expressed by the indicative ; (2) a *possible* condition by the present or perfect subjunctive ; (3) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in present time by the imperfect subjunctive ; and (4) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Rem. 1. In cases (3) and (4), the subjunctive must be used in the *consequent* as well as in the *conditional* sentence.

2. It follows that the perfect or pluperfect indicative can *never* be used with *si*. *If he had come* = *si vēnissēt*, not *si vērāt*.

(543.) *Translate into English.*

Ūtinam salvus essēs.—Sī hōc dīcis, erras.—Sī hōc dīcas, erres.—Sī hōc dīcēres, errāres.—Sī hōc dīxisses, errāvisses.—Sī vēnisses ād exercītum, āb impērātōre vīsus esses.—Frāter mīhi narrābat quīd āmicus tuus fēcisset (534, *d*).—Mēmōriā mīnuītur, nī sī eām exercēās.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transirē cōnentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēbit.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transire cōnārentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēret.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transire cōnātī essent, Cēsar eōs prōhibuissēt.—Sī obsides āb Helvētīis Cēsārī (54) dentur, cūm iis pācem faciēt.—Sī obsides āb Helvētīis Cēsārī dārentur cūm iis pācem faciēret.—Sī obsides āb Helvētīis Cēsārī dātī essent, cūm iis pācem fēcisset.—Nōn sūpērārēmur, cīvēs (*voc.*) sī nostrī fortēs essent.—Nōn sūpērātī essēmūs, cīvēs, sī fortiōres milītes nobīs (*dat.*, 125, II., *a*) fuissent.—Alexander tōtum fērē orbēm terrārum sūbēgit.—Alexander, sī diūtius vixisset, tōtum orbem terrārum sūbēgisset.

(544.) *Translate into Latin.*

I wish my father had lived longer.—I wish you had come.—Would-that the soldiers had been braver.—If you-would-read this book (542, b, 2), I would give (it) to you.—I wish the general had led the army across the Rhine.—If you had any thing (quid), you would willingly give (it).—If they had had the money, they would willingly have given it.—If-you-had-loved the boy, you-would-have advised him.—If you-love the boy, you-will-advise him.—If the soldiers would come to the army, they-would-be-praised by the general.—If the Germans had-led (their) army across the Rhine, Cēsar would-have-made an attack upon (in) them.—If we-are brave, we shall not be overcome

LESSON LXXXIX.

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose. — Ut and Nē.

(545.) THE subjunctive forms of the verb *possē*, to be able, are the following :

[Observe that *possē* is compounded of *pōt-*, the stem of *pōtīs*, *able*, and *essē*; thus, *pōt-essē*, contracted, *possē*. So all similar forms are contracted, and the *t* changed into *s* before *s*.]

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	(Pōtīs sīm = pot-sīm = possīm.)					
pōs-	sīm.	sis.	sīt.	sīmūs.	sītīs.	sīnt.
<i>Subj. Imperf.</i>	(Pōtīs essem = potessem = possem.)					
pōs-	sēm.	sēs.	sēt.	sēmūs.	sētīs.	sēnt.
<i>Subj. Perf.</i>	(Pōtīs fuerim = pot-fuerim = potuerim.)					
pōtū-	ērīm.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
<i>Subj. Plup.</i>	(Pōtīs fuissem = pot-fuissem = potuissem.)					
pōtū-	issēm.	issēs.	issēt.	issēmūs.	issētīs.	issent.

(546.) The *final* conjunctions (*i. e.*, such as denote a *purpose*, *aim*, or *result*) are *ūt* (or *ūtī*), *nē*, *quīn*, *quō*, *quōmīnūs*.

Ūt, or *ūtī*, *that, so that, in order that.*

Nē, *that not, so that not, lest.*

Quīn, *but that.*

Quō, *in order that, to the end that.*

Quōmīnūs, *that (after verbs of hindering).*

EXERCISE.

(547.) *Vocabulary.*

To eat, ēdērē (598).

A Rauracian, Raurācūs, ī.

A Tulingian, Tulingūs, ī.

To burn up, exūrērē (exuss-, exust-).

Together, unā (*adv.*).

Basely, turpiter (215, 2).

To surround, circumvēnirē (vēn-, vent-).

To resist, rēsistērē (restīt-, restīt-).

To fix, hence *to decide*, stātuērē (stātū-, stātū-).

To decide on something quite severe, āliquīd grāviūs stātuērē.

To enjoin, prācīpērē (io, prācēp-, cept-, prae+cāpērē).

To join battle, praeliūm committērē.

End, finis, īs (m., 355, Ex. II., 2).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose, End, or Object.(548.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) I beseech you that you
do this;

or,

I beseech you to do this.

Tē obsēcro, ūt hōc fāciās.

The general commanded *that*
the soldiers should keep
their stations ;

or,

The general commanded the
soldiers to keep their sta-
tions.

Dux impērāvit, ūt mīlites
stātiōnēs suās servārent.

(b) I beseech you *that you*
do not do this ;

or,

I beseech you *not to do this.*

Tē obsēcro nē hōc faciās.

The general commanded *that*
the soldiers should not
desert their stations ;

or,

The general commanded the
soldiers not to desert their
stations.

Dux impērāvit nē mīlites
stātiōnes suās dēsēr-
ērent.

(a) These examples show that a *purpose* or *aim* may be expressed in English by *that*, *in order that*, or (especially after verbs of *asking* and *commanding*) by the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are expressed by *ut*, with the *subjunctive*.*

(b) An object to be *provided against* is introduced in English by *that not*, *in order that not*, or by *not*, with the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are always expressed by *nē*, with the *subjunctive*.

(549.) *Translate into English.*

1. Ūt.

Ēdimus ūt vivāmus, nōn vivimus ūt ēdāmus.—Vēnio ūt discā m.—Vēnī ūt discērem.—Orgētōrix persuādēt Casticō (*dat.*) ūt regnum occūpet.—In eō iūnēre, persuāsit Casticō, cūjus pāter regnum in civitāte suā multōs annōs (191, a) obtinuerat, ūt regnum in civitāte suā occūpāret.—Orgētōrix persuādet Dumnōrīgi ūt idēm (150) cōnētur.—Orgētōrix persuāsit Dumnōrīgi ūt idēm cōnārētur.—Helvētīi persuādent Raurācis, ūti cūm iīs proficiscantur.—Helvētīi persuādent Raurācis ēt Tulingīs, ūtī, oppidiis suis vicisque

* *Jubērē* takes accusative with infinitive.

exustis (457), unā cū iis proficiscantur.—Cæsar castellā commūnit, ūt Helvētios prōhibēre possit.—Cæsar castella communivit ūt Helvētios prōhibēre posset.—Cæsar rogat Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandi fāciat.—Cæsar rogāvit Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandi fāceret.—Helvētiis (147) Cæsar imperat ūt i perſūgās rēducant.—Helvētiis Cæsar imperāvit ūt i perſūgas rēducērent.

2. Nē.

Tē obsēcrāvi nē hōc fāceres.—Pāter filiū obsēcrat nē quīd turpiter fāceret.—Milites, nē āb hoste circumvenirentur, audāciūs (376) resistēre āc fortiūs pugnāre cōperunt.—Divitiācus Cæsārem obsēcrat, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre statuāt.—Divitiācus, multis cū lacrymīs (89, II.) Cæsārem obsēcrāre cōpit, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre statuēret.—Præceptum est (perf. pres., *it has been enjoined to or upon*) Labiēnō, nē prælium committat, nisi Cæsāris cōpiæ visæ sint (542, b, 2).—Præceptum erat Labiēnō, nē prælium committeret, nisi Cæsāris cōpiæ visæ essent.

[Recollect that a *purpose* or *aim* is often expressed in English by the *infinitive*; but in Latin *never*—always by *ut* with the subjunctive for a *positive aim*, by *ne* with the subjunctive for a *negative aim*.]

(550.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general commands the lieutenant (147) *not to do* (= *that he may not do*) this.—The general exhorted the soldiers *to make* (= *that they should make*) the attack sharply.—The father beseeches his daughter *to make* an end of praying.—Some-men (*quidam*) *live to eat*, not *eat to live*.—He comes *to see* the general.—He came *to see* the general.—The Helvetians persuade the Tulingians *to set out* together with them.—The captive beseeches the general *not to decide-on* any-thing at-all-severe against (*in*) him (*sē*).—Cæsar commands the Gauls (147) *to bring back* (= *that they should bring back*) the deserters.—The Romans, *that they might not be surrounded* by the Gauls, began to fight more bravely.—The commander enjoins-it-upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.—The commander enjoined it upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.

LESSON XC.

Succession of Tenses.—Ūt expressing a Result.

(551.) (1.) We cannot say in English, "*He comes, that he might see the general;*" or, "*He came, that he may see the general;*" but we must say, "*He comes, that he may see the general,*" and, "*He came, that he might see the general.*" It is obvious that this tense of the verb in the subordinate sentence depends upon that of the principal sentence; and this dependence is called *the succession of tenses*.

2. The tenses of the Latin verb are divided into *primary* and *historical*.

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(a) <i>Primary</i> ,	{ <i>ā m ā t</i> , <i>he loves.</i>	{ <i>ā m ā b ī t</i> , <i>he will love.</i>	{ <i>ā m ā v ī t</i> , <i>he has loved.</i>
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) <i>Historical</i> ,	{ <i>ā m ā b ā t</i> , <i>he was loving.</i>	{ <i>ā m ā v ē r ā t</i> , <i>he had loved.</i>	{ <i>ā m ā v ī t</i> , <i>he loved.</i>

3. The *Rule* for the succession of tenses then is: If there be a *primary* tense in the principal sentence, there must be a *primary* tense in the subordinate sentence; if a *historical* tense in the principal, a *historical* tense in the subordinate.

[The examples in the preceding lesson illustrate this rule, and those in the present lesson will farther confirm it.]

EXERCISE.

(552.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To strive, contend</i> , <i>nīti</i> (<i>nīs-</i> and <i>nix-</i>), <i>dep.</i>	<i>To cut or tear down</i> , <i>scindēre</i> (<i>scīd-</i> , <i>sciss-</i>).
<i>Despair</i> , <i>despērātiō</i> , (<i>desperation</i>) <i>is</i> (333, R.).	<i>To begin</i> , <i>incōpēre</i> (<i>incēp-</i> , <i>incept-</i> , <i>in+cāpēre</i>).
<i>To run together</i> , <i>concurrēre</i> (<i>concurr-</i> and <i>concūcurr-</i> , <i>concurr-</i>).	<i>To afford means or facilities</i> , <i>dāre facultātem</i> .
<i>Storm</i> , <i>tempestās</i> , (<i>tempestāt</i>) <i>is</i> (293).	<i>Deceit</i> , <i>dōlūs</i> , <i>i.</i>
<i>To rise</i> (as a storm), <i>coorīri</i> (<i>coort-</i> , <i>con+orīri</i>).	<i>Rather</i> , <i>māgīs</i> .
<i>Palisade</i> (<i>rampart of stakes</i>) <i>val-lūm</i> , <i>i.</i>	<i>Integrity</i> , <i>prōbītās</i> , (<i>prōbītāt</i>) <i>is</i> (293).
	<i>Course</i> , <i>cursūs</i> , <i>ūs</i> .
	<i>Change</i> , <i>commūtatio</i> (<i>ōnīs</i> , 333, R.).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Result.

(553.) *Examples and Rules.*

So great is the power of integrity, that we esteem it even in an enemy.

The Helvetians have been so taught by (= have so learnt from) their fathers, that they contend (or, as to contend) rather with valour than deceit.

Tantā vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in hoste diligamus.

Helvētīi itā ā patribus suis didicerunt, ut magis virtute quam dolo nitantur.

(a) These examples show that a *result* (especially after the words *such, so, so great, &c.*) is expressed in English by *that* with the indicative, or, *as to* with the infinitive; in Latin, by *ut* with the subjunctive.

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—*Ut*, signifying *that*, and introducing a *result*, governs the subjunctive.

Rem. *Ut*, expressing a *result*, generally follows the correlative words *talīs, tantus* (*such, so great*); *adēo, sic, itā* (*so*); and verbs signifying *to accomplish, to bring to pass, &c.*

(554.) *Translate into English.*

Impērātor perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dent obsidēs.—*Dumnorix perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dent obsidēs, nē itinēre* (153, a) *Helvētiōs prohibeant* (548, b).—*Imperātor tantā vī* (55, a) *oppidum oppugnat, ut desperatio ānimos oppidānōrum occupet* (551, 3).—*Impērātor tantā vī oppidum oppugnāvit ut desperatio ānimos oppidānōrum occupāret.*—*Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut omnium ānimos perturbāret.*—*Tantā tempestas sūbitō coortā est* (*perf. aor.*) *ut nāvēs cursum tēnērē nōn possent.*—*Impērātor tantam sibi* (54) *jām in Galliā auctoritātem comparāverat, ut undīque ad eum lēgatiōnes concurrerent* (551, 3).—*Gallī vallum scindunt.*—*Gallī vallum scindere et fossam complere incipiunt.*—*Gallī sic nostrōs contemnunt, ut vallum scindere et fossam complere incipiant.*—*Oppidum naturā* (55, a) *locī sic muniēbatur, ut magnam ad ducendum* (496) *bellum dāret facultatem.*—*Auxiliōrum adventū* (55) *magnā rerum commutatio facta est.*

—Hōrum adventū tantā rērum commutatio factā est, ūt nostri fortius pugnārent atque hostēs rēpellērent.

(555.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect that *as* to with the English infinitive must be translated by *ut* with subjunctive.]

The commander *brought-it-to pass* that the Sequanians gave hostages. — The Sequanians *gave* hostages *that* they would *not prohibit* the Helvetians from (their) journey (153, a). — *So great-a* fear suddenly *seizes* the whole army, *that it alarms* the minds of all. — *So great* a tempest suddenly *arises*, *that* the ships *can* not hold their course. — The commander *procures* for himself *so great* authority in Italy, *that* even the senators *run-together* to him. — The Helvetians begin to cut-down the bridge. — The Helvetians *so despised* our men, *that* they *began* to cut down the bridge. — By the approach of the Æduans, *so great* a change was made *that* the Helvetians *began* to fight more bravely. — The Helvetians *had so learned* from their fathers, *as to contend* rather with valour than deceit.

LESSON XCI.

Periphrastic Conjugation, Subjunctive.—Use of *quō*, *quīn*, *quōmīnūs*, with the Subjunctive.

(556.) THE want of a future subjunctive is supplied to some extent by the periphrastic conjugation, formed by combining the participles in *r ū s* and *d ū s* with the subjunctive tenses of *essē*, *to be*.

ACTIVE.		
Pres.	āmātūrūs sīm,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
Imperf.	āmātūrūs essēm,	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
Perf.	āmātūrūs fuērīm,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
Pluperf.	āmātūrūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>
PASSIVE.		
Pres.	āmandūs sīm,	<i>I may be to be loved (one must love me).</i>
Imperf.	āmandūs essēm,	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
Perf.	āmandūs fuērīm,	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
Pluperf.	āmandūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>
Esse (to be).		
Pres.	fūtūrūs sīm,	<i>I may be about to be.</i>
Imperf.	fūtūrūs essēm,	<i>I might be about to be.</i>

EXERCISE.

(557.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To hold back, restrain, rētinērē</i> (rē-tinū, rētent, rē+tēnēre).	<i>Cowardice, ignāvia, m.</i>
<i>To stand in the way, prevent, obstārē</i> (obstīt, obstat, ob+stāre).	<i>To take away from, ēripērē</i> (lo-ēripu-, ērept-); governs acc. and abl.
<i>To sustain, sustinēre</i> (tinū-, tent-, sub+tēnērē).	<i>To train, educate, ēdācarē</i> (av-, at-).
<i>Novelty, nōvitas, (nōvitat) is</i> (293).	<i>To deceive, fallērē</i> (fāfell-, fals-).
<i>To decree, consciscērē</i> (consciv-, conscit-).	<i>It was Cæsar's fault, Pēr Cæsārem stētīt</i> (= it stood through Cæsar).
<i>To commit suicide, sibi mortem consciscērē</i> (= to decree death to one's self).	<i>To finish, perficēre</i> (perfēc-, perfect-).
	<i>Suspicion, suspicio, ōnis</i> (333, R.).

(558.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) Cæsar erects forts, <i>that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.</i>	Cæsar castellā commūnit, quō fācilius Helvētios prōhibēre possit.
---	---

(a) Q uō is used to express a purpose (instead of ū t), especially when a comparative enters the sentence.

Cæsar castellā commūnit ū t possit (*that he may, &c.*).

Cæsar castellā commūnit quō fācilius possit (*that he may more easily, &c.*).

(b) (1) <i>There is no one but thinks;</i> or, <i>There is no one who does not think.</i>	Nēmo est quīn pūtet.
(2) <i>There is no one so brave as not to be confounded.</i>	Nēmo est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.
(3) <i>It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.</i>	Nōn dūbium est quīn milītes fortitēr pugnātūri sint.
(4) <i>I did not doubt that the soldiers would fight bravely.</i>	Nōn dūbitābam quīn milītes fortitēr pugnātūri essent.
(5) <i>They could not be restrained from hurling darts (= but that they should hurl darts).</i>	Nōn pōtērant rētinēri quīn telā conjicērent.

(b) *Quin* is used in the sense of "*but*," or "*as not*," after negative sentences; and in the sense of "*that not*," and "*that*," after *non dubito*, *non dubium est*, &c.; in the sense of "*from*" (= *but that*) after verbs of restraining, &c.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(c) (1) <i>What stands in the way of Julius being happy</i> (= what stands in the way in order that Julius may not be happy) ?</p> <p>(2) <i>Nothing hinders him from doing this</i> (= nothing impedes, in order that he may not).</p> | <p>Quid obstat quōminus Jūlius sit beatus?</p> <p>Nihil impedit, quōminus hoc faciat.</p> |
|--|---|

(c) *Quōminus* is used (in preference to *nō*) after verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, *standing in the way of*, &c. (It can generally be rendered into English by *of*, or *from*, with a participle, as above.)

(559.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Quō* (= *in order that*, used instead of *ut*, with *comparatives*).

Cæsar milites hortatus est ut fortēs essent.—Cæsar milites hortatus est quō fortiōres essent.—Eō opère perfectō (456) Cæsar præsidia dispōnit, castellā commūnit, quō faci-lius, si Helvetiū transire conentur (542, b, 2) prōhibere possit.—Scripsī, ut auctoritatem habērem.—Scripsī quō in suadendō (488) plūs auctoritātis (186, a) habērem.—Auxilium rōgant, ut hostiū cōpias sustineant.—Subsidium rōgant, quō faci-lius hostium cōpias sustineant.

(b) *Quin* (= *but that*).

Nemo est tam fortis quin rei novitate (55, a) perturbetur.—Orgëtorix mortuus est, nequē abest suspicio quin ipsē sibi mortem consciverit.—Helvetii nō dubitant quin Rōmāni Æduis (*abl., verb of depriving*) libertatem erepturi sint.—Nōn dubium est quin civēs, ubi (*when*) patriā in periculō futurā sit (534, e), fortiter pugnaturi sint.—Nōn dubito quin puerum benē educaturus sis.—Turpē est falli.—Turpius est fallere.—Nōn dubium est quin turpius sit fallere quam falli.—Germani retinēri nō poterant quin in nostrōs telā conjicerent.

(c) Quōmīnūs (= *in order that not*).

Pēr Lābiēnum stētīt quōmīnus Rōmānī oppīdum occupārent.—Nostrōrum ignāviā obstābat quōmīnus hostēs superārentur.—Nōn mē impediēs quōmīnus id faciā.—Sēnectūs nōn impēdit quōmīnus littērārum studiā tēneāmus.

(560.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(a) Quō.

Cæsar, having finished the work (= the work being finished), exhorted the soldiers *to be of a braver spirit* (fortiorē ānīmō).—I ask your assistance, that I *may do this* the more easily.

(b) Quīn.

There is *no one who does not think that the wise are always happy*.—It is *not doubtful that Cæsar will cross the Rhine*.—I do not doubt that my father *will come*.—*I was not doubting that you had educated the boys well*.

(c) Quōmīnūs.

Nothing *hinders me from being happy*.—*It was the fault of the commander that the soldiers did not fight bravely*.—The cowardice of the commander *stood in the way of our taking possession of the town*.

LESSON XCII.

Use of Qu ū m, with the Subjunctive.

(561.) THE conjunction qu ū m (sometimes written cum) has two uses: (1) to denote *time* simply (*when, while*); (2) to denote a *cause, or reason* (*since*). The former is called qu ū m *temporal*, the latter qu ū m *causal*.

EXERCISE.

(562.) *Vocabulary.*

To contemplate, contemplārī (āt-),
dep.

To perceive, ānimadvertērē (vert-
vers-, animum+ad+vertere).

To delay, tardārē (av-, at-).

To get sight of, conspiciēre (spec-,
spect-).

Incessant, continuous, continens,
(nent) is (107).

Of right, justly, iūrē (obl. of iūs).

T

<i>To order, juberē, does not take ut with subj., but acc. with inf.; he ordered them to await = jussit eos expectārē.</i>	<i>Destruction, interitūs, ſis. To make-haste, mātūrāre (av-, at-) To announce, nuntiārē (av-, at-). To meet, convēnīre (vēn-, vent-).</i>
--	--

(563.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) <i>When we contemplate the firmament, we wonder at the greatness of God.</i>	Quum cœlum contemplāmur, Deī magnitudinem admirāmur.
--	--

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum, when used *simply* to express the time (especially with the primary tenses), is followed by the indicative.

(b) <i>Cæsar, when he had conquered (= having conquered) Pompey, crossed over into Asia.</i>	Cæsar, quum Pompeium vīcisset, in Asiā trājēcit.
--	--

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *temporal* is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, if the events described *depend* on each other, and especially when the aorist perfect is used in the principal sentence.

[In the above example, the verb *trajecit*, of the principal sentence, is in the aorist perfect. In all such cases, the subordinate sentence with *quum* can be rendered by the English *participle*, as in the example above, and in the two following.]

<i>The prætor, having come (= when he had come) into the forum, perceived.</i>	Prætor, quum in fōrum vēnisset, animadvertit(perf.).
--	--

<i>The commander, having got sight of the enemy, ordered.</i>	Impērātor, quum hostēs conspexisset, jussit.
---	--

(c) <i>Since these things are so. Since they cannot defend themselves.</i>	Quæ quum itā sint. Quum sē dēfendēre nōn possint.
--	--

<i>Although the soldiers were retarded by rains, yet they overcame all (obstacles).</i>	Mīlites, quum imbrībūs tardārentur, tāmen omniā supērāvērunt.
---	---

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *causal* (signifying *since*, or *although*) is always followed by the subjunctive.

(564.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Quum temporal*, with subjunctive (563, b).

Cæsar, quum id nuntiātum esset, mātūravit āb urbe prōficisci.—Quum lēgio dēcimā cōstitisset, omnēs hostēs ād eūm lōcum contendērunt.—Quum lēgātus ad oppidum accessisset, puēri mūliērēsquē pācem āb Rōmānis pētīvērunt.—Quum Cæsar ād oppidum accessisset, oppidāni pācem āb eō pētīerunt.—Quum imperātor signum dēdisset, milītes in hostes impētum fēcērunt.—Cæsar, quum Gallōs vicisset, in Itāliam contendit (*perf.*).—Quum lēgāti Cæsārē in Itānerē convēnissent, eōs suum adventum expectāre iussit.

2. *Quum causal* (*since, or although*), with subjunctive (563, c).

Milītes, quum frīgōrē et imbrībus tardārentur, tāmen cōtinentī labōrē (55, a) omnia sūpērāverunt.—Cicēro jūrē patrē patriæ dictus est, quum urbē ab intērītū servasset.*—Æduī, quum sē suāque ab Helvētiīs dēfendēre nōn possint, lēgātōs ād Cæsārē mittunt, rōgātum (379) auxiliū.—Quum omnes hōmīnes mortāles sint, etiā tū mōriēris.

(565.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Quum temporal*, with subjunctive (563, b).

The ambassadors *having asked* (= *when the ambassadors had asked*) peace of Cæsar, he ordered them to await his coming.—Cæsar *having ordered them* (= *when Cæsar had ordered them*) to await his coming, (they) obeyed.—The lieutenant, *when that was* (= *had been*) *announced*, returned to the citadel.—The fifth legion *having halted*, the enemy made an attack upon them.—The prætor, *having come* into the forum, saw the captives.—The boy, *having approached* the wood, heard a voice.

2. *Quum causal*, with subjunctive (563, c).

Since these things are so, let us believe (528, b, 1).—Nations, *when they cannot defend* themselves, ask assistance.—The scout, *though he was delayed* by the cold, came to the camp.—*Since* Cæsar took-away (ēripere) liberty from the Æduans, they rightly feared.

* Contracted from *servavisset*.

LESSON XCIII.

Use of the Subjunctive in Relative Sentences.

(566.) THE relative pronoun often takes the place of a conjunction in introducing a sentence, and is therefore followed by the subjunctive. The following examples illustrate some of these uses.

(a) You err <i>because</i> you think =	You err <i>who</i> think.
(b) They sent men <i>to seek for</i> peace =	They sent men <i>who should seek for</i> peace.
(c) I am not such a man <i>as to be</i> delighted with vices =	I am not <i>he who can be</i> delighted with vices.

EXERCISE.

(567.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>A herald, a proclaimer, præco, (præcōn) is (333).</i>	<i>To be present, ædessē (ad+esse).</i>
<i>A Nervian, Nervius, i.</i>	<i>To bear, ferrē (irreg.).</i>
<i>It pleased, placuit (with dat.).</i>	<i>Fortunate, fortunātus, ā, ūm.</i>
<i>At length, demum.</i>	<i>A youth, ædōlescens, (cent) is (m. and f., 25, a).</i>
<i>Affection, affectio, (tiōn) is (333, R.).</i>	<i>Innocence, innōcentia, æ.</i>
<i>To hurt, nocērē (with dat.).</i>	<i>Fit for, idōneus, ā, ūm (with dat.).</i>

(568.) *Examples and Rule.*

(a) <i>Hannibal did wrong in wintering (= because he wintered) at Capua.</i>	Mālē fecit Hannibal, quī Capuæ hiemāvērit (= <i>who wintered at Capua</i>).
--	--

Here quī introduces the ground or cause of the judgment that Hannibal erred.

(b) <i>They send ambassadors to say (= who may say).</i>	Lēgātōs mittunt, quī dicant.
<i>They sent ambassadors to say (= who might say).</i>	Lēgātōs misērunt, quī dicērent.

Here quī (= ut ii) introduces a purpose.

(c) <i>You are not the man to be ignorant.</i>	Nōn is es, quī nesciās (= <i>you are not he who can be ignorant</i>).
<i>He ordered all (those) who could bear arms to be present.</i>	Omnēs (eos understood) quī armā ferre possent, ædessē jussit.

In these examples, *qui* introduces a nearer definition of the demonstrative, which is expressed or implied.

(d) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive is used in a relative sentence to express a *ground*, a *purpose*, or to give a nearer definition of a demonstrative expressed or implied.

Rem. 1. *Talis, tam, tantus, ita, &c.*, may be these demonstratives, as well as *is, eā, id*.

2. The relative *to express a purpose* is very common, especially in *Cæsar*, and should be thoroughly studied and practised.

(569.) *Translate into English.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (531, 3).]

(a) *Qui, ground, cause, or reason.*

Errās qui censeās Deum esse injustum. — Fortunātus fuit Alexander, qui virtutis suæ Hōmērū præcōnem (225, a) invēnerit. — O fortunātē adōlescens, qui tuæ virtutis Hōmērū præcōnem invēneris. — Nervii incūsaverunt reliquos Belgas qui sē pōpulo Rōmāno (54) dēdidissent.

(b) *Qui, purpose.*

Erīpiunt aliis (153, a) quōd aliis (54) largiantur. — Lēgatos ad Rōmānos misērunt, qui pētērent pacem. — Cæsar equitatum præmittit, qui vīdeant quas in partēs hostes itēr faciant (534, d). — Impērator misit explorātōres, qui cognoscērent quālis esset (534, d) nātūrā montis. — Cæsar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subduxit, equitatumque, qui sustinēret hostium impētum, misit. — Ariōvistus omnes cōpias, quæ nostros perterrērēt, et mūnitiōne (153, a) prōhibērent, misit. — Plācuit Cæsari ut ad Ariōvistum lēgatos mitteret (548, a). — Plācuit Cæsari ut ad Ariōvistum lēgatos mitteret, qui ab eō postulārent, ut aliquem locum collōquiō (54) dicēret (548, a). — Tūc dēnum Ariōvistus partē suārum cōpiarū quæ castrā oppugnārent misit.

(c) *Qui, defining a demonstrative (express or implied).*

Impērator omnes cīves qui armā ferrē possent adesse jussit. — Lēgatus pōposcit (411, a) obsīdes, arma, servos, qui ad Helvetios perfūgissent. — Milites eā quæ impērārentur

* *Equitatum (cavalry)* being a noun of multitude, the relative *qui* may be in the plural.

libenter fēcērunt.—Nōn tālis sūm quī te fallam.—Innocentiā est affectio tālis ānīmi, quæ nō ceat nēmīnī (54).

(570.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Cæsar did badly *in-crossing* (*who crossed*, perf. subj.) the Rhine.—They err *who think* that the soul is not immortal.—The father censured his son *for setting-out** (= *who had set out*, plup. subj.) from the city.

(b) Cæsar sends forward scouts, *to choose* (= *who may choose*) a place fit for the camp.—Cæsar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus *to demand* (= *who should demand*).—The general brings back his forces to the hill, and sends forward the cavalry *to sustain* (= *who may sustain*) the attack.

* Proficiscor.


§ 17.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. (XCIV.)

LESSON XCIV.

Oratio Obliqua (Oblique Narration).

(571.) IN relating the words of another, we may either, (1) represent him as speaking in the first person, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, "He said, '*I will come*,'" or, (2) we may state what he said in a narrative form; *e. g.*, "He said *that he would come*." The former is called *Oratio recta* (*direct narration*); the latter, *Oratio obliqua* (*oblique narration*).

 The example above given shows that the moods must be different in the two modes of narration.

(572.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*,

Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Æduans, *if they paid the tribute yearly*.

In this example, the sentence in spaced printing is the principal sentence; the sentence in *italic* the subordinate sentence.

EXERCISE.

(573.) *Vocabulary.*

To bring upon, to wage, inferre (il-lāt-), *irreg.*

Tribute, stipendium, i.

Yearly, quotannis (used as *adv.*).

To pay, pendere (pend-, pens-).

To show, point out, ostendere (ostend-, ostens-, and ostent-).

To excel, preestare (praestit-, praestit-, and praestāt-).


Because, propterea quod.

To get, to gain for another, conciliare (av-, at-).

To get possession of, potiri, (pōtīt) dep. (governs *gen.* or *abl.*).

Very easy, perfacilis, e (with *dat.*).

Affirm, confirmare (av-, at-).

 *The Helvetians intend, Helvetiis est in animo* (= it is in mind to the Helvetians).

(574.) *Examples and Rules.*

- (a) Ariovistus said *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans.* | Ariovistus dixit, sē Æduīs bellum nōn illātūrum esse.

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—In principal sentences in oratio obliqua, the *accusative with the infinitive* is used.

Rem. When they express a *command* or *wish*, the subj. is used.


- (b) Ariovistus said *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans, if they paid the tribute yearly.* | Ariovistus dixit, sē Æduīs bellum nōn esse illātūrum, si stipendium quōtannis penderent.

(b) In subordinate sentences in oratio obliqua, the *subjunctive* is always used (e. g., penderent).

- (c) The lieutenant denied *that he had crossed the Rhine.* | Lēgātus, nēgāvit sē Rhēnum transissē.*

He denies *that he can give.* | Nēgat sē possē dāre.

(575.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar dixit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra munitūrum essē.—Dē dēcimā lēgione Cæsar nōn dūbitābat.—Cæsar dixit, sē dē dēcimā lēgione nōn dūbitāre.—Cæsar dixit, sē cū sōlā dēcimā lēgione esse itūrum.† —Cæsar dixit sē cum sōlā dēcimā lēgione, dē quā nōn dūbitāret, essē itūrum.—Impērātor dixit, maxīmas nātiōnes pulsas sup̄rātasque esse.—Helvētiīs (54) perfācile erat tōtiūs Gallīæ imp̄riō (abl.) pōtiri.—Dumnōrix ostendit, Helvētiīs perfācile esse, quum virtutē (55, a) omnibus (dat.) præstārent, tōtiūs Gallīæ imp̄riō pōtiri.—Dumnōrix ipse Casticō (54) regnum conciliātūrus erat.—Dumnōrix confirmat sē Casticō regnū conciliātūrum esse.—Helvētiīs est in animō iter p̄r prōvinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum.—Sibi essē in animō (573, ) dicunt Helvētiī, sinē ullō mālificio iter p̄r prōvinciam facere, prop̄terea quōd aliud iter habeant nullum.—Impērātor nōn pōtest iter Helvētiīs (54) p̄r prōvinciam dāre.—Impērātor

* Past infin. of transirē.

† Fut. infin. of irē, to go.

nēgat s ē, mōrē ēt exemplō pōpūli Rōmāni, posse īter Hel-
vētiīs pēr prōvinciam dāre.

(576.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar said *that he, after Pompey was conquered, would cross-over into Asia.*—Cæsar had full confidence in (=did not doubt concerning) the fourth legion.—Cæsar said *that he would attack the town with the fourth legion alone, in which he had full confidence.*—Cicero said *that the greatest cities had been attacked.*—The lieutenant affirms *that he will lead the army across the Rhine, if the enemy attempt to hinder (them) (prohibere).*—The Helvetians say *that they intend (573, 574) to seek peace of Cæsar.*

§ 18.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. (XCV.—XCVI.)

LESSON XCV.

Impersonals.—Pudet, Piget, Tædet, &c.

(577.) IMPERSONAL verbs are those which have no subject, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; *e. g.*, *pluit, it rains.*

(578.) (a) Some impersonals are *never used* in the personal form; *e. g.*, *pigēt, it grieves, &c.*; (b) others are simply the third person of personal verbs: *e. g.*, *plācēt, it pleases* (*plāceō, I please*). (c) Again, the third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive: *curritūr, they run* (it is run); *I am envied, invidētur mihi*; *nunciātū est, it was told.*

(579.) (a) The following impersonals (which express certain feelings) take the *accusative* of the person and *genitive* of the cause of the feeling.

<i>Pigēt, piguit,</i>	<i>it grieves.</i>
<i>Pūdēt, pūduīt,</i>	<i>{ it shames,</i>
	<i>{ one is ashamed.</i>
<i>Pœnitēt, pœnituīt,</i>	<i>it repents.</i>
<i>Tædēt, pertæsū est,</i>	<i>it wearies, disgusts.</i>
<i>Misērēt,</i>	<i>one pities.</i>

Your folly grieves me.

Mē pigēt stultitiæ tuæ (= it grieves me of your folly).

(b) Sometimes the cause or object of the feeling is expressed by the *infinitive*, or a *sentence* with *quōd*.

I am not ashamed of having done this.

Nōn pūdēt mē hōc fēcissē (= it does not shame me to have done this).

I repent of offending you.

Pœnitet mē quōd tē offendī (= it repents me that I have offended you).

EXERCISE.

(580.) *Vocabulary.*

Indolent, ignāv-us, ā, ūm.
Folly, ineptiā, ārum (57, R.).
To sin, peccārē (āv-, āt-).
Business, nēgōtium, ī.
Undertaken, susceptūs, ā, ūm (part.
of suscipere).

To confess, fātērī (fass-), dep.
Because, since, quōniām (conj.).
Almost, pænē (adv.).
Some day, āliquando (adv.).
Innocent, innōcens, (innōcent) is
Lot, sors, (sort) is (293). [(107).

(581.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Ignāvum pœnitēbit āliquando ignāviæ.—Nōn pœnitēt mē hūjus consiliī.—Tui* mē misēret.—Eōs ineptiārum pœnitēbat.—Pœnitēbat mē peccāti.—Misēret tē āliōrum, tui* nēc misēret, nēc pūdet.—Nōs misēret cālāmītātis tuæ.—Nunquam Cæsārem suscepti negotiī pertæsum est.—Mē civitātis mōrum pīget, tædetque.

(b) Illum pœnitēt quōd mē offendērit.—Socrātem nōn pūduit fātērī se multas rēs nescīre.—Tē id pūduit fācere.—Nōn pœnitēt mē vixisse, quoniām nōn frustrā vixi.—Quē m pœnitēt peccasse, pæne est innōcens.

(582.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Thou wilt repent of thy folly.—He will be ashamed of his indolence.—We shall be ashamed of thee.—We pitied them.—He was ashamed of us.—We shall never repent of our industry.—The boy will some-day be ashamed of his indolence.—Thou wilt some-day repent of thy folly.—We are weary of life.—He was ashamed of the citizens.—I am ashamed of you and your ignorance.—Many are grieved (at) their lot (*gen.*) (= It grieves many of their lot).—I am not only grieved at, but also (sed etiam) ashamed of, my folly (= It not only grieves, but also shames me of my folly).

(b) I repent of having-sinned.—I am ashamed of doing this.—A wise man is not ashamed to confess that he is ignorant-of many things.—I am weary of living (*vivere*).—I repent of having lived in-vain.—The boy repents of having offended (*quod, with perf. subj.*) the master.—The young man is ashamed of having lived in-vain.—The general repented of having moved (*inf.*) the camp.—The Helvetians repented of having crossed (*inf.*) the river.—The barbarians repented of having approached (*inf.*) the rampart (use *ad* before the accusative).

* *Gen. of tā.*

LESSON XCVI.

Impersonal Verbs, continued.(583.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Ought, it behooves, oportet, ōbat, uit, &c. (with acc. and inf.).</i>	<i>It is agreeable, libet, or lūbet (with dat.).</i>
<i>It is becoming, decet (with acc. and inf.).</i>	<i>It is allowed, lawful (one must), licet (licuit and licitum est), dat.</i>
<i>It pleases, placet, placuit, &c. (with dat.).</i>	<i>It happens, contingit (dat.). Accidit (used rather of evil accidents).</i>
<i>It is of importance, it interests, interest (with gen.).</i>	<i>It is expedient, expedit (dat.).</i>
<i>It concerns, it matters, refert (with gen.).</i>	<i>With my permission, mea voluntate (abl., 55, a).</i>

(584.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) <i>Boys ought to be diligent.</i>	Puēros oportet diligentes esse (= <i>it behooves boys to be diligent</i>).
---------------------------------------	---

<i>It becomes a young man to be modest.</i>	Decet vēreundum esse ādōlescentem.
---	------------------------------------

(a) *Oportet* and *decet* are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

[ *Oportet* is also followed by the subjunctive.]

(b) (1) <i>It pleased the majority to defend the camp.</i>	Mājōri parti placuit castrā dēfendēre.
(2) <i>Cæsar determined (=it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors to Ariovistus.</i>	Placuit Cæsāri ut ād Ariovistum lēgātos mittēret.

(b) *Placet* (expressing a purpose) may be followed by the dative, with (1) the infinitive, or (2) the subjunctive with *ut*.

(c) <i>I may go (=it is allowed to me to go).</i>	Mihi ire licet.
---	-----------------

<i>You may go.</i>	Tibi ire licet.
--------------------	-----------------

<i>I might have gone (=it was allowed to me to go).</i>	Mihi ire licuit.
---	------------------

<i>I may be idle.</i>	Mihi otiosū esse licet.
-----------------------	-------------------------

<i>I do not choose (=it is not agreeable to me).</i>	Nōn libet mihi.
--	-----------------

(c) *Licēt, libēt*, and, in short, all impersonals which admit to or for after them in English, are followed by the dative.

(d) *It concerns all* (= it is the interest of all). | *Intērest omnium.*

It concerns me. | *Meā intērest.*

It is your concern. | *Tuā rēfert.*

It is my business. | *Meā rēfert.*

(d) *Intērest* governs the genitive; but when a *personal pronoun* is to be used, the *possessive ablative* (*meā, tuā, &c.*) is used instead of the genitive (*meī, tuī, &c.*). *Rēfert* is rarely used except with these ablative forms.

(585.) *Translate into English.*

Omnium intērest vērā (accus. pl.) dicere.—*Intērest meā rectē facere.*—*Nōn libet mīhi praelium committere.*—*Cæsari nōn placuit praelium committere.*—*Intērest meā hōc (accus.) scribere.*—*Lēgātus pētebat, ut sibi discēdere liceret.*—*Expēdit reipublicæ (dat., 584, c.).*—*Tibi licet id facere.*—*Meā vōluntātē tibi id facere licet.*—*Helvētii rōgant ut (548, a) Cæsaris vōluntātē id facere liceat.*—*Cæsārem oportet ad Ariovistum venire.*—*Ariovistus dixit; Cæsārem oportere (574, a) ad sē venire.*—*Placuit Cæsari ut decimam lēgiōnem mitteret.*—*Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet.*—*Mīhi negligenti esse nōn licet.*—*Nōbīs venire licuit.*—*Libērōrum (65, R.) intērest pārentēs vivere et salvōs esse.*—*Tibi ignāvō esse nōn licet.*—*Peccāre nēmīni licet.*—*Dēcet tē esse diligentem.*

(586.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys ought to be modest (584, a).—You ought to do this.—You ought to have done this (*oportuit, with pres. inf., facerē*).—It becomes us to follow nature.—It becomes a young man to love his parents.—The general determined (= *it pleased the general*) to make the attack.—The Helvetians determined to send ambassadors to Cæsar.—You may do this (584, c).—You may not do this.—I do not choose (= *it is not agreeable to me*) to ride-on-horseback.—I do not choose to come to the city.—It is every-body's interest (= *it interests all*) to do rightly (584, d).—It is my business to keep (my) word (*fīdes*).—You are not allowed to come.—We ought to praise the brave.

§ 19.

IRREGULAR VERBS. (XCVII.—CII.)

LESSON XCVII.

Pos-sūm, Pos-sē, Pōt-uī, to be able, (can).

(587.) *Pos-sūm* is compounded of *pōt-ī*s, *able*, and the verb *sūm*. The *t* before *s* is changed to *s*; *e. g.*, *pōt-sūm*, *pos-sūm*; *pōt-sunt*, *pos-sunt*.

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	<i> pos-sūm.</i>	<i> pōt-ēs.</i>	<i> pōt-est.</i>	<i> pos-sūmūs.</i>	<i> pōt-estīs.</i>	<i> pos-sunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> , <i>pōt-ērām</i> ; <i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uī</i> ; <i>Plup.</i> , <i>pōt-uērām</i> ; <i>Fut.</i> , <i>pōt-ērō</i> ; <i>Fut. Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uērō</i> : <i>all regular.</i>						
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	<i> pos-sim.</i>	<i> pos-sis.</i>	<i> pos-sit.</i>	<i> pos-simūs.</i>	<i> pos-sitis.</i>	<i> pos-sint.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i> pos-sēm.</i>	<i> pos-sēs.</i>	<i> pos-sēt.</i>	<i> pos-sēmūs.</i>	<i> pos-sētis.</i>	<i> pos-sent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uērīm</i> ; <i>Plup.</i> , <i>pōt-uissēm</i> : <i>regular.</i>						
<i>Infīn. Pres.</i> , <i>pos-sē</i> ; <i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uissē</i> ; <i>Part.</i> , <i>pōt-ens</i> (used only as an adjective).						

EXERCISE.

(588.) *Vocabulary.*

Laughter, *risūs*, *us*, *m*.

To sow, *sērērē* (*sēv*-, *sāt*-).

Good deed, act of kindness, *bēnēficiūm*, *i*.

Reap, *mētērē* (*messū*-, *mess*-).

To do good to, to benefit, *prōdessē* (*prōfū*-, *prō*+*sūm*); governs *dat*.

Hang over, *impendērē*.

To render, *reddēre* (*reddīd*-, *red*-*dīt*-).

Influence, *grātia*, *æ*.

Fraud, *fraus*, (*fraud*) *īs* (293).

Restrain, *rētīnēre* (*rētīnū*-, *rētent*-, *rē*+*tēnēre*).

With equanimity, *æquō ānīmō* (*abl*-, = *with equable mind*).

(589.) *Examples.*

(a) *To be very powerful.*

Plūrimūm posse (= *to be very much able*).

(b) *Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.*

Tōtīus Galliæ plūrimūm Helvētīi possunt.

(c) *A very few can keep off (many).* | Perpauci prōhibēre possunt.

(d) *In the rest of Gaul.* | In rēliquā Galliā.

[What is the rule for the Succession of Tenses ? 551, 3.]

[What case do the compounds of sum (prosum, desum, &c.) govern ? 267, b.]

(590.) *Translate into English.*

Beātus esse sine virtūte nemo pōtest.—Per rīsum multum pōtēris cognoscere stultum.—Sere (*imperative*) bēnēficia, ut possis (548, a) mētēre fructum.—Viri bōni sūmus, si (iis) prōsūmus, quibus possūmus.—Semper ita vivāmus (528, b) ut ratiōnem reddere possimus (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendit ut fācile perpaucī prōhibēre possint (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendēbat ut fācile perpauci prōhibēre possent.—Sine agrīcultūra hōmīnes vivere nōn possunt.—Nostri hostes consēqui nōn pōtuērunt, quōd ēquites insulam cāpere nōn pōtuērunt.—Divitiācus plūrimum dōmi (*at home*) atque in rēliquā Galliā pōtērat (589, a).—Fraus est accipere quōd nōn pōtēris reddere.—Nōn est dūbium quīn tōtius Galliæ plūrimum Helvētīi possint (558, b).—Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn in nostros tēla conjicērent (558, b, 5).—Cæsar pōtest iter Helvētīis (54) dāre.—Cæsār nēgat sē posse iter Helvētīis dāre.—Cæsār nēgat sē, mōre et exemplō (55, a) pōpūli Rōmāni, posse iter ulli (194, R.) per prōvinciam dāre.

(591.) *Translate into Latin.*

Men cannot be happy without virtue.—Without arts we cannot live.—Let us always so live (528, b) that (553, b) we may be able to die with equanimity.—Let us sow good-deeds, that we may be able to reap fruit.—The chief was very powerful, not only (nōn solūm) at home, but also (sēd ētiam) in the rest of Gaul.—Cæsar denies that (574, c) he is able to give a passage to the ambassadors through the province.—Cæsar finds out (rēpērit) that the chief is very powerful (*accus. with inf.*).—Cæsār finds out that the chief is very powerful, not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states.—The enemy cannot be restrained from (quin) hurling darts against our soldiers.

LESSON XCVIII.

Vellē, to be willing.—Nollē, to be unwilling.—Mallē, to be more willing, to prefer.

(592.) Nōlo = nōn vōlo ; mālō = māgis vōlo.

(a) INDICATIVE.						
Pres.	vōlē.	vīs.	vult.	vōlūmūs.	vultīs.	vōlant.
	nōlē.	nonvis.	nonvult.	nōlūmūs.	nonvultīs.	nōlant.
	mālē.	māvis.	māvult.	mālūmūs.	māvultīs.	mālunt.

Rem. The following tenses are regular: *Imperf.*, vōlēbām, nōlēbām, mālēbām; *Perf.*, vōluī, nōluī, māluī; *Fut.*, vōlām, nōlām, mālām; *Fut. Perf.*, vōluerō, nōluerō, māluerō.

(b) SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	vēl.	īm.	is.	īt.	imūs.	itīs.	int.
	nōl.						
Imperf.	vell.	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
	noll.						
	mall.						

Rem. 1. Regular are, *Perf.*, vōluērīm, nōluērīm, māluērīm; *Pluperf.*, vōluissēm, nōluissēm, māluissēm.

2. *Imperative*, nōli, nōlitē ; nōlite, nōlitētē, nōlantō. (*Imperative of vōlē and mālē wanting.*)

3. *Participles*, vōl-ens, nōl-ens.

4. *Infinitives* : *Pres.*, vellē, nollē, mallē ; *Past*, vōluissē, nōluissē, māluissē.

EXERCISE.

(593.) Vocabulary.

To be empty, unoccupied, vacārē

(āv-, at-), *intrans.*

Neighbour, finltīmūs, ā, ūm (with *dat.*).

Attentive, attentūs, ā, ūm.

Attentively, attentē (adv.).

Grant, concession, concessūs, ūs.

Content, contentūs, ā, ūm (with *abl.*).

To seem, vidēri (pass. of vidēre).

To return, to come back, rēverti (revers-), *dep.*

Old man, sēnex, (sen) is (108, R. 1).

On the Ides of April, ad idās Aprīlis (the 13th of April).

April, Aprīlis, is, m. (25, a).

Docile, dōcīlis, ē (104).

(594.) Examples.

(a) *If they wish anything.* | Si quid vēlint.

(a) The verbs *velle, nolle, malle*, as transitive verbs, govern the accusative.

(b) *He is willing to hear.* | Vult audire.

(b) The verbs *vellë, nollë, mallë*, take the infinitive after them, as the complementary object (210).

(c) Cæsar is not willing that | Nōn vult Cæsar eūm lōcum
that country should remain | vācārë.
unoccupied.

(c) The verbs *vellë, nollë, mallë*, admit the accusative with the infinitive after them.

[What is the rule for *principal* sentences in *oratio obliqua*? (574, a.)
For *subordinate* sentences? (574, b).]

(595.) *Translate into English.*

Ēgo nōn eādē vōlo, sōnex (225, a) quæ vōlui ādōlescens.
— Sī vīs āmāri, āmā (*imperative*).— Nōn vult Cæsar eum
lōcum vācāre.— Nōluit Cæsar eum lōcum, unde Helvētīi
discessērāt, vācāre; nē Germāni fīntīmī Gallīæ (54) essent
(548, b).— Bōni hōmīnes, mīsēri quam imprōbi esse, mālunt.
— Fēre libenter hōmīnes id quōd vōlunt, crēdunt.— Idem
velle ēt idē nolle, eā* firmā āmicitiā est.— Dōcīlis est quī
attentē vult audire.— Quēm docīlem vōlīs fācēre, sīmūl
attentum fāciās oportet (584, a, [P]).— Nīsi Cæsar Rōmānis
(147) sōlūs impērāre vōluissēt (542, b), ā Brutō ēt Cassio nōn
interfectus esset.— Ariovistus dixit sē regnum malle (574, a)
Cæsarīs concessū (55, a) quām Ēduōrum bōnēficio hābēre.—
Mālūmus, cū virtūte, paucīs (55, a) contentī essē, quām
sīne virtūte multā hābēre.— Aristidēs bōnūs esse mālēbat
quam vidērī.— Hābet iracundiā hōc malī (186, a, R.); nōn vult
rēgī.— Cæsar legātīs respondet (574, a) diēm sē ād dēliberan-
dum (489) sumptūrum (esse); sī quīd vōlūt (542, b, 2) ād
Īdūs Aprīlis revertantur (574, b).— Tāmēn Cæsar, ūt spātium
intercēdērē possēt (548, a) dum milītēs convēnīrent, lēgātīs
respondit, diēm sē ād dēliberandum sumptūrum; sī quīd vel-
lent, ād Īdūs Aprīlis rēvertērentur.— Cæsar āb Helvētīis dis-
cēdēre nōlēbat.— Omniā ērunt fāciliā sī vōlēs (542, b).—
Ariovistus respondēt; sī quīd Cæsar a sē vōlit, illum ād se
vēnīre oportēre.— Ariovistus respondit, sī quīd Cæsar a sē vel-
let, illum ād se vēnīre oportēre.

* Eā is in apposition with the clause *idem velle et idem nolle*.

LESSON XCIX.

Fero, Ferre, Tuli, Latum, to bear, bring.

(596.) (a) PARADIGM OF IRREGULAR FORMS.

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Pres. Act.</i>	fērō.	fers.	fert.	fērimūs.	fertis.	fērant.
<i>Pres. Pass.</i>	fēror.	ferris.	fertūr.	fērimūr.	fērimīni.	fērantūr.
INFINITIVE.						
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pres., ferrē, to bear.</i>		<i>Perf., tūlissē, to have borne.</i>		<i>Fut., lātūrus essē.</i>	
<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Pres., ferri, to be borne.</i>		<i>Perf., lātūs essē, to have been borne.</i>		<i>Fut., fērendum essē.</i>	
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
<i>Imperf. Act.</i>	ferr-	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētis.
<i>Imperf. Pass.</i>	ferr-	ēr.	ērīs (ē).	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīni.
					ent.	entūr.
IMPERATIVE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Active.</i>	2. fēr, fertō.		3. fertō.	2. fertē, fertōtē.		3. fērantō.
<i>Passive.</i>	2. ferrē, fertōr.		3. fertōr.	2. fērimīni.		3. fērantōr.

(b) The remaining tenses are formed regularly from *fēr-*, the present stem; *tūl-*, the perfect stem; and *lāt-*, the supine stem.

1. From *fēr-*,

Imperfect active and passive, *fērēbam*, *fērēbār*.

Future active and passive, *fēram*, *es*; *fērār*, *ērīs*.

Participle active and passive, *fērens*, *fērendūs*. *Gerund*, *fērendi*, &c.

2. From *tūl-*,

Indicative perfect, *tūlī*; *pluperfect*, *tūlērām*; *future perfect*, *tūlērō*.

Subjunctive perfect, *tūlērīm*; *pluperfect*, *tūlissēm*.

3. From *lāt-*,

Participle passive, *lātūs*: hence all the passive forms, *lātūs sūm*, *ērām*, *ēro*, *sīm*, *essem*, &c.; *lātūrūs sūm*, *sim*, &c.

(c) The compounds are inflected in the same way; e. g., *inferre*, to bring against; *intūlī*, *illātūm*; * *infēro*, *infers*, *infert*, &c.

(d) *Tollo*, *tollērē*, to raise, to take away, forms its perfect and supine from *tūlī*, *lātūm*, viz., *sustūlī*, *sublātūm*.

* *in*+*lātum*=*illātūm*, *n* being changed into *l* before *l*.

EXERCISE.

(597.) *Vocabulary.**Frequent*, crēbēr, brā, brum (77, a).*Rumour*, rŭmōr, (rŭmōr) īs (319).*To bring to, bring*, afferrē (attŭl-, allāt-, ad+ferre).*To bring together*, conferrē (contŭl-, collāt-, con+ferre); *to betake one's self*, sē conferrē.*Poor, helpless*, inops, (inōp) īs (in+ops), *adj.*, 107.*To prefer*, præferrē (tŭl-, lāt-, præ+ferre); governs *acc.* and *dat.**Mean, sordid*, sordīdŭs, ā, ūm.*To bring against*, inferrē (tŭl-, lāt-), governs *acc.* and *dat.**To make war upon one*, bellŭm ālicui inferrē.*Especially*, præsertim.*Giant*, gīgas, (gīgant) īs, m. (N. on p. 133).*To conspire, plot*, conjūrāre (av-, āt-).*Impediment*, impēdimentum, ī.*Baggage*, impēdimentā, ōrum (*pl.*).*Whatever*, quicquid (n. of quisquis).(598.) *Examples.*

- (a) *It is the part,*
It is the duty,
It is the mark,
It is the characteristic,
of a wise man.

- (b) *The poets say.*
They say.

Est sāpientis (= *it is of a wise man*).

Poetæ fērunt.
 Fērunt.

Ferunt is used for *they say*, and followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

(599.) *Translate into English.*

Eās rēs Cæsar grāviter fert.—Cæsar dīcīt, eās rēs sē grāviter ferrē.—Sāpiens bonā suā sēcūm (125, II., b) fert.—Terrā circā sōlem itā fertur ūt circā eām sīmul lūnā fērātur.—Crebrī rŭmōres ād Cæsārem affērēbantur, omnēs Belgās contrā pōpŭlum Rōmānum conjūrāre, obsīdes que inter sē dāre.—Helvētīi nostrōrum impētŭs (*acc. pl.*) sustinēre nōn possunt.—Diūtius quā Helvētīi nostrōrum impētŭs sustinēre nōn possent (563, b) altērī sē īn montem rēcēpērunt, alterī ād impēdimentā ēt carrōs sē contŭlērunt.—Helvētīi īn ūnum lōcum impēdimentā contŭlērunt.—Fertē miserō (54) atque īnopī (54) auxiliū.—Est sāpientis (598, a) injūrias æquō animō ferre.—Est bonī (598, a), mīserī atque īnopībus auxiliū ferre.—Quīd quæque (178, 6) nox aut diēs fērat, incertum

est.—Pēcūniam praeferre amicitiæ sordidum est.—Amicitiam praeferre pecūniæ honestum est.—Ariovistus pōpulo Rōmānō bellum intūlit.—Cæsāri nunciātum est (578, c) Ariovistum pōpulo Rōmānō bellum intūlisse.—Æquō animō fērāmus quicquid nobis accīdat.—Fērenda est fortunā, præsertim quæ abest ā culpā.—Improbī ād vōluptātem fēruntur.—Poētæ fērunť (598, b), gīgantēs bellum diīs (62, R. 3) intūlisse.—Demētrius, quum patriā pulsus esset (563, b) ād Ptōlēmæum rēgem sē contūlit.—Catilinæ sōcīi armā contrā patriam fērēbant.—Dōmōs suās Helvētīi reliquērunť, ut tōtī (194, R. 1) Galliæ bellum inferrent (548, a).

LESSON C.

Fieri, to become, to be done, to happen.—Edere, or Esse, to eat.

1. Fieri.

(600.) Fieri forms the passive of *fācērē*, to make, to do. The tenses are formed regularly with the endings of the 4th conjugation, except the infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive.

INDICATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> , fī-o, fī-s, fī-t, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> , fiēbām, bās, &c.
<i>Fut.</i> , fiām, fiēs, &c.	<i>Perf.</i> , factūs sum, ē, est, &c.
<i>Pluperf.</i> , factūs ērām, ērās, &c.	<i>Fut. Perf.</i> , factūs ēro, ēris, &c.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> , fiām, fiās, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> , fiērēm, fiērēs, &c.
INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> , fiērī; <i>Perf.</i> , factūs, ā, ūm, esse; <i>Fut.</i> , factum īrī, or futūrūm esse, or fōrē.	
PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Pres.</i> wantīg; <i>Perf.</i> , factūs; <i>Fut.</i> , fāciendūs.	

Rem. Observe that in all the forms of this verb except fierī and fierēm, rēs, &c., the i is long, contrary to the general rule that a vowel before another is short.

2. Ēdērē (essē).

(601.) Ēdērē (or essē), to eat, forms all the tenses regularly with the endings of the third conjugation; but it has, in

addition, a few forms similar to those of *esse*, to be, which are shown in the following table :

INDIC. <i>Pres.</i>	{	edo.	edis <i>or</i> ēs.	edit <i>or</i> est.	edimūs.	editis <i>or</i> estis.	edunt.
SUBJ. <i>Imperf.</i>		edērēm <i>or</i> essēm.	edērēs <i>or</i> essēs.	edērēt <i>or</i> essēt.	edērēmūs <i>or</i> essēmūs.	edērētīs <i>or</i> essētīs.	edērent <i>or</i> essent.
IMPERATIVE.		edē <i>or</i> ēs.	edito <i>or</i> esto.	editē <i>or</i> este.	editotē <i>or</i> estotē.	edunto.	

Rem. *Ēs*, from *esse*, to be, is short ; from *esse*, to eat, it is long (*ēs*).

EXERCISE.

*(602.) Vocabulary.

To wander, *vāgārē* (dep.).

Fewness, small number, *paucitās*,
(*paucitāt*) *is* (293).

To be born, *nascī* (nat.), dep.

To admonish, *admōnērē* (ad+mō-
nērē, mōnū-, mōnīt-).

Among, *apūd* (prep., acc.).

According to, *sēcundū* (prep., acc.).

Less, *minus* (adv.).

Sickness, *ægritūdo*, (*ægritūdīn*) *is*
(340).

To eat up, corrode, *exēdere* (ex+
ēdērē).

Fate, *fātūm*, *i*.

Perpetual, *perpētūus*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Poor, paupēr, (*paupēr*) *is* (107).

To drink, *bībēre* (*bīb*-, *bībīt*-).

(603.) Examples.

- (a) *It happens* (it is brought to pass) *that they wander less widely.* | *Fī*t, *ūt* *minus* *latē* *vāgen-*
tur.

Ut with subjunctive, expressing a consequence, frequently follows *fī*t.

- (b) *He was informed* (= he was made more certain). | *Certior factus est* (may be followed by acc. with infin.).

- (c) *Cicero was made consul.* | *Cicēro consul factus est.*

The verb *fieri* admits a predicate-nominative after it.

- (d) *Nothing could be done.* | *Nīhil fierī* *pōtērat.*

[Repeat the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(604.) Translate into English.

*His rēbus fī*t, *ut* *Helvētīi* *minus* *latē* *vāgentur* (603, a).—
*His rēbus fīē*bat, *ut* *Helvētīi* *minus* *latē* *vāgārentur*.—*His*
*rēbus fī*t *ut* *Helvētīi* *minus* *fācile* *finītīmīs* *bellum* *in*ferre *pos-*
sint.—*Dē* *Cæsāris* *adventū* *Ædūi* *certiōres* *facti* *sunt*.—*Cæ-*

ear, litteris (55, a) Labiēnī certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas contrā pōpulum Rōmānum conjūrārē, obēdēsque inter sē dāre.—Impērātor dixit, id fiērī posse.—Nostrōrum propter paucitātem nihil fiērī pōtērat.—Labiēnus praelium commisit, ut undīque unō tempōrē (118, II., c) in hostes impētūs fiēret.—Nēmo fīt cāsū (55, a) bōnūs.—Poētā nascitur, nōn fīt.—Si fatō (55, a) omniā fiunt (542, b, 1), nihil nos admōnēre pōtest ut cautiōres fiāmus.—Contrā vim sīne vī nihil fiērī pōtest.—Diligentiā (55, a) omniā fiunt faciiliā (603, c).—Āpud vētērēs Rōmānos, ex āgricōlis interdum fiēbant consūlēs; ita Cincinnātus consul (603, c) factus est.—Omniā quæ secundūm nātūrām fiunt, hābendā sunt (502) in bōnīs.*—Sæpe quī ex paupēribus divites fiunt, divitiis (*abl.*, 316, b) ūtī nesciunt.—Vivimus ut edāmus; nōn edimus ut vivāmus.—Ēdēre oportet ut vivāmus, nōn vivēre ut edāmus.—Essē (601) oportet ut vivās, nōn vivēre ut edās.—Perpētūā curā ānimum āvārī ex est.—Bibē, ēs.—Bibite, estē.—Ēgritudo ānimum ex est.

LESSON CI.

Ire, to go.—*Quire, to be able (can).*—*Nequire, to be unable (cannot).*

(605.) *Eō, irē, ivi, itūm, to go*, mostly follows the 4th conjugation; but is irregular in the present tense, gerund, and supine, as appears by the following

PARADIGM.

TENSES.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eō, is, it, imūs, itīs, eunt.</i>	<i>ēām, ēās, ēāt, ēamūs, ēātīs, ēant.</i>		
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>ibām, ibās, ibat, &c.</i>	<i>irēm, irēs, irēt, &c.</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ibō, ibis, &c. . . . ibunt.</i>	<i>itūrās, sīm, sis, sīt, &c.</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ivi or ii, ivisti, ivit or iit, &c.</i>	<i>ivērīm, ivēris, ivērīt, &c.</i>		
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>ivērām, ivērās, &c.</i>	<i>ivissēm, ivissēs, ivissēt, &c.</i>		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>ivērō, ivērīs, &c.</i>			
IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
<i>i, itō, itō.</i>	<i>Pres., irē.</i>	<i>itūm.</i>	<i>Pres., iens (euntīs).</i>	<i>eundī.</i>
<i>itē, itotē.</i>	<i>Perf., ivissē or issē.</i>	<i>itā.</i>	<i>Fut., itūrās, ā, ūm.</i>	<i>eundō, &c.</i>
<i>euntō.</i>	<i>Fut., itūrūm essē.</i>		<i>Verbal, eundūs, ā, ūm.</i>	

* *Habendā sunt in bōnīs = should be reckoned among blessings.*

Rem. 1. In the same manner the compounds are formed; *e. g.*, *exirē*, *abirē*, &c.; but they generally drop the *v* in the perfect-stem; thus, *āb-ii*, *ab-isti*, *ab-iit*, *abissē*, *abissēm*, &c.

2. Some of the compounds obtain a *transitive* force, and then take a passive form like other transitive verbs; *e. g.*, *præterirē*, *to pass by*; *prætēreōr*, *I am passed by*, &c.

(606.) *Queo*, *I can*, *I am able*; *nēqueo*, *I cannot*, *I am unable*, are conjugated like *eo*, *I go*; but they rarely occur except in the present tense.

EXERCISE.

(607.) *Vocabulary.*

To go out, *exirē* (*ex+irē*). *Takes* *abl.*, *with or without prep. dē*.

To return, *rēdirē* (*re+irē*; *d* inserted for euphony).

To undergo, *sūbirē* (*sub+irē*); governs *accus.*

A return, *returning*, *rēditio*, (*rēditio*n) *is* (333, R.).

Ready, *prepared*, *pārātūs*, *ā*, *ūm* (*part. of pārārē*).

To pass over, *transirē* (*trans+irē*).

Before, *præ*, *adv.* (or *prep.* with *abl.*).

Of Cannæ, *Cannensis*, *ē* (104).

Whither, *quō*, *adv.*

By what route? *quō itinērē* (*abl.*, 55, a).

To perish, *pērirē* (*pēr+irē*).

Manfully, *vīrilitēr* (215, 2).

Tell me, *dic* (*imperat. of dicērē*).

Whether—or, *utrum—ān*.

Taken away, *sublātūs*, *ā*, *ūm* (*part. pass. of sufferre* (*sub+ferre*)).

Of Zurich, *Tigurinūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

To suffer, *allow*, *pāti* (*pass.*), *dep.*

To fight, *dēcertāre* (*āv.*, *āt.*).

To be sick, *sēgrōtāre* (*āv.*, *āt.*).

Light, *lux*, (*lūc*) *is* (293).

☞ Recollect, *they went* = *ivērunt* or *iērunt*.

he departed = *ābiit*, rather than *ābivīt*; and so of other compounds.

[Give the Rule for *āt* (*purpose*), 548, a).

(608.) *Translate into English.*

Helvētīi dē finibus suis exeunt.—*Orgētorix Helvētīis (dat.) persuādet, ut dē finibus suis exeant.*—*Orgētorix Helvētīis persuāsīt, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiis (property) exirent.*—*Dōmum* (113, III., R.) *rēdeunt.*—*Omnīa pēriculā sūbeunt.*—*Helvētīi, dōmūm rēditioēis spē sublātā* (456), *pārātiōres ad omniā pēriculā sūbeundā* (496) *ērant.*—*Cæsar in Āsiam transiit.*—*Pompeius in Āsiam transiērat.*—*Dōmō (abl.) exirē possunt.*—*Ērant omnino itinēra duō, quibus itinēribus dōmō exire possent.*—*Æduī per fines suos Helvētiōs irē patiuntur.*—*Pāgūs Tigurinūs dōmō exi-*

erat.—Hic pāgus ūnus, quum dōmō exisset, L. Cassium, consulem, interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jūgum miserat.—Helvetiī in eām partem ibunt, ubi Cæsar constituērit.—Quō itinēre (55, a) hostēs iērunt?—Eōdēm itinēre, quō hostes iērant, Cæsar ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante se mittit.—Ibā m fortē Viā Sacrā (55, a) sicut meus est mōs.—I prae, ego sequar.—Ex pugnā Cannensī admōdum paucī Rōmānī dōmum rediērunt.—I, quō tē fortunā vocēt (534, d).—Quicquid transiit tempōris (186, a, *Rule*) periit.—Quidam ferrō (55, a) decertāre ācerimō possunt, ægrōtārē virilitēr nōn queunt.—Sine lūcē cōlōrēs esse nequeunt.—Pompeius periit.—Dic utrum queās an nequeās mēcum irē.—Risus interdū ita rēpentē erumpit, ut eām cūpientēs (442, c) tēnērē nequeāmus (553, b, R.).

§ 20.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

LESSON CII.

Aio, Inquam, Novi, Memini, Cæpi, Odi.

(609.) *Aið*, *I say, say yes, affirm*, is used in very few tenses.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	aió.	áis.	áit.	—	—	aiunt.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	aiëbám.	-bás.	-bät.	-bámüs.	batís.	bant.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	—	áis.	aiät.	—	—	aiant.
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	aiens (aiéntis) used only as <i>adjec.</i>					

(610.) *Inquám*, *I say*, is used *between* the words of a quotation.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	inquam.	inquis.	inquít.	inquímus.	inquiant.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	—	—	inquiebät or inquibat.	—	inquiebant.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	—	inquies.	inquiet.	—	—
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	—	inquisti.	inquít.	—	—
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	inquiam.	as.	at.	atís.	ant.

(611.) *Növī*, *I know*; *mëminī*, *I remember*; *cæpi*, *I have begun*, *I began*; *ōdī*, *I hate*, are perfect forms with present meanings. All the tenses made on the perfect stem exist, regularly formed.

INFINITIVE.			
növissë, to know.	mëminissë, to remember.	cæpissë, to have begun.	ōdissë, to hate.
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.			
növ-	{ ī, istī, yt, &c. ërām, ërās, ërät, &c. ërō, ërīs, ërīt, &c. ërim, ërīs, ërīt, &c. issöm, issës, issët, &c.	Ind. Pres.,	<i>I know.</i>
memin-		Ind. Past,	<i>I remembered.</i>
cæp-		Ind. Fut.,	<i>I shall begin.</i>
ōd-		Subj. Pres.,	<i>I may know.</i>
		Subj. Past,	<i>I might hate.</i>
IMPERATIVE, mëmentō, mëmentötë (the others wanting).			

☞ Recollect, *növī* = *I know* (not *I have known*); *növeram*, *I knew* (not *I had known*), &c.; and so of the others. But *cæpi*, *növī*, &c., may be used as *perf. pres.*, = *I have known, I have begun*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(612.) Vocabulary.

To fall back, to give way, pēdem rēferrē (= to draw back the foot).
Young, raw, inexperienced, tiro, (tīrōn) is (107).
Surly, fērōcūlus, ā, ūm.
Lucius Varius, L. Varius, I.
Forgetful, inamēmōr, (immēmōr) is (107); governs genit.
Calmly, quietly, tranquillitē (tranquill-us, 215, II., a).

Cruelty, ssevitiā, a.
Demonax, Demōnax, (ac) is (a philosopher of Hadrian's time).
To philosophize, philōsōphari (dep.).
In no way, by no means, nullō mōdō (abl.).
Conscious, conscius, ā, ūm (with dat. of person, gen. of thing).
Livy, Livius, I.


(613.) Examples.

(a) *He exhorts them to remember.*

Hortātūr eos ut mēmīnērīnt.

(b) *Aristides, when asked what was just, replied, "Not to covet what belongs to others."*

Aristīdes interrōgātus quīd iustum esset? "Āliēnā," inquit, "nōn concupiscere" (= "Not to covet," said he, "what," &c.).


 *Inquam is used in quoting the very words of another (oratio recta), and is always placed among the words quoted (as "said he" in English). Ait is used generally in quoting the sense, not the exact words of another (oratio obliqua).*

(c) *He began to build the city.*

Urbem aedificāre cōpit.


The city began to be built.

Urbs aedificārī cōptā est.

 *If a passive infinitive is used with the word begin, you must employ the passive form, cōptus sum, instead of cōpi; cōptūs eram, instead of cōperam, &c.*

(614.) Translate into English.

Mīltes, vulneribus defessi, pēdem rēferre cōperunt.—
 "Quid tū," inquit Labiēnus, "miles tiro (voc.) tam fērōcūlus es?" Tum miles: "Nōn sum," inquit, "tiro, Labiēnē, sēd dē dēcimā lēgiōnē vētēranus."—Helvētī nostrōs lācessere cōperunt.—Hostēs, quī in montem sēsē rēcōperant, praelium rēintegrare cōperunt.—Cāsar dicit (574, a), id fierī possē, sī Aedui finitimōrum āgros pōpulārī cōperint (574, b).—

Milites in mūrum lāpīdes jēcēre cœpērunt. — Undīque in mūrum lāpīdes jācī (613, c, ) cœptī sunt. — Dux militēs hortātur ut vētēris gloriæ mēmīnerint. — Lēgatī dixērunt sē portūs (*accus. pl.*) insūlasque nōvissē. — Multī tē ōdērunt, sī tē solum āmās. — Germānī sūperbiam L. Variī ēt sāvītiām ōdissē cœpērant. — Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiū ōdērunt. — Tullus Hostilius, ut Livius ait, fērōcior ētiam Rōmūlō (360, c) fuit. — Sōcrātēs interrōgātus quīnām hōmīnes tranquīlīter vivērent (534, c)? “Quī,” inquīt, “nullīus turpītūdīnis sibi conscīi sunt.” — Demōnax interrōgātus, quādo cœpisset (534, c) philōsōphārī? “Tum,” inquīt, “cum cognoscēre meīpsū (159) cœpī.” — Hannībal Rōmānos sic ōdērat, ut in grātiām cum illis rēdire nullō mōdō (55, a) posset (553, b, R.). — Is mīser est, quem omnēs bōnī ōdērunt. — Nōvīmus Aristīdis justītiām, nōvīmus Sōcrātis sāvīntiām. — Nōn āmābīmus bōnēs mōres, sī nōn ōdērīmus mālōs.



PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

X 2

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. LETTERS, QUANTITY, &c.

- (615.) 1. THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of w.
2. Six are *vowels*, a, e, i, o, u, y: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.
3. The consonants are divided into
(a) *Liquids*, l, m, n, r;
(b) *Spirants*, h, s, j;
(c) *Mutes*; the remaining consonants, among which there are
(1) c-sounds, c, g (ch); q;
(2) p-sounds, b, p (ph);
(3) t-sounds, d, t (th);
(4) Double consonants, x, z.
4. The diphthongs are, au, eu, ae, oe (rare, ei, oi, ui).

(616.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short*; e. g., vīa.
(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; e. g., amānt.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, āgri.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long*; e. g., mens æ, āū-rum.
(4) Contracted syllables are *long*; e. g., cōgo (coāgo).

§ 2. NOUN.

(617.) 1. The *noun* is the name of any object (person or thing). Nouns are *proper* (13, a), *common* (13, b), or *abstract* (13, c).

2. There are *three* genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*: *two* numbers, *singular* and *plural*: *six* cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*: and *five* declensions.

3. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

Males, rivers, winds, and mountains most we find
With *months* and *nations* **MASCULINE** declined;
But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
As **FEMININE**; most *islands*, too, the same.
COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
And **NEUTER** all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

First Declension.—(Genitive-ending *se*.)

(618.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ā.	se.	se.	ām.	ā.
Plur.	se.	ārūm.	is.	as.	is.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Final syllables all long but ā, *nom.* and *voc.*; ām, *acc.*; and ūm, *gen. plur.*

2. *Gender.*—Nouns of first declension are *feminine*, except names of male beings, &c.

Second Declension.—(Genitive-ending *i*.)

(619.) **MASCULINE** nouns of second declension have *nominative*-ending ūs; *neuter* nouns, ūm.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ī.	ō.	ūm.	ē.	ō.
Plur.	ī.	ōrūm.	is.	ōs.	ī.	is.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ūm.	ī.	ō.
Plur.	ā.	ōrūm.	is.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Short final syllables, ūs, ē, ūm, ā.
Long " ī, ō, īs, ōs.

2. *Gender.*—A few nouns are feminine in ūs, and a few neuter (see 62, R. 1).

3. *Stems in r.*—(1) All nouns whose stems end in r, reject the ending ūs in nom. and ē in voc.; e. g., *field*, nom., āgēr (not āgēr-ūs); voc., āgēr (not āgēr-ē). (2) Most which have ē in nom. drop it in the remaining cases; e. g., nom., āgēr; gen., āgrī (not āgēr-ī).

4. *Exceptions to Case-endings.*—(1) Proper names in ius, with *filius*, *genius*, *meus*, have voc. in ī; e. g., *Georg-ī*, *fil-ī*, *mī*. (2) *Deūs* has voc., *deūs*, nom. plur., *diī*, dat. and abl. plur., *diīs*. (3) A few take ūm in gen. plur., instead of ōrūm; e. g., *sestertium*.

Third Declension.—(Genitive-ending īs.)

(620.) (a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	īs.	ī.	ēm (īm).	ē (ī).
Plur.	ēs.	ūm (īum).	ībūs.	ēs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Sing.	—	īs.	ī.	ē (ī).
Plur.	ā (īā).	ūm (īum).	ībūs.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Final syllables all short but ī and ēs.

2. *Euphonic Rules.*—(a) c-sound + s = x: arc-s = arx; leg-s = lex.

(b) t-sound before s is dropped: laud-s = laus; mont-s = mons.

3. *Rules of Gender from the Formation of the Nominative.*

[Learn these from 355.]

4. *Peculiar Case-endings.*—(1) Acc. in īm: (a) *commonly* in

Febrīs, *puppīs*, *pulvīs*,
Sēcūris, *restīs*, *turrīs*:

(b) *always* in

Sitīs, *tussīs*,
Vis, *amussīs*.

(2) Abl. in ī: (a) *sometimes* in those which take īm in acc., with *ignīs*, *civīs*: (b) *always* in *vis*; and in neuters whose nom. ends in āl, ār, or ē.

(3) Gen. plur. ium: (a) in all which take ī in abl. sing.; (b) in monosyllables whose stems end in two consonants (e. g., *mont-*, *mont-īūm*); (c) in all which insert a vowel before adding s in nom. (e. g., *nāv-ī-s*, *nāv-īūm*).

Fourth Declension.—(Genitive-ending ūs.)(621.) **MASCULINE** nominative-ending ūs; *neuter* nominative-ending ū.**(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.**

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ūs.	ŭī.	ŭm.	ŭ.
Plur.	ūs.	ŭm.	ībūs.	ūs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	Nom., Acc., Voc.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ū.	ūs, or ŭ.	ŭ.
Plur.	ŭā.	ŭm.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Ūs long, except in nom. sing., and dat. and abl. plur.; ŭ and ī long always.

2. *Genders.*—Only the following nouns are feminine:

Ācūs, mēnūs, trībūs,
Dēmūs, portūcūs, and īdūs.

3. *Peculiar Case-ending.*—The following take ībūs in dat. and abl. plur., instead of ībūs :

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vēdī,
Ficus, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs, also pēcū.
Trībūs too, and partūs.

4. Dēmūs, *house*, is thus declined :

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dēm-ūs.	{ -ūs. -ī.	-ŭī.	-ŭm.	-ŭ.
Plur.	dēm-ūs.	{ -ŭm. -ŭm.	-ībūs.	{ -ūs. -ūs (rarely).	-ībūs.

Obs. The genitive dēmī is used only in the sense of *at home, at my house.*

Fifth Declension.—(Genitive-ending eī.)

(622.) **THERE** are but few nouns of this declension: all feminine except dīēs, *day*, and merīdīēs, *midday*; and even dīēs is feminine in singular when it means a *fixed day*.

(623.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	eī.	eī.	ēm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērūm.	ēbūs.	ēs.	ēbūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—The e in eī is *long* when a vowel stands before it, as dī-ē-ī; *short* when a consonant, as fid-ē-ī.

2. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are wanting in all nouns of this declension except rēs, dīēs, spēcīēs.

§ 3. ADJECTIVE.

(624.) THE *adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; *e. g.*, *good, small, white, &c.* In Latin, adjectives are divided into three classes, according to their endings.

1. CLASS I. (us, a, um).

(625.) These take the *feminine*-ending of first declension of nouns; *masculine* and *neuter* endings of the second.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ūs.	ā.	ūm.	N.	ī.	ae.	ā.
G.	ī.	ae.	ī.	G.	ōrum.	arum.	ōrum.
D.	ō.	ae.	ō.	D.	īs.	īs.	īs.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	A.	os.	as.	ā.
V.	ē.	ā.	ūm.	V.	ī.	ae.	ā.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

(2.) *Stems in er.*—Adjectives whose stem ends in *er* reject *ūs* and *ē* in nom. and voc.

(a) Most of them also drop *ē* in the nom. in the other cases; *e. g.*, *beautiful, pulchēr.*

Nom. Pulchēr, pulchrē, pulchrūm.
Gen. Pulchrī, pulchræ, pulchrī, &c.

(b) But *asper, laeēr, liber, miser, prosper, tener*, retain the *ē*; *e. g.*

Nom. Misēr, misērā, misērūm.
Gen. Misērī, misēræ, misērī, &c.

(3.) *Peculiar Case-endings.*—Some adjectives, numerals, and adjective pronouns have gen., *iūs*, and dat., *ī*; *e. g.*, *unūs, uniūs, unī.* [They are *unūs, totūs, solūs, nullūs, ullūs, aliūs, alter, utēr, neutēr, uterque.*]

2. CLASS II. (Two Endings).

(626.) Adjectives of the *second class* have *īs* in the nominative singular for masculine and feminine ending, and *ē* for neuter.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N., V.	īs.	īs.	ē.	N., V.	ēs.	ēs.	ē.
G.	īs.	īs.	īs.	G.	īum.	īum.	īum.
D.	ī.	ī.	ī.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	īm.	īm.	ē.	Acc.	ēs.	ēs.	ē.
Abl.	ī.	ī.	ī.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(2.) Some adjectives of this class take *ēr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *īs*; *e. g.*, *acer, acris, acré.*

- (3.) The ablative has *ē* instead of *ī* in *juvénis*, *youth*; *edilis*, *edile*. The genitive plural has *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *cēlēr*, *swift*.

3. CLASS III. (One Ending).

- (627.) (1.) Adjectives of the *third class* have but *one ending* in the nominative for all three genders; e. g., *happy*, *fēlix* (m., f., n.); *bold*, *audax* (m., f., n.). Participles in *ns* fall under this class.
- (2.) The case-endings are those of nouns of third declension (see paradigm, 108). They have *abl. ī* generally, but *ē* in *pauper*, *senex*, and a few others (108, R. 1); neut. plur., *īā*; gen. plur., *iūm*. *Vētūs* has nom. plur., *vētēr-ā*, gen. plur., *vētēr-ūm*.

For participles, *abl., ē* }
 " adjectives, *abl., ī* } is more common.

4. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

- (628.) *Comparative*-ending, *iōr*; *superlative*, *issīmūs*.

Brave, *fort-is*, *fort-iōr*, *fort-issīmūs*.
Hard, *dūr-ūs*, *dūr-iōr*, *dur-issīmūs*.

Rem. The *comparative* is declined (after third declension of nouns) thus:

Nom. *Dūriōr*, *dūriōr*, *dūriūs*.
 Gen. *Dūriōr-is*, *dūrioris*, *dūrioris*, &c. (See 358.)

- (629.) Adjectives whose stems end in *r* have *rīmūs* for *superlative*-ending (instead of *issīmūs*); e. g.,

Miser, *miser-iōr*, *miser-rīmūs*.
Pulchēr, *pulchr-iōr*, *pulcher-rīmūs*.

- (630.) Several adjectives whose stem ends in *l* have *līmūs* for *superlative*-ending; e. g.,

Fācil-is, *fācil-iōr*, *fācil-līmūs*.

They are

Sīmīlis, *dissīmīlis*, and *fācilis*;
Hūmīlis, *difficilis*, and *grācilis*.

5. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

- (631.) *Irregulars*.

<i>Good.</i>	<i>bōnūs.</i>	<i>mēliōr.</i>	<i>optīmūs.</i>
<i>Bad.</i>	<i>mālūs.</i>	<i>pējōr.</i>	<i>pessīmūs.</i>
<i>Great.</i>	<i>māgnūs.</i>	<i>mājōr.</i>	<i>maxīmūs.</i>
<i>Much.</i>	<i>multūs.</i>	{ <i>plūs</i> (n. sing.).	<i>plūrimūs.</i>
<i>Small.</i>	<i>parvūs.</i>	{ <i>plūrēs</i> , & (pl.).	<i>minīmūs.</i>
<i>Old.</i>	<i>sēnex.</i>	<i>mīnōr.</i>	<i>(wanting.)</i>
<i>Young.</i>	<i>jūvénis.</i>	<i>sēniōr.</i>	<i>(wanting.)</i>
<i>Outward.</i>	<i>extērūs.</i>	<i>jūniōr.</i>	<i>extrēmūs.</i>
<i>Below.</i>	<i>infērūs.</i>	<i>exteriōr.</i>	{ <i>infīmus.</i>
<i>Above.</i>	<i>sūpērūs.</i>	<i>infēriōr.</i>	{ <i>imūs.</i>
<i>Hind.</i>	<i>postērūs.</i>	<i>sūpēriōr.</i>	{ <i>suprēmūs.</i>
		<i>postēriōr.</i>	{ <i>summūs.</i>
			<i>postrēmūs.</i>

§ 4. NUMERALS.

(633.) NUMERALS are divided into the following classes, of which the first three are adjectives, the fourth adverbs.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unū.	Primū.	Singulū.	Sēmēl.
2 Duō.	Sēcundū.	Binī.	Bi.
3 Trēs.	Tertū.	Tērni.	Tēr.
4 Quattuor.	Quartū.	Quāterni.	Quāter.
5 Quinquē.	Quintū.	Quīni.	Quinquāies
6 Sex.	Sextū.	Sēni.	Sēxties.
7 Septēm.	Septimū.	Septēni.	Sēpties.
8 Octō.	Octāvū.	Octōni.	Octies.
9 Nōvem.	Nōnū.	Novēni.	Nōvies.
10 Dēcēm.	Dēcimū.	Dēni.	Dēcies.
11 Undēcim.	Undēcimū.	Undēni.	Undēcies.
12 Duōdēcim.	Duōdēcimū.	Duōdēni.	Duōdēcies.
13 Trēdēcim. [im.]	Tertū.	Tērni.	Trēdēcies.
14 Quattuordēc.	Quartū.	Quāterni.	Quattuordēcies.
15 Quindēcim.	Quintū.	Quīni.	Quindēcies.
16 Sexdēcim.	Sextū.	Sēni.	Sēdēcies.
17 Septendēcim.	Septimū.	Septēni.	Dēcies & sēpties.
18 Octodēcim.	Octāvū.	Octōni.	Duōdēviciēs.
19 Nōvendēcim.	Nōnū.	Nōvēni.	Undēviciēs.
20 Viginī.	Vicēsīmū.	Vicēni.	Viciēs.
30 Trīgintā.	Tricēsīmū.	Tricēni.	Triciēs.
40 Quādrāgintā.	Quādrāgēsīmū.	Quādrāgēni.	Quādrāgiēs.
50 Quinquāgintā.	Quinquāgēsīmū.	Quinquāgēni.	Quinquāgiēs.
60 Sexāgintā.	Sexāgēsīmū.	Sēxāgēni.	Sēxāgiēs.
70 Septuāgintā.	Septuāgēsīmū.	Sēptuāgēni.	Sēptuāgiēs.
80 Octōgintā.	Octōgēsīmū.	Octōgēni.	Octōgiēs.
90 Nōnāgintā.	Nōnāgēsīmū.	Nōnāgēni.	Nōnāgiēs.
100 Centum.	Centēsīmū.	Cētēni.	Cētiēs.
200 Dūcenti.	Dūcentēsīmū.	Dūcentēni.	Dūcētiēs.
300 Trēcenti.	Trēcentēsīmū.	Trēcentēni.	Trēcētiēs.
400 Quādringēnti.	Quādringētēsīmū.	Quādringētēni.	Quādringētētiēs.
500 Quingēnti.	Quingētēsīmū.	Quingētēni.	Quingētētiēs.
600 Sexcenti.	Sexcentēsīmū.	Sēxcētēni.	Sēxcētiēs.
700 Septingēnti.	Septingētēsīmū.	Sēptingētēni.	Sēptingētētiēs.
800 Octingēnti.	Octingētēsīmū.	Octingētēni.	Octingētētiēs.
900 Noningēnti.	Nongētēsīmū.	Nōngētēni.	Nōngētētiēs.
1000 Millē.	Millēsīmū.	Millēni.	Millēs.

For the declension of unus, duo, and tres, see 194.

Ducenti, and all the compounds of centi, are declined like the plural of bonus.

Millia, *thousands*, the plural of mille, is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Ordinal numbers are declined like bonus.

Distributives, like the plural of bonus.

All the rest are undeclinable.

In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with et, or the larger without et, precedes; as quattuor et viginti, or viginti quattuor. Above one hundred the larger number precedes, with or without et; as centum et unus, or centum unus.

§ 5. PRONOUN.

(634.) THE *pronoun* is a substitute for the noun ; e. g., *he, she, it*, may be substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(635.) (a) *Substantive Personal*, so called because used as substantives, not as adjectives.

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc., Abl.		N., A.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
<i>I.</i>	egŏ.	mēl.	mihl.	mē.	<i>We.</i>	nēs.	nostrŭm, or nostrī.	nēbīs.
<i>Thou.</i>	tā.	tāl.	tībl.	tā.	<i>You.</i>	vōs.	vestrŭm, or vestrī.	vōbīs.
<i>Him, her, it.</i>	—	sūl.	sūbl.	sē.	<i>Them.</i>	(same as sing.)		

(b) *Adjective Personal*, or *Possessive* (derived from the above).

<i>Mine.</i>	mēūs, ā, ūm (voc., mī).	<i>Ours.</i>	nostr̃, nostrā, nostrŭm.
<i>Thine.</i>	tūūs, ā, ūm.	<i>Yours.</i>	vestr̃, vestrā, vestrŭm.
<i>His, hers, its.</i>	sūūs, ā, ūm.	<i>Theirs.</i>	sūūs, suā, sūēm.

2. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(636.) The *demonstrative pronouns* are so called because they serve to point out an object ; e. g., *this, that, these, those, &c.*

(1.) *Īs, ēā, īd, this, that (he, she, it)*, often antecedent of qui.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	īs, ēā, īd.	ējūs.	ēl.	ēūm, ēām, īd.	ēō, ēā, ēō.
Plur.	ī, ēe, ēā.	ēōrŭm, ēārŭm, ēōrŭm.	īis, or ēis.	ēōs, ēās, ēā.	īis, or ēis.

(2.) *Īdēm, ēādēm, īdēm, the very same*, compounded of *īs* and *dēm*. Declined like *īs* with *dem* added ; thus, *ējusdem, eidēm, eundēm* (not *eumdem*), &c.

(3.) *Hic, hēc, hōc, this*, points out an object present to the speaker, and is called the *demonstrative* of the *first person*. (It is also used for *he, she, it*.)

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hic, hēc, hōc.	hējūs.	hēc.	hēc, hēc, hēc.	hēc, hēc, hēc.
Plur.	hī, hē, hēc.	hōrŭm, hārŭm, hōrŭm.	hīs.	hōs, hās, hēc.	hīs.

(4.) *Istā, istā, istād, this, that*, points out an object present to the person spoken to, and is called the *demonstrative* of *second person*.


	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istē, istā, istū.	istius.	isti.	istū, istā, istū.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	isti, istae, ista.	istorū, istarū, istorū.	istis.	istōs, istās, istā.	istis, istis, istis.

 Iste is often used to express contempt.

- (5.) Illē, illā, illū, points out an object remote from the *speaker* (*that, the former*, opposed to *hic*), and is called *demonstrative* of *third person*. (It is often used for *he, she, it*.)

 Declined throughout like istē, istā, istū.

- (6.) Ipsē, ipsā, ipsū, *self*, is added to other pronouns, *mē, tē, sē, &c.*, and expresses *myself, thyself, himself, &c.*, accordingly.

 Declined like istē, except that neuter is ipsū (not ipsū).

3. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(637.) The *relative pronoun* (*who, which, what*) is so called because it commonly refers to some other word called the antecedent.

- (1.) Quī, quē, quōd, *who, which, what*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quī, quē, quōd.	cujus.	cui.	quem, quā, quōd.	quō, quā, quō.
Plur.	quī, quae, quae.	quorū, quarū, quorū.	quibūs.	quos, quas, quae.	quibūs.

- (2.) Quicumque, quaecunque, quodcumque (*whoever, whichever, whatever*), declined like quī, quē, quōd, with *cumque* added.

- (3.) Quisquis (*whoever, whatever*), used *without* a substantive. The following cases only occur, and of these only *quisquis* and *quicquid* commonly.

	Nom.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quisquis (m., f.). quicquid (n.).		quemquem (m., f.). quidquid (n.).	quōquō, quā-quōquō.
Plur.	quīquī (m., f.).	quibūsquibūs.		

4. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(638.) The *interrogative pronouns* (*who? which? what?*) are used in asking questions.

- (1.) Quīs, quē, quōd (*who? which? what?*), is declined precisely like the *relative* quī, except that in *nom. sing. masc.* it has quīs, and in *nom. and acc. sing. neut.*, quōd. [Quī, quē, quōd, is also used *interrogatively*, as an *adjective* (172).]

- (2.) Quisnām, quēnām, quidnām, is more *emphatic* than quīs. (*Pray, what are you doing? quidnām agis?*) It is declined like quīs, quē, quōd.

5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(639.) The *indefinite pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual (*any one, some one, &c.*).

- (1.) *Quidā, quēdā*, { *quoddā, used as an adjective,* } a certain (one); plur., *some*. Declined like *qui*; but takes *n* generally before *d* instead of *m*; e. g.,

Quendā, quorundā (not *quemdam, quorumdam*).

- (2.) *Quivis*, { (*any you please*). Declined like *quī*. In neut., *Quilibet*, } *quod* used as *adjective*, *quid* as *substantive*.

- (3.) *Quisquam* (*any, any one*; e. g., when it is denied that there are any). Neut., *quicquam* or *quidquam*. Declined otherwise like *quī*. [This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]

- (4.) *Quispiā, quēpiā*, { *quodpiā, used as adj.,* } somebody, *quidpiā, used as subst.,* } some.

- (5.) *Ālīquīs, ālīquā*, { *ālīquod, as adj.,* } some one, something. *ālīquid, as subst.,*

- (6.) *Quisquē, quēquē*, { *quodquē, as adj.,* } each. *quidquē, as subst.,*

Ūnusquisquē, -quēquē, { *-quodquē, as adj.,* } each one *-quidquē, as subst.,* } (stronger than *quisquē*). *Genitive, ūnuscūjusquē, &c.*, both *ūnūs* and *quis* being declined.

- (7.) *Ecquīs?* Used interrogatively (*does*); *any one, anything*.

Ecquīs, ecquā, or ecquā, { *ecquod, as adj.,* } neut. plural, *ecquid, as subst.,* } *ecquā*.

 *Ecquīs* expects the answer *none*.

6. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(640.) *Correlative pronouns* are such as answer to each other; e. g., *how great? so great; as many, so many, &c.*

- (1.) The following are declined

- (a) Like adjectives of Class I. (625):

Tantūs, so great, so much; *quantuscunquē, however great*
Quantūs, as great; *āliquantūs, somewhat great.*

- (b) Like adjectives of Class II. (626):

Tālīs, such.
Qualīs, as, of what kind.
Qualiscunque, of whatever kind.

- (2.) The following are indeclinable:

Tōt, so many; *āliquōt, some.*
Tōtīdēm, just so many; *quotquōt, however many.*
Quōt, as many.

§ 6. VERBS.

(641.) THE verb declares something of a person or thing: the eagle *flies*; the queen *loves* her daughter.

1. CLASSES OF VERBS.

(642.) Verbs are *active*, *passive*, or *deponent*.

(1.) *Active* verbs express *action*: (a) either *transitively*, requiring an object; e. g., the queen *loves* (*whom?*) her daughter; or (b) *intransitively*, not requiring an object; the eagle *flies*.

(2.) *Passive* verbs express the *receiving* or *suffering* of an action; *I am loved*; *I was punished*.

Obviously *intransitive* verbs have no passive form. We cannot say, *I am danced*, *I am slept*.

(3.) *Deponent* verbs have the *passive* form, but an *active* signification.

2. PARTS OF THE VERB.

(643.) The verb is divided into,

(a) The *indefinite* verb, including certain parts which do not refer to a definite person or time.

(b) The *finite* verb, including the parts which always do so refer.

Indefinite Verb.

(644.) (a) The *indefinite* verb includes,

(1.) The *infinitive*, which expresses the action of the verb without relation to a definite person, and partakes also of the nature of a noun; e. g., *to learn*; *to love* is pleasant.

(2.) The *participle*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of an adjective; *loving*, *blooming*.

(3.) The *gerund*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of the noun, in all cases but the nominative, and supplies oblique cases to the infinitive.

(4.) The *gerundive*, which expresses the action of the verb as *necessary* or *continued*, under the form of an adjective, in all cases and genders.

(5.) The *supine*, which also expresses the action of the verb in the form of two cases (acc. and abl.) of the noun.

Finite Verb.

(645.) (b) The *finite* verb includes those parts which express the

(1.) Different varieties of affirmation, viz., the *moods*.

(2.) Different times at which the action of the verb takes place, viz., the *tenses*.

(3.) Different relations of the verb to persons or things, viz., the *numbers* and *persons*.

(1.) *The Moods.*

(846.) The verb expresses *affirmation*; the *moods* of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

- (1.) By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed; e. g., *I write, I did not write.*
- (2.) By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely*; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
- (3.) By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction or request*; e. g., *write.*

(2.) *The Tenses.*

(847.) Time may be past, present, or future, and the verb has therefore *three tenses* to express these. But action may be represented as *going on* or as *completed*, either in past, present, or future time, and therefore two forms are required for each, making *six* in all.

	Present.	Past.	Future.
Action going on, or imperfect.	<i>I love, or am loving.</i>	<i>I was loving.</i> (Imperfect.)	<i>I shall love, or be loving.</i> (Future.)
Action completed, or perfect.	<i>I have loved.</i> (Perfect.)	<i>I had loved.</i> (Pluperfect.)	<i>I shall have loved.</i> (Future Perfect.)

Rem. 1. The Latin uses its *perfect* form in two ways: (1) like the English perfect, to express action complete in present time; e. g., *amāvi, I have loved*: (2) like the English imperfect, to express action indefinitely in past time; e. g., *amāvi, I loved*. This is called the *perfect aorist*. [The latter use is by far the most common. This distinction should be thoroughly understood.]

2. The *subjunctive* mood has no future (it uses the periphrastic form 661).
3. The present, perfect, and future are called *primary tenses*, referring, as they do, either to present or future time; the imperfect, perfect aorist, and pluperfect are called *historical tenses*, referring, as they do, to *past* time.

(3.) *Numbers and Persons.*

(848.) As there may be more than one person engaged in an action, the verb has *two numbers*, singular and plural. These persons must be either *I, thou, we, ye, or some other person or thing*; therefore the verb has *three persons*, 1st, 2d, and 3d, which are denoted in Latin by different *endings*.

3. CONJUGATION.

(849.) Conjugation is the *inflection* (21, R.) of a verb through all its parts. There are in Latin *four* conjugations of verbs, distinguished by the ending of the infinitive; thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.
-arē.	-erē.	-irē.	-irē.

4. THE AUXILIARY OR SUBSTANTIVE VERB ESSE, to be.

(650.) [Before proceeding to the conjugations, we must give the forms of *esse, to be*, called an *auxiliary*, because it is used in forming some of the parts of the verb; and *substantive*, because it is the verb expressing simple existence.]

1. INDICATIVE.						
ACTION INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he is.</i>	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estis, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperf.	eram, <i>I was.</i>	eras, <i>thou wast.</i>	erat, <i>he was.</i>	erāmūs, <i>we were.</i>	erātis, <i>ye were.</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>
Future.	erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	eris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	erit, <i>he, &c.</i>	erimūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	eritis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	erunt, <i>they, &c.</i>
ACTION COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fui, <i>I have been.</i>	fuisti, <i>thou hast been.</i>	fuit, <i>he has been.</i>	fui-mūs, <i>we have been.</i>	fui-stis, <i>ye have been.</i>	fue-runt, <i>they have been.</i>
Pluperf.	fuēram, <i>I had been.</i>	fuēras, <i>thou hadst, &c.</i>	fuērat, <i>he had been.</i>	fuēramūs, <i>we had been.</i>	fuērātis, <i>ye had been.</i>	fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>
Fut. Perf.	fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fuēris, <i>thou shalt, &c.</i>	fuērit, <i>he shall, &c.</i>	fuērīmūs, <i>we shall, &c.</i>	fuērītis, <i>ye shall, &c.</i>	fuērint, <i>they shall, &c.</i>
2. SUBJUNCTIVE.						
INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sim, <i>I may be.</i>	sis, <i>thou, &c.</i>	sit, <i>he, &c.</i>	simūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	sitis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	sint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Imperf.	essem, <i>I might be.</i>	esses, <i>thou, &c.</i>	esset, <i>he, &c.</i>	essemūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	essetis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	essent, <i>they, &c.</i>
COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fuērim, <i>I may have been.</i>	fuēris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fuērit, <i>he, &c.</i>	fuērimūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fuēritis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fuērint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Pluperf.	fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	fuissēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fuissēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	fuissēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fuissētis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fuissent, <i>they, &c.</i>
3. IMPERATIVE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
	2. ēs, estō, <i>be thou.</i> 3. estō, <i>let him be.</i>			2. estē, estōtē, <i>be ye.</i> 3. suntō, <i>let them be.</i>		
4. INFINITIVE.						
Present.	Perfect.		Future.			
Essē, <i>to be.</i>	fuissē, <i>to have been.</i>		fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, esse, <i>to be about to be.</i>			
5. PARTICIPLE.						
Present.			Future.			
Only in compounds; absens, <i>absent</i> (from absum); præsens, <i>present</i> (from præsum).			Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>one who will be.</i>			

5. PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.

(651.) (1.) *Verb-stem*.—The *stem* of any verb is found by striking off the infinitive-ending; e. g., of *ām-ārē*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē*, and *aud-irē* the stems are *ām*, *mōn*, *rēg*, *aud*, respectively.*

(2.) *Tense-stem*.—Each *tense* has its own *tense-stem*, consisting of the *verb-stem* with or without some additions. Thus, in the first conjugation:

Pres. tense-stem = *verb-stem* = *ām*.

Imperf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *ab* = *āmab*.

Perf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *av* = *āmav*.

[In the annexed paradigms the *tense-stems* are shown upon the left-hand side. Observe that the *perfect tense-stem* serves also for the stem of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.]

(3.) *Tense-ending*.—Each *tense* has its own endings, which, added to the *tense-stem*, give the person-forms. Thus:

Imperfect-stem *āmab* + *ām* = *āmabām*, 1st person.

āmab + *ās* = *āmabās*, 2d person,† &c.

(4.) The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive voice are formed by means of the past participle and forms of *essē*; thus:

āmātūs sum, *āmātūs eram*, *āmātūs ēro*.

[No farther explanation of the paradigm is necessary. The student should learn the modes of formation, and the *tense-endings* for each *tense*, apart from the stems *ām*-, *mōn*-, &c., and unite them afterward with those or any other stems.]

* In reality, the crude-forms are *ama*-, *mone*-, *audi*- (the three *pure* conjugations), and *rēg*- (the *consonant* conjugation). But the changes of the crude-form in inflection form too great a difficulty for beginners; we therefore present the stem as the language affords it to us, without going into a nicer analysis.

† Farther, the *person-ending* forms part of the *tense-ending*. From the paradigm (active), it will be seen that in every *tense* except the perfect the endings are

o, or m, s, t, mus, tis, nt.

These endings are added to the *tense-stem*, either directly, as *ām-o*, or by means of a connecting-vowel, as *rēg-i-s*, or of a flexion syllable and connecting-vowel, as *āmav-er-a-s*.

262 PARADIGMS FOR THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PARADIGMS FOR

ACTIVE.							
(652.) INDICATIVE MOOD.							
PRESENT, <i>I love or am loving, thou art loving, &c.</i>							
ām-	ā.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.	
mōn-	ēā.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.	
rēg-	ē.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.	
aud-	īā.	īs.	īt.	imūs.	ītīs.	īunt.	
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loving, advising, ruling, hearing, &c.</i>							
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-īēb-	}	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will love, advise, rule, hear, &c.</i>							
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-ī-	}	ā.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.
		ām.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
PERFECT, <i>I have loved. (PERFECT AORIST, I loved.)</i>							
ām-āv- mōn-ū- (rēg-s) rex- aud-iv-	}	I.	istī.	īt.	īmūs.	istīa.	ērunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had loved, &c.</i>							
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	}	ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātīs.	ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have loved, &c.</i>							
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	}	ērō.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
(653.) IMPERATIVE MOOD.							
	2d Singular.		3d Singular.		3d Plural.		3d Plural.
ām-	a, atō.		ātō.		atē, atōtē.		antō.
mōn-	ē, etō.		etō.		etē, etōtē.		entō.
rēg-	ē, itō.		itō.		itē, itōtē.		untō.
aud-	ī, itō.		itō.		itē, itōtē.		īuntō.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE.						
INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I am loved, &c.</i>						
ām-	ōr.	{ ārīś. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	āntūr.
mōn-	ēōr.	{ ārīś. ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	entūr.
rēg-	ēr.	{ ārīś. ērē.	ītūr.	īmūr.	īmīnī.	untūr.
aud-	iōr.	{ ārīś. irē.	itūr.	imūr.	imīnī.	iuntūr.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-iēb-	{ ar.	{ ārīś. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
FUTURE, <i>I shall be loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-ī-	{ or. ār.	{ ārīś. ērē. ārīś. ērē.	ītūr. ētūr.	īmūr. ēmūr.	īmīnī. ēmīnī.	untūr. entūr.
PERFECT, <i>I have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ sūm, or fūī.	{ ēś, or fuiatī.	est. or fuit.	sūmūs, or fūīmūs.	estīs, or fūistīs.	sunt, or fuerunt.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ ērām.†	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	erātīs.	erant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ ērēt.†	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	erunt.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.		
ām-	ārē, ātōr.	ātōr.	āmīnī, āmīnōr.	antōr.		
mōn-	ērē, ētōr.	ētōr.	ēmīnī, ēmīnōr.	entōr.		
rēg-	ērē, itōr.	itōr.	īmīnī, īmīnōr.	untōr.		
aud-	irē, itōr.	itōr.	imīnī, imīnōr.	iuntōr.		

* The participle must be inflected in gender and number to agree with the subject.

† Sometimes fueram, fueras, &c.

‡ Sometimes fuero, fueris, &c.

(654.)		ACTIVE.					
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
PRESENT, <i>I may love, &c.</i>							
ām-mōn-e-rēg-aud-i-	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ēnt.
		ām.	as.	āt.	āmūs.	atīs.	ant.
IMPERFECT, <i>I might love, &c.</i>							
ām-ār-mōn-ēr-rēg-ēr-aud-ir-	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
PERFECT, <i>I may have loved, &c.</i>							
ām-āv-mōn-ū-rēx-aud-iv-	}	ērīm.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have loved, &c.</i>							
ām-āv-mōn-ū-rēx-aud-iv-	}	issēm.	issēs.	issēt.	issēmūs.	issētīs.	issent.
(655.) INFINITIVE.							
PRESENT [<i>to love or be loving, &c.</i>].							
1. ām-ārē,	2. mōn-ērē,	3. rēg-ērē,	4. aud-irē.				
PERFECT [<i>to have loved, &c.</i>].							
1. āmāv-issē,	2. mōnū-issē,	3. rēx-issē,	4. audiv-issē.				
FUTURE [<i>to be about to love, &c.</i>].							
1. āmātūrūs essē,	2. mōnītūrūs essē,	3. rectūrūs essē,	4. auditūrūs essē.				
(656.) PARTICIPLES.							
PRESENT [<i>loving, advising, ruling, hearing</i>].							
1. ām-āns,	2. mōn-ēns,	3. rēg-ēns,	4. aud-īēns.				
PERFECT [<i>having loved, advised, ruled, heard</i>].							
Wanting: supplied by abl. absol., or by quum with subj.							
FUTURE [<i>about to love, advise, rule, hear</i>].							
1. āmātūrūs,	2. mōnītūrūs,	3. rectūrūs,	4. auditūrūs.				
(657.) GERUND AND							
GERUNDS: 1. āmāndī, 2. mōnendī, 3. regendī, 4. audiendī.							
(658.) SUPINES.							
SUPINE in um: 1. āmātūm, 2. monītūm, 3. rectūm, 4. auditūm.							
" u: 1. āmātā, 2. monītū, 3. rectā, 4. auditā.							

PASSIVE.						
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I may be loved, &c.</i>						
ām- mōn-e- rēg- aud-ī-	} ēr. } ār.	{ ēris. ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnl.	ēntūr.
		{ ārīs. ārē.	atur.	āmūr.	āmīnl.	antūr.
IMPERFECT, <i>I might be loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ār- mōn-ēr- rēg-ēr- aud-īr-	} ēr. }	{ ēris. ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnl.	ēntūr.
PERFECT, <i>I may have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs. mōnītūs. rectūs. auditūs.	} sūm.*	sīs.	sīt.	sīmus.	sītīs.	sint.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs. mōnītūs. rectūs. auditūs.	} essēm.†	essēs.	essēt.	essēmūs.	essētīs.	essent.
INFINITIVE.						
PRESENT [<i>to be (being) loved, &c.</i>].						
1. ām-āri,	2. mōn-ēri,	3. rēg-ī,	4. aud-īri.			
PERFECT [<i>to have been loved, &c.</i>].						
1. āmātūs essē,	2. mōnītūs essē,	3. rectūs essē,	4. auditūs essē.			
FUTURE [<i>to be about to be loved, &c.</i>].						
1. āmātūm iri,	2. mōnītūm iri,	3. rectūm iri,	4. auditūm iri.			
PARTICIPLES.						
PRESENT AND PERFECT [<i>loved, being loved, having been loved, &c.</i>].						
1. āmātūs,	2. mōnītūs,	3. rectūs,	4. auditūs.			
GERUNDIVE.						
1. GERUNDIVE: āmāndūs,	2. mōnendūs,	3. rēgendūs,	4. audīendūs.			
* Sometimes fuerim.				† Sometimes fuissem.		

6. VERBS IN IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

(659.) Some verbs of the third conjugation assume *i* before the person-ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of *căp-ŕe*, to take.

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŕ.	ŕs.	ŕt.	ŕmŕs.	ŕŕs.	i-ŕnt.
Imperf.	căp-i-êb-	âm.	âs.	ât.	âmŕs.	âtis.	ant.
Fut.	căp-i-	âm.	ês.	êt.	êmŕs.	êtis.	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	cap-î-	âm.	âs.	ât.	âmŕs.	âtis.	ânt.
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŕ.	êris.	îtŕ.	ŕmŕ.	ŕmŕni.	i-ŕntŕ.
Imperf.	căp-i-êb-	âr.	ârŕs.	âtŕ.	âmŕ.	âmŕni.	antŕ.
Fut.	căp-i-	âr.	êris.	êtŕ.	êmŕ.	êmŕni.	entŕ.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-î-	âr.	ârŕs.	âtŕ.	âmŕ.	âmŕni.	antŕ.
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, căp-i-ŕntŕ.				3d Plur. Pass., căp-i-ŕntŕ.			
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, căp-i-ens.				Fut. Pass., căp-i-endus.			
GERUND, căp-i-ênd-i, ô, &c.							

7. DEPONENT VERBS.

(660.) (1.) Deponent verbs have the *passive* form with *active* signification. As the endings are the same as those of the passives (Paradigm, p. 263, 265), we need not repeat them.

(2.) But deponents have *three* active participles, while other verbs have but *two*: thus,

Pres., *exhorting*, Perf., *having exhorted*, Fut., *about to exhort*,
hort-ans. hort-âtŕs. hortât-ârŕs.

(3.) Also, all *transitive* deponents have the verbal adjective in *ŕus*; e. g., *hortandŕs*, one that should be exhorted: *intransitive* deponents have it only in the *neuter*; e. g., *moriendŕm est*, one must die.

8. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

(661.) By means of the tenses of *essŕ*, combined with the future participle in *ŕus*, and the verbal in *ŕus*, the periphrastic conjugation is formed; e. g., *âmâtârŕs sum*, I am about to love, I intend to love; *âmândŕs sŕm*, I am to be loved, I must be loved, one must love me; and so through all the tenses and persons. The deponent verbs employ this periphrastic conjugation also.

1. WITH PARTICIPLE IN rūš.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmātūrūs, ā, ūm,	sūm, ēs, est, &c.	āmātūrūs, ā, ūm,	sīm, sis, sit, &c.
	ērām, ērās, &c.		essēm, essēs, &c.
	fui, fuisti, &c.		fuērīm.
	fuerām, fuērās, &c.		fuissēm.
	ērō, ēris, &c.		
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmātūrūs essē, <i>to be about (or intending) to love.</i>			
Perf., āmātūrūs fuissē, <i>to have been about to love.</i>			
Fut., āmātūrūs forē, <i>to intend to love hereafter.</i>			

2. WITH VERBAL IN dūs.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmandūs, ā, ūm,	sūm.	āmandūs, ā, ūm,	sīm.
	ērām.		essēm.
	fui.		fuerīm.
	fuerām.		fuissēm.
	ērō.		
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmandūs, ā, ūm, essē, <i>ought to be loved.</i>			
Perf., āmandūs, ā, ūm, fuissē, <i>ought to have been loved.</i>			
Fut., āmandūs, ā, ūm, forō, <i>ought to be loved hereafter.</i>			

9. ON THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT-STEM.

(662.) In the paradigms, the perfect-stems are formed by adding to the verb-stem in the 1st conj. āv- (ām-āv-); in the 2d, ū (mōn-ū-); in the 3d, s (reg-s); in the 4th, iv- (aud-iv-). But, although most Latin verbs form the perf.-stem thus, many use different endings, which are exhibited in the following classification:

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.

(663.) Four ways of forming the perfect-stem:

- I. By adding āv to the verb-stem: ām-ārē—ām-āv-ī.
- II. " ū " crēp-ārē—crēp-ū-ī.
- III. By reduplicating the first consonant: d-ārē—dēd-ī.
- IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel: jāv-ārē—jāv-ī.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

- I. By adding ū to the verb-stem: mōn-ērē—mōn-ū-ī.
- II. " ēv " dēl-ērē—dēl-ēv-ī.
- III. " s " alg-ērē—al(g)-s-ī.
- IV. By reduplication: mord-ērē—mō-mord-ī.
- V. By lengthening the stem-vowel: cāv-ērē—cāv-ī.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Six ways:

- I. By adding *s* to the verb-stem: scrib-*ärē*—scrip-*s-i*.
 II. " *ū* " " *ä*-*ärē*—*ä-l-ū-i*.
 III. " *v* or *iv* " cern-*ärē*—cern-*v-i*.
 arcoss-*ärē*—arcoss-*iv-i*.
 IV. By reduplication: curr-*ärē*—cū-curr-*i*.
 V. By lengthening the stem-vowel: *ēm*-*ärē*—*ēm-i*.
 VI. By presenting the simple verb-stem: *äcu*-*ärē*—*äcū-i*.

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

- I. By adding *iv* to the verb-stem: aud-*irē*, aud-*iv-i*.
 II. " *ū* " *äpēr*-*irē*, *äpēr*-*ū-i*.
 III. " *s* " fulc-*irē*, ful(c)-*s-i*.
 IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel: *vēn*-*irē*, *vēn-i*.
 V. By presenting the simple verb-stem: compēr-*irē*, compēr-*i*.

[In the following lists, the verbs are arranged according to the above classification, and the supines also given. When any peculiarity exists in the compounds, it is stated. Of Class I (which embraces most of the rules in the language), only one example is given in each conjugation, as the student is familiar with its form; but under the remaining heads *all* the verbs in common use are mentioned.]

10. LIST OF VERBS.

(664.)

FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *av* to the Verb-stem.

To leave,	<i>äm-ä</i> ,	<i>äm-ärē</i> ,	<i>äm-äv-i</i> ,	<i>äm-a-tüm</i> .
-----------	---------------	-----------------	------------------	-------------------

II. Perfect-stem adds *ä* to the Verb-stem.

To creak,	<i>crēp-o</i> ,	<i>crēp-ärē</i> ,	<i>crēp-ä-i</i> ,	<i>crēp-i-tüm</i> .
Lie down,	<i>cüb-o</i> ,	<i>cüb-ärē</i> ,	<i>cüb-ä-i</i> ,	<i>cüb-i-tüm</i> .

So the compounds; e. g., accüb*ö*, accüb*ärē*, accüb*ui*, accüb*itüm*.

Some compounds, however, which take *m* before *b*, follow the 3d conj.; e. g., accumb*ö*, accumb*ärē*, accüb*ui*, accüb*itüm*.

To tame,	<i>döm-o</i> ,	<i>döm-ärē</i> ,	<i>döm-ä-i</i> ,	<i>döma-i-tüm</i> .
To rub,	<i>fric-o</i> ,	<i>fric-ärē</i> ,	<i>fric-ä-i</i> ,	{ <i>fric-t-üm</i> and <i>fric-ä-tüm</i> .
To glitter,	<i>míc-o</i> ,	<i>míc-ärē</i> ,	<i>míc-ä-i</i> ,	
To gush forth,	<i>émíc-o</i> ,	<i>émíc-ärē</i> ,	<i>émíc-ä-i</i> ,	<i>émíc-ä-tüm</i> .
To fold,	<i>plíc-o</i> ,	<i>plíc-ärē</i> ,	<i>plíc-ä-i</i> ,	<i>plíc-i-tüm</i> .

P*h*ic-*ö* is used only in composition: supp*h*ic*ö*, dup*h*ic*ö*, multip*h*ic*ö*, have *avi*, *ätüm*; exp*h*ic*ö*, to explain, *ävi*, *ätüm*; to unfold, *ui*, *itüm*.

To cut,	<i>sēc-o</i> ,	<i>sēc-ärē</i> ,	<i>sēc-ä-i</i> ,	<i>sec-t-üm</i> .
To sound,	<i>sön-o</i> ,	<i>sön-ärē</i> ,	<i>sön-ä-i</i> ,	<i>sön-i-tüm</i> .
To thunder,	<i>tön-o</i> ,	<i>ton-ärē</i> ,	<i>tön-ä-i</i> ,	<i>tön-i-tüm</i> .
To forbid,	<i>vēt-o</i> ,	<i>vēt-ärē</i> ,	<i>vēt-ä-i</i> ,	<i>vēt-i-tüm</i> .

III. Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant with e.

To give, d-o, d-ărě, dăd-i, dă-tăm.

So, also, those compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*; e. g., circumdō, circumdārē, circumdēdi, circumdātum, *to surround*; but the compounds with *monosyllables* follow the 3d conj.; e. g., addō, addārē, addēdi, addātum, *to add*.

To stand, st-o, st-ărě, stët-i, st-ă-tům.

The compounds have in the perfect *stōti* when the first part is a dissyllable; e. g., *circumstō*, *circumstōti*; but *stīti* when it is a monosyllable; e. g., *adstō*, *adstīti*.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

To assist, jāv-o, jūv-ārē, jāv-l, jū-tūm.

[illegible]

(665.)

SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds ü to the Verb-stem.

To admonish. mǒn-oo, mǒn-ērě, mǒn-ă-ī, mǒn-ī-tūm.

II. Perfect-stem adds ev to the Verb-stem.

<i>To blot out,</i>	del-eo,	dēl-ērē,	dēl-ēv-i,	dēl-ē-tūm.
<i>To weep,</i>	fi-eo,	fi-ērē,	fi-ēv-i,	fi-ē-tūm.
<i>To spin,</i>	n-eo,	n-ērē,	n-ēv-i,	n-ē-tūm.
<i>To fill up,</i>	compl-eo,	compl-ērē,	compl-ēv-i,	compl-ē-tūm.
<i>To abolish.</i>	ābol-eo,	ābol-ērē,	ābol-ēv-i,	ābol-i-tūm.

The primitives *ōleo* and *pleo* are obsolete: like *compleo* are conjugated *impleo*, *expleo*; like *aboleo*, *adoleo*, and *exoleo*.

III. Perfect-stem adds **z** to the Verb-stem.

Euphonic Rules.

1. A t-sound before s is dropped; e. g., ar(d)-si = ars-i.
2. A c-sound + s = x; e. g., aug-si = aux-i.
3. But a c-sound *after* l or r, before s, is dropped; e. g., ful(g)-si = fuls-i.

<i>To shiver</i>	}	alg-eo,	alg-ērē,	{ al-s-i	}	
<i>with cold,</i>				{ (alg-s-i).		
<i>To burn.</i>		ard-eo,	ard-ērē,	{ ar-s-i	}	ard-um.
				{ (ard-s-i).		
<i>To increase,</i>		aug-eo,	aug-ērē,	{ aux-i	}	auc-tum.
				{ (aug-s-i).		
<i>To be bright,</i>		fulg-eo,	fulg-ērē,	{ ful-s-i	}	
				{ (fulg-s-i).		

<i>To stick,</i>	<i>hær-eo,</i>	<i>hær-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hæ-s-ī} \\ (\text{hær-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{hæ-sūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To indulge,</i>	<i>indulg-eo,</i>	<i>indulg-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{indul-s-ī} \\ (\text{indulg-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{indul-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To command,</i>	<i>jūb-eo,</i>	<i>jūb-ērē,</i>	<i>jas-s-ī (jub-s-ī),</i>	<i>jas-sūm.</i>
<i>To remain,</i>	<i>mān-eo,</i>	<i>mān-ērē,</i>	<i>man-s-ī,</i>	<i>man-sūm.</i>
<i>To assuage,</i>	<i>mulc-eo,</i>	<i>mulc-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mul-s-ī} \\ (\text{mulc-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{mul-sūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To milk,</i>	<i>mulg-eo,</i>	<i>mulg-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mul-s-ī} \\ (\text{mulg-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{mulc-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To laugh,</i>	<i>rid-eo,</i>	<i>rid-ēre,</i>	<i>rī-s-ī (rid-s-ī),</i>	<i>rī-sūm.</i>
<i>To advise,</i>	<i>suād-eo,</i>	<i>suād-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{suā-s-ī} \\ (\text{suad-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{suā-sūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To wipe,</i>	<i>terg-eo,</i>	<i>terg-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ter-s-ī} \\ (\text{terg-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ter-sūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To swell,</i>	<i>turg-eo,</i>	<i>turg-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tur-s-ī} \\ (\text{turg-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	
<i>To twist,</i>	<i>torqu-eo,</i>	<i>torqu-ērē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tor-s-ī} \\ (\text{torqu-s-ī}). \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{tor-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To press,</i>	<i>urg-eo,</i>	<i>urg-ērē,</i>	<i>ur-s-ī (urg-s-ī).</i>	
<i>To shine,</i>	<i>lūc-eo,</i>	<i>lūc-ērē,</i>	<i>lux-ī (lūc-s-ī).</i>	
<i>To mourn,</i>	<i>lūg-eo,</i>	<i>lūg-ērē,</i>	<i>lux-ī (lug-s-ī).</i>	

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates first Consonant and Vowel.*

<i>To bite,</i>	<i>mord-eo,</i>	<i>mord-ērē,</i>	<i>mōmord-ī,</i>	<i>mor-sūm.</i>
<i>To hang,</i>	<i>pend-eo,</i>	<i>pend-ērē,</i>	<i>pēpend-ī,</i>	<i>pen-sūm.</i>
<i>To betroth,</i>	<i>spond-eo,</i>	<i>spond-ērē,</i>	<i>spōspond-ī,</i>	<i>spon-sūm.</i>
<i>To shear,</i>	<i>tond-eo,</i>	<i>tond-ērē,</i>	<i>tōtond-ī,</i>	<i>ton-sūm.</i>

The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication; e. g., *re-spondī* (not *re-spopondī*).

V. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

<i>To take care,</i>	<i>cāv-eo,</i>	<i>cāv-ērē,</i>	<i>cāv-ī,</i>	<i>cau-tūm.</i>
<i>To favour,</i>	<i>fāv-eo,</i>	<i>fāv-ērē,</i>	<i>fāv-ī,</i>	<i>fau-tūm.</i>
<i>To cherish,</i>	<i>fōv-eo,</i>	<i>fōv-ērē,</i>	<i>fōv-ī,</i>	<i>fō-tūm.</i>
<i>To move,</i>	<i>mōv-eo,</i>	<i>mōv-ērē,</i>	<i>mōv-ī,</i>	<i>mō-tūm.</i>
<i>To dread,</i>	<i>pāv-eo,</i>	<i>pāv-ērē,</i>	<i>pāv-ī,</i>	
<i>To sit,</i>	<i>sēd-eo,</i>	<i>sēd-ērē,</i>	<i>sēd-ī,</i>	<i>ses-sūm.</i>

In the same manner are conjugated the compounds with dissyllables; e. g., *circumsēdeo*, *circumsēdērē*, *circumsēdī*, *circumssessūm*, *to sit around*; but those with monosyllables change ē of the stem into ī; e. g., *assīdeo*, *assīdērē*, *assēdī*, *assessūm*, *to sit by*.

<i>To see,</i>	<i>vīd-eo,</i>	<i>vīd-ērē,</i>	<i>vīd-ī,</i>	<i>vī-sūm.</i>
<i>To vow,</i>	<i>vōv-eo,</i>	<i>vōv-ērē,</i>	<i>vōv-ī,</i>	<i>vō-tūm.</i>

§666.]

THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *s* to the Verb-stem.

Euphonic Rules.

1. *b* before *s* = *p*; e. g., scrib-sī = scrip-sī.2. *c*-sound + *s* = *x*; e. g., cing-sī = cinx-ī.[*c*, *g*, *h*, *qu*, are regarded as *c*-sounds.]3. *t*-sound (*d* or *t*) before *s* is dropped; e. g., claud-s-ī = claus-ī.4. *m* before *s* is either changed into *s*, or *p* is interposed (prem-s-ī = p̄re-s-ī; com-s-ī = comp-s-ī).

<i>To write</i>	scrib-o,	scrib-ērē,	{ scrip-s-ī (scrib-s-ī), }	scrip-tūm.
<i>To bind</i>	cing-o,	cing-ērē,	cinxī (cing-s-ī),	cinc-tūm.
<i>To carry</i>	vēh-o,	vēh-ērē,	vexī (veh-s-ī),	vec-tūm.
<i>To cook</i>	cōqu-o,	cōqu-ērē,	coxi (coqu-s-ī),	coc-tūm.
<i>To shut</i>	claud-o,	claud-ērē,	{ clau-s-ī (claud-s-ī), }	clau-sūm.

A *u* in the compounds is changed into *ū*; e. g., inclūdo, inclūdērē, inclūsī, inclūsūm, *to shut in*.

<i>To give way</i>	cēd-o,	cēd-ērē,	cessī (cēd-s-ī),	ces-sūm.
<i>To scatter</i>	sparg-o,	sparg-ērē,	{ spar-s-ī (sparg-s-ī), }	spar-sūm.

In the compounds *a* is changed into *e*; e. g., aspergo, aspergērē, asper-s-ī, aspersūm, *to besprinkle*.

<i>To adorn</i>	cōm-o,	cōm-ērē,	com-ps-ī,	com-p-tūm.
<i>To press</i>	prēm-o,	prēm-ērē,	{ press-ī (prem-s-ī), }	pres-sūm.

In the compounds *ē* is changed into *ī*; e. g., comprīmo, comprīmērē, compressī, compressūm, *to press together*.

<i>To carry</i>	gēr-o,	gēr-ērē,	gess-ī (gēr-s-ī),	ges-tūm.
-----------------	--------	----------	-------------------	----------

II. Perfect-stem adds *u* to the Verb-stem.

(a) Without change of Verb-stem.

<i>To nourish</i>	āl-o,	āl-ērē,	āl-u-ī,	āl-ī-tūm.
<i>To till</i>	cōl-o,	cōl-ērē,	cōl-u-ī,	cāl-tūm.
<i>To ask advice</i>	consūl-o,	consūl-ērē,	consūl-u-ī,	consul-tūm.
<i>To knead</i>	deps-o,	deps-ērē,	deps-u-ī,	deps-tūm.
<i>To murmur</i>	frēm-o,	frēm-ērē,	frēm-u-ī,	frēm-ī-tūm.
<i>To groan</i>	gēm-o,	gēm-ērē,	gēm-u-ī,	gēm-ī-tūm.
<i>To grind</i>	mōl-o,	mōl-ērē,	mōl-u-ī,	mōl-ī-tūm.
<i>To conceal</i>	occūl-o,	occūl-ērē,	occūl-u-ī,	occul-tūm.
<i>To grind</i>	pins-o,	pins-ērē,	pins-u-ī,	pins-ī-tūm.
<i>To snatch</i>	rāp-io,	rāp-ērē,	rāp-u-ī,	rap-tūm.
<i>To join together</i>	{ sēr-o,	sēr-ērē,	sēr-u-ī,	ser-tūm.

<i>To weave,</i>	tex-o,	tex-ěřě,	tex-u-i,	tex-tům.
<i>To tremble,</i>	trēm-o,	trēm-ěřě,	trēm-u-i,	
<i>To vomit,</i>	vóm-o,	vóm-ěřě,	vóm-u-i,	vóm-i-tům.

(b) With change of Verb-stem.

<i>To beget,</i>	gign-o,	gign-ěřě,	gĕn-u-i,	gĕn-i-tům.
<i>To reap,</i>	mēt-o,	mēt-ěřě,	mess-u-i,	mes-sům.
<i>To place,</i>	pōn-o,	pōn-ěřě,	pōs-u-i,	pōs-i-tům.

[For compounds of cumbĕrĕ, see §64, II.]

III. Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.

(a) Adds v, and lengthens Stem-vowel if short.

<i>To separate,</i> <i>perceive,</i>	} cern-o,	cern-ěřě,	crě-v-I,	crě-tům.

The perfect and supine of cerno are found only in the compounds
e. g., dĕcerno, dĕcernĕřě, dĕcrĕv-i, dĕcrĕtům, *to decree*.

<i>To grow,</i>	cresc-o,	cresc-ěřě,	crĕ-v-i,	crĕ-tům.
<i>To smear,</i>	lĕn-o,	lĕn-ěřě,	lĕ-v-i, or lĭ-v-i,	lĭ-tům.
<i>To know,</i>	nosc-o,	nosc-ěřě,	nō-v-i,	nō-tům.

So, also, the compounds inter, ig, per, prae-nosco, have ōv-i, ōtům; but
cog, ag, prae-cog, recog-nosco, have ōv-i, itům; e. g., agnōsco, agnōs-
ěřě, agnōv-i, agnōtům, *to perceive*.

<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-o,	pasc-ěřě,	pā-v-i,	pas-tům.
<i>To rest,</i>	quiesc-o,	quiesc-ěřě,	quĭē-v-i,	quĭē-tům.
<i>To decide,</i>	sciāc-o,	sciāc-ěřě,	sci-v-i,	sci-tům.
<i>To sow,</i>	sĕr-o,	sĕr-ěřě,	sĕ-v-i,	sĕ-tům.

The compounds have the supine in itām; e. g., consĕro, consĕrĕřě,
consĕv-i, consĕtům, *to plant*.

<i>To allow,</i>	sĭn-o,	sĭn-ĕrĕ,	sĭ-v-i,	sĭ-tŭm.
<i>To despise,</i>	spĕrn-o,	spĕrn-ĕrĕ,	sprĕ-v-i,	ĕprĕ-tŭm.
<i>To strew,</i>	stĕrn-o,	stĕrn-ĕrĕ,	strā-v-i,	strā-tŭm.
<i>To become</i> <i>accustom-</i> <i>ed,</i>	} suesc-o,	suesc-ĕrĕ,	suĕ-v-i,	suĕ-tŭm.

(b) Perfect-stem adds iv.

<i>To summon,</i>	arcess-o,	arcessĕřě,	arcess-iv-i,	arcess-i-tům.
-------------------	-----------	------------	--------------	---------------

In the same manner, capesso, facesso, incesso, lacesso.

<i>To seek,</i> <i>strive af-</i> <i>ter,</i>	} pĕt-o,	pĕt-ěřě,	pĕt-iv-i,	pĕt-i-tům.
<i>To seek,</i>	quer-o,	quer-ěřě,	ques-iv-i,	quĕs-i-tům.

The compounds change æ of the stem into ĭ; e. g., conquĕro, con-
quĕrĕřě, conquĕsiv-i, conquĕsitům, *to examine*.

<i>To rub,</i>	tĕr-o,	tĕr-ěřě,	{ tr-iv-i (for tĕr-iv-i),	{ trĭ-tům.
----------------	--------	----------	------------------------------	------------

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

Some of these present vowel-changes, which must be carefully observed.

(a) When the first vowel is i, o, u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs with e; (c) the compounds of *däre*, to give, with i.

(a) First Vowel i, o, or u.

To run, curr-o, curr-ërë, cū-curr-i, cur-sūm.

Most of the compounds have the perfect both with and without the reduplication; e. g., *accurro*, *accurrërë*, *accurri* and *accūcurri*, *ac-cursum*, to run to.

To learn, disc-o, disc-ërë, dī-dīc-i.

The compounds also reduplicate; e. g., *perdisco*, *perdidici*, to learn thoroughly.

To weigh, pend-o, pend-ërë, pē-pend-i, pen-sūm.

The compounds do not reduplicate; e. g., *appendo*, *appendërë*, *appendi*, *appensūm*, to hang to.

To demand, posc-o, post-ërë, po-posc-i.

The compounds reduplicate; e. g., *reposcërë*, *repopesci*, to demand back again.

To prick, pung-o, pung-ërë, pū-pūg-i, punc-tūm.

Compounds have perf. *pānxi*.

To beat, tund-o, tund-ërë, tū-tūd-i, tun-sūm.

Compounds have supine *tūsum*; e. g., *contundërë*, *contūsūm*, to crush.

(b) Other Verbs reduplicate with e.

To fall, cād-o, cād-ërë, cē-cīd-i, cā-sūm.

To cut, cæd-o, cæd-ërë, cē-cīd-i, cæ-sūm.

The compounds have *cīdī*, *cīsum*; e. g., *occidërë*, *occīdī*, *occīsum*, to kill.

To sing, cān-o, cān-ërë, cē-cīn-i, can-tūm.

The compounds have *cīnui*; e. g., *succinërë*, *succīnui*, to sing to.

To cheat, fall-o, fall-ërë, fē-fell-i, fal-sūm.

To bargain, pang-o, pang-ërë, pē-pīg-i, pæ-sūm.

The compounds have *pīgō*, *pīgī*, *pactūm*; e. g., *compingërë*, *compēgī*, *compactūm*, to fasten together.

To spare, parc-o, parc-ërë, pē-perc-i, par-sūm.

To bring forth, pār-io, pār-ërë, pē-pār-i, pār-tūm.

To drive, pell-o, pell-ërë, pē-pūl-i, pul-sūm.

To touch, tang-o, tang-ërë, tē-tīg-i, tac-tūm.

The compounds have *tingo*, *tingērē*, *tīgī*, *taotūm*; *e. g.*, *attingērē*, *attīgī*, *attactūm*, *to reach*.

(c) Compounds of *dere*, reduplicate with *i*.

<i>To hide</i> ,	<i>ab-do</i> ,	<i>abd-ērē</i> ,	<i>ab-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>ab-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To add</i> ,	<i>ad-do</i> ,	<i>add-ērē</i> ,	<i>ad-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>ad-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To lay up</i> ,	<i>con-do</i> ,	<i>con-d-ērē</i> ,	<i>con-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>con-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To believe</i> ,	<i>crē-do</i> ,	<i>crēd-ērē</i> ,	<i>crē-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>crē-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To surrender</i> ,	<i>dē-do</i> ,	<i>dēd-ērē</i> ,	<i>dē-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>dē-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To publish</i> ,	<i>ē-do</i> ,	<i>ēd-ērē</i> ,	<i>ē-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>ē-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To put in</i> ,	<i>in-do</i> ,	<i>ind-ērē</i> ,	<i>in-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>in-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To oppose</i> ,	<i>ob-do</i> ,	<i>obd-ērē</i> ,	<i>ob-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>ob-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To destroy</i> ,	<i>per-do</i> ,	<i>perd-ērē</i> ,	<i>per-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>per-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To betray</i> ,	<i>prō-do</i> ,	<i>prod-ērē</i> ,	<i>pro-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>pro-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To restore</i> ,	<i>red-do</i> ,	<i>redd-ērē</i> ,	<i>red-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>red-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To deliver</i> ,	<i>trā-do</i> ,	<i>trad-ērē</i> ,	<i>tra-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>tra-dī-tūm</i> .
<i>To sell</i> ,	<i>ven-do</i> ,	<i>vend-ērē</i> ,	<i>ven-dīd-i</i> ,	<i>ven-dī-tūm</i> .

V. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.

(a) Without Vowel-changes.

<i>To take</i> ,	<i>ēm-o</i> ,	<i>ēm-ērē</i> ,	<i>ēm-i</i> ,	<i>em-tūm</i> .
------------------	---------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------

Compounds, *coēmo*, *adīmō*, *exīmō*.

<i>To dig</i> ,	<i>fōd-io</i> ,	<i>fōd-ērē</i> ,	<i>fōd-i</i> ,	<i>fos-sūm</i> .
<i>To fly</i> ,	<i>fūg-io</i> ,	<i>fūg-ērē</i> ,	<i>fūg-i</i> ,	<i>fūg-i-tūm</i> .
<i>To pour</i> ,	<i>fund-o</i> ,	<i>fund-ērē</i> ,	<i>fūd-i</i> ,	<i>fū-sūm</i> .
<i>To read</i> ,	<i>lēg-o</i> ,	<i>lēg-ērē</i> ,	<i>lēg-i</i> ,	<i>lec-tūm</i> .

The compounds with *per*, *præ*, *re*, and *sub* retain *ē*; *e. g.*, *perlēgērē*, *perlēgī*, *perlectūm*, *to read through*; but those with *col*, *de*, *e*, *se*, change *ē* into *i*; *e. g.*, *colligērē*, *collēgī*, *collectūm*, *to collect*: *three*, *dillīgo*, *I love*; *intellīgo*, *I understand*; *neglīgo*, *I neglect*, *have exī*, *ectūm*; *e. g.*, *dillīgērē*, *dilexī*, *dilectūm*.

<i>To leave</i> ,	<i>linqu-o</i> ,	<i>linqu-ērē</i> ,	<i>liqu-i</i> ,	<i>lic-tūm</i> .
<i>To burst</i> ,	<i>rump-o</i> ,	<i>rump-ērē</i> ,	<i>rūp-i</i> ,	<i>rup-tūm</i> .
<i>To conquer</i> ,	<i>vinc-o</i> ,	<i>vinc-ērē</i> ,	<i>vic-i</i> ,	<i>vic-tūm</i> .

(b) With Vowel-change.

<i>To drive</i> ,	<i>āg-o</i> ,	<i>āg-ērē</i> ,	<i>ēg-i</i> ,	<i>ac-tūm</i> .
-------------------	---------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------

Three of the compounds retain *ā*, *circumāgo*, *perāgo*, *sātāgo*: two undergo contraction, *cōgo* (*con* + *āgo*), *dēgo* (*de* + *āgo*): compounds with *ab*, *amb*, *ad*, *ex*, *prod*, *sub*, change *ā* into *i*; *e. g.*, *ābīgērē*, *ābēgī*, *abactūm*, *to drive away*.

<i>To take</i> ,	<i>cāp-io</i> ,	<i>cāp-ērē</i> ,	<i>cēp-i</i> ,	<i>cap-tūm</i> .
------------------	-----------------	------------------	----------------	------------------

All the compounds change *ā* into *i*, and have supine *ceptūm*; *e. g.*, *accēp-ērē*, *accēpī*, *acceptūm*, *to receive*.

<i>To make,</i>	}	făc-io,	făc-ērē,	fēc-i,	fac-tūm.
<i>To do,</i>					

1. Compounds with verbs retain *ă*; e. g., lăbefăcērē, lăbēfēcī, labe-factūm, *to weaken*.

2. Compounds with prepositions change *ă* into *î*; e. g., afficērē, affēcī, affectūm, *to affect*.

<i>To break,</i>	frang-o,	frang-ērē,	frēg-i,	frac-tūm.
------------------	----------	------------	---------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *î*; e. g., refringērē, refrēgī, refractūm, *to break open*.

<i>To cast,</i>	jăc-io,	jăc-ērē,	jēc-i,	jac-tūm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

Compounds *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *e*, *in*, *ob*, *re*, *trans*, all change *ă* into *î*; e. g., abjēcērē, abjēcī, abjectūm, *to throw away*.

VI. The Perfect-stem presents the simple Verb-stem.

(a) Stems ending in *u* or *v*.

<i>To refuse,</i>	abnu-o,	abnu-ērē,	abnu-i.	
<i>To sharpen,</i>	ăcu-o,	ăcu-ērē,	ăcu-i,	acū-tūm.
<i>To show,</i>	argu-o,	argu-ērē,	argu-i,	argū-tūm.
<i>To agree,</i>	congru-o,	congru-ērē,	congru-i.	
<i>To put off,</i>	exu-o,	exu-ērē,	exu-i,	exū-tūm.
<i>To put on,</i>	indu-o,	indu-ērē,	indu-i,	indū-tūm.
<i>To imbue,</i>	imbu-o,	imbu-ērē,	imbu-i,	imbū-tūm.
<i>To pay,</i>	lu-o,	lu-ērē,	lu-i.	lū-tūm.
<i>To fear,</i>	mētu-o,	mētu-ērē,	mētu-i.	
<i>To lessen,</i>	mīnu-o,	mīnu-ērē,	mīnu-i,	mīnū-tūm.
<i>To rush,</i>	ru-o,	ru-ērē,	ru-i,	rū-tūm.
<i>To loose,</i>	solv-o,	solv-ērē,	solv-i,	solū-tūm.
<i>To spit,</i>	spu-o,	spu-ērē,	spu-i,	spū-tūm.
<i>To place,</i>	stātu-o,	statu-ērē,	statu-i,	statū-tūm.
<i>To sneeze,</i>	sternu-o,	sternu-ērē,	sternu-i,	sternu-tūm.
<i>To sew,</i>	su-o,	su-ērē,	su-i,	sū-tūm.
<i>To give,</i>	tribu-o,	tribu-ērē,	tribu-i,	tribū-tūm.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-o,	volv-ērē,	volv-i,	volū-tūm.

(b) Consonant-stems.

<i>To weigh,</i>	append-o,	append-ērē,	append-i,	appen-sūm.
------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of *pendo*.

<i>To attend,</i>	attend-o,	attend-ērē,	attend-i,	atten-sūm.
-------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of *tendo*.

<i>To drink,</i>	bīb-o,	bīb-ērē,	bīb-i,	bībī-tūm.
<i>To forge,</i>	cūd-o,	cād-ērē,	cād-i,	cā-sūm.
<i>To eat,</i>	ēd-o,	ēd-ērē,	ēd-i,	ē-sūm.
<i>To lick,</i>	lamb-o,	lamb-ērē,	lamb-i.	
<i>To chew,</i>	mand-o,	mand-ērē,	mand-i,	man-sūm.
<i>To spread,</i>	pand-o,	pand-ērē,	pand-i,	pas-sūm.

<i>To take,</i>	<i>prēhend-o,</i>	<i>prēhend-ērē,</i>	<i>prēhend-i,</i>	<i>prēhen-sūm.</i>
<i>To scratch,</i>	<i>scāb-o,</i>	<i>scāb-ērē,</i>	<i>scāb-i.</i>	
<i>To climb,</i>	<i>scand-o,</i>	<i>scand-ērē,</i>	<i>scand-i</i>	<i>scan-sūm.</i>

Compounds (a, e, de, con, in) change *ā* into *ē*; e. g., *ascendo*.

<i>To sink down,</i>	<i>sīd-o,</i>	<i>sīd-ērē,</i>	<i>sīd-i.</i>	
----------------------	---------------	-----------------	---------------	--

The compounds take the perf. and supine from *sēdeō*; e. g., *consīd-ērē, consēdi, consessūm, to sit together*.

<i>To hiss,</i>	<i>strīd-o,</i>	<i>strīd-ērē,</i>	<i>strīd-i.</i>	
<i>To turn,</i>	<i>vert-o,</i>	<i>vert-ērē,</i>	<i>vert-i,</i>	<i>ver-sūm.</i>

Deverto, praevertō, and revertō are also used in the passive form as deponents; e. g., *rēvertēr, rēverti, reversa, sūm, I turn back*.

<i>To brush,</i>	<i>verr-o,</i>	<i>verr-ērē,</i>	<i>verr-i,</i>	<i>ver-sūm.</i>
<i>To pluck,</i>	<i>vell-o,</i>	<i>vell-ērē,</i>	<i>vell-i,</i>	<i>val-sūm.</i>

Compounds of *cendō* and *fendō* belong here, viz.,

<i>To burn,</i>	<i>incend-o,</i>	<i>incend-ērē,</i>	<i>incend-i,</i>	<i>incen-sūm.</i>
<i>To defend,</i>	<i>dēfend-o,</i>	<i>dēfend-ērē,</i>	<i>dēfend-i,</i>	<i>dēfen-sūm.</i>

(667.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. *Perfect-stem adds īv to the Verb-stem.*

(Obs.) This class contains most of the verbs of the fourth conjugation; the following alone has a peculiar supine:

<i>To bury,</i>	<i>sēpēl-io,</i>	<i>sēpēl-irē,</i>	<i>sēpēl-iv-i,</i>	<i>sēpul-tūm.</i>
-----------------	------------------	-------------------	--------------------	-------------------

II. *Perfect-stem adds u to the Verb-stem.*

<i>To clothe,</i>	<i>āmic-io,</i>	<i>āmic-irē,</i>	<i>āmic-u-i,</i>	<i>āmic-tūm.</i>
<i>To open,</i>	<i>āpēr-io,</i>	<i>āpēr-irē,</i>	<i>āpēr-u-i,</i>	<i>āper-tūm.*</i>
<i>To cover,</i>	<i>ōpēr-io,</i>	<i>ōpēr-irē,</i>	<i>ōpēr-u-i,</i>	<i>ōper-tūm.</i>
<i>To leap,</i>	<i>sāl-io,</i>	<i>sāl-irē,</i>	<i>sāl-u-i,</i>	<i>sal-tūm.</i>

Compounds change *ā* into *ī*; e. g., *dēsālirē, dēsālui, dēsaltūm, to leap down*.

III. *Perfect-stem adds s to the Verb-stem.*

<i>To cram,</i>	<i>farc-io,</i>	<i>farc-irē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{far-s-i} \\ (\text{farc-s-i}), \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{farc-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
-----------------	-----------------	------------------	--	--

The compounds change *ā* into *e*; e. g., *confercirē, confersi, confertūm, to fill up*.

<i>To prop,</i>	<i>fulc-io,</i>	<i>fulc-irē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ful-s-i} \\ (\text{fulc-s-i}), \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ful-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To draw,</i>	<i>haur-io,</i>	<i>haur-irē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hau-s-i} \\ (\text{haur-s-i}), \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haus-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>To decree,</i>	<i>sanc-io,</i>	<i>sanc-irē,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sanc-i} \\ (\text{sanc-s-i}), \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sanc-i-tūm and} \\ \text{sanc-tūm.} \end{array} \right\}$

* The compounds of *par-iō* which begin with a vowel have *ui, ertūm*, as in Class II.; those beginning with a consonant have *i, ertūm*, as in Class V.

<i>To patch,</i>	sarc-io,	sarc-irē,	{ sar-s-i (sarc-s-i),	{ sar-tūm.
<i>To feel,</i>	sent-io,	sent-irē,	{ sen-s-i (sent-s-i),	{ sen-sūm.

Instead of assentiō, assentiōr, deponent is more common.

<i>To hedge in,</i>	sēp-io,	sēp-irē,	sēp-s-i,	sēp-tūm.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-io,	vinc-irē,	{ vinx-i (vinc-s-i),	{ vinc-tūm.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

Contains but a single simple verb.

<i>To come,</i>	vēn-io,	vēn-irē,	vēn-i,	ven-tūm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

V. Perfect-stem takes the simple Verb-stem.

<i>To ascertain,</i>	compēr-io,	compēr-irē,	compēr-i,	comper-tūm.*
<i>To discern,</i>	rēpēr-io,	rēpēr-irē,	rēpēr-i,	rēper-tūm.*

(668.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>To exhort,</i>	hort-ōr,	hort-ārī,	hort-āt-ūs.
-------------------	----------	-----------	-------------

The deponents of the first conjugation are the most numerous, but are formed like hortōr, with ārī, ātūs.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>To acknowledge,</i>	fāt-eōr,	fāt-ērī,	fas-sūs.
------------------------	----------	----------	----------

The compounds make fiteōr, fessūs; e. g., confiteōr, confitērī, confessūs, to confess: diffiteōr has no participle.

<i>To bid,</i>	lic-eōr,	lic-ērī,	lic-īt-ūs.
<i>To heal,</i>	mēd-eōr,	mēd-ērī.	
<i>To deserve,</i>	mēr-eōr,	mēr-ērī,	mēr-īt-ūs.
<i>To pity,</i>	miser-eōr,	miser-ērī,	{ miser-īt-us, or miser-tūs.
<i>To think,</i>	r-eōr,	r-ērī,	rā-tūs.
<i>To look upon,</i>	tu-eōr,	tu-ērī,	{ tu-īt-ūs, or tū-tūs.
<i>To fear,</i>	vēr-eōr,	vēr-ērī,	vēr-īt-ūs.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>To devise,</i>	commisisc-ōr,	commisisc-i,	commen-tūs.
-------------------	---------------	--------------	-------------

Reminisceōr, to remember, has no perfect.

<i>To obtain,</i>	adīpisc-ōr,	adīpisc-i,	adep-tūs.
<i>To be worthy,</i>	dēfetisc-ōr,	dēfetisc-i,	dēfēt-tūs.

* See note, p. 276.

<i>To awake,</i>	<i>expergisc-ör,</i>	<i>expergisc-I,</i>	<i>experrec-tüs.</i>
<i>To enjoy,</i>	<i>fru-ör,</i>	<i>fru-I,</i>	{ <i>fruc-tüs and</i> <i>fru-it-us.</i>
<i>To perform,</i>	<i>fung-ör,</i>	<i>fung-I,</i>	<i>func-tüs.</i>
<i>To proceed,</i>	<i>gräd-iör,</i>	<i>gräd-I,</i>	<i>gres-süs.</i>

Compounds change the *ä* into *ö*; e. g., *aggrödi*, *aggressüs*, *to assail*.

<i>To be angry,</i>	<i>irasc-ör,</i>	<i>irasc-I,</i>	
<i>To fall,</i>	<i>läb-ör,</i>	<i>läb-I,</i>	<i>lap-süs.</i>
<i>To speak,</i>	<i>löqu-ör,</i>	<i>löqu-I,</i>	<i>löcä-tüs.</i>
<i>To die,</i>	<i>mör-iör,</i>	<i>mör-I,</i>	<i>mor-tüs.</i>
<i>To obtain,</i>	<i>nancisc-ör,</i>	<i>nancisc-I,</i>	<i>nac-tüs.</i>
<i>To be born,</i>	<i>nasc-ör,</i>	<i>nasc-I,</i>	<i>nä-tus.</i>
<i>To lean upon, to</i> <i>strive,</i>	{ <i>nüt-ör,</i>	<i>nüt-I,</i>	{ <i>nī-sus, or</i> <i>nix-üs.</i>
<i>To forget,</i>	<i>öblivisc-ör,</i>	<i>öblivisc-I,</i>	<i>öbli-tus.</i>
<i>To bargain,</i>	<i>päcisc-ör,</i>	<i>päcisc-I,</i>	<i>pac-tüs.</i>
<i>To feed,</i>	<i>pasc-ör,</i>	<i>pasc-I,</i>	<i>pas-tüs.</i>

This verb is the passive of *pascörö*, *to give food*.

<i>To suffer,</i>	<i>pät-iör,</i>	<i>pät-I,</i>	<i>pas-sus.</i>
-------------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------

Perpät-iör, *perpassüs*, *to endure*, changes *ä* into *ö*.

(From *plectö*, *to twine*.)

<i>To embrace,</i>	{ <i>amplect-ör,</i>	<i>amplect-I,</i>	<i>amplex-üs.</i>
	<i>complect-ör,</i>	<i>complect-I,</i>	<i>complex-üs.</i>
<i>To set out,</i>	<i>pröfiscisc-ör,</i>	<i>pröfiscisc-I,</i>	<i>pröfec-tüs.</i>
<i>To complain,</i>	<i>quör-ör,</i>	<i>quör-I,</i>	<i>ques-tüs.</i>
<i>To grin,</i>	<i>ring-ör,</i>	<i>ring-I,</i>	
<i>To follow,</i>	<i>söqu-or,</i>	<i>söqu-I,</i>	<i>söcä-tüs.</i>
<i>To revenge,</i>	<i>ulcisc-ör,</i>	<i>ulcisc-I,</i>	<i>ul-tus.</i>
<i>To use,</i>	<i>üt-or,</i>	<i>üt-I,</i>	<i>ü-sus.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>To assent,</i>	<i>assent-iör,</i>	<i>assent-iri,</i>	<i>assen-süs.</i>
<i>To flatter,</i>	<i>bland-iör,</i>	<i>bland-iri,</i>	<i>bland-it-üs.</i>
<i>To try,</i>	<i>expör-iör,</i>	<i>expör-iri,</i>	<i>exper-tüs.</i>
<i>To bestow money,</i>	<i>larg-iör,</i>	<i>larg-iri,</i>	<i>larg-it-üs.</i>
<i>To lie,</i>	<i>ment-iör,</i>	<i>ment-iri,</i>	<i>ment-it-üs.</i>
<i>To measure,</i>	<i>mät-iör,</i>	<i>mät-iri,</i>	<i>men-süs.</i>
<i>To move a mass,</i>	<i>möl-iör,</i>	<i>möl-iri,</i>	<i>möl-it-üs.</i>
<i>To wait for,</i>	<i>oppör-iör,</i>	<i>oppör-iri,</i>	<i>opper-tüs.</i>
<i>To begin,</i>	<i>ord-iör,</i>	<i>ord-iri,</i>	<i>or-süs.</i>

<i>To rise,</i>	ōr-iōr,	ōr-irī,	or-tās.
<i>To divide,</i>	part-iōr,	part-irī,	part-it-ūs.
<i>To possess myself of,</i> }	pōt-iōr,	pōt-irī,	pōt-it-ūs.
<i>To cast lots,</i>	sort-iōr,	sort-irī,	sort-it-ūs.

(669.)

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

Inchoatives are verbs derived from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs, expressing a *beginning* or *becoming* of the act or state denoted by the primitive. Their stems always end in *sc*, and they all follow the form of the 3d conj.; e. g.,

From *puer*, *boy*, we have *puerasc-ērē*, *to become a boy (again)*.

" *mātūr-ūs*, *ripe*, we have *mātūresc-ēre*, *to become ripe*.

" *dorm-irē*, *to sleep*, we have *obdormisc-ērē*, *to fall asleep*.

(1.) It is enough to observe on those derived from *adjectives* and *nouns* that they either *have* no perfect, or else form it in *uī*.

(2.) As to those derived from verbs,

(a) Most are from verbs in the *second* conjugation, and form their perfect-stem by adding *u* to the stem, rejecting *sc*; or, in other words, their perf.-stem is the same as that of the simple verb from which they are derived; e. g.,

To become gray, *canesc-ērē* (*canērē*), *canu-ī*.

To grow sour, *acesc-ērē* (*acēre*), *acu-ī*.

(b) Those derived from verbs of the other conjugations take the perfects of the simple verbs from which they are derived.

To grow old, *inveterasc-ērē* (*inveterārē*), *inveterāv-ī*, *inveterā-tum*.

To come to life, *rēvivisc-ērē* (*vivērē*), *rēviv-ī*, *rēvic-tum*.

To fall asleep, *obdormisc-ērē* (*dormirē*), *obdormīv-ī*, *obdormī-tum*.

11. IRREGULAR VERBS.*

(670.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Tenses for Incomplete Action.

Present and Imperfect.

1. *possē*, *to be able*.
2. *vellē*, *to be willing*.
3. *nollē*, *to be unwilling*.
4. *mallē*, *to be more willing*.
5. *ēdērē*, or *essē*, *to eat*.
6. *ferrē*, *to bear*.
7. *fiērī*, *to become*.
8. *ferri*, *to be borne*.

Tenses for Complete Action.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

- pōtuissē*, *to have been able*.
vōluissē, *to have been willing*.
nōluissē, *to have been unwilling*.
maluissē, *to have been more willing*.
ēdissē, *to have eaten*.
tūlissē, *to have borne, or suffered*.
factūm essē, *to have been made, or done*.
lātūm essē, *to have been borne*.

* See note, next page.

(671.)			INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT, <i>I am able, &c.</i>			PERFECT, <i>I have been able, &c.</i>		
1. possūm,*	pōtēs,	pōtest,	1. pōtu-i,	istī,	īt,
possūmūs,	pōtestis,	possunt.	pōtu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
2. vōlō,	vis,	vult,	2. vōlu-i,	istī,	īt,
vōlūmūs,	vultis,	volunt.	vōlu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
3. nōlō,	non vis,	non vult,	3. nōlu-i,	istī,	īt,
nōlūmūs,	non vultis,	nōlunt.	nōlu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
4. malō,	mavis,	mavult,	4. malu-i,	istī,	īt,
malūmūs,	mavultis,	malunt.	malu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
5. ēdō,	ēdis or ēs,	ēdit or eat,	5. ēd-i,	istī,	īt,
ēdimūs,	ēditis or estis ;	ēdunt.	ēd-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
6. fērō,	fers,	fert,	6. tūl-i,	istī,	īt,
fērimūs,	fertis,	fērint.	tūl-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
7. fio,†	fit,	fit,	7. factus sūm,	ēs,	ēst,
fimūs,	fitis,	fiunt.	facti sūmūs,	estis,	sunt.
8. fērōr,	feris or ferre ;	fertur,	8. lātūs sūm,	ēs,	est,
fērimūr,	fērimini,	fēriuntur.	lati sūmūs,	estis,	sunt.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was able, &c.</i>			PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,	1. pōtu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
pōt-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.	pōtu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
2. vōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	2. vōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
vōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	vōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
3. nōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	3. nōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
nōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	nōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
4. mal-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	4. malu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
mal-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	malu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
5. ēd-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	5. ēd-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
ēd-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	ēd-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
6. fēr-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	6. tūl-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fēr-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	tūl-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
7. fi-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	7. factus ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fi-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	facti ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
8. fēr-ēbār,	ēbaris or ē,	ēbātūr,	8. lātūs ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fēr-ēbamur,	ēbamini,	ēbantūr.	lati ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will be able, &c.</i>			FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall or will have been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,	1. pōtu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
pōt-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērunt.	pōtu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
2. vōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	2. vōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
vōl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	vōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
3. nōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	3. nōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
nōl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	nōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
4. mal-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	4. malu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
mal-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	malu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
5. ēd-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	5. ēd-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
ēd-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	ēd-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
6. fēr-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	6. tūl-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fēr-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	tūl-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
7. fi-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	7. factus ērimūs,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fi-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	facti ērimūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
8. fēr-ār,	ērīs or ērē,	ētūr,	8. lātūs ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fēr-ēmūr,	ēmīni,	entūr.	lati ērimūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.

* As many of these verbs are nearly related to each other, it seems unnecessary to separate their forms of inflection. The correspondent numbers will be sufficient direction in tracing the several tenses of each verb.

† Fio, contrary to the general rule (24, a), has *i* long throughout, before vowels: but before *r* it is short; as, *fiēri*.

(672.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

NOTE.—*Possum, volo, malo*, have no imperative mood.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. nōlī, or nōlitō, <i>be thou unwilling.</i>
nōlitē, or nōlitōtē, <i>be ye, &c.</i>
5. ēdō, ēditō, or ēā, estō, <i>eat thou.</i>
ēditē, ēditōtē: 3. ēdantō.
6. fēr, or fertō, <i>bear thou.</i>
fertē, or fertōtē: 3. fērantō. | 7. fī, or fitō, <i>become thou.</i>
fitē, or fitōtē: 3. fiantō.
8. ferrō, or fertōr, <i>be thou borne.</i>
fērimīni, or fēriminōr: 3. fērantōr. |
|--|--|

(673.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be able, &c.*

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------|
| 1. poss-īm, | is, | it, |
| poss-īmūs, | itis, | int. |
| 2. vēl-īm, | is, | it, |
| vēl-īmūs, | itis, | int. |
| 3. nōl-īm, | is, | it, |
| nōl-īmūs, | itis, | int. |
| 4. māl-īm, | is, | it, |
| māl-īmūs, | itis, | int. |
| 5. ēd-ām, | as, | āt, |
| ēd-āmūs, | ātis, | ant. |
| 6. fēr-ām, | as, | āt, |
| fēr-āmūs, | ātis, | ant. |
| 7. fī-ām, | as, | āt, |
| fī-āmūs, | ātis, | ant. |
| 8. fēr-ār, | aris or ārē, | ātūr, |
| fēr-āmūr, | amīni, | antūr. |

PERFECT, *I may have been able, &c.*

- | | | |
|----------------|---------|--------|
| 1. pōtu-ērīm, | ēris, | ērit, |
| pōtu-ērīmūs, | ēritīs, | ērint. |
| 2. vōlu-ērīm, | ēris, | ērit, |
| vōlu-ērīmūs, | ēritīs, | ērint. |
| 3. nōlu-ērīm, | ēris, | ērit, |
| nōlu-ērīmūs, | ēritīs, | ērint. |
| 4. mālu-ērīm, | ēris, | ērit, |
| mālu-ērīmūs, | ēritīs, | ērint. |
| 5. ēd-ērīm, | ēris, | ērit, |
| ēd-ērīmūs, | ēritīs, | ērint. |
| 6. tūl-ērīm, | ēris, | ērit, |
| tūl-ērīmūs, | ēritīs, | ērint. |
| 7. factus sīm, | sis, | sit. |
| facti sīmūs, | sitis, | sint. |
| 8. lātus sīm, | sis, | sit. |
| lati sīmūs, | sitis, | sint. |

IMPERFECT, *I might be able, &c.*

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|--------|
| 1. Poss-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| poss-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 2. vēl-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| vēl-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 3. noll-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| noll-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 4. mall-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| mall-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 5. ēdēr-ēm or essēm; ēā, | ēt, | |
| ēdēr-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 6. ferr-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| ferr-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 7. fīēr-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| fīēr-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 8. ferr-ēr, | ēris or ārē, | ētūr, |
| ferr-ēmūr, | ēmīni, | entūr. |

PLUPERF., *I might have been able, &c.*

- | | | |
|------------------|----------|---------|
| 1. pōtu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| pōtu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 2. vōlu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| vōlu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 3. nōlu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| nōlu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 4. mālu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| mālu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 5. ēd-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| ēd-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 6. tūl-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| tūl-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 7. factūs essēm, | essēs, | essēt, |
| facti essēmūs, | essētīs, | essent. |
| 8. lātūs essēm, | essēs, | essēt, |
| lati essēmūs, | essētīs, | essent. |

(674.)

GERUNDS.

- | |
|---|
| 2. vōlendi, volendō, volendūm, <i>of being, in being, to be, willing.</i> |
| 3. nōlendi, nōlendō, nōlendūm, " " " <i>unwilling.</i> |
| 4. mālendi, malendō, malendūm, " " " <i>more willing.</i> |
| 5. ēdendi, ēdendō, edendūm, <i>of eating, in eating, to eat.</i> |
| 6. fērendi, fērendō, fērendūm, <i>of bearing, in bearing, to bear.</i> |

(675.)

SUPINES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Accusative.</i> 5. ēsum, <i>to eat.</i> | <i>Ablative.</i> ēsū, <i>to be eaten, to eat.</i> |
| 6. lātūm, <i>to bear.</i> | lātā, <i>to be borne.</i> |

(676.)

PARTICIPLES.

Active. 1. pōtens, *being able.*
 2. vōlens, " *willing.*
 3. nōlens, " *unwilling.*
 4. malens, " *more willing.*
 5. ēdens, *eating.* ēsūrus, *about to eat.*
 6. fērens, *bearing.* lātūrus, *about to bear.*
 7. faciendūs, *to be made or done.*
 8. fērendūs, *to be borne.*

Passive. 7. factūs, *being or having been made or done.*
 8. lātūs, *being or having been borne or suffered.*

(677.)

Eo, I go.

Eō, I go, is conjugated like *audio*, except in the following tenses :

	Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Imp. Ind. Pres.</i>	eō,	is,	It.	Imūs, itīs, eunt.
<i>Past.</i>	ibām,	ibās,	ibāt.	ibāmūs, ibātīs, ibant.
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō,	ibis,	ibit.	ibimūs, ibitīs, ibunt.
<i>Imperative.</i>		I, or itō.	itē, or itōtē.	3. euntō.
<i>Imp. Pot. Pres.</i>	eām,	eās,	eāt.	eāmūs, eātīs, eant.
<i>Gerunds.</i>	eundi,	eundō,	eundūm.	
<i>Participles. Pres.</i>	iens (<i>gen. euntīs</i>),	going.	<i>Fut. itūrūs,</i>	<i>about to go.</i>
<i>Supines.</i>	itām, itū.			

Rem. In like manner, the compounds of eo are formed : also, *queo, to be able*, and *nōqueo, to be unable* ; except that these two have no imperative mood or gerunds.

12. DEFECTIVE VERBS

(678.) Are those which have only some particular tenses and moods ;
as, aio, I say ; ausim, I dare ; avē, hail ! &c.

(1.) Aio, I say.			
	Singular.		Plural.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	aio,	āis,	āit.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ai-ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt.
<i>Imperative.</i>		āi.	ēbāmūs,
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>		aiās,	aiāt.
<i>Participle.</i>	aiens.		ēbātis,
			ēbant.
			aiant.
(2.) Ausim, I dare.			
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	ausim,	ausis,	ausit.
			ausint.
(3.) Āvē, hail !			
<i>Imperative.</i>	āvē, or āvēto.		āvētē, or āvētōtē.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	āvērē.		
(4.) Salvē, God save you !			
<i>Imperative.</i>		salvē, or salvētō.	salvētē, or salvētōtē.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	salvērē.		
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>		salvēbīs.	

(5.) Cēdo, <i>give me.</i>		
<i>Imperative.</i>	Singular. cēdō.	Plural. cēdītē.
(6.) Faxo, or faxim (for <i>faciam</i>), <i>I will or may do it.</i>		
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	fax-o, or fax-im, is, It. imūs,	itīs, int.
(7.) Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>		
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	quæso-ð, is, It. ūmūs.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>	quæserē.	
<i>Participle.</i>	quæsens.	
(8.) Inquām, or Inquið, <i>I say.</i>		
<i>Impf. Ind. Pres.</i>	inqu-ið, or am, is, It. ūmus,	iunt.
<i>Past.</i>		inquiēbat.
<i>Fut.</i>	inquiēs, inquiēt.	[bant.
<i>Perf. Ind. Pres.</i>	inquistī.	
<i>Imperative.</i>	inquē, inquið.	inquītē.
<i>Participle.</i>	inquiēns.	

(9.) These verbs,

Nōv-i, *I know ;*

Mēmīn-i, *I remember ;*

Cœp-i, *I begin ;*

Od-i, *I hate,*

have the forms of the perfect tenses combined with the meanings of the imperfect. Nosco, the present of nōvī, is in use, and denotes *to learn*, whence nōvī expresses the actual knowledge which is the result of past learning.

Nōv-	{ i,	isti, &c. (Pres.)
Memīn-	{ ērām,	ērās, &c. (Past.)
Cœp-	{ ērð,	ērīs, &c. (Fut.)
Od-	{ ērim,	ērīs, &c. (Subj. Pres.)
	{ issēm,	issēs, &c. (Subj. Past.)
	{ issē,	(Infinitive.)
Mementð, mementðtē. (Imperative.)		
Ōsūs, ōsūrūs ; cœptus, cœptūrūs. (Participles.)		

13. IMPERSONAL VERBS

(679.) Are those which have no *subject*, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English ; e. g., pluīt, *it rains.*

1. Impersonals *never used personally.*

libēt, libuit, <i>it pleases.</i>	*pœnītēt, pœnītuit, <i>it repents.</i>
licēt, licuit, or } <i>one may,</i>	*pūdēt, pūduit, { <i>it shames,</i>
licitum est, } <i>it is lawful.</i>	{ <i>one is ashamed.</i>
oportēt, oportuit, { <i>one ought,</i>	*tœdēt, pertœsum est, { <i>it wearies,</i>
{ <i>it behooves.</i>	{ <i>disgusts.</i>
*mīserēt, <i>one pities.</i>	rēfert, <i>it concerns.</i>
*pīgēt, <i>it grieves (one).</i>	

* Those marked * take *acc.* of person and *gen.* of the thing (or object of the feeling).

2. Impersonals sometimes used *personally* in third person singular or plural.

fulmināt,	} <i>it lightens.</i>	ningit,	<i>it snows.</i>
fulgurat,		pluit,	<i>it rains.</i>
grandināt,		tōnāt,	<i>it thunders.</i>
lucescit,		vesperascit,	<i>it grows dark.</i>

3. Personal verbs used *specially* as impersonals in third person singular.

accidit,	<i>it happens.</i>	fit,	<i>it happens.</i>
accēdit,*	<i>it is added.</i>	intērest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
apparet,	<i>it appears.</i>	jāvāt,	<i>it is pleasant.</i>
attinet,	<i>it belongs to.</i>	lētēt,	{ <i>it is unknown, concealed.</i>
conducit,	<i>it is conducive.</i>	liquēt,	
constāt,	{ <i>it is known, it is agreed upon.</i>	pātēt,	<i>it is plain, open.</i>
contingit,		<i>it happens.</i>	placēt,
convenit,	<i>it suits, agrees.</i>	præstāt,	<i>it is better.</i>
delectāt,	<i>it is delightful.</i>	restāt,	<i>it remains.</i>
dēcēt,	<i>it is becoming.</i>	sōlēt,	{ <i>it happens usually.</i>
dēdēcēt,	<i>it is unbecoming.</i>	assolēt,	
evenit,	<i>it turns out.</i>	stāt,	<i>it suffices.</i>
expēdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	sufficiūt,	<i>(I) have leisure.</i>
excidit,†	<i>it has escaped me.</i>	vācāt,	

Rem. These may be used in the different tenses of indic. and subj. moods.

4. The third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *currūtūr*, *they run* (it is run by them); *pugnātū est*, *they fought* (it was fought by them). Those which govern the dative, govern it also in the impersonal form; e. g., *I am envied*, *mihī invidētūr*.

* Accēdit quod (or ūt) = *moreover*.

† i. e., *dē mēmōriā excidit* = *it has slipped from my memory—is forgotten*.

§ 7. ADVERB.

THE adverb qualifies a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

I. Derivative Adverbs.

(680.) *Derivative adverbs* (a) are nearly all formed from *adjectives* or *participles*, by adding *ē* or *Itēr* to their stems:

1. Add *ē* to stem of adjectives in *ūs*, *ā*, *tīm*; e. g.,

clār-ūs, *illustrious*. clār-ē, *illustriously*.

Rem. Bōnūs makes bēnē, *well*; and mālūs (*bad*); mālē, *badly*.
All others end in *ē* (*long*).

2. Add *Itēr* to the stem of adjectives of 2d or 3d class; e. g.,

brēv-is, *brief*. brēv-Itēr, *briefly*.
fērox (ferōc-s), *fierce*. fēroc-Itēr, *fiercely*.

Rem. 1. Those which end in *ns* do not take the connecting vowel *i*;
e. g.,

prādens, *prudent*. prāden-tēr, *prudently*.

2. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tēr, *boldly*.

(b) A few are formed from nouns, by adding *tūs* or *tīm* to the stem by means of a connecting vowel; e. g.,

cæl-tīm, *heaven*. cæl-I-tūs, *from heaven*.
fund-ūs, *bottom*. fund-I-tūs, *from the bottom, totally*.
grēx (greg-s), *flock*. grēg-ē-tīm, *by flocks*.

(c) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter*, are often used as adverbs; e. g., dulcē, *sweetly*; falsō, *falsely*, &c.

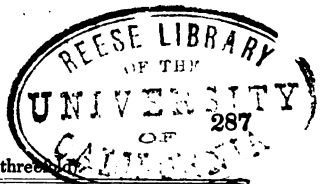
II. Primitive Adverbs.

(681.) *Primitive adverbs* are such as cannot conveniently be classed among the derivatives above mentioned. The most common are arranged in the following lists:

1. ADVERBS OF PLACE (fivefold).

(1.) <i>In a Place.</i>			
ubi ? hic, illic, istic, ibi, intus, foris,	where ? here. there. there, where you are. there. within. without.	ubique, nusquam, alicubi, alibi, ubivis, ibidem,	everywhere. nowhere. somewhere. elsewhere. { anywhere (you please). in the same place.
(2.) <i>To a Place—(o, uc).</i>			
quo ? huc, illuc, istuc, intro,	whither ? hither. thither. { thither, to where you are. to within.	foras, eo, alio, aliquo, eodem,	to without. to that place. to another place. to some place. to the same place.
(3.) <i>Towards a Place.</i>			
quorsum, versus, sursum, deorsum,	whitheward ? towards. upward. downward.	retrorsum, dextrorsum, sinistrorsum,	backward. to the right hand. to the left hand.
(4.) <i>From a Place—(nc, nde).</i>			
unde ? hinc, illic, istinc, indē,	whence ? hence. thence. { thence, from where you are. thence.	aliunde, alicunde, sicunde, utrinque, supernē, infernē,	from elsewhere. from some place. if from any place. on both sides. from above. from below.
(5.) <i>Through or by a Place.</i>			
qua ? hac, illac,	which way ? this way. that way.	istac, alia,	that way, by you. another way.

ADVERBS.



2. ADVERBS OF TIME (threefold)

(1.) Being in time, either,

nunc, hōdiē,	1. <i>Present.</i> now. to-day.	protinus, illico,	instantly. straightway. (Remote.)
	2. <i>Past.</i> } then. yesterday. } heretofore. the day before. lately.	crās, postridie, perendie, nondum,	to-morrow. the day after. two days hence. not yet.
	3. <i>Future.</i> (Very Near.) jamjam, mox, statim,	quandō ? aliquandō, nonnunquā, interdum, semp̄r, nunquā, int̄rim, int̄rea, quōtidie,	4. <i>Indefinite.</i> when ? } sometimes. always. never. } in the mean time. daily.

(2.) Continuance of Time.

quamdiū ? diū, tamdiū,	how long ? long. so long.	jamdiū, jamdūdum, jampridem,	} long ago.
------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------

(3.) Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.

quōtiēs ? sæpē, tōtiēs, aliquōtiēs, vicissim, rursus, it̄erum,	1. <i>Indefinite.</i> how often ? often. so often. for several times. by turns. again. a second time.	subindē, identidē,	immediately after. several times.
		2. <i>Definite, or in Number.</i> sēm̄l, bis, tēr, quat̄r,	once. twice. thrice. four times.

3. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

indē, then.	deinceps, successively.	primo,* -um,† first.
deindē, thereafter.	dēnuō, anew.	secundō,† secondly.)
dehinc, henceforth.	deniquē, finally.	&c.
porrō, moreover.	(postrēmō,† lastly.	

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, &c.

adeō, so, and therefore.	nemp̄, truly.
admōdum, very, greatly.	nimiū, too much.
an, whether ? or else ?	nōn, not.
cū, why.	nūm ? whether ?
dēmum, at length.	omnino, at all, in general.
etiam, likewise, yes.	pārū, little.
fere, almost.	satis, enough.
haud, not.	sic, so, thus.
immō, yes, truly.	scilicet, namely.
ita, so, thus.	videlicet, namely.
magis, more.	vix, scarcely.
nō, not.	

* Primo = at first; primū = first, in the first place.

† These fall under (680, c).

§ 8. PREPOSITION.

(682.) 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the *accusative*:

Antē, apūd, ad, adversūs,
Circū, circa, citrā, cis,
Ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
Infra, intra, juxtā, ob,
Pēnēs, pōnē, post, and prætēr,
Prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundū,
Sūprā, versūs, ultrā, trans.

[Versūs is placed *after* the noun which it governs.]

2. Governing the *ablative*:

Absquē, a, ab, abs, and dē.
Cōrām, clām, cūm, ex, and ē.
Tēnūs, sīnē, prō, and prae.

3. Governing both *accusative* and *ablative*:

in, sub, supēr, subtēr

§ 9. CONJUNCTION.

(683.) **CONJUNCTIONS** connect words and sentences. They may be divided into the following classes:

- I. *Copulative*, which simply unite sentences together (*and*): they are *et*, *atque* or *ac*, *que*, *neque* or *nec*, *necnon*, *etiam*, *quodque*, with the adverbials *item* and *etidem*.
- II. *Disjunctive*, which connect *unlike* prepositions (*or*): they are *aut*, *vel*, the suffix *ve*, and *sive* or *seu*; (*either—or*): *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*; (*whether—or*): *sive—sive*.
- III. *Comparative* (*as, like, as if, &c.*): they are *ut*, *sicut*, *velut*, *prout*, *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, *quasi*, *utsi*, *acsi*, together with *ac* and *atque*, when they mean *as*.
- IV. *Adversative*, expressing *opposition* of thought (*but*): they are *sed*, *autem*, *verò*, *at* and its compounds, *tamen* (and its compounds with *at sed* and *verum*), and *ceterum*.
- V. *Concessive*, expressing something *granted* (*although, even if*): they are *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *quamquam*, *quavis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*, *licet*, with *ut* and *quum*, when they mean *although*.
- VI. *Conditional*, expressing a *condition* (*if, if only, if but*): they are *si*, *sin*, *ni* or *nisi*, *simodò*, *dummòdò*, *mòdone*, and some times *dum* and *mòdò* used alone.
- VII. *Conclusive*, expressing a *conclusion* or *inference* (*therefore*): they are *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *eò*, *ideò*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *propterea*, and the relatives (*wherefore*) *quapropter*, *quare*, *quomobrem*, *quocirca*, *undè*.
- VIII. *Causal*, expressing a *cause* or *reason* (*for, because*): *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *et enim*, *quia*, *quod*, *quoniam*, *quippè*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, *siquidem*.
- IX. *Final*, expressing a *purpose* or *aim* (*in order that, in order that not*): *ut* or *utì*, *quò*, *nè*, *utnè*, *nèvé*, *neu*, *quin*, *quomòdò*.
- X. *Temporal*, expressing a *relation of time* (*when, as soon as, after that, just as*): *quum*, *ut*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antèquam*, *priusquam*, *quando*, *simul*, *simulac*, *dum*, *usque dum*, *dònec*, *quoad*.
- XI. *Interrogative*, used in asking questions: *nàm*, *utrùm*, *an*, *nè* (suffix).

§ 10. INTERJECTION.

(684.) INTERJECTIONS are simply signs of emotion.

ah,	<i>ah !</i>	hēm,	<i>hem ! how !</i>
āpāgē,	<i>away !</i>	iō,	<i>huzza !</i>
eccē,	<i>behold !</i>	ōh,	<i>oh ! alas !</i>
eccūm,	<i>see him !</i>	pāpæ,	<i>O strange ! good !</i>
eū,	<i>lo !</i>	prō,	<i>alas !</i>
heī, heū,	<i>alas !</i>	væ,	<i>woe !</i>
		vāh,	<i>O rare !</i>

P A R T I V.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

(685.) A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words ; *e. g.*, *the rose blooms ; the rose is beautiful.*

(686.) A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition ; *e. g.*, *the messenger was sent ; the swift messenger arrived.*

(687.) A *compound sentence* is one made up of two or more propositions ; *e. g.*, *the messenger, who had been sent, arrived.*

(688.) SYNTAX treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences, and of the relation of sentences to each other. We speak first,

PART I.

OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 1. Definition of Subject and Predicate.

(689.) Every sentence (*e. g.*, *the eagle flies*) consists of two parts, the *subject* (*e. g.*, *eagle*) and the *predicate* (*e. g.*, *flies*).

(a) The *subject* is that of which anything is declared, and is generally (1) a *noun*, or (2) some word used instead of a noun.

1. *The eagle flies.* Here the noun *eagle* is the subject.

2. *To err is human.* Here the infinitive *to err* is used as a noun, and forms the subject.

(b) The *predicate* is that which is declared of the subject, and is generally either (1) a *verb*, (2) an *adjective* or *participle*, or (3) a *noun*, connected with the subject by some form of the verb *to be*.

1. *The eagle flies.* Here the verb *flies* is the predicate.

2. *To err is human.* Here the adjective *human* is the predicate.

3. *John is a man.* Here the noun *man* is the predicate.

§ 2. Agreement.

(690.) RULE I. The verb of the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person.

The trees are green.

Art thou happy ?

| *Arbores virent.*

| *Esne tu beatus ?*

Rem. 1. If the subj. consists of two or more singular nouns denoting persons, the verb is generally in the plural.

2. A *collective* noun sometimes has a plural verb.

The crowd rushes.

| *Turba ruunt.*

[This construction is not used by Cicero, and seldom, if at all, by Caesar.]

3. A plural verb is sometimes used with *uterque* and *quisque*.

Each of them leads his army out of the camp.

| *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.*

4. The verb agrees with the first person rather than the second; the second rather than the third.

If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

| *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

(691.) An adjective may stand either

- (1.) As predicate; *e. g.*, the man is *happy*;
- (2.) As modifying the subject; *e. g.*, the *good* man is happy;
- (3.) As modifying the predicate; *e. g.*, the good man is a *happy* man.

In either case we have

RULE II. Adjectives agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case.

[This rule applies to all adjectives, pronouns, and participles.]

Rem. If there be two or more nouns denoting *persons*, the most worthy* gender prevails; if *things*, the neuter is used.

My father and mother are dead.

| *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

Labour and enjoyment are united.

| *Labor voluptasque juncta sunt.*

(692.) **RULE III.** If the predicate be a noun, it takes the case of the subject.

Numa was made king.

| *Numa rex creabatur.*

§ 3. *Apposition.*

(693.) A noun may stand

- (a) In the subject, denoting the same person or thing with the subject-noun; *e. g.*, the general, a *brave man*, led the army.
- (b) In the predicate, denoting the same person or thing with a noun in the predicate; *e. g.*, we have sent the consul, a *brave man*.

Nouns thus expressing the same person or thing, whether in the subject or predicate, are said to be in *apposition* with each other; and in either case we have

RULE IV. Nouns in apposition with each other agree in case.

* The *masculine* is said to be more worthy than the *feminine*; the *feminine* than the *neuter*.

The commander, a brave man, led the army.	Imperator, vir fortis, exercitum duxit.
We sent the consul, a brave man.	Consulem, virum fortem, misimus.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is commonly put in the plural.

M. Antony and C. Crassus, tribunes of the people.	M. Antonius, C. Crassus, tribuni plebis.
---	--

2. A noun in apposition with the name of a town may be put in the ablative, with or without the preposition *in*.

At Rome, the chief city of Italy. | Romæ, (in) prima urbe Italiæ.

II. USE OF CASES.

§ 4. Nominative.

(694.) *Subject-nominative*.—The subject of a proposition takes the nominative case, and is called the *subject-nominative*.

(2.) *Predicate-nominative*.—The predicate-nominative (692) is always connected with the subject by *esse*, *to be*, or some verb expressing an incomplete idea.

Rem. Of this class of verbs are *to appear*, apparere, videri; *to become*, fieri, evadere, existere; *to be named*, dici, appellari, nominari; *to be esteemed*, existimari, haberi, &c.

Ariovistus was called king by the senate.	Ariovistus a senatu rex appellatus est.
---	---

§ 5. Genitive.

(695.) **RULE V.** The genitive answers the questions *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?* *e. g.*, the love of glory, amor gloriæ; Cicero's orations, Ciceronis orationes.

Rem. The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which a thing belongs; *e. g.*, Ciceronis orationes. It is *objective* when it denotes that which is affected by the action or feeling spoken of; *e. g.*, amor gloriæ: the taking of the town, expugnatio urbis.

(696.) **RULE VI.** *Genitive of Quality*.—The genitive (with an adjective, or pronoun of quality, number, &c.) is used to express the *quality* of a thing.

A man of great bravery.	Vir magnæ virtutis.
A ditch of fifteen feet.	Fossa quindecim pedum.

Rem. 1. The *ablative* is also used in the same way (724).

2. If the two nouns are connected, not immediately, but by another part of speech, the *accusative* must be used: fossa quindecim pedes lata.

(697.) **RULE VII. Partitive-genitive.**—The genitive is used to express the *whole* of which anything is a part. Hence,

(a) With comparatives and superlatives :

<i>The more learned of the two brothers.</i>		Doctior fratrum duorum.
--	--	-------------------------

<i>The most learned of the Romans.</i>		Doctissimus Romanorum.
--	--	------------------------

(b) With all words expressing *number* or *quantity*, whether adjectives, pronouns, numerals, or adverbs; e. g., *many of the soldiers*, multi militum; *which of you?* quis vestrum? *the last of the Romans*, ultimus Romanorum; *enough eloquence*, satis eloquentiæ; *where* (in what part) *of the world?* ubinam gentium?

Rem. This rule includes the neuters tantum, quantum, aliquantum, quid, aliquid, &c.

(698.) **RULE VIII. Genitive of Mental Affections.**—The genitive is used with verbs and adjectives expressing certain operations of the mind or feelings, to denote the *object* thereof.

(a) *Operations of the mind.*

1. Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *remembering* and *forgetting*, *certainty* and *doubt*.

Mindful of a kindness.

| Beneficii memor.

He was not ignorant of the result of the war.

| Eventus belli non erat ignarus.

2. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (recordor, memini, reminiscor, obliviscor).

To remember past events.

| Meminisse præteritorum.

He exhorts the Æduans to forget their disputes.

| Cohortatur Æduos ut controversiarum obliviscantur.

[The thing remembered is often put in the accusative.]

(b) *Operations of the feelings.*

1. Adjectives expressing *desire* or *aversion*, *patience* or *impatience*, *appetite* or *passion*. Participles used as adjectives fall under this rule.

Desirous of praise.

| Avidus laudis.

A lover of (= one loving) virtue.

| Amans virtutis.

2. Verbs.

(a) Those expressing *pity*, viz., miseresco, misereor.

I pity the unfortunate.

| Miseresco infelicium.

(b) The impersonals pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret (*shame, disgust, repentance, loathing, pity*).

<i>I am not only sorry for my folly, but ashamed of it.</i>		Me non solum pœnitet stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.
<i>I am weary of my life.</i>		Me tædet vitæ.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

2. The cause of feeling may be a verb, or part of a sentence, instead of a noun in the genitive.

<i>I am not sorry (= it does not repent me) that I have lived.</i>		Non pœnitet me vixisse.
--	--	-------------------------

(699.) **RULE IX. Genitive of Participation.**—The genitive is used with adjectives and participles expressing (1) *plenty* or *want*, (2) *power* or *weakness*, (3) *sharing* or its opposite, (4) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

(1.) <i>Full of wrath.</i>		Plenus iræ.
(2.) <i>Master of one's faculties.</i>		Compos mentis.
(3.) <i>He is like his brother.</i>		Similis est fratris.
(4.) <i>Man is a sharer of reason.</i>		Homo particeps est rationis.

Rem. 1. Those of *plenty* and *want* take also ablative (716, R. 4).

2. Those of *likeness* and *unlikeness* take also the dative (704, 4).

(700.) **RULE X. Genitive of Value.**—The genitive of certain adjectives is used with verbs of *valuing*, *esteeming*, *buying*, *selling*, &c., to denote the price or value.

<i>The poor man estimates riches at a great value.</i>		Pauper divitiis magni æstimat.
--	--	--------------------------------

Rem. 1. Such genitives are *magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *maximi*, *minoris*, and others.

2. If the price be a noun, the ablative is used (719). Also, the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nihi- lo*, are often used.

(701.) **RULE XI. Genitive of Crime.**—The genitive is used with verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., to denote the *crime* or *offence* charged.

<i>To accuse of treachery.</i>		Proditionis accusare.
<i>The judge acquitted the prisoner of the crime.</i>		Prætor reum criminis absolvit.

(702.) **RULE XII. Genitive of Property.**—The genitive is used with *esse* to denote (1) that to which something belongs ; (2) that to which something is peculiar.

(1.) <i>This book belongs to my father.</i>		Hic liber est mei patris.
(2.) <i>It is peculiar to the brave to endure pain with fortitude.</i>		Fortium est dolorem fortiter pati.

Rem. 1. Under this last head come the following constructions :

It is	{	the property peculiarity duty mark characteristic &c.	}	of a wise man = est sapientis.
-------	---	--	---	--------------------------------

2. Observe carefully, that instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the neuter possessives (*meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*) are used; *e. g., it is my duty, &c.; est meum, &c.*

(703.) **RULE XIII.** The genitive is used with the impersonal interest (*it concerns*), to express the person concerned.

It concerns my brother.

| *Mei fratris interest.*

It concerns the state.

| *Reipublicæ interest.*

Rem. But instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the possessive forms *mea, tua, &c.*, are always used; and with them the impersonal *refert* has the same force as *interest*.

It concerns you.

| *Tua interest (not tui interest).*

It is of great importance to me to see you.

| *Magni mea refert ut te videam.*

§ 6. Dative.

(704.) **RULE XIV.** The dative case is used to express the person or thing *to or for whom (or which), to or for whose advantage or disadvantage* anything is done or tends.

¶ Almost every instance in which the dative occurs may be explained by a proper application of this rule. For the sake of fuller illustration, however, we add the following heads :

(1.) **Dative of Remote Object.**—The dative is used to express the *remote* object,

(a) With *transitive* verbs governing also a *direct object*.

I send you a book.

| *Mitto tibi librum.*

Pisistratus conquered the Megarenses for himself.

| *Pisistratus sibi Megarenses vicit.*

Rem. The accusative is often omitted, and the dative alone appears with the verb; *e. g., I persuade you, tibi suadeo; he told the general, nuntiavit imperatori.*

(b) With *intransitive* verbs expressing an action done *to or for* some person or thing.

I have leisure for philosophy.

| *Vaco philosophiæ.*

(2.) On the same principle (*advantage or disadvantage*), the dative is used with verbs of the following meanings, viz. :

*Envy, profit, please, displease, obey,
Help, hurt, resist, excel, or disobey,
Command, indulge, be angry, spare, upbraid,
Marry, heal, favour, meet, trust, and persuade.*

Rem. 1. Juvo, lædo, delecto, offendo, rego, gubernō, govern the accusative.

2. Impero, credo, minor, comminor, are also used transitively, with accusative and dative.

(6.) *Dative with Compound Verbs.*—The dative is used with *most* verbs compounded with ad, con, in, inter, ob, præ, sub; and with *many* of those compounded with ab, ante, de, e, post, præ, re, super.

Rem. These verbs govern the dative when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative; e. g., *to join*, jungere, takes accusative; but *to join to*, adjungere, takes dative also. When they are transitive, they take both accusative and dative; but when intransitive, the dative only.

<i>To prefer unknown men to known.</i>	Ignotos notis anteferre.
<i>Vices creep upon us.</i>	Vitia nobis obrepunt.

(4.) So, also, the dative is used with *adjectives* expressing *advantage, likeness, usefulness, fitness, facility, nearness to*, and their opposites.

<i>Be kind to all.</i>	Cunctis esto benignus.
<i>Hurtful to the body.</i>	Corpori perniciosum.
<i>A place fit for ambush.</i>	Locus insidiis aptus.
<i>They are neighbours to the Germans.</i>	Proximi sunt Germanis.

Rem. 1. Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* may take the genitive (699, 3).

2. Those of *fitness* and *unfitness* often take the accusative with ad; e. g., locus ad insidias aptus.

(705.) **RULE XV. Dative of Possession.**—The dative is used with *esse* to express the person who has or possesses something.

<i>I have a book.</i>	Est mihi liber (= habeo librum).
-----------------------	----------------------------------

Rem. 1. *I have a name* = est mihi nomen; but if the name be expressed, it may be put either in nominative or dative; e. g., *my name is Lælius* = mihi est nomen Lælius (or Lælio).

2. The possessor is expressed by the *dative* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possession* (e. g., *I have a book* = est mihi liber); but by the *genitive* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possessor* (e. g., *this book is my father's* = hic liber est mei patris).

(706.) **RULE XVI. Dative of the End (Double Dative).**—Two datives are used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving, coming, sending, imputing*; one to express the *person*, the other the *object or end*.

The Boians were (for) a protection to the rear. | *Boii novissimis præsidio erant.*

Pausanias came to aid (for an aid to) the Athenians. | *Pausanias venit Atheniensibus auxilio.*

Rem. The verbs used with double dative are *esse, dare, ducere, tribuere, vertere, accipere, relinquere, deligere, mittere, venire, habere*.

[The dative is used with gerundives, for which see 737, b.]

§ 7. Accusative.

(707.) The **ACCUSATIVE** is the case of the *direct object*, and answers the questions *whom? what? to what place?*

Under this general statement we make three heads: (1) the accusative with verbs; (2) the accusative with prepositions; (3) the accusative according to the usage of the language.

I. Accusative with Verbs.

(708.) **RULE XVII. Accusative of the Direct Object.**—The accusative is used with transitive verbs, to express the *direct object*.

Cæsar recalls the lieutenant. | *Cæsar legatum revocat.*

Rem. 1. Some verbs are used both transitively and intransitively; the use of these must be learned by practice.

2. Some *intransitives* (especially those of motion), compounded with prepositions, acquire a transitive force easily recognised from their meaning; thus: *to go, ire; to go across, transire*, which takes the accusative.

3. Some intransitives take an accusative of a noun from the same root with themselves; e. g., *to live a life, vivere vitam*.

(709.) **RULE XVIII. Accusative with Impersonals.**—The accusative of the *person affected* is used with the impersonals *pudet, piget, tædet, miseret, pœnitet*.

I am tired of life. | *Tædet me vitæ.*

Rem. *Decet* and its compounds (which admit a personal subject), also *juvat* and *delectat*, take the accusative.

Anger becomes wild beasts. | *Decet ira feras.*

(710.) **RULE XIX. Double Accusative.**

(a) Two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the

thing, are used with verbs of *teaching, concealing, asking, or entreating*, and also with those verbs whose passives have a double nominative (694, 2, R.).

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Who taught Epaminondas music?</i> | Quis musicam docuit Epaminondam. |
| (2.) <i>I conceal nothing from you.</i> | Nihil te celo. |
| (3.) <i>I ask this of you earnestly.</i> | Hoc te vehementer rogo. |
| (4.) <i>Avarice renders men blind.</i> | Avaritia homines cæcos reddit. |

Rem. 1. With verbs of *asking, demanding*, the ablative with a preposition is used instead of one of the accusatives.

<i>The ambassadors were asking peace of Cæsar.</i>	Legati pacem a Cæsare poscebant.
--	----------------------------------

2. *Petere* and *postulare* always take the ablative with *ab*; and *querere*, the ablative with *ab, de, or ex*.

(b) Two accusatives are used also with verbs compounded with *trans*.

<i>Cæsar led the army across the Rhine.</i>	Cæsar exercitum Rhenum transduxit.
---	------------------------------------

The *trans* is often repeated; *e. g.*, Cæsar exercitum *trans* Rhenum *transduxit*.

Rem. 1. In the passive construction of verbs which take a double accusative, the *person* takes the nominative, but the *thing* generally remains in the accusative.

<i>I was asked my opinion.</i>	Ego rogatus sum sententiam.
<i>The multitude is led across the Rhine.</i>	Multitudo Rhenum transducitur.

2. But with verbs of *demanding* the ablative with a preposition is generally used.

<i>Money is demanded of me.</i>	Pecunia a me poscitur.
---------------------------------	------------------------

II. Accusative with Prepositions.

(711.) **RULE XX.** The accusative is used with the prepositions *ad, apud, ante, adversus, cis, citra, circa, circum, circiter, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, versus, ultra*. Also, with *in* and *sub*, when motion is expressed; with *super*, when it means *over*, and with *subter* nearly always.

III. Accusative according to the Usage of the Language.

(712.) **RULE XXI. Accusative of Measure.**—The accusative is used in answer to the questions *how far? how deep? how*

thick? how broad? how old? how long? (whether of time or distance).

<i>The city is two miles off.</i>	<i>Urbs duo millia abest.</i>
<i>The ditch is ten feet wide (deep, or long).</i>	<i>Fossa decem pedes lata (alta, longa).</i>
<i>Only one hour.</i>	<i>Unam modo horam.</i>
<i>Twenty years old.</i>	<i>Viginti annos natus.</i>

Rem. 1. How far? is sometimes answered by the ablative.

<i>Six miles from Cæsar's Camp.</i>	<i>Millibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris.</i>
-------------------------------------	--

2. For time how long, the accusative with per is sometimes used, and sometimes the ablative alone.

<i>Through the whole night.</i>	<i>Per totam noctem.</i>
<i>He was absent six months.</i>	<i>Sex mensibus abfuit.</i>

(713.) **RULE XXII. Accusative of Direction, Whither?**—The accusative is used with names of *towns* and *small islands*, in answer to the question, *whither?*

<i>To set out for Athens.</i>	<i> Athenas proficisci.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------

Rem. 1. With names of countries or large islands the prepositions in, ad, must be used.

<i>He crossed into Europe.</i>	<i> In Europam trajecit.</i>
--------------------------------	-------------------------------

2. Domus and rus follow this rule.

<i>To go home.</i>	<i> Ire domum.</i>
<i>I will go into the country.</i>	<i> Rus ibo.</i>

(714.) **Greek Accusative.**—The accusative is used to express a special limitation.

<i>Naked as to his limbs.</i>	<i> Nudus membra.</i>
<i>For the most part (men) say so.</i>	<i> Maximam partem ita dicunt.</i>

Rem. This is a Greek usage, common in Latin poetry, but not in prose.

(715.) **Exclamations.**—The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection.

<i>Miserable me!</i>	<i> Me miserum.</i>
<i>Behold, four altars!</i>	<i> En quattuor aras.</i>

[For the accusative with the infinitive, see 751.]

§ 8. Ablative.

(716.) **RULE XXIII. General Rule.**—The ablative is used to express the (1) *cause*; (2) *manner*; (3) *means, material, or instrument*; (4) *supply*.

1. *Cause*.—The ablative of cause is used with passive verbs, and with the participles *natus*, *genitus*, *ortus*, *contentus*.

The world is illuminated by the sun. | *Sole mundus illustratur.*

I am content with my lot. | *Sorte mea contentus sum.*

O thou, born of a goddess! | *Nate Dea!*

☞ If the cause be a *person* (or a thing *personified*), *a* or *ab* must be used with passive verbs.

The world was built by God. | *A Deo mundus sedificatus est.*

2. *Manner*.—(a) This ablative generally occurs in nouns denoting manner; e. g., *mos*, *modus*, *ratio*, &c.

In this way I wrote. | *Hoc modo scripsi.*

(b) With other nouns, *cum* is generally used, unless an adjective is joined with the noun.

He hears with pleasure. | *Cum voluptate audit.*

He bears the injury with firmness. | *Æquo animo fert injuriam.*

3. *Means, Material, Instrument*.—Ablative without a preposition.

To travel by horse, carriage, ships. | *Equo, curru, navibus, vehi.*

Bulls defend themselves with their horns. | *Cornibus tauri se tutantur.*

☞ If the instrument or means be a *person*, *per* or *propter* is used, with the accusative.

I was freed by you. | *Per te liberatus sum.*

4. *Supply*.—As supply may be either abundant or defective, the ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *abounding*, *wanting*, *filling*, *emptying*, &c.; e. g., *abundare*, *egere*, *carere*, *inops*, *refertus*, *præditus*, &c.

Germany abounds in rivers. | *Germania fluminibus abundat.*

The mind is endowed with perpetual activity. | *Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.*

(717.) RULE XXIV. The ablative of the *thing needed*, and the dative of the *person*, are used with *opus est* (*there is need*).

We have need of a leader. | *Duce nobis opus est.*

Rem. If *opus est* be used personally, the *thing needed* is put in the nominative as subject.

Leaders are necessary for us. | *Duces nobis opus sunt.*

(718.) RULE XXV. The ablative is used with the deponents *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*.

To make use of advice. | *Consilio uti.*

They were enjoying peace. | *Pace fruebantur.*

Rem. Potior is used also with the genitive.

To obtain possession of all Gaul. | Totius Galliæ potiri.

(719.) RULE XXVI. *Ablative of Price.*—The ablative is used with verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, &c.*; also with the adjectives *dignus* and *indignus*, to express the *price* or *value*.

He sold his country for gold.

Worthy of hatred.

That battle cost the blood of many.

Patriam auro vendidit.

Odio dignus.

Multorum sanguine ea victoria stetit.

☞ If the price or value be an *adjective*, it is generally put in the genitive (700).

(720.) RULE XXVII. *Ablative of Limitation.*—The ablative is used to denote the limitation generally expressed in English by *as to, in respect of, in regard to*.

Older (i. e., greater in age).

Skilled in the law.

In affection a son.

Major natu.

Jure peritus.

Pietate filius.

(721.) RULE XXVIII. *Ablative of Separation.*—The ablative is used with verbs of *removing, freeing, depriving, and the like*.

Cæsar removed his camp from the spot.

The trees are stripped of leaves.

Cæsar castra loco movit.

Arbores foliis nudantur.

Rem. Many of these verbs also take the prepositions *a, ab, de, ex*.

(722.) RULE XXIX. *Ablative of Quality.*—The ablative is used (with an adjective of quality) to express that one thing is a quality or property of another.

Cæsar was a man of consummate talent.

Agesilaus was a man of low stature.

Cæsar summo fuit ingenio.

Agesilaus statura fuit humili.

Rem. The genitive is also thus used (696).

(723.) RULE XXX. *Ablative of Comparison.*—The ablative is used with the comparative degree (*quam* being omitted) to express the object with which another is compared.

Cicero was more eloquent than Hortensius.

Cicero fuit eloquentior Hortensio.

(724.) **RULE XXXI. Ablative of Measure.**—The ablative of measure is used,

- (a) With *comparatives* and *superlatives*, to express the measure of excess or defect.
- (b) To express the measure of *time before or after* any event.

Much greater.

Themistocles lived many years before Demosthenes.

Multo major.

Themistocles permultis annis ante fuit quam Demosthenes.

(725.) **RULE XXXII. Ablative of Time When.**—The ablative is used to express the point of time at which anything occurs.

On the sixth day.

Sexto die.

Rem. The time *within which* anything occurs is expressed by the ablative with or without *in* or *de*.

Within ten years.

Decem annis.

Within those days.

In his diebus.

(726.) **RULE XXXIII. Ablative of Place.**

- (a) The place *whence* is expressed by the ablative.

He departed from Corinth.

Corintho profectus est.

- (b) The place *where* is expressed by the ablative, if the noun be of the *third* declension or *plural* number.

Alexander died at Babylon.

Alexander Babylone mortuus est.

At Athens.

Athenis.

Rem. If the noun be of the 1st or 2d declension singular, the genitive is used.

At Rome. At Corinth.

Romæ. Corinthi.

(Domi follows this rule.)

(727.) The ablative is used with the following prepositions.
viz. :

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,
Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.

Also with *in* and *sub* (implying *rest*, not *motion*), and *super*, when it means *upon*. *Subter* is sometimes, also, used with ablative.

(728.) **RULE XXXIV. Ablative with Compound Verbs.**—The ablative is used with some verbs compounded with *a* (*ab*, *abs*), *de*, *e* (*ex*), and *super*.

To be absent from the city.

Cæsar resolved to desist from battle.

Urbe abesse.

Cæsar prælio supersedere statuit.

Rem. The preposition is sometimes repeated.

To depart from life (= to die). | *Exire de vita.*

[For the Ablative Absolute, see 750.]

(729.) Verbs followed by genitive, dative, or ablative, where we use no preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an accusative of the *thing*, though some of them only when the accusative is a neuter pronoun.)*

GENITIVE.			
<i>obtain,</i>	<i>potior (abl.).</i>	<i>hurt,</i>	<i>noceo.</i>
<i>pity,</i>	<i>{ misereor.</i>	<i>indulge,</i>	<i>*indulgeo.</i>
<i>forget,</i>	<i>{ miseresco.</i>	<i>marry,</i>	<i>nubo.</i>
<i>remember,</i>	<i>{ obliviscor (acc.).</i>	<i>obey,</i>	<i>{ pareo.</i>
<i>recollect,</i>	<i>{ memini (acc.).</i>		<i>{ obedio.</i>
<i>require,</i>	<i>{ recordor (acc.).</i>	<i>pardon,</i>	<i>{ obtempero.</i>
<i>need,</i>	<i>{ reminiscor (acc.).</i>	<i>permit,</i>	<i>*ignosco.</i>
	<i>{ egeo } (abl.).</i>	<i>persuade,</i>	<i>*permitto.</i>
		<i>please,</i>	<i>*persuadeo.</i>
		<i>resist,</i>	<i>placeo.</i>
		<i>oppose,</i>	<i>{ resisto,</i>
		<i>rival,</i>	<i>{ repugno.</i>
		<i>satisfy,</i>	<i>semulor (acc.).</i>
		<i>spare,</i>	<i>satisfacio.</i>
		<i>suit,</i>	<i>parco.</i>
		<i>threaten,</i>	<i>convenio.</i>
			<i>{ *minor.</i>
			<i>{ *minitor.</i>
		<i>trust,</i>	<i>{ fido } (abl.).</i>
			<i>{ confido } (abl.).</i>
DATIVE.		ABLATIVE.	
<i>abuse,</i>	<i>{ maledico.</i>	<i>abuse,</i>	<i>abutor.</i>
<i>revile,</i>	<i>*suadeo.</i>	<i>discharge,</i>	<i>{ fungor.</i>
<i>advise,</i>	<i>*respondeo.</i>	<i>perform,</i>	<i>{ fruor.</i>
<i>answer,</i>	<i>credo.</i>	<i>enjoy,</i>	<i>potior (gen.).</i>
<i>believe,</i>	<i>*impero.</i>	<i>obtain,</i>	<i>{ egeo } (gen.).</i>
<i>command,</i>	<i>{ *mando.</i>	<i>require,</i>	<i>{ indigeo } (gen.).</i>
<i>commission,</i>	<i>*gratulor.</i>	<i>need,</i>	<i>utor.</i>
<i>charge,</i>	<i>displaceo.</i>	<i>want,</i>	<i>{ careo.</i>
<i>congratulate,</i>	<i>*præcipio.</i>	<i>use,</i>	
<i>displease,</i>	<i>*invideo.</i>	<i>want,</i>	
<i>direct,</i>	<i>faveo.</i>	<i>am without,</i>	
<i>envy,</i>	<i>adulor (acc.).</i>		
<i>favour,</i>	<i>*do.</i>		
<i>flatter,</i>	<i>{ auxilior.</i>		
<i>give,</i>	<i>{ opitulator.</i>		
<i>help,</i>	<i>{ subvenio.</i>		
<i>aid,</i>	<i>{ succarro.</i>		
<i>assist,</i>	<i>{ medeor.</i>		
<i>succour,</i>			
<i>heal,</i>			
<i>cure,</i>			

III. USE OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 9. Infinitive.

(730.) **RULE XXXV. Infinitive as Subject.**—The infinitive is used as the *subject* of a verb, and is then regarded as a neuter noun.

To love (= loving) is pleasant. | *Jucundum est amare.*

* Arnold.

(731.) RULE XXXVI. *Infinitive as Complementary Object.*

—The infinitive is used (exactly as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain words.

<i>I wish to learn.</i>	<i>Cupio discere.</i>
<i>Worthy to be loved.</i>	<i>Dignus amari.</i>

Rem. 1. The complementary infinitive occurs after verbs denoting to wish, to be able, to be accustomed, ought (*debere*), to hasten, &c.; after the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *audax*, &c.

2. Observe that this construction, which occurs after all verbs in English, can only stand in Latin after those expressing imperfect ideas, as above stated. A purpose cannot be expressed in Latin, as in English, by the simple infinitive; e. g., *he comes to learn* = *venit ut discat*, not *venit discere*.

(732.) *Historical Infinitive.*—In animated narrative the infinitive is sometimes used for the indicative.

<i>The Romans hastened, made ready,</i> &c.	<i>Romani festinare, parare, &c.</i>
--	--

(This construction is quite common in Sallust.)

[For Accusative with Infinitive, see 751.]

§ 10. *Participle.*

(733.) RULE XXXVII. The participle agrees with its noun in gender, case, and number, and the active participle governs the same case as its verb.

<i>The honoured man.</i>	<i>Vir laudatus.</i>
<i>The blooming rose.</i>	<i>Rosa florens.</i>
<i>I saw him reading a book.</i>	<i>Eum legentem librum vidi.</i>

(734.) The participle future active is used to express a purpose (where in English we should use *to*, *in order to*, with the infinitive).

<i>Alexander goes to Jupiter Ammon,</i> in order to inquire concerning his descent.	<i>Alexander ad Jovem Ammonem</i> <i>pergit, consulturus de origine</i> <i>sua.</i>
---	---

(735.) The passive participle is often used to supply the place of a noun.

<i>After Tarentum taken</i> (= after the taking of Tarentum).	<i>Post Tarentum captum.</i>
<i>From the city built</i> (= from the building of the city).	<i>Ab urbe condita.</i>

[For Participle in Subordinate Sentences, see 749.]

§ 11. *Gerund.*

(736.) RULE XXXVIII. As the *infinitive* is used as a noun in the nominative or accusative, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases, and governs the same case as its verb.

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful.</i>	Scribere est utile.
Gen.	The art <i>of writing</i> is useful.	Ars scribendi est utilis.
Dat.	Paper is useful <i>for writing</i> .	Charta scribendo est utilis.
Acc.	{ I learn <i>writing</i> .	Scribere disco.
	{ I learn <i>during writing</i> .	Inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	We learn <i>by writing</i> .	Scribendo discimus.

Rem. 1. With a preposition the gerund in the accusative must be used, *not* the infinitive: *ad* (inter, ob) scribendum, *not ad* (inter, ob) scribere.

2. The general rules for the use of cases of nouns (695–728) apply to the cases of the infinitive and gerund, as above given.

Special Remark. The gerund is *not* used in the *dative* or *accusative* with an active government; *e. g.*, we can say *scribendi epistolas*, *of writing letters*, or *scribendo epistolas*, *by writing letters*, but *not charta utilis est scribendo* (*dat.*) *epistolas*, nor *charta utilis est ad scribendum literas*. In these last cases the *gerundive* must be used (738).

§ 12. *The Gerundive, or Verbal in dus, da, dum.*

(737.) RULE XXXIX. (a) The gerundive in the *nominative neuter* (*dum*) is used with the tenses of *esse*, to denote that an action *should* or *must* be done; and these may govern the case of the verb.

(One) *must write.* | Scribendum est.

(b) The person by whom the action *should* or *must* be done is put in the dative.

<i>I must write.</i>	Scribendum est mihi.
<i>Caius must write.</i>	Scribendum est Caio.
<i>One must use reason.</i>	Ratione utendum est.

(738.) RULE XL. (a) The gerundive is used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express *necessity* or *worthiness*.

<i>I am to be loved; she is to be loved, &c.</i>	Amandus sum; amanda est, &c.
--	------------------------------

(b) When the person is specified, it must be put in the dative.

I must love Tullia.

All things were to be done by Cæsar at one time.

Tullia mihi amanda est.

Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

Rem. a or ab with ablative is sometimes used instead of the dative.

My cause must be managed by the consuls.

A consulibus mea causa suscipienda est.

(739.) **RULE XLI.** The gerundive is used (*to express continued action*) as a verbal adjective, in all genders and cases (but the nominative) *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund governing the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. Of writing a letter.

Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of *scribendi epistolam*.

Dat.—To or for writing letters.

Scribendis epistolis, instead of *scribendo epistolas*.

Acc. To write a letter.

Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of *ad scribendum epistolam*.

Abl. By, &c., writing a letter.

Scribenda epistola, instead of *scribendo epistolam*.

Rem. As observed in (736), the gerundive *must* be used for the dative or accusative of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; *e. g.*, *of learning the true* = *vera discendi*, not *verorum discendorum*; *of hearing this* = *hoc audiendi*, not *hujus audiendi*.

§ 13. Supines.

(740.) **RULE XLII.** (1.) The supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion, to express the *design* of the motion, and governs the same case as its verb.

I come to ask you.

| Venio te rogatum.

(2.) The supine in *u* is used,

(a) With *adjectives*, to show in *what respect* they are used; *e. g.*,

Pleasant as to taste.

| Dulce gustatu.

(b) With the nouns *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, in the same sense : *fas est dictu.*

PART II.

OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(741.) A compound sentence is one made up of two or more simple sentences. The sentences thus combined are either co-ordinate or subordinate.

I. CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 14. *Classes of Co-ordinate Sentences.*

(742.) Co-ordinate sentences are united together, but yet *independent* of each other :* co-ordination is either,

- (a) *Copulative* ; e. g., His father has abandoned him, and his friends have deserted him, *and* the son remains.
- (b) *Disjunctive* ; e. g., Either his father has abandoned, *or* his friends have deserted him.
- (c) *Adversative* ; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends have not.
- (d) *Causal* ; e. g., His friends will abandon him, *for* his father has done so.
- (e) *Conclusive* ; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

II. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 15. *Classes of Subordinate Sentences.*

(743.) Subordinate sentences are so united to others (called *principal sentences*) as to be *dependent* upon them.

The messenger, <i>who was sent</i> , an-	Nuntius, qui missus est, nun-
nounced.	tiavit.

Here *the messenger announced* is the principal sentence ; *who was sent*, the subordinate sentence.*

(744.) Subordinate sentences are of five classes :

- A. *Participial sentences.*
- B. *Accusative with infinitive.*
- C. *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time.
- D. *Relative sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a relative word.
- E. *Interrogative sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by an interrogative word.

We shall treat these in order, premising a few remarks upon the use of the moods and tenses, which must be thoroughly understood.

§ 16. *The Moods.*

(745.) The verb expresses affirmation. The moods of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

* It must be obvious that *all co-ordinate sentences* are, for grammatical purposes, *principal sentences*. Moreover, the doctrines and rules applied to *simple sentences* (Part I.) are applicable to all *principal sentences* : it is only in *subordinate sentences* that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain as accurate a knowledge as possible of the various kinds of subordinate sentences, and the different modes of affirmation which they express, as it is upon these that their syntax depends.

1. By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed ; e. g., *I write, I did not write.**
2. By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely* ; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
3. By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction or request* ; e. g., *write.*

(746.) It must be obvious that in principal sentences the indicative mood chiefly occurs, and in subordinate sentences the subjunctive, as affirmations of fact are made more frequently in the former than in the latter. But,

- (a) The subjunctive is used (of course), even in principal sentences, when the affirmation is doubtful, contingent, or indefinite (745, 2).
- (b) The indicative is used, even in subordinate sentences, when the affirmation is positive.

True friendships are everlasting, because nature cannot be changed.	Veræ amicitiae sempiternæ sunt, quia natura mutari non potest.
--	---

§ 17. The Tenses.

(a) DIVISION.

(747.) The tenses are either primary or historical (647, R. 3).

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(a) Primary,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} amat, \\ he\ loves. \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} amabit, \\ he\ will\ love. \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} amavit, \\ he\ has\ loved. \end{array} \right.$
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) Historical,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} amabat, \\ he\ was\ loving. \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} amaverat, \\ he\ had\ loved. \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} amavit, \\ he\ loved. \end{array} \right.$

(b) SUCCESSION OF TENSES.

(748.) RULE XLIII. If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary tense in the subordinate ; if an historical tense in the principal, an historical in the subordinate.

Principal.	Subordinate.	Principal.	Subordinate.
<i>I know</i>	<i>what you are doing.</i>	<i>Scio,</i>	<i>quid agas.</i>
<i>I was knowing</i>	<i>what you were doing.</i>	<i>Sciebam,</i>	<i>quid ageres.</i>
<i>I have learned</i>	<i>what you are doing.</i>	<i>Cognovi,</i>	<i>quid agas.</i>
<i>I learned</i>	<i>what you were doing.</i>	<i>Cognovi,</i>	<i>quid ageres</i>

(A.) § 18. Participial Sentences.

[The participle is used to abridge discourse, instead of a relative, adverb, or conjunction with a verb. Thus (1), *Tarquin, when he was expelled*

* Of course the *action* may be either positive or negative, without affecting the *affirmation*.

from Rome = Tarquin, expelled from Rome. (2) *Cæsar, when the work was finished*, departed = Cæsar, the work having been finished, departed

These are abridged subordinate sentences, (1) being called the *conjunctive participial construction*, and (2) the *ablative absolute*.]

(749.) *Conjunctive Participial Construction*.—The participle in a subordinate sentence *which has for its subject the subject or object of the principal sentence*, agrees with this last in gender, number, and case.

Aristides, <i>when he was expelled from his country</i> , fled to Lacedæmon.	Aristides, patria pulsus, Lacedæmonem fugit.
--	--

☞ Observe, in this example, that Aristides is the subject of both the principal and the subordinate sentence, and pulsus agrees with Aristides in gender, number, and case. In English such sentences are generally expressed by an adverb or conjunction with a verb.

(750.) *RULE XLIV. Ablative Absolute*.—If the subordinate sentence contains a noun and participle *independent of the subject of the leading sentence*, both noun and participle are placed in the ablative. (This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.	Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit.
All things having been provided, they appoint a day.	Omnibus rebus comparatis, diem dicunt.

Rem. Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are often used in the *ablative absolute* without a participle.

Under the guidance of Nature (= Nature being guide).	Natura duce.
In the consulship of Manlius.	Manlio consule.

(B.) § 19. *Accusative with Infinitive*.

(751.) *RULE XLV*. Many subordinate sentences, which in English are introduced by the conjunction *that* (especially after verbs of *thinking, saying, knowing, &c.*), are expressed in Latin by the *accusative with the infinitive*.

They said <i>that they did not fear the enemy</i> .	Dicebant non se hostem vereri.
He knows <i>that Cicero is eloquent</i> .	Scit Ciceronem esse eloquentem.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *subject* of the sentence thus subordinated is put in the accusative, and the *predicate* in the infinitive. If the predicate contain an adjective, it must agree with the subject.

I perceive *that the water is cold.* | Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

2. The accusative with infinitive occurs chiefly,

(a) After *verba sentiendi et dicendi* (*thinking, feeling, perceiving, knowing, saying, announcing, willing, forbidding, &c.*).

(b) After such expressions as *apparet* (*it is evident*), *constat* (*it is known*), *opus est*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, *justum est* (*it is necessary, right, just, &c.*). In this case the accusative with infinitive becomes the *subject* of the entire sentence.

It is known to all *that the Romans were very brave.* | Constat inter omnes Romanos fuisse fortissimos.

~~It~~ Oportet and necesse est may take the subjunctive, instead of the accusative with infinitive.

We ought (= it behooves us) *to practice virtue.* | Oportet nos virtuti studere; or
Virtuti studeamus oportet.

(C.) § 20. *Conjunctive Sentences.*

Relation of Conjunctions to the Moods.

(752.) From what has been said (745, 746), it is obvious, that as the *moods* express the varieties of affirmation, and as the *conjunctions* are used to indicate different relations of thought (as *positive, conditional, causal, &c.*), there must be a close connexion between the use of the conjunctions and that of the moods. It must be borne in mind, however, that the *nature of the affirmation* (except, perhaps, in purely idiomatic expressions) decides both the mood and the conjunction that shall be used. It cannot properly be said, therefore, that the conjunctions *govern* the moods; but, for convenience' sake, we treat them together.

GENERAL RULE.

(753.) The subjunctive is used in all subordinate sentences in which affirmation is expressed as *dependent* upon some previous affirmation, either as *purpose, aim, consequence, condition, or imaginary comparison.*

SPECIAL RULES.

1. *Final Conjunctions, ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.*

(754.) RULE XLVI. The subjunctive is used in sentences expressing a *purpose* or a *consequence*, introduced by the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.*

D D

314 SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

1. Ut, ne, expressing purpose.

I did not write that <i>in order to</i> <i>instruct you.</i>	Ea non ut te instituerem scripsi.
I beseech you <i>not to do this.</i>	Te obsecro ne hoc facias.

2. Ut, expressing consequence.

The soldiers went with <i>such vio-</i> <i>lence that the enemy betook</i> <i>themselves to flight.</i>	Eo impetu milites ierunt, ut hostes se fugæ mandarent.
---	---

(3.) Quo is used to express a purpose, instead of ut, especially when a comparative enters into the sentence.

Cæsar erects forts, <i>that he may</i> <i>the more easily keep off the</i> <i>Helvetians.</i>	Cæsar castella communit, quo fa- cilis Helvetios prohibere pos- sit.
---	--

(4.) Quin is used in the sense of "but that" (*as not, &c.*) after negative sentences, and after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.

<i>There is no one but thinks.</i>	Nemo est quin putet.
<i>It is not doubtful but that the</i> <i>soldiers will fight bravely.</i>	Non dubium est quin milites for- titer pugnaturi sint.

(5.) Quominus is used (in preference to ne) after verbs of *hinder-*
ing, preventing, standing in the way of, &c. (It can generally be
rendered in English by "of" or "from" with a participle.)

Nothing hinders him <i>from doing</i> <i>this.</i>	Nihil impedit quominus hoc fa- ciat.
---	---

2. Conditional Conjunctions, si, nisi, dum, dummodo, modo.

(755.) RULE XLVII. Conditional conjunctions take the in-
dicative if the condition is expressed as *real* or *certain*; the
subjunctive, where it is not.

<i>If he has any money, he will give</i> <i>it (it is uncertain whether he</i> <i>has any).</i>	Si pecuniam habeat, dabit.
---	----------------------------

Rem. 1. If the condition is represented as *impossible* or *unreal*, (1) the
imperfect subjunctive must be used for present or future time;
(2) the *pluperfect* subjunctive for past time.

(1) <i>If he had any money, he would</i> <i>give it (but he has none).</i>	Si pecuniam haberet, daret.
(2) <i>If he had had any money, he</i> <i>would have given it.</i>	Si pecuniam habuisset, dedis- set.

Rem. 2. As dum, dummodo, modo, in the sense of *provided*
that, can never express a *real*, existing condition, they *always*
take the subjunctive.

3. *Concessive Conjunctions* (683, 5).

(756.) The *concessive conjunctions* take the indicative when they introduce a definite statement of fact, but the subjunctive when something is expressed as possible, not actual. *Etsi*, *quamquam*, and *tametsi* are used principally in the *former* sense; in the *latter*, *etiamsi* more commonly, and *licet* and *quamvis** nearly always. Hence,

RULE XLVIII. *Licet* and *quamvis* (*although*) are always followed by the subjunctive; *etiamsi*, generally.

Though truth should obtain no defender.

Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat.

The wise man endures pain patiently, *even though it be grievous.*

Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat, quamvis acerbus sit.

Rem. The comparative conjunctions, when used concessively, *velut*, *quasi*, *acsi*, *tanquamsi*, &c. (meaning *as if*, *as though*), always take the subjunctive, for the reason given (756) for *licet* and *quamvis*.

Why do I use witnesses, *as though the matter were doubtful?*

Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit?

4. *Temporal Conjunctions.*

(757.) *Temporal conjunctions* (*when*, *after that*, *as soon as*, *just as*, &c.) of course generally take the *indicative*.

After Caesar drew up the line of battle.

Postquam Cæsar aciem instruxit.

Every animal, as soon as it is born.

Omne animal, simulac ortum est.

SPECIAL REMARKS.

(A.) *Quum* has two uses: *temporal* and *causal*.

(a) *Temporal.*

1. As a *pure particle of time*, *quum* takes the *indicative*.
2. In *historical narrative* (especially where the principal clause has the *indicative perfect*) *quum temporal* is followed by the *subjunctive* imperfect or pluperfect.

When Caesar had conquered Pompey, he crossed over into Italy.

Cæsar, quum Pompeium vicisset, in Italiam trajecit.

[In many such cases, the action introduced by *when* is in some sense the *cause* of the action in the principal sentence.]

* *Quamvis* is used by the later writers in the sense of *quamquam*, with the *indicative*.

- (b) *Quum* causal, expressing the relation of *cause* and *effect* (*since, because, although*), obviously requires the *subjunctive*.

Since these things are so. | *Quæ cum ita sint.*

Hence,

RULE XLIX. *Quum* causal is always followed by the *subjunctive*; and *quum* temporal by the imperfect or pluperfect *subjunctive*, when the aorist perfect indicative is used in the principal sentence.

(B.) *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used,

1. To express simple *priority* of one action to another, and here the *indicative* is obviously required.

All these things were done before | *Hæc omnia ante facta sunt*
Verres touched Italy. | *quam Verres Italiam attigit.*

2. To express a *connexion* between one action and another, and here the *subjunctive* is obviously required.

Before Cæsar attempted anything, | *Cæsar, priusquam quidquam*
he orders Divitiacus to be sum- | *conaretur, Divitiacum ad se*
moned. | *vocari jubet.*

3. To introduce a *general* or *indefinite* statement, requiring, of course, the *subjunctive*.

The tempest threatens before it | *Tempestas minatur, antequam*
rises. | *surgat.*

(C.) *Dum, donec, quoad*, in the sense of *until*, take the *subjunctive* when the affirmation is expressed as *possible* or *future*.

He was unwilling to leave the | *Dum Milo veniret, locum relin-*
spot until Milo came. | *quere noluit.*

[For interrogatives, see § 22.]

(D.) § 21. *Relative Sentences.*

(758.) In the compound sentence, "the messenger, *who was sent*, announced," the clause "the messenger announced" is the principal sentence; and the clause "*who was sent*" the relative sentence. The word "messenger" is the *antecedent* of the relative "*who*."

1. *Agreement.*

(759.) **RULE L.** The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its *case* depends upon the construction of the relative sentence.

The bridge which was at Geneva | *Pontem, qui erat ad Genevæ,*
he orders to be cut down. | *jubet rescindi.*

This ~~was~~ a kind of fighting in | Genus hoc erat pugna, quod Ger-
which the Germans had exer- | mani se exercuerant.
cised themselves.

Rem. The verb in the relative sentence takes the *person* of the ante-
cedent.

We who write.

| Nos qui scribimus.

2. The Moods in Relative Sentences.

(760.) (a) The *indicative* mood occurs in the relative sentence only when it states a fact distinctly, with reference to a particular subject.

The messenger who was sent. | Nuntius qui missus est.

(b) But *qui* is used in Latin very commonly (1) to avoid the use of a conjunction, and (2) to introduce indefinite statements, or the words or opinions of another; and in such cases is always followed by the subjunctive.

(761.) RULE LI. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences expressing the *purpose*, *result*, or *ground* of the principal sentence.

1. Purpose (*qui* = *ut* with demonstrative).

They sent ambassadors to sue for | Miserunt legatos, qui pacem pet-
(= *who should sue for*) peace. | erent (= *ut* si pacem peterent).

2. Result (*qui* = *ut* after *is*, *tam*, *talis*, *dignus*, *ita*, &c.).

I am not the man to do this (= I | Non is sum qui hoc faciam.
am not such who can do).

Pollio is worthy of our love (= | Dignus est Pollio, quem diliga-
worthy, whom we may love). | mus.

3. Ground or cause (*qui* = *cur* or *quod*).

You err, who think (= *because you* | Erras qui censes—
think)—

Hannibal did wrong in wintering | Male fecit Hannibal qui Capua
(= *because he wintered*) at Ca- | hiemavit.
puar

(762.) RULE LII. The subjunctive is used in relative sentences containing *indefinite statements*, especially after the words *there are*, *there can be found*, *there is no one*, &c.

There are those who say.

| Sunt qui dicant.

I have nothing whereby to accuse | Nihil habeo quod inconvictam
(= *no reason to blame*) old age | nequitiam.

Rem. When the sentence introduced by the relative expresses the

sentiments of another (rather than of the writer), the subjunctive is used.

<i>The Helvetians determined to get together those things which (they thought) belonged to marching (were necessary for setting out).</i>	<i>Helvetii constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare.</i>
---	--

§ 22. Interrogative Sentences.

1. Questions.

(763.) Questions are often expressed in English without any interrogative word; *e. g.*, *Is Caius writing?* but in the Latin, almost invariably, an interrogative word is used. These are either (a) interrogative particles, (b) interrogative pronouns, or (c) interrogative adverbs or conjunctions.

(a) *Interrogative Particles*: *ne, nonne, num, utrum, an.*

(1.) *Ne* simply asks for information.

<i>Is Caius writing?</i>	<i>Scribitne Caius?</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------

(2.) *Nonne* expects the answer *YES*.

<i>Do you not think the wise man happy?</i>	<i>Nonne putas sapientem beatum esse?</i>
---	---

(3.) *Num* expects the answer *NO*.

<i>Do you think the fool happy?</i>	<i>Num putas stultum esse beatum?</i>
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

(4.) *Utrum* is used in *double* questions, with *an* (*whether—or*).

<i>(Whether) is that your fault or ours?</i>	<i>Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est?</i>
--	---

(b) *Interrogative Pronouns*: *quis, qui, qualis, quantus, ecquis, &c.*

<i>Who taught Epaminondas music? &c.</i>	<i>Quis Epaminondam musicam docuit?</i>
--	---

(c) *Interrogative Adverbs or Conjunctions*: *quare, cur, quando, ubi, quomodo, &c.*

(764.) Questions are either *direct* or *indirect*: *direct*, when they are not dependent on any word or sentence going before; *e. g.*, *Is Caius writing?* *Indirect*, when they are so dependent; *e. g.*, *Tell me if Caius is writing.*

2. Use of the Moods in Questions.

(a) *Direct.*

(765.) In *direct* questions the *indicative* is used when the question is put *positively*, and the *subjunctive* when it is put *doubtfully*; *e. g.*

(Positive.) <i>What are you doing?</i>	<i>Quid agis? (Indic.)</i>
--	----------------------------

(Doubtful.) <i>What can we do?</i>	<i>Quid agamus?</i>
------------------------------------	---------------------

(b) *Indirect.*

(766.) RULE LIII. In *indirect* questions the *subjunctive* is always used.

I do not know <i>what</i> book you are reading.	Nescio quem librum legas.
Tell me <i>what</i> you are doing.	Dic, quid agas.

§ 23. *Oratio Obliqua.*1. *Nature of Oratio Obliqua.*

(767.) When any one relates the words or opinions of another, he may do it in two ways :

- (a) He may represent him as speaking in the *first person*, and give his words precisely as they were uttered ; e. g., Ariovistus said, "*I have crossed the Rhine*"—Ariovistus dixit, Rhenum transii. This is called *oratio recta*, *direct discourse*.
- (b) He may state the substance of what the speaker said in narrative form ; e. g., Ariovistus said *that he had crossed the Rhine*—Ariovistus dixit se Rhenum transisse. This is called *oratio obliqua*, *indirect discourse*.

2. *The Moods in the Oratio Obliqua.*

(768.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate* ; e. g., Ariovistus said that he would not wage war on the Æduans if they paid the tribute yearly. Here the sentence *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans* is a principal sentence, and *if they paid the tribute yearly* is a subordinate sentence.

(769.) RULE LIV. (a) *Principal sentences* in the *oratio obliqua* are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive ; e. g., Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum.

Rem. If the principal sentence contains a *command* or *wish*, it is expressed by the *subjunctive* ; e. g.,

The leader said <i>that the troops should consult their own safety</i> .	Dux dixit, milites suæ salutis consulere.
--	---

(b) *Subordinate sentences* in *oratio obliqua* always take the *subjunctive* ; e. g., Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum, si stipendium quotannis penderent (*if they paid the tribute yearly*).

APPENDICES.

APPENDIX I.

OF PROSODY.

§ 1. Quantity.

[THE rules of quantity in Lesson XLII. should be reviewed, and the following additional rules learned.]

1. Penults.

(770.) DISSYLLABIC SUPINES lengthen the penult; *e. g.*, *visum*.

Rem. The following are short, viz.:

Datum, ratum, satum, statum, itum,
Citum, litum, situm, rutum, quitum.

(771.) REDUPLICATED PERFECTS shorten both penult and antepenult, *e. g.*, *cecidi, didici*.

Rem. Penult is long in *cecidi* (*cædère*) and *pæpædi* (*pædère*).

(772.) IN ADJECTIVE PENULTS observe the following:

1. *Short Penults*: -acus, -icus, -idus, -imus; *e. g.*, *Ægyptiacus, modicus, cupidus, legitimus*.

Exceptions.—*Meracus, opacus, amicus, apricus, anticus, posticus, mendicus, umbilicus, fidus, infidus, bimus, trimus* (of two, three years, &c.), *matrimus, opimus, patrimus, imus, primus*.

2. *Long Penults*: -alis, -anus, -idus, -itus, with all before -rus, -vus, -sus; *e. g.*, *dotalis, montanus, percradus, astutus, avarus, sincerus, delirus, decorus, octavus, sestivus, famosus*.

Exc.—*Infæri, postæri, barbarus, opiparus*.

3. *Penults sometimes long, sometimes short*: -ilis, -inus.

(a) -ilis, from verbs, is short; from nouns, long; *e. g.*, *facilis* (short); *civilis* (long). *Exilis, subtilis*, and the names of months (*Aprilis, &c.*), are long.

(b) -inus, from nouns denoting time or material, is short; from other words, long; *e. g.*, *crastinus, elephantinus* (short); *caninus, Latinus* (long).

2. Compound Words.

(773.) Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words; *e. g.*, *per+lægo* = *perlægo*; *per+lægi* = *perlægi*.

Rem. 1. A change of vowels does not affect the rule; e+lēgo = eligo.

2. Dejéro, pejéro (járo); maledícus, &c. (díco); cognítum, agnítum (nótum), are short, though the simple words are long.

(774.) a, ē, dē, dī, prō, sē, in composition are long, but rē is short.

Exc.—Dírimo, dísertus, réfert. Pro is short in Greek words, and in the compounds of cello, fanum, fari, fateor, festus, fugio, fundo, nepos, neptis, torvus; also in próficiscor. In prōpago, prōpino, it is doubtful.*

(775.) If the first part of a compound word end in a, it is generally long; if in e, i, or u, generally short; e. g., trāduco, trādo (contracted from trans); tollēcati, agrícōla, quadrūpes.

§ 2. Rhythm, Arsis, Thesis, Verse, Feet.

(776.) (a) By *Rhythm* we mean a regular alternation of elevations (stress) and depressions of the voice. In poetry this alternation follows certain fixed laws.

(b) The effort of voice by which stress is laid upon one syllable is called *Ictus*, or rhythmical accent. A syllable so raised by the ictus stands in the *Arsis*. The syllable or syllables on which the voice rests or sinks are said to be in the *Thesis*.

(c) A *Foot* is formed by the union of arsis and thesis. A combination of feet forms a *Verse*.

Thus, in the line *vī sērē mōntēs*, the ictus falls on the syllables marked with the accent; *vī* and *mōn*, therefore, are in the arsis, *sērē* and *tēs* in the thesis. The union of arsis and thesis in *vīsērē* forms a foot; so also in *mōntēs*. The combination of these two feet forms the verse

Vīsērē mōntēs.

(d) A *Dactyl* is a foot composed of one long syllable (arsis) and two short syllables (thesis); e. g., *vīsērē*: a *Spondee* of two long (arsis and thesis); e. g., *mōntēs*.

§ 3. Scanning.

(777.) *SCANNING* is the measuring of a verse into the feet which compose it. Observe the following points in scanning:

1. *Synalepha* cuts off a vowel at the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or h; e. g., instead of *reginē ad*, we read *regin' ad*; instead of *atque hinc*, *atqu' hinc*.
2. *Ecthiptis* cuts off an *u* with the vowel before it at the end of a word

* The following lines contain the exceptions:

At rape quē fundo, fugio, neptisque, neposque,
Et cello, fari, fateor, fanumque, festamque;
Atque procus, proficiscor, cumque propheta, profecto.

when the next begins with a vowel; e. g., instead of *ignōtum est*, we read *ignōt' est*.

3. The last syllable of a word ending with a consonant is always long if the next word begins with a consonant; e. g., *manibūs tremor*; here *būs* (naturally short) is made long.
4. *Synæresis* contracts two syllables into one; e. g., *aurēā* into *aurēā* (pronounced *aurya*).
5. *Dieresis* divides one syllable into two; e. g., *pictæ*, *pictālī*

§ 4. Hexameter Verses.

(778.) (a) **HEXAMETER** verse is so called because it has *six measures*, of a foot each. The first *four* feet may be either dactyls or spondees; the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, the *sixth* a spondee.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Séd fugit	Intérē:	á fugit	irrēpā-	rābīlē	tēmpūs.
Intēm-	dtēm Rē-	gīnā jū-	bēs rēnō-	vāre dō-	lōrēm.

Rem. 1. Sometimes a spondee is found in the 5th place, especially when anything grave or solemn is expressed. The line is then called *spondaic*.

2. The final syllable of a verse is always reckoned *long*; e. g., *rem*, in *dolorem*.

(b) *Cæsura* is the separation, by the end of a word, of syllables entering into a foot. If the feet of a verse be marked off like bars in music, whenever a bar falls in the middle of a word there is a *cæsura*; e. g., the following hexameter has *five* *cæsuras*:

Illē la- | tūs nīvē- | ūm mōl- | lī fūl- | tūs, hŷā- | cīnthō.

(c) The *cæsural pause* in hexameter verse is a pause or rest of the voice on a *cæsural* syllable, designed to give harmony to the entire verse.

- (1.) The most approved *cæsural* pause (*the heroic*) falls on the arsis of the *third* foot, as in the following examples:

Séd fugit	Intérē-	a	fugit	irrēpā	rābīlē	tēmpūs.
Illē lā-	tūs nīvē	ūm	mōl-	lī fūl	tūs hŷā-	cīnthō.

- (2.) Next in excellence is the *cæsural* pause in the thesis of the *third* foot, or in the arsis of the *fourth*. Occurring in other places, it mars the harmony of the verse.

E 2

APPENDIX II.

(779.)

GREEK NOUNS.

1st Decl.	Ænē-as,	æ,	æ,	am (æn),	ā, ā.	
	Anachis-as,	æ,	æ,	æn,	ā, ā.	Voc. sometimes ā and ā.
	Pēnēlōp-ē,	ēæ,	æ,	ēn,	ē, ē.	
2d Decl.	Del-ōs,	i,	o,	um, or ōn,	e, o.	
	Orph-eūs,	eī,	eo,	eum, or ēā,	ēū eo.	
	(or, N. eūs,	G. eos,	D. ēi (eī),	Acc. ēā	poetical.)	
	Ath-ōs,	ō,	ō,	ōn, or ō,	ōs, ō.	(In Greek, ως.)
3d Decl.	Pōēs-is,	is,	{ i, im, } is, i		es, eōn (ibus not found).	
		(eos),	{ (in), }			
	Nerē-is,					
	G. Nerēid-is,	{ i, em,	{ (Nerēī), ē.		es, um, ibus, es. }	
		(ōs),	{ (ā), }		(ās.) }	
	Pericl-ēs,	is,	{ i, em,	{ es, }		
		i,	{ ea,	{ e, }		e.
3d Decl.	Did-ō,	ūs,	ō,	ō,	ō.	(also, ōnis, &c.)

Obs. Neuters in *a*, gen. *ātis*, have dat. plur. in *ātis*; thus: *poēma*, dat. plur. *poēmātis*, not *poēmatibus*.

(780.)

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMS

(OR NAMES FROM A FATHER OR ANCESTOR).

	Ænēas,	Anchises,	Tyndārus,	Theseus,	Atlas (antis).
Masc.	Ænēādes,	Anchisiādes,	Tyndarīdes,	Theseīdes,*	Atlantiādes,
					Atlantiādes.
Fem.	(Ænēis),	Anchisiās,	Tyndārīs,	Theseīs,	Atlantiās,
					Atlantiās.

(781.)

EXAMPLES OF NAMES

(DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY).

Masc.	Persa,	Cres,	Tros,	Thrax,	Laco (Lacon),	Phœnix.
Fem.	Persis,	Cressa,	Troas,	Threissa,	Lacena,	Phænissa.
		Cretis,		Thressa.		
Romanus	Clusinus	Atheniensis	Abderitēs (fem.,	Abderitis).		
(Roman).	(of Clusium).	(an Athenian).	(of Abdera).			
	Milesius		Arpinas			
	(of Miletus).		(of Arpinum).			

* For *Theseīdes*. Hence *ides* comes from nom. in *eus*.


APPENDIX III.

(782.)

THE CALENDAR.

(1.) THE Roman months had the same number of days as ours, but were differently divided.

1. The *Kalends* were the 1st day of the month.
2. The *Nones* " 5th or 7th day of the month.
3. The *Ides* " 13th or 15th day of the month.

 We make in *March, July, October, May,*
The *Nones* the *seventh*, the *Ides* the *fifteenth* day.

In all the other months the 5th and 13th were used.

(2.) The names of the months are used as adjectives agreeing with *Kalendæ, Nones, and Idus.*

The 1st of January.

The 5th of June.

The 13th of September.

Kalendis Januariis.

Nonis Juniis.

Idibus Septembribus.

(3.) (a) Instead of beginning at the 1st of the month and numbering the days regularly 2d, 3d, &c., as we do, the Romans counted them backward from the *Kalends, Nones, and Ides.* Thus, the 2d of January was called *the 4th day before the Nones of January*, *quarto (die ante) Nonas Januarias*; the 3d, *tertio Nonas*; the 4th, *pridie Nonas*; the 5th, *Nonis.*

(b) From the above cases it will be seen that the day with which the reckoning commences is included (except *pridie*), i. e., the 2d day before the *Nones* is *tertio Nonas*; the 3d day before, *quarto Nonas*, &c.

The 13th of October.

The 3d of June.

Tertio (die ante) Idus Octobres.

Tertio (die ante) Nonas Junias.

(c) Special care must be taken, in designating any day between the *Ides* of one month and the *Kalends* of another, to ensure correctness. Thus, III. (die ante) *Kalend. Januar.* will be December 30; but III. *Kal. Maias* = 29th April, inasmuch as December has 31 days and April but 30. So III. *Kal. Martias* = 27th February.

(4.) The following table, exhibiting the correspondence between the Roman calendar and ours, can now be readily understood :

The Days of our Months.	March, May, July, and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, September, and November (have 30 days).	February (has 28, and in Leap-years 29 days).
1.	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2.	VI.	IV. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante
3.	V. } ante	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.
4.	IV. } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.
7.	Nonis.	VII.	VII.	VII.
8.	VIII.	VI. } ante	VI. } ante	VI. } ante
9.	VII.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.
10.	VI. } ante	IV.	IV.	IV.
11.	V. } Idus.	III.	III.	III.
12.	IV.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX.	XVIII.	XVI.
15.	Idibus.	XVIII.	XVII.	XV.
16.	XVII.	XVII.	XVI.	XIV.
17.	XVI.	XVI.	XV.	XIII.
18.	XV.	XV.	XIV.	XII.
19.	XIV.	XIV.	XIII.	XI.
20.	XIII.	XIII.	XII.	X.
21.	XII.	XII.	XI.	IX.
22.	XI.	XI.	X.	VIII.
23.	X.	X.	IX.	VII.
24.	IX.	IX.	VIII.	VI.
25.	VIII.	VIII.	VII.	V.
26.	VII.	VII.	VI.	IV.
27.	VI.	VI.	V.	III.
28.	V.	V.	IV.	Prid. Kalendas
29.	IV.	IV.	III.	Martias.
30.	III.	III.	Prid. Kalendas	
31.	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	(of the following month).	

(5.) The 5th day before the Kalends of April (for instance) may be expressed in three ways :

(a) Die quinto ante Kalendas Aprilis.

(b) Quinto Kalendas Aprilis.

(c) Ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis; or, abbreviated, a. d. V. Kal. Apr.

APPENDIX IV.

ABBREVIATIONS.

(783.) THE following abbreviations of words occur in Latin authors :

(a)

NAMES.

A. Aulus.	M'. Manius.	Sept. Septimius.
Ap. Appius.	M. Marcus.	Serv. Servius.
C. Caius.	Mam. Mamercus.	Sex. Sextus.
Cl. Claudius.	M. T. C. Marcus Tulli-	Sp. Spurius.
Cn. Cnæus.	us Cicero.	T. Titus.
D. Decimus.	N. Numerius.	Ti. or } Tiberius.
D. Decius.	P. Publius.	Tib. }
L. Lucius.	Q. Quintus.	Tull. Tullius.

(b)

PUBLIC EXPRESSIONS.

Æd. Ædilia.	Id. Idus.	Pr. Prætor.
Aug. Augustus.	Imp. Imperator.	Præf. Præfectus.
Cal. or } Kalendæ.	Impp. Imperatores.	Pont. Max. Pontifex
Kal. }	Non. Nonæ.	Maximus.
Cos. Consul.	O. M. Optimus Maxi-	Resp. Respublica.
Coss. Consules.	mus.	S. Senatus.
D. Divus.	P. C. Patres Con-	S. C. Senatus consul-
Des. Designatus.	scripti.	tum.
Eq. Rom. Eques Ro-	Pl. Plebis.	S. P. Q. R. Senatus po-
manus.	Pop. Populus.	pulusque Rom.
F. Filius.	P. R. Populus Rom.	Tr. Tribunus.

(c)

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS.

A. Anno.	S. Salutem.
A. C. Anno currente.	S. P. D. Salutem dicit plurimam.
A. pr. Anno præterito.	c. caput.
A. M. Anno mundi.	cf. confer.
A. Chr. Anno Christi.	e. g. exempli gratia.
A. D. Anno Domini.	i. e. id est.
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditæ.	l. c. loco citato.
D. D. Dono dedit.	pag. m. pagina mea.
D. D. D. Dono dedit dicavit.	q. d. quasi dicat.
D. D. C. q. Dedit dicavit consecra-	q. l. quantum libet.
vitque.	q. s. quantum sufficit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	scilicet.
L. S. Loco sigilli.	seq. sequens.
M. S. Manuscriptus.	v. versus.
P. S. Postscriptum.	v. g. verbi gratia.
Q. D. B. V. Quod Deus bene vertat.	videlicet.
S. V. B. E. E. V. Si vales bene est	vid.
ego valeo.	

WORD-BUILDING
AND
READING LESSONS.

WORD-BUILDING.

(784.) 1. THE *generic* meaning of a word is contained in its *root*; the *specific* meaning is generally given by its *ending*. Thus, in all the words *am-o* (*I love*), *am-or* (*love*), *am-ator* (*a lover*), *am-icus* (*friend*), we find the same generic idea (*love*) expressed by the root *am*; while the specific meanings, *I love* (verb), *love* (noun), *lover* (noun), *friend* (adjective noun), are given by the endings *o*, *or*, *ator*, *icus*, respectively.

2. The meanings of words are farther modified by certain *prefixes*; e. g., *ire* (*to go*), *amb-ire* (*to go round*).

3. Again, words may be compounded with each other, and form new words; e. g., with *agr-* (the stem of *ager*, *field*), and *col-* (the stem of *colère*, *to till*), we form *agricol-a*, *a tiller of the field* = *a farmer*.

Thus there are three modes of forming words: by *suffixes*, *prefixes*, and *composition*. We treat them in order.

(I.) WORD-BUILDING BY SUFFIXES.

(A.) Nouns.

(785.) First Declension.

1. The ending *-a*, suffixed to verb-stems, expresses an *agent* or *doer*.

scrib-a, *writer*, from *scrib-ère*, *to write*.
perfüg-a, *deserter*, from *perfüg-ère*, *to desert*.

2. *-ia*, *-itia*, with adjective-stems, a *disposition* or *condition*.

ignav-ia, *cowardice*, from *ignav-us*, *cowardly*.
prudent-ia, *prudence*, from *pruden(t)-a*, *prudent*.
trist-itia, *sadness*, from *trist-is*, *sad*.
victor-ia, *victory*, from *vict-or*, *victorious*.

3. *-ûra*, with supine-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pict-ura, *painting*; *pingere* (*pict-*), *to paint*.
præfect-ura, *prefectship*; *præficere* (*præfect-*), *to place over*.

(786.) Second Declension.

1. *-us*, *-ius*, with verb-stems, form nouns denoting the *agent* or the *action* of the verb.

<i>serv-us</i> ,	<i>slave</i> ;	<i>serv-ire</i> ,	<i>to serve</i> .
<i>fluv-ius</i> ,	<i>river</i> ;	<i>flu(v)-ère</i> ,	<i>to flow</i> .
<i>coqu-us</i> ,	<i>cook</i> ;	<i>coqu-ère</i> ,	<i>to cook</i> .
<i>lud-us</i> ,	<i>sport</i> ;	<i>lud-ère</i> ,	<i>to play</i> .

2. -um, -ium, with verb-stems, gives a *result* of the action of the verb.

jug-um,	yoke,	jug-ĕre,	to join.
vad-um,	ford;	vad-ĕre,	to go.
incend-ium,	fire;	incend-ĕre,	to burn.

3. -ium, with noun-stems, (a) *an office*, or (b) *an assemblage of men* exercising an office or function.

(a) sacerdot-ium,	office of sacerdos.
minister-ium,	office of minister.
(b) colleg-ium,	assemblage of collegæ.
conviv-ium,	assemblage of convivæ.

4. -mentum, with verb-stems, the *means* of doing what the verb expresses.

teg-u-mentum,	covering;	teg-ĕre,	to cover.
adju-mentum,	aid;	adjuv-ĕre,	to assist.

5. -ulum, -bulum, -culum, with verb-stems, *means* or *instrument*.

jac-ulum,	javelin;	jac-ĕre,	to hurl.
venab-ulum,	hunting-spear;	ven-āri,	to hunt.
vehi-culum,	carriage;	veh-ĕre,	to carry.

Rem. culum also sometimes—the *place where*; e.g., cœna-culum, cubi-culum.

6. -crum, -strum, with verb-stems, *place* or *thing prepared* for any purpose.

lava-crum,	bath;	lav-are,	to wash.
claus-trum,	lock;	claud-ĕre,	to shut.

(787.) *Diminutives of First and Second Declensions.*

lus, -la, -lum, with noun-stems, form diminutive nouns, of masculine, feminine, and neuter genders.

- (a) Connecting vowels *i, o, u*, the latter sometimes with *e*.

fili-o-lus, fili-o-la, *little son, daughter*—(filius); frater-culus (frater); opus-culum (opus).

- (b) Sometimes *l* is doubled: lap-illus (lapis); codic-illus (codex, codicis); sac-ellum (sacrum).

(788.) *Third Declension.*

1. -tās, -tūs (with or without *i* as connecting vowel), form, with adjective-stems, abstract nouns denoting *quality*, &c.

bon-i-tas,	goodness;	bon-us,	good.
hones-tas,	honour;	honest-us,	honourable.
fort-i-tudo,	bravery;	fort-is,	brave.

2. (a) -or, with verb-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pav-or,	<i>fear</i> ;	pav-ère,	<i>to fear</i> .
am-or,	<i>love</i> ;	am-ère,	<i>to love</i> .

- (b) -or, with supine-stems, the *agent* or *doer*.

doct-or,	<i>teacher</i> ;	doc-ère (doct-),	<i>to teach</i> .
monit-or,	<i>adviser</i> ;	mon-ère (monit-),	<i>to advise</i> .

3. -io, with supine-stems, the *action* of the verb, especially the doing of it.

act-io,	<i>action</i> ;	ag-ère (act-),	<i>to act, do</i> .
caut-io,	<i>caution</i> ;	cav-ère (caut-),	<i>to take care</i> .

4. -tudo, with adjective-stems, the *abstract quality*.

fort-i-tudo,	<i>bravery</i> ;	fort-is,	<i>brave</i> .
--------------	------------------	----------	----------------

(789.) Fourth Declension.

Most nouns of the 4th declension are abstracts formed from verb-stems or supine-stems.

us-us,	<i>use</i> ;	uti (us-),	<i>to use</i> .
môt-us,	<i>motion</i> ;	môv-ère (môt-),	<i>to move</i> .

(790.) Fifth Declension.

1. -es, -ies, -ities, with verb or adjective-stems, a *property*, *operation*, *quality*, &c.

fid-es (fid-ère); ser-ies (ser-ère); fac-ies (fac-ère); dur-ities (dur-us); mund-ities (mund-us).

2. [Those in -ities coexist with others in -itia (784, 2); e. g., munditia, duritia, &c.]

(B.) Adjectives.

(791.) First Class, us, a, um.

1. -us, *quality* in general (coexisting with verb and noun stems).

alb-us,	<i>white</i> ;	alb-ère,	alb-umen.
curv-us,	<i>curved</i> ;	curv-ère,	curv-amen.
dur-us,	<i>hard</i> ;	dur-ère,	dur-ities.
viv-us,	<i>alive</i> ;	viv-ère,	vit-a.

2. -idus and -uus, chiefly with stems of intransitive verbs, the *quality* of the verb, without addition.

turg-idus,	<i>swelling</i> ;	turg-ère,	<i>to swell</i> .
cal-idus,	<i>warm</i> ;	cal-ère,	<i>to be warm</i> .
noc-uus,	<i>hurtful</i> ;	noc-ère,	<i>to hurt</i> .

3. -bundus, with verb-stems, force of present participle, intensified.

hesita-bundus, *full of hesitation*; hesit-ère, *to hesitate*.
lacryma-bundus, *weeping profusely*; lacrym-ère, *to weep*.

4. -cundus, same as bundus, generally with the additional idea of *permanency*.

ira-cundus, *passionate*; ira-sc-i, *to be angry*.
vere-cundus, *bashful*; vere-ri, *to fear*.

5. -icus, with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

class-icus, *belonging to a fleet*; class-is, *fleet*.
civ-icus, *civic*; civ-is, *citizen*.

6. -ens, -aceus, -icius, with noun-stems, *material or origin*.

ferr-eus, *of iron*; ferr-um, *iron*.
chart-aceus, *of paper*; chart-a, *paper*.

7. -inus, with noun-stems, *similarity, quality, or material*.

asin-inus, *asinine, like an ass*; asin-us, *an ass*.
mar-inus, *marine*; mar-e, *the sea*.
crystall-inus, *crystalline*; crystall-um, *crystal*.

8. -anus, with names of towns ending in a or æ, a native of such place.

Rom-anus, *a Roman*; Roma, *Rome*.

9. -osus, -lentus, with noun-stems, *fulness, abundance* (like the English -ous).

fam-osus, *famous*; fam-a, *fame*.
vino-lentus, *drunken*; vin-um, *wine*.

(782.) *Second Class, is, in, e.*

1. -is, *quality in general* (occurring commonly with noun and verb forms).

lev-is, *light*; lev-are, *lev-it-a*.

2. -ilis, -ibilis, with verb-stems, the *quality* of the verb, or the *capacity* of it, in two senses, (a) *active* and (b) *passive*.

(a) terri-bilis, *exciting terror*; terr-ere, *to terrify*.
(b) doc-ilis, *docile*; doc-ere, *to teach*.
amāb-ilis, *amiable*; am-are, *to love*.

3. -ilis (i long), with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

civ-ilis, *belonging to a citizen, civil*; civ-is, *citizen*.
host-ilis, *hostile*; hos-tis, *enemy*.

[Observe that *ilis*, with verb-stems, is *short*; with noun-stems, *long*.]

4. -alis, -aris, with noun-stems, *of or belonging to*.

conviv-alis, *convivial*; conviv-a, *head*.
capit-alis, *capital*; caput, *head*.
consul-aris, *consular*; consul.

5. -ensis, with names of towns—a *native* of such town.

Cann-ensis, *an inhabitant of Cannæ*.
Arimin-ensis, *an inhabitant of Ariminum*.

(793.) *Third Class*, one ending.

-ax, with verb-stems, the *tendency* of the verb, generally in a bad sense.

pugn-ax,	pugnacious ;	pugn-äre,	to fight.
rap-ax,	rapacious ;	rap-äre,	to seize.

(C.) *Verbs.*(794.) *First Conjugation.*

1. -äre, generally a *transitive* ending, with noun-stems.

numer-äre,	to count ;	numer-us,	number.
nomin-äre,	to name ;	nomen (nomin-is),	name.

2. FREQUENTATIVE verbs, expressing a *repetition* or *increase* of the action of the original verb, are formed by the endings -äre and -itäre ; thus :

(a) -äre, added to supine-stems.

curs-äre,	to run to and fro ;	currere (curs-um),	to run.
dormit-äre,	to be sleepy ;	dormire (dormit-um),	to sleep.

(b) -itäre, added to verb-stems.

rog-itäre,	to ask often ;	rog-äre,	to ask.
vol-itäre,	to fly to and fro ;	vol-äre,	to fly.

3. -ari, deponent-ending, with noun-stems, is much used for expressing "to be that which, or of the character that," the noun indicates.

comit-ari,	{ to attend as com- panion ;	comes (comit-is),	companion.
domin-ari,	to rule as master ;		
		domin-us,	master.

(795.) *Second Conjugation.*

-äre, frequently an *intransitive* ending, with noun and adjective stems.

alb-äre,	to be white ;	alb-us,	white.
luc-äre,	to shine ;	lux (luc-is),	light.

(796.) *Third Conjugation.*

INCHOATIVE verbs express the *beginning* or *increase* of the action of the verb from which they are derived. They are formed by adding *sc* to the verb-stem, with the connecting-vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*. Most of them are formed on stems of verbs of second conjugation.

palesc-äre,	to grow pale ;	pall-äre,	to be pale.
labasc-äre,	to totter ;	lab-äre,	to waver.

(797.) *Fourth Conjugation.*

DESIDERATIVE verbs express a *desire* of that which is implied in the primitive, and are formed by adding -ürire to supine-stems.

es-ürire,	to want to eat ;	edere (es-um),	to eat.
-----------	------------------	----------------	---------

(II.) WORD-BUILDING BY PREFIXES.

(798.) Under this head we place only the *inseparable prepositions* (229), viz., amb-, dis- (di-), re-, se.

1. Amb- = *about, around, on both sides*; e. g., amb-ire, *to go round* (amb+ire).

☞ Before *p* the *b* is dropped; e. g., am-plector: before *c*-sounds amb is changed into an; e. g., an-ceps, an-quire.

2. Dis (di) = *asunder*; e. g., dis-jungere, *to disjoin* (dis+ungere).

☞ Di is used before *d, g, l, m*; e. g., digerere, &c. Before *f* the *s* is assimilated; e. g., differre (dis+ferre).

3. Re = *back, again, away, un-*; e. g., re-pellere, *drive-back* (re+pellere); re-ficere, *refit* (re+facere).

☞ Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., re-d-ire (re+ire).

[Re long occurs only in re-fert.]

4. Se = *aside*; e. g., se-ducere, *lead astray, seduce* (se+ducere); se-ponere, *lay aside* (se+ponere).

(III.) WORD-BUILDING BY COMPOSITION.

I. *Prepositions in Composition with other Words.*

(799.) ☞ Most prepositions are used to form compound words, and generally modify their meaning in a way easily understood; e. g., stare, *to stand*; prae-stare, *to stand before, to excel*. We notice here only those which present some peculiarities.

1. a, ab, abs = *away, from*. (a) *a* is used before *m* and *v*; e. g., a-mittere, *to send away, lose*; a-vertere, *turn away*. (b) *au* is used before *ferre* and *fugere*: auferre, aufugere. (c) *as*, before *p* or *sp*: asperito, aspernor.

2. ad = *to*. (a) Assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, v, m*; e. g., arripere, assurgere, adducere, &c. (b) *d* dropped before *gn*; e. g., agnoscere, agnatus.

3. con (a variation of cum) = *with*. (a) *co* before *h* and vowels; e. g., co-ortus, co-hibere. (b) *com* before *b, p*:* com-burere, com-pellere. (c) Assimilated before *l, m, r*: col-ligere, commovere, cor-ripere.

4. e or ex = *out of*. (a) Assimilated before *f*; e. g., effero (ex+fero). (b) *e* before liquids and *b, d, g, v*.


5. in, with verbs = *into, on, in, against*; with adjectives has privative force; e. g., doctus, *learned*; indoctus, *unlearned*.

(a) Assimilated before *l, r*, e. g., illatum (in+latum); irrumperere (in+rumpere).


* And sometimes before vowels: comedere.

(b) Changed into *im* before *b, p*; e. g., *imbibĕre* (*im+bibere*); *imponĕre* (*im+ponere*).

6. *ob* = *against*; e. g., *obtrudĕre* (*ob+trudere*), *thrust against*.

 Assimilated before *c, f, p*; e. g., *oc-cidĕre* (*ob+cadere*); *of-ferre*, *op-ponĕre*.

7. *pro* = *forth, forward*; e. g., *projicĕre* (*pro+jacere*), *cast forth*.

 Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., *prod-esse* (*pro+esse*).


8. *præ* = *before*; e. g., *præcĕdĕre* (*præ+cedere*), *to go before, to surpass*.

9. *sub* = *under, from under*; e. g., *subducĕre*, *to draw from under*.

(a) Generally assimilated; e. g., *sum-movĕre*, *sup-ponere*, &c.

(b) Sometimes *sus-*; e. g., *sus-cipĕre*, *sus-tinĕre*, &c.

10. *trans* = *across, over*; e. g., *transducere*, *to lead across*.

 *Trā*, instead of *trans*, occurs in *trādĕre*, *trāducĕre*, *trājicĕre*.


(800.) II. *Adverbs in Composition with other Words.*

1. *nē, vĕ*, have a *privative* force; e. g., *nēfas*, *wicked* (*ne+fas*); *vĕsanus*, *insane* (*vĕ+sānus*).

2. *benĕ*, *well*; *malĕ*, *ill*; *satis*, *enough*; e. g., *beneficium*, *a good deed*; *maleficium*, *an evil deed*; *satisfacĕre*, *to satisfy* (= to do enough).

3. *bis* (and other numerals), *twice* (*thrice*), &c.: *bicorpor*, *two-bodied* (*bis+corp-us*).

(801.) III. *Nouns and Adjectives in Composition with other Words.*


 When a noun or adjective is compounded with another word, the connecting vowel is always short *i*.

agrī-cola (*agr+col-*), *a husbandman*.

arti-fex (*art+fac-*), *an artificer*.

(802.) IV. *Verbs in Composition with other Words.*

None occur, except in composition with *facere*; e. g., *calefacere* (*calĕre+facere*), *to make hot*; *patefacere* (*patĕre+facere*), *to lay open*.

[ Observe that the vowel *a* in *facere* remains unchanged.]

(803.) V. *Common Vowel-changes in Composition.*

1. *a* into *i*; e. g., *arrīpĕre* (*ad+rapere*), *conficĕre* (*con+facere*), *constituĕre* (*con+statuere*), &c.

2. *a* into *e* (more rarely); e. g., *ascendĕre* (*ad+scandere*).

3. *e* into *i* (not always); e. g., *colligĕre* (*con+legere*), *abstinĕre* (*abs+tenere*), &c.

4. *e* into *i*; e. g., *occidĕre* (*ob+cadere*), *rĕquirĕre* (*rĕ+querere*).

READING LESSONS.

I.


GALLIA est omnis divisa¹ in partes tres.—Belgæ unam incolunt;² Aquitani alteram; Celtæ tertiam.—Hi, ipsorum* linguâ³ Celtæ⁴ appellantur;⁵ nostrâ* linguâ, Galli.⁴

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, alteram Aquitani, tertiam qui⁶ ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli appellantur.

Hi omnes inter se differunt.⁷—Linguâ, institutis,⁸ legibus differunt.—Garumna⁹ flumen Gallos ab Aquitanis dividit.—Matrôna flumen Gallos a Belgis dividit.—Horum omnium¹⁰ fortissimi sunt Belgæ.—Ab humanitate¹¹ Provinciæ longe absunt.¹²—A cultu¹³ Provinciæ longissime absunt.—Minime ad eos mercatores¹⁴ commeant.—Quædam¹⁵ animos effeminant.¹⁶—Quædam ad effeminandos animos pertinent.¹⁷

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt.—Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrôna et Sequana dividit.—Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos animos pertinent,¹⁸ important.¹⁹

Proximi sunt Germanis.²⁰—Germani trans Rhenum incolunt.—Belgæ cum Germanis continenter²¹ bellum gerunt.

¹ 435, c.—² in+colere.—³ 716.—⁴ 694, 2, R.—⁵ ad+pellare (*obsolete*), 799, 2, a.—⁶ 167, d, 4.—⁷ 798, .—⁸ 786, 2, instituere = in+statuere, 803, 1.—⁹ 225, a.—¹⁰ 697, a.—¹¹ 788, 1 (*humanus*), humanitas = *refinement*.—¹² ab+sum, 799, 1.—¹³ cultus (*civilization*), from colere (cult-), 789.—¹⁴ mercator, from mercari (mercât-), 788, 2, b.—¹⁵ *Some things*.—¹⁶ effeminare (*to make effeminate*), ex+feminare, 799, 4, a: feminare, from femina (*woman*), 794, 1.—¹⁷ *tend to make minds effeminate*, 739.—¹⁸ per+tenere, 803, 3.—¹⁹ in+portare, 799, 5, b.—²⁰ 704, 4.—²¹ from continens (con+tenere), 215, 2, b.

* Ipsorum and nostra precede linguâ, instead of following it, because *opposed* to each other, and therefore *emphatic*.

Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui
b u s c u m²³ continenter bellum gerunt.

II.

Helvetii quoque¹ reliquos² Gallos virtute³ præcedunt.⁴—Fere
quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt.—Aut⁵ suis finibus
Germanos prohibent,⁶ aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Q u a⁷ d e c a u s a⁸ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute
præcedunt, q u o d⁹ fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis con-
tendunt, q u u m aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum
finibus bellum gerunt.

Galli unam partem obtinent.¹⁰—Unam partem Gallos¹¹ obti-
nere dictum est.¹²—Eâ pars initium capit a flumine Rhödânô.
—Continetur Garumnâ flumine,¹³ Oceano,¹³ finibus¹³ Belgarum.
—Attingit¹⁴ ab Sequânis flumen Rhenum.—Vergit ad Septen-
triones.—Belgæ ab extremis¹⁵ Galliæ finibus oriuntur.—Pertin-
ent¹⁶ ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni.—Spectant^{*} in
Septentriones et orientem¹⁷ solem.

E o r u m una pars, q u a m¹⁸ Gallos obtinere dictum est, ini-
tium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur¹⁹ Garumna flumine,
Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab²⁰ Sequanis et
Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad Septentriones.—Belgæ
ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem
partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in Septentriones et orientem
solem.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes pertinet.
—Una pars Oceani est ad²⁰ Hispaniam.—Aquitania ad eam

²³ 125, II., b.

¹ Quo que never begins a sentence.—² from relinquere (reliqu-), 791, 1.
—³ 718, in *valour*.—⁴ 799, 8.—⁵ 519, R. 4.—⁶ 721.—⁷ 89, II.—⁸ Qua de cau-
sa = *for which reason*.—⁹ because.—¹⁰ ob-+tenere, 803, 3.—¹¹ 751.—¹² 751,
R. 2.—¹³ 716.—¹⁴ ad-+tangere, 799, 2, a, 803, 1.—¹⁵ 78, II., b.—¹⁶ Pertinent
= *they extend*, per-+tenere.—¹⁷ 438, a.—¹⁸ 759.—¹⁹ is bounded.—²⁰ on the
side of, or near.

* Spectant in Septentriones, &c.: *they look into the north and the rising sun*;
i. e., *they lie in a N.E. direction*.

partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet.—Spectat inter occasum²¹ solis et Septentriones.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat²² inter occasum solis et Septentriones.

III.

Orgetorix nobilis fuit.—Apud Helvetios nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Apud Helvetios longē ditissimus¹ fuit Orgetorix.—Is regni cupiditate² inductus conjurationem³ nobilitatis⁴ fecit.—Is civitati⁵ persuadet, ut de finibus suis exeant.⁶—De finibus suis exeunt.—Perfacile erat totius Galliæ imperio⁷ potiri.—Perfacile esse⁸ (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent,⁹ totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco Pisone consulibus,¹⁰ regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent:¹¹ perfacile esse (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent, totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Id facile eis persuadet.¹²—Id hoc facilius eis persuasit.—Undique naturâ loci¹³ Helvetii continentur.—Unâ ex parte continentur flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo.—Alterâ ex parte continentur monte Jurâ altissimo; tertiâ ex parte lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano.—Flumen Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit.—Mons Jurâ est inter Sequanos et Helvetios.—Flumen Rhodanus provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

²¹ 789, from *occidere*, ob+cadere.

¹ 371, *R.* 1.—² from *cupidus*, by 788, 1.—³ 788, 3, con+jurare.—⁴ 788, 1.

—⁵ 704, 2: *he persuades the state*; i. e., *the citizens*.—⁶ *ut exeant* = *to go out of*: subj. pres., 754 (*ex+ire*).—⁷ *abl.*, 718.—⁸ *The sentence perfacile esse, &c., is in orat. obliqua*; 769, *a*, applies.—⁹ 799, 8.—¹⁰ 458, *b*.—¹¹ *Why is exirent in subj. imperf.?* 748.—¹² *suadere, to recommend*; *persuadere, recommend thoroughly*, i. e., *persuade*.—¹³ *by the nature of the country*.

* *It looks between the setting of the sun and the north*; i. e., in a *N.W.* direction.

Id hoc facilius eis persuadet, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur; unā ex parte, flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; alterā ex parte, monte Jurā altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

Minus latē vagantur.—His rebus fit,¹⁴ ut minus late vagentur.¹⁵—Bellum inferunt.¹⁶—Bellum inferre¹⁷ possunt.—Minus facile bellum finitimis¹⁸ inferre possunt.—His rebus fit, ut minus facile bellum finitimis inferre possent.—Magno dolore afficiebantur.¹⁹—Bellandī²⁰ erant cupidi.²¹

His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.—Quā de causa, homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur.

IV.

Pro¹ multitudinē² hominum, angustos habebant fines.—Pro gloria³ belli atque fortitudinis,² angustos habebant fines.—Angustos se⁴ fines habere arbitrabantur.⁵—Hi (i. e., fines) millia passuum ducenta (CC.) patebant.⁶—Hi in longitudinem⁷ millia⁷ passuum ducenta et quadraginta (XL.) patebant.

Pro multitudine autem⁸ hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL., in latitudinem centum et octoginta (CLXXX.) patebant.

Ducti sunt.—Adducti⁹ sunt.—Moti sunt.—Permoti¹⁰ sunt.—Auctoritate¹¹ Orgetorigis adducti et permoti sunt.—Quædam ad proficiscendum¹² pertinent.—Constituerunt¹³ ea comparare.¹⁴—Constituerunt jumenta et carros emere.¹⁵—Constituerunt se-

¹⁴ By these circumstances it is brought about.—¹⁵ 754, 2.—¹⁶ in+ferre.—¹⁷ 731.—¹⁸ 704, 3.—¹⁹ ad+facere, 799, 2; 803, 1.—²⁰ 736.—²¹ cupere, 791, 2.

¹ For, or, in view of.—² mult-us, 788, 4.—³ reputation for war and courage.—⁴ 471.—⁵ from arbit-er, by 794, 3.—⁶ extended.—⁷ 712.—⁸ 522, b.—⁹ Ducti sunt = they were led: adducti sunt = they were led to, i. e., they were induced.—¹⁰ Moti sunt = they were moved: permoti sunt = they were thoroughly moved, i. e., prevailed upon.—¹¹ 788, 1.—¹² 487.—¹³ con+statu-ere, 803, 1.—¹⁴ con+parare, 799, 3, b.—¹⁵ 731.

mentes magnas facere,¹⁶ ut in itinere copia frumenti suppet-
eret.¹⁷—Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam¹⁸ con-
firmant.

His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti,
constituerunt, ea, quæ¹⁹ ad proficiscendum pertinērent, com-
parare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum nu-
merum²⁰ coemere;²¹ sementes quam maximas²² facere, ut
in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus
pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Biennium Helvetiis²³ satis erat.—Biennium sibi²⁴ Helvetii satis
esse duxerunt.²⁴—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁵ biennium satis erat.
—Protectionem²⁶ lege confirmant.²⁷—In tertium annum profec-
tionem lege confirmant. —Ad eas res conficiendas²⁸ Orgetorix
deligitur.²⁸—Is sibi legationem²⁹ suscepit.²⁹—In eo itinere per-
suadet Castico.—Casticus Catamantalëdis erat filius, Sequānus.
—Pater Castici regnum in Sequanis multos annos³⁰ obtinuerat.
—Pater Castici a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat.
—Orgetorix Castico persuadet, ut regnum in civitate suâ occu-
paret.³¹

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt;
in tertium annum protectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res
conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civi-
tates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamentale-
dis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos
annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus
erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod³² pater ante
habuerat.

V.

Item Dumnorigi persuadet.—Dumnorix erat Æduus.—
Dumnorix erat frater Divitiaci.—Dumnorix principatum¹ in

¹⁶ to make great sowings, i. e., to sow much land.—¹⁷ Sub+petere, 799, 9, a, neuter; suppeteret=might be in store: subjunc. by 754, 1.—¹⁸ 785, 2.—¹⁹ 759, Rem.—²⁰ As great a number as possible.—²¹ con+emere, to buy together, to buy up, 799, 3.—²² As great sowings as possible.—²³ 704.—²⁴ reckoned.—²⁵ 498, d.—²⁶ 788, 3.—²⁷ They fix the departure by a law.—²⁸ de+legere, 803, 3.—²⁹ 799, 9, b.—³⁰ 712.—³¹ 754.—³² 759.

¹ chief power, from princeps.

civitate obtinebat. — Dumnorix plebi² acceptus³ erat. — Dumnorigi, ut idem conaretur persuadet,* eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Item que Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore⁴ principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac maximè⁵ plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Perfacile factu⁶ erat conata perficere.⁷ — Ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus erat. — Totius⁸ Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possunt. — Non est dubium quin plurimum Helvetii possint.⁹ — Ipse illis regnum conciliaturus¹⁰ erat. — Ipse, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regnum conciliaturus erat.

(*Oblique Narration*, 769.) “Perfacile factu esse,” illis probat, “conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent;” “Se, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum,” confirmat.

Helvetii jam¹¹ se¹² ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrantur. — Oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim,¹³ incendunt. — Vicos suos ad quadringentos incendunt. — Reliqua¹⁴ privata ædificia¹⁵ incendunt. — Frumentum secum portaturi erant. — Frumentum omne comburunt. — Domum¹⁶ reditionis¹⁷ spes sublata¹⁸ est. — Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda¹⁹ erant.

Ubi²⁰ jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe²¹ sublata,²¹ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.²²

² 702, was acceptable to the common people (a favourite). — ³ ad + capere, 803, 1. — ⁴ 725. — ⁵ 376. — ⁶ 380. It was a very easy thing to do. — ⁷ to accomplish, per + facere, 803, 1. — ⁸ Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful. — ⁹ 754, 4. — ¹⁰ 446. — ¹¹ jam = at last. — ¹² 751. — ¹³ in number (amounting) to twelve. — ¹⁴ relinquere. — ¹⁵ 801, ædes + facere. — ¹⁶ 713, Rem. 2. — ¹⁷ 788, 3. — ¹⁸ sub + fero. — ¹⁹ sub + ire, gerundive, 739. — ²⁰ when. — ²¹ 750. — ²² 754.

* Cæsar often uses the *historical present*, as in this instance, instead of the perfect aorist. If persuadet were used really as the present, then conaretur would have to be conetur, by 748; but, as the historical present, it requires a past tense in the subordinate sentence.

VI.

Omnēs res ad profectiōem comparant.—Dicam dicunt¹ quā die omnes conveniant.²—Is dies erat ante diēn quintum Kalendas³ Aprilis. Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.—Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone, A. Gabinio Cons.

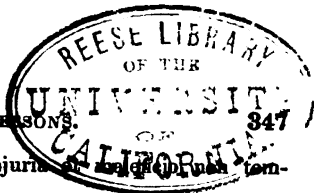
Omnibus rebus⁴ ad profectiōem comparatis, diēn dicunt, quā die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diēn quintum Kalendas Aprilis. Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.

Helvetiū per provinciam nostram iter⁵ facere cōparant.—Id Cæsari nuntiatum erat.—Cæsari nuntiatum erat, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere⁶ cōpari.⁷—Maturat ab urbe proficisci,⁸ et magnis itineribus in Galliam contendit, et ad Genēvam pervenit.—De ejus adventu⁹ Helvetiū certiores facti sunt.—Legatos ad eum mittunt.—Helvetiis est in animo¹⁰ sine ullo maleficio¹¹ iter per provinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum; rogant, ut, Cæsaris voluntate, id facere liceat.¹²

Cæsari quum id nuntiatum esset,¹³ eos per provinciam nostram iter facere cōpari,¹⁴ maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervenit. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetiū certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt,¹⁵ qui dicerent,¹⁶ "*sibi*¹⁷ esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habeant nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat."

Lucius Cassius, consul, ab Helvetiis occisus erat.—Exercitus¹⁸ Cassii ab Helvetiis pulsus¹⁹ erat, et sub jugum missus.—Eā Cæsar memoriā²⁰ tenebat.—Concedendum²¹ non putabat.—Facultas²² per provinciam itineris faciendi²³ non data est.—

¹ *They appoint*.—² con+venire; subj. pres., 766.—³ 783, 5.—⁴ 750.—⁵ iter facere = *to make journey* = *to march*.—⁶ 731.—⁷ 751.—⁸ advenire (advent-), 789.—⁹ 468, b.—¹⁰ 800, 2.—¹¹ 754.—¹² 757, A. 2.—¹³ historical present.—¹⁴ 761, 1.—¹⁵ oblique narration.—¹⁶ exercere, 789.—¹⁷ pellere.—¹⁸ memoriā tenebat, *held in memory*, i. e., *remembered*.—¹⁹ 737 (esse understood, 504, a).—²⁰ power of marching through, or permission to march through.—²¹ facultas, 788, 1, from facil-is, facio.—²² 496.



Homines inimico²³ animo ab injuria²⁴ et maleficio non temperant.

Cæsar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassum consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque²⁵ homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria²⁴ et maleficio, existimabat.

VII.

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit.—Divico, bello Cassiano,¹ dux Helvetiorum fuerat.—Is ita cum Cæsare egit.²—Helvetii in eam partem ibunt, atque ibi erunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.³—Cæsar veteris incommodi⁴ reminiscitur.⁵—Cæsar pristinae virtutis⁶ Helvetiorum reminiscitur.

(*Oblique Narration, present time.*⁷) Is ita cum Cæsare agit: “*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciat,⁸ in eam partem ituros⁹ atque ibi futuros⁹ Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituerit atque esse voluerit; sin bello persequi perseveret,¹⁰ reminiscatur¹¹ et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*”

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit (*obl. narr., past time*): “*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar eos constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*”

²³ 722.—²⁵ neque existimabat = *nor did he think.*—²⁴ outrage.

¹ *In the Cassian war*, i. e., in which Cassius had been the Roman general.—² *He treated with Cæsar as follows.*—³ 803, 1; subj. by 766.—⁴ *incommodum, disaster*, in+commodus, 799, 5; con+modus, 799, 3, c; genitive by 698, a, 2.—⁵ *re+miniscor, stem of meminī, meno.*—⁶ *vir, gen., 698, a, 2.*—⁷ *Observe carefully the tenses in this and the following paragraph.*—⁸ *If the Roman people will make peace.*—⁹ 484, a.—¹⁰ 542, b.—¹¹ 528, b.

His Cæsar ita¹³ respondet.—Cæsari nihil dubitationis¹⁴ datur.¹⁴
—Legati Helvetii quasdam res commemoraverunt.¹⁵—Eas res
Cæsar in memoria tenet.¹⁶—Eo¹⁷ Cæsari minus dubitationis
datur, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverunt, in
memoria tenet.—Eas res graviter¹⁸ fert.¹⁹—Eæ res non merito²⁰
populi Romani acciderunt.²¹—Eas res graviter fert, quod non
merito populi Romani acciderunt.—Eo²² gravius fert, quo²³
minus merito Populi Romani acciderunt.

His Cæsar ita respondet²⁴ (*oblique narration, present time*): “*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverint, memoria teneat: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderint.*”

His Cæsar ita respondit (*oblique narration, past time*): “*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent.*”

VIII.

Helvetii postero die¹ castra ex eo loco movent.—Idem² Cæsar facit.—Quas in partes³ hostes iter faciunt?⁴—Equitatum⁵ omnem præmittit.⁶—Hi videbunt, quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Equitatus ex omni Provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactus⁸ erat.—Hunc equitatum præmittit, qui videant,⁹ quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Hi cupidius¹⁰ novissimum¹¹ agmen insequuntur.¹²—Cum equitatu Helvetiorum prælium commit-

¹³ as follows.—¹⁴ 788, 3, dubitare (dubitāt).—¹⁴ To Cæsar nothing of doubt is given = Cæsar has no doubt.—¹⁵ con + memorare (memor).—¹⁶ holds in memory, i. e., remembers.—¹⁷ On this account Cæsar has less doubt, because.—¹⁸ 215, 2, a.—¹⁹ ferre graviter = to bear heavily, to be indignant at.—²⁰ 716.—²¹ accidere = ad + cedere, 803, 1, to happen.—²² By so much.—²³ by how much.—²⁴ Observe the moods and tenses carefully in this and the following paragraph of oblique narration.

¹ 725.—² 150.—³ Into what parts (of the country)?—⁴ 765.—⁵ Equitares (equitat-), 789.—⁶ 795, 8.—⁷ 766.—⁸ had been collected; cogere = con + agere.—⁹ who may see, i. e., to see, 761, 1.—¹⁰ too eagerly, adv., 376.—¹¹ novissimum agmen = the newest rank, i. e., the rear rank.—¹² in + sequi.

tunt.—Alieno¹³ loco praelium committunt.—Pauci de nostris cadunt.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent: idem Cæsar facit; equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.—Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti,¹⁴ alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum praelium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt.

Hoc praelio sublati¹⁵ sunt Helvetii.—Quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant.¹⁶—Audacius¹⁷ subsistere¹⁸ cœperunt.—Nonnunquam¹⁹ et²⁰ praelio²¹ nostros lacessere cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a praelio continebat.²²—Hostem rapinis,²³ pabulationibusque prohibere²⁴ volebat.—Hoc satis habebat in præsentia.²⁵

Quo praelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam et novissimo agmine praelio nostros lacessere cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a praelio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis pabulationibusque²⁶ prohibere.

IX.

Multa¹ antehac tacuerat² Liscus.—Hæc oratione³ Cæsaris adductus proponit⁴.—Sunt nonnulli,⁵ quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum⁶ valet.—Hi privātim⁷ plus possunt⁸ quam ipsi

¹³ In a place not their own, i. e., on disadvantageous ground.—¹⁴ 451, c.—¹⁵ sub+latus, irreg. perf. of tollere: the Helvetians were elated.—¹⁶ they had driven off, pro+pellere.—¹⁷ 376.—¹⁸ to halt, sub+sistere; inf., 731.—¹⁹ non+nunquam, not never, i. e., sometimes.—²⁰ also.—²¹ by an assault.—²² to hold together, i. e., to restrain.—²³ 721, from plunder and from foraging parties.—²⁴ pro+habere.—²⁵ acc. pl. of præsens; in præsentia (tempora), for the present.—²⁶ 517, a.

¹ Many things, before this, Liscus had kept secret.—² tacere, intrans = to be silent; trans = to keep secret.—³ 788, 3, orare (orāt).—⁴ pro+ponere, to set before, to relate.—⁵ non+nullus, not none, i. e., some.—⁶ plurimum valet = avails very much (has very great weight).—⁷ 215, 3.—⁸ plus possunt = can more, i. e., have more power.

magistrātus.²—Hi seditiōsa¹⁰ atque imprōba¹¹ oratione multitudinem deterrent.¹²—Frumentum non confērent.¹³—Hi multitudinem deterrent, ne frumentum conferant.¹⁴—Ipsi quidem principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possunt.—Sati¹⁵ est Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia perferre.¹⁶

Si Helvetios superavērint¹⁷ Romāni, una¹⁸ cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertātem eripient.¹⁹—Dubitare non debent, quin Romani Æduis libertatem sint ereptūri.²⁰—Sati¹⁵ est si jam principatū Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre.

Tum demum Liscus,²¹ oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit.—(*Oratio obliqua*): “Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant. Si jam principatū Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre satius esse, neque dubitare debere, quin si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertatem sint erepturi.”

X.

Hac oratione Lisci, Dumnōrix, Divitiaci frater, designabatur.¹—Id Cæsar sentiēbat.²—Pluribus præsenti³ eas res jactāri⁴ nolēbat.—Celeriter⁵ conciliū dimittit; Liscum retinet.—Quærit,⁶ ex solo,⁷ ea quæ in conventu⁸ dixerat.—Dicit liberius⁹ atque audacius.⁹—Eādē secreto¹⁰ ab aliis quærit.—Repērit¹¹ esse vera.

² *The magistrates themselves.*—¹⁰ 791, 9 (*seditio*).—¹¹ *in+probas*, 799, 5.—¹² *de+terrere*.—¹³ *con+ferre, contribute*.—¹⁴ *ne conferant, that they may not contribute*, i. e., *deter them from contributing*, 548, b.—¹⁵ *Satius, compar. of satia*, 376: *it is better*.—¹⁶ *per+ferre, to endure*.—¹⁷ 542, b, 2.—¹⁸ *they will wrest liberty from the Æduans, together with the rest of Gaul*.—¹⁹ *er+aperē*, 803, 1.—²⁰ 754, 4.—²¹ *Then, finally (then, and not till then)*.

¹ *was alluded to, de+signare*.—² *was aware of*.—³ 750, *many being present*, i. e., *in the presence of many*.—⁴ 794, 2, a; from *jacio* (*jact*): *jactare* = *to toss to and fro*; hence, *to discuss*.—⁵ 215, 2.—⁶ *He inquires into*.—⁷ *ex solo* = *of him alone*.—⁸ 782.—⁹ 376.—¹⁰ *privately*.—¹¹ *He finds (the statements) are true*.

Ipse est Dumnōrix,¹² summa audacia,¹³ magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia,¹⁴ cupidus rerum¹⁵ novarum.—Complures annos¹⁶ portoria¹⁷ reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia habet.—Hæc vectigalia parvo pretio¹⁸ redempta sunt.¹⁹—Vectigalia²⁰ parvo pretio redempta habet, propterea quod, illo²¹ licente,²² contra liceri²³ audet nemo.—His rebus suam rem familiarem auxit.—His rebus facultates²⁴ ad largiendum²⁵ magnas comparavit.—Magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu²⁶ semper alit.—Magnum numerum equitatus semper circum se habet.—Non solum domi,²⁷ sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter²⁸ potest.

Cæsar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat : sed, quod pluribus presentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet : quærit, ex solo, ea quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit ; reperit esse vera : “ Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum : complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse : magnum numerum equitatus suo sumtu semper alere et circum se habere : neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse.”

XI.

Ad has suspensiones certissimæ res¹ accedebant.—Dumnōrix per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxerat.²—Obsides inter eos dandos³ curaverat.—Ea omnia jussu⁴ Cæsaris fecerat.—Ea

¹² *Dumnorix is the very person, (a man) of the highest audacity, &c.*—¹³ 722.—¹⁴ *influence.*—¹⁵ 698, *b.*—¹⁶ 712.—¹⁷ *transit duties, custom duties.*—¹⁸ 719.—¹⁹ *were contracted for.*—²⁰ *vectigalia . . . habet, he holds the taxes contracted for at a low price ; i. e., holds them under a very favourable contract.*—²¹ 456, *a*, *when he bids.*—²² *liceor, liceri, to bid.*—²³ 731.—²⁴ *Means for making largesses.*—²⁵ 489.—²⁶ *suo sumptu, at his own expense.* *Sumptus*, 789, from *sumere*.—²⁷ 726, *R.*, *at home.*—²⁸ *largiter potest, he can largely, i. e., he has extensive power.*

¹ *certissimæ res = most certain (or undoubted) facts.*—*accedebant = were added ; ad+cedere, intransitive.*—² *trans+ducere.*—³ 504, *a.*—⁴ 789 ; from *jubere (jussu) : by the command*, 716.

omnia injussu⁵ Cæsaris et⁶ civitatis fecerat.—Ea omnia inscientibus ipsis⁷ fecerat.—Ea omnia non modo injussu Cæsaris et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecerat.—A magistratū⁸ Æduōrum accusabātur.—Satis est causæ,⁹ quare in eum animadvertat.¹⁰—Satis est causæ, quare in eum civitatem animadvertere jubeat.—Satis erat causæ, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.—Satis esse¹¹ causæ arbitrabātur.

Quibus rebus cognitis,¹² quum¹³ ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accedērent—quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset¹⁴—quod obsides inter eos dando curasset—quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset—quod a magistratu Æduorum accusarētur; satis esse causæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.

His omnibus rebus¹⁵ unum repugnābat.¹⁶—Divitiaci fratris¹⁷ summum in populum Romānum studium¹⁸ cognoverat Cæsar.—Divitiaci summam in se voluntatem cognoverat.—Divitiaci egregiam fidem, justitiam,¹⁹ temperantiam,¹⁹ cognoverat.—Dumnorīgis supplicio²⁰ Divitiaci animum offendet.—Ne²¹ Divitiaci animum offendant, verētur.—Ne²² Divitiaci animum offendēret, verebātur.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur.

⁵ *without the command*; in+jussū.—⁶ The English idiom demands *or* instead of *and*: *without the command of Cæsar or the state*.—⁷ *themselves not knowing it*, i. e., without the knowledge of Cæsar and the Æduan government.—⁸ *By a magistrate*, 93, II., b.—⁹ 697, b.—¹⁰ in eum animadvertere, *to animadvert upon him*, i. e., *to punish him*.—¹¹ 751, R. 2.—¹² Quibus rebus cognitis = *Which things being known by inquiry*, i. e., *after he had inquired into these things*.—¹³ *Since (seeing that)*, 757, A, b.—¹⁴ transduxisset, curasset, &c., are subjunctives, because they express, not Cæsar's own sentiments or knowledge, but what he had heard from others: *certissimæ res accederent*.—¹⁵ 704, *To all these considerations one (thing) opposed itself*.—¹⁶ re+pugnare.—¹⁷ *Of his brother Divitiacus*, i. e., the brother of Dumnorix.—¹⁸ *zeal*.—¹⁹ 785, 2.—²⁰ *By the punishment of Dumnorix he will hurt the feelings of Divitiacus*.—²¹ *veretur ne . . . he fears that he shall*.—²² *verebatur ne . . . he feared that he should*.

XII.

Cæsar graviter¹ in² Dumnorigem statuet.—Divitiacus Cæsarem complectitur.—Divitiacus multis³ cum lacrymis Cæsarem complectitur.—Obsecrâre incipit ne⁴ quid gravius⁵ in² fratrem statuat.—Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera.—Nemo ex eo⁶ plus quam Divitiacus doloris⁷ capit.—Divitiacus gratiâ⁸ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia poterat.—Dumnōrix minimum⁹ propter adolescentiam poterat.—Dumnōrix per Divitiacum crevit.¹⁰—His opibus¹¹ ac nervis¹² ad minuendam¹³ gratiam Divitiaci utitur.—His opibus ad perniciem¹⁴ Divitiaci utitur.—Quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem Divitiaci utitur.—Divitiacus tamen et¹⁵ amore fraterno et existimatione¹⁶ vulgi commovetur.¹⁷—Divitiacus summum locum amicitiae apud Cæsarem tenet.—Nemo existimabit non ejus voluntate factum.¹⁸—Ex hac re tōtius Galliae animi a Divitiaco avertentur.¹⁹

(*Direct Narration, Present Time.*²⁰) Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capit, propterea quod, quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem ipsius utitur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovetur, quod, si²¹ quid fratri a Cæsare acciderit, quum²² ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, nemo existimabit non

¹ graviter statuet = *will decide severely.*—² against.—³ 89, II.—⁴ 548, a.
⁵ quid gravius = *anything more severe (than usual): anything at all severe.*—⁶ from him, i. e., Dumnōrix.—⁷ plus doloris, *more pain*, 697.—⁸ by his influence (popularity).—⁹ minimum poterat = *had very little power.*—¹⁰ crescere: *grew (in power).*—¹¹ resources.—¹² *sineus*, abl. by 716.—¹³ 739, for *diminishing the influence of Divitiacus.*—¹⁴ 790, 1.—¹⁵ 517, c.—¹⁶ existimare, 788, 3: *existimatione vulgi* = *by the opinion of the public.*—¹⁷ con+movēre; commovētur = *is strongly moved.*—¹⁸ *No one will think it was not done with his (Divitiacus's) consent.*—¹⁹ a+vertere: *the affections of all Gaul will be turned away from him.*—²⁰ Observe carefully the moods and tenses in the following paragraphs of direct and oblique narration.—²¹ *if anything happen to his brother from Cæsar.*—²² quum ipse teneat, *seeing that he himself holds.*

ejus voluntate factum; qua ex re fiet²³ uti totius Galliae animi ab eo avertantur.²⁴

(*Direct Narration, Past Time.*) Sciebat Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capiēbat, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se creverat; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem ipsius utebatur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēbatur, quod si quid fratri a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nemo erat existimatūrus non ejus voluntate factum, qua ex re futurum erat uti totius Galliae animi ab eo averterentur.

Divitiacus, multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare incipit (*oblique narration, present time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuatur; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se creverit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam utatur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēri, quod, si quid ei gravius a Cæsare acciderit, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se avertantur."

Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare cœpit (*oblique narration, past time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuēret; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod si quid ei a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur."

²³ from which thing it will result.—²⁴ 754. 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Disert-us, a, um, *fluent, eloquent*.
 Displic-ère (displacu-, displicit-, dis+placere), *to displease*, with dat.
 Dispon-ère (disposu-, disposit-, dis+ponere), *to place in different directions, arrange, dispose*.
 Disput-are (av-, at-), *to dispute, discuss*.
 Dissent-ire (dissens-, dissens-, dis+sentire, 427, III.), *to differ in opinion, dissent*.
 Dissert-ère (dissera-, dissert-, 407), *to treat of, discuss*.
 Dissolv-ère (dissolv-, dissolut-, dis+solvere), *to dissolve*.
 Dist-are, *to be distant, or apart* (di+stare).
 Distribu-ere (distribu-, distribut-,) *to divide or distribute among*, 422.
 Ditissimus, superl. of dives.
 Diu, adv., *long*; compar., diutius, *longer*.
 Divers-us, a, um, *different*.
 Dives, (divis) is, 371, E. 1, *rich*.
 Divico, (Divicôn) is, *Divico*, proper name.
 Divid-ère (divis-, divis-), *to divide*.
 Divin-us, a, um, *divine*.
 Divitiæ-us, i, *Divitiacus*, proper name.
 Divitiæ, arum, 57, E., *riches, wealth*.
 Doc-ère (docu-, doct-), *to teach*.
 Docilis, is, e, 104, *docile, teachable*.
 Dol-ère (dolu-, dolit-), *to grieve*.
 Dolor, (dolôr) is, 319, *grief, pain*.
 Dol-us, i, *fraud, deceit*.
 Dom-are (domu-, domit-, 387, II.), *to subdue*.
 Domicili-um, i, *dwelling*.
 Domin-us, i, *master*, of house or slaves.
 Dom-us, i and us, 112, 3, *house, home*; domi, *at home*; domum, *to one's house*.
 Dorm-ire (dormiv-, dormit-), *to sleep*.
 Draco, (dracôn) is, 331, *dragon*.

Druides, um, *Druids*, priests of ancient Britain.
 Dubit-are (av-, at-), *to doubt, hesitate*.
 Dubitatio, (dubitatiôn) is, 333, E., *doubt*.
 Dubi-us, a, um, *doubtful*.
 Duc-ère (dax-, duct-), *to lead*.
 Dulcis, is, e, 104, *sweet*.
 Dum, conj., *while, so long as, until*.
 Dumnorix, (Dumnorig) is, *Dumnoriz*, proper name.
 Duo, two, 194.
 Duodecim, indecl., *twelve*.
 Duplic-are (av-, at-), *to double*.
 Dur-are (-av-, at-), intrans., *to endure, last*; trans., *to harden*.
 Dur-us, a, um, *hard*.
 Dux, (duc) is, *leader, guide, commander*.

E.

E or ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.
 Ecquis, interrog. pron., 178, 7, *any one?*
 Ed-ère, or esse (ed-, es-, 601), *to eat*.
 Educ-are (av-, at-), *to train, educate*.
 Educ-ère (edux-, educt-), *to lead out*.
 Effect-us, ūs, *effect*.
 Effemin-are (av-, at-, ex+femina), *to effeminate, make womanish*.
 Ego, I, 120.
 Egregi-us, a, um, *excellent, remarkable*.
 Elegans, (elegant) is, 107, *elegant*.
 Eloquent, (eloquent) is, 107, *eloquent*.
 Em-ère (ēm-, empt-), *to buy*.
 Emic-ère (emicu-, 387, II.), *to shine or flash forth*.
 Enim, conj., *for*, 442, e.
 Enunti-are (av-, at-), *to divulge*.
 Eo, adv., *there, to that place, on that account, by so much*.
 Eodem, adv., *to the same place*.

Epistol-a, æ, *letter*.
Eques, (equit) is, *horse soldier*.
Equester, tris, tre, 428, a, *belonging to cavalry*. *Equestri prælio*, in a battle of cavalry.
Equit-are (av-, at-), *to ride on horse-back*.
Equitat-us, ñs, *cavalry*.
Equ-us, i, *horse*.
Erip-ère (eripu-, arept, e+rapere), *to take away from, snatch away*.
Err-are (av-, at-) *to err, wander*.
Erump-ère (erûp-, erupt-), *to burst forth, sally out*.
Esse, *to be*, 650; *esse*, *to eat*, see *edere*.
Et, conj., *and*. **Et—et**, both—and.
Etenim, conj., *for*.
Etiam, conj., *also, even*.
Etsi, conj., *although*.
Europ-a, æ, *Europe*.
Evoc-are (av-, at-, e+vocare), *to call out*.
Ex, prep. with abl. See **E**.
Exced-ère (excess-, éxcess-, ex+cedere), *to go away, depart out of*.
Exclam-are (av-, at-), *to cry out*.
Excip-ère (excêp-, except-, ex+capere), *to receive*.
Excit-are (av-, at-), *to raise, kindle, excite*.
Excusatio, (excusation) is, 333, R., *excuse*.
Exe-dere (exêd-, exes-, ex+edere), *to eat up, consume, corrode*.
Exempl-um, i, *example*.
Exerc-ère (exercu-, exercit-), *to exercise, practice*.
Exercit-us, ñs, *army*.
Exigu-us, a, um, *small*.
Ex-ire (exiv- and exi-, exit-), *to go out, depart*.
Existim-are (av-, at-), *to think, judge*.
Existimatio, (existimatiôn) is, 333, R., *opinion*.
Expect-are (av-, at-), *to wait for*.

Expedit, impers., 583, *it is expedient*.
Expeditio, (expeditiôn) is, 333, R., *military expedition*.
Expell-ere (expul-, expuls-, ex+pellere), *to expel, drive out*.
Expers, (expert) is, 107, *devoid of*, with gen. or abl., 336.
Expet-ère (expetiv-, expetit-), *to covet, desire earnestly*.
Explorator, (explorator) is, 319, *scout*.
Expon-ère (exposu-, exposit-, ex+ponere), *to place out, set forth, explain*.
Expugn-are (av-, at-, ex+pugnare), *to take by storm*.
Extra, prep. with accus., *outside of, without*.
Extrem-us, a, um, superl. of *exterus*, 370, *the last, outermost*.
Exur-ère (exuss-, exust-, ex+urere), *to burn up*.

F.

Faber, bri, *artificer, workman*.
Fabul-a, æ, *fable, story*.
Fac-ere (io, fêc-, fact-), *to make, do*.
Facilê, adv., *easily*.
Facilis, is, e, 104, *easy*.
Facultas, (facultât) is, 293, *power of doing; hence means, resources*.
Facund-us, a, um, *eloquent*.
Fall-ere (fefell-, fals-), *to deceive*.
Fam-a, æ, *rumour, fame*.
Fames, (fam) is, 300, *hunger*.
Famili-a, æ, *family, gang of slaves*.
Familiaris, e, *belonging to the familia*. *Res familiaris*, *property*.
Fat-ëri (fass-), dep., *to confess*.
Fat-um, i, *fate*.
Fav-ère (fäv-, faut-, 395, v.), *to favour*.
Felix, (felic) is, 104, *happy*.
Femin-a, æ, *woman*.
Fer-a, æ, *wild beast*.
Fere, adv., *almost*.
Ferre (tul-, lat-, 596), *to bear*.

Ferocul-us, a, um, *surly*.
Ferox, (ferôc) is, 107, *fierce*.
Ferr-um, i, *iron*.
Festin-are (av-, at-), *to hasten*.
Fid-es, ei, *faith*.
Fieri (fact-), 600, used as pass. of facere; *to be made, to become*.
Figur-a, æ, *figure*.
Fili-a, æ, *daughter*, dat. and abl. pl. *filibus*.
Fili-us, i, *son*, 62, R., 2.
Fin-is, (fin) is, m., *end, boundary*; *fines, boundaries, territories*.
Finitim-us, a, um, *neighbouring*.
Firm-us, a, um, *strong, firm*.
Fit, *it happens*, pres. indic. of fio, fieri.
Flagiti-um, i, *disgraceful crime, infamy*.
Flamm-a, æ, *flame*.
Fl-êre (flêv, flêt-, 395. II.), *to weep*.
Flet-us, ûs, *weeping*.
Flos, (flôr) is, 331, b, *flower*.
Fluct-us, ûs, *wave*.
Flumen, (flumin) is, 344, a, *river*.
Fluvi-us, i, *river*.
Fœdus, (fœdër) is, 344, b, *treaty, league*.
Foli-um, i, *leaf*.
Fons, (font) is, m., 293, R., *fountain*.
Foris, (for) is, 300, *door*; used mostly in plur., *fores*.
Form-a, æ, *form*.
Formid-are (av-, at-), *to fear, be afraid of*.
Formos-us, a, um, *handsome*.
Forsitan, adv., *perhaps*.
Forte, adv., *by chance*.
Fort-is, is, e, 107, *brave*.
Fortiter, 215, 2, b, *bravely*.
Fortitudo, (fortitudin) is, 339, *fortitude, courage*.
Fortun-a, æ, *fortune*.
Fortunat-us, a, um, *fortunate*.
For-um, i, *forum*.
Foss-a, æ, *ditch*.

Fræn-um, i, *bridle*, 396; pl., *fræni and fræna*.
Frater, (fratr) is, *brother*.
Fratern-us, a, um, *fraternal*.
Fraus, (fraud) is, 293, *fraud*.
Frigus, (frigör) is, 344, b, *cold*.
Fruct-us, ûs, *fruit*.
Frument-ari (frumentat-), dep., *to collect corn*.
Frument-um, i, *corn*.
Frustra, adv., *in vain*.
Fug-a, æ, *flight*.
Fug-are (av-, at-), *to rout, put to flight*.
Fug-ax, (fugac) is, 107, *fugitive, fleeting*.
Fug-êre (io, fûg-, fugit), *to flee*.
Fulgur, (fulgür) is, 325, *lightning*.
Fund-ere (fûd-, fûs-), *to pour out, to overthrow, discomfit*.
Funditor, (funditör) is, 319, *slinger*.
Futur-us, a, um, *future*.

G.

Galb-a, æ, *Galba*.
Galli-a, æ, *Gaul*.
Gallin-a, æ, *hen*.
Gall-us, i, *a Gaul*.
Garumn-a, æ, *Garonne (river)*.
Gaud-êre (gavisus sum), *to rejoice*.
Gaudi-um, i, *joy*.
Gener, i, *son-in-law*.
Genev-a, æ, *Geneva*.
Gens, (gent) is, 293, *nation*.
Genus, (gener) is, 344, b, *race, class*.
Ger-êre (gess-, gest-), *to carry on; gerere bellum, to carry on war*.
German-us, i, *a German*.
Gladi-us, i, *sword*.
Glori-a, æ, *glory*.
Græc-us, a, um, *Greek*.
Grando, (grandin) is, 339, *hail*.
Grati-a, æ, *influence, favour, popularity*.
Gratul-ari (gratulat-), dep., *to congratulate*.

Grat-us, a, um, *agreeable*.
 Gravis, is, e, *heavy, severe*.
 Graviter, adv., *heavily, disagreeable*; *graviter fert, he is indignant at*.
 Gregatim, adv., *in flocks*.
 Gubern-are (av-, at-), *to steer, direct, govern*.
 Gubernator, (gubernatōr) is, 319, *pilot, governor*.

H.

Hab-ēre (habu-, habit-), *to have, hold, esteem*.
 Hannibal, (Hannibal) is, *Hannibal*.
 Haud, adv., *not*.
 Helveti-us, i, a *Helvetian*.
 Herb-a, æ, *herb*.
 Hercyni-us, a, um, *Hercynian*; *Hercynia sylva, the Hercynian forest*.
 Heri, adv., *yesterday*.
 Hibern-a, orum, *winter-quarters*.
 Hiberni-a, æ, *Ireland*.
 Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*, 156.
 Hiem-are (av-, at-), *to winter*.
 Hiems, (hiem) is, 293, *winter*.
 Hirundo, (hirundin) is, 339, *swallow*.
 Hispani-a, æ, *Spain*.
 Hispan-us, i, a *Spaniard*.
 Histori-a, æ, *history*.
 Hodie, adv., *to-day*.
 Homer-us, i, *Homer*.
 Homo, (homin) is, m., *man*.
 Honest-e, adv., *honourably*.
 Honest-us, a, um, *honourable*.
 Honor, (honōr) is, 319, *honour*.
 Hor-a, æ, *hour*.
 Horati-us, i, *Horace*.
 Hort-ari (hortat-), *to exhort, dep.*
 Hort-us, i, *garden*.
 Hospes, (hospit) is, c, *guest, host*.
 Hostis, (hoat) is, c, *enemy*.
 Human-us, a, um, *human*.
 Humanitas, (humanitāt) is, 293, *cultivation, refinement, humanity*.
 Humilis, is, e, 107, *low*.

I

Ibi, adv., *there*.
 Idem, eadem, idem, *the same*, 150.
 Idone-us, a, um, *fit, suitable*.
 Idus, iduum (4th declen.), *the Ides*.
 112, 2.
 Ignavi-a, æ, *indolence, cowardice*.
 Ignav-us, a, um, *indolent, cowardly*.
 Ignis, (ign) is, m., 302, R., *fire*.
 Ignomini-a, æ, *disgrace, ignominy*.
 Ignor-are (av-, at-), *to be ignorant*.
 Ignoratio, (ignoratiō) is, 333, R., *ignorance*.
 Ille, illa, illud, *this, that*, 158.
 Imago, (imagin) is, 339, *image*.
 Imber, (imbr) is, 320, *shower of rain*.
 Immemor, (immemor) is, 107, *unmindful, with gen.*
 Immens-us, a, um, *immense*.
 Immortalis, is, e, 104, *immortal*.
 Impediment-um, i, *hinderance*; *impedimenta, pl., the baggage of an army*.
 Imped-ire (iv-, it-), *to hinder, impede*.
 Impend-ēre, *to hang over*.
 Imper-are (av-, at-), *to command, with dat.*
 Imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319, *commander, general*.
 Imperi-um, i, *command*.
 Impetr-are (av-, at-), *to accomplish, effect, obtain*.
 Impet-us, ūs, *onset, attack*; *impetum facere, to make an attack*.
 Impiē, adv., 215, 1, *impiously*.
 Impi-us, a, um, *impious*.
 Impl-ēre (implēv-, implēt-), *to fill up*.
 Implor-are (av-, at-), *to implore*.
 Impon-ēre (imposu-, imposit-, in-ponere, 407), *to place in or upon*.
 Import-are (av-, at-), *to bring in, import*.
 Improb-us, a, um, *wicked, dishonest*.
 In, prep. with acc., *into, against*, with abl., *in, among*.

- Incend-ère (incend-, incens-), *to set fire to, to burn.*
 Incert-us, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
 Incip-ère (ic-, inoep-, incept-), *to begin.*
 Incol-a, æ, *inhabitant.*
 Incol-ère (incolu-, incult-), *to dwell in, inhabit.*
 Incommod-um, i, *inconvenience.*
 Incredibilis, is, e, 104, *incredible.*
 Increp-ère (increpu-, increpit-, 390), *to chide.*
 Incus-ère (av-, at-), *to blame.*
 Inde, adv., *thence.*
 Indici-um, i, *private information.*
 Indign-us, a, um, *unworthy.*
 Induc-ère (indux-, induct-), *to lead to, induce.*
 Indulg-ère (induls-, indult-), with dat., *to indulge.*
 Ineptiæ, arum, 57, R., *folly.*
 Inerti-a, æ, *idleness.*
 Infans, (infant) is, c, *infant*; (in+fari, *that cannot speak*).
 Inferior, (inferiör) is, comp. of inferus, 370, *inferior, lower.*
 Inferre (intul-, illat-, in+ferre), *to bring upon; bellum alicui inferre, to wage war upon any one.*
 Ingeni-um, i, *talent.*
 Ingens, (ingent) is, 107, *great, enormous.*
 Inimiciti-a, æ, *enmity.*
 Inimic-us, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly, with dat.*
 Initi-um, i, *beginning.*
 Injuri-a, æ, *injury, outrage.*
 Injust-us, a, um, *unjust.*
 Innocens, (innocent) is, 107, *innocent.*
 Innocenti-a, æ, *innocence.*
 Innumerabilis, is, e, 104, *innumerable.*
 Inops, (inop) is, 107, *poor.*
 Inquam, *I say*; inquit, *says he*, 610.
- Insciens, (inscient) is, 107, *not knowing.*
 Insect-um, i, *insect.*
 Insequ-i (insecüt-), dep., *to pursue.*
 Insidi-æ, arum, 57, R., *snare, ambush.*
 Instig-ère (av-, at-), *to instigate.*
 Institut-um, i, *purpose, plan.*
 Instru-ère (instrux-, instruct-, in+struere), *to draw up in battle array.*
 Insul-a, æ, *island.*
 Intellig-ère (intellex-, intellect-), *to perceive, understand.*
 Intent-us, a, um, *intent, bent upon.*
 Inter, prep. with accus., *between, among.*
 Interced-ère (intercess-, intercess-), *to intervene.*
 Interdiu, adv., *by day.*
 Interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
 Inter-esse (interfu-), *to be among, to differ; nihil interest, it makes no difference.*
 Interfectör, (interfectör) is, 319, *slayer.*
 Interfic-ère (interfēc-, intersect-, inter+facere), *to slay, kill.*
 Interim, adv., *in the mean while.*
 Interitus, æs, *perishing, destruction, death.*
 Interregn-um, i, *interreign.*
 Interrog-ère (av-, at-), *to ask, interrogate.*
 Intu-eri (intuit-), dep., *to look upon.*
 Inven-ire (invēn-, invent-), *to find, discover.*
 Invoc-ère (av-, at-), *to call upon, invoke.*
 Ipse, a, um, 159, *self.*
 Ir-a, æ, *anger.*
 Iracundi-a, æ, *wrathfulness, wrath.*
 Ire (iv-, it-), 605, *to go.*
 Irrump-ère (irrūp-, irrupt-, in+rampere), *to break into.*
 Is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it*, 153.

Iste, a, ud, *that*, 157.

Ita, adv., *so, thus*.

Itali-a, æ, *Italy*.

Iter, (itiner) is, n., *journey, way, march*.

J.

Jac-ère (jēc-, jact-), *to cast, hurl*.

Jact-äre (av-, at-), *to discuss*.

Jacul-um, i, *dart*.

Jam, adv., *now, already*.

Jan-us, i, *Janus*.

Jub-ère (juss-, juss-), *to order*.

Jucund-us, a, um, *pleasant*.

Judex, (judic) is, 306, *judge*.

Judic-äre (av-, at-), *to judge*.

Judici-um, i, *trial, judgment*.

Jugurth-a, æ, *Jugurtha*.

Jug-um, i, *yoke*.

Jument-um, i, *beast of burden*.

Jung-ère (junn-, junct-), *to join*.

Juno, (Junōn) is, f., *Juno* (goddess).

Jupiter, Jovis, 351, *Jupiter*.

Jur-a, æ, *Jura* (mountain east of Gaul).

Jur-äre (av-, at-), *to swear*.

Jus, (jūr) is, 344, *law, right*.

Juss-us, ūs, *command*.

Justiti-a, æ, *justice*.

Just-us, a, um, *just*.

Juv-äre (jäv-, jūt-), *to help*.

Juvenis, is, *a youth*.

Juventus, (juventāt) is, 293, *youth*.

Juxta, prep. with acc., *near*.

K.

Kalend-æ, arum, *Kalends*.

L.

Labienus, i, *Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenant-generals.

Labor, (labōr) is, 319, *labour, toil*.

Labor-äre (av-, at-), *to labour*.

Lac, (lact) is, 346, 2, *milk*.

Lacess-ère (iv-, it-, 406, III., b), *to provoke, harass*.

Lacrym-a, æ, *tear*.

Lac-us, ūs, *lake*.

Lapis, (lapid) is, 295, 3, *stone*.

Larg-iri (it-), dep., *to give largess, to bribe*, 515.

Larg-iter, adv., 215, 2, b, *largely*; largiter potent, *he can largely*, i. e., *he is quite powerful*.

Lat-ē, adv., 215, 1, *widely* (lat-us, wide).

Latin-us, a, um, *Latin*.

Latitudo, (latitudin) is, 340, *breadth* (from latus, broad).

Lati-us, adv., *more widely* (compar of latē, 376).

Latro, (latron) is, 331, a, *robber*.

Lat-us, a, um, *broad, wide*.

Laud-äre (av-, at-), *to praise*.

Laus, (laud) is, 293, *praise*.

Legatio, (legation) is, 333, R., *embassy*.

Legat-us, i, *lieutenant, ambassador*.

Lēg-ère (lēg-, lect-, 416, a), *to read*.

Legio, (legion) is, 333, R., *legion*.

Lemann-us, i, *Lake Lemman*, or *Geneva*.

Leo, (leon) is, 333, *lion*.

Lepus, (lepōr) is, m., 345, 4, *hare*.

Lev-äre (av-, at-), *to lighten, alleviate*.

Lex, (leg-) is, 293, *law*.

Libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly*.

Liber, libri, 64, *book*.

Liberalitas, (liberalitat) is, 293, *liberality*.

Liber-ē, 215, 1, *freely* (from liber, free).

Liber-i, orum, 65, R., *children*.

Liber-tas, (libertat) is, 293, *freedom, liberty*.

Libet, 583, libebat, libuit, or libitum est, impers., *it is agreeable, it pleases, it suits*.

Lic-ēri (licit), dep., *to bid money, to offer a price*.

Licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is allowed, it is lawful, one must*, 583.

Lili-um, i, *lily*.

Lingu-a, æ, *language*.

Litter-a, æ, *a letter* (as of the alphabet); litter-æ, arum (pl.), *a letter*, i. e., *an epistle*.

Littus, (littor) is, 344, *b, shore*.

Livi-us, i, *Livy*, a Roman historian.

Loc-us, i and a, 309, *place*.

Long-ë, adv., 215, 1, *far, long*: (long-us.)

Longitudo, (longitudin) is, 339, *length*: (longus.)

Long-us, a, um, *long*.

Loqu-i (locüt-), dep., *to speak*.

Lubet. See libet.

Luct-us, ūs, *grief*.

Lud-ëre (lūs-, lūs-, 401, 3, ð), *to play*.

Lud-us, i, *sport, game, play*.

Lun-a, æ, *moon*.

Lup-us, i, *wolf*.

Lux, (luc) is, 293, *light*.

M.

Macul-äre (av-, at-), *to stain*.

Magis, adv., *more*.

Magister, tri (64), *master, teacher*.

Magistrat-us, ūs, *a magistrate*.

Magnanimus, a, um (magn-us+animus), *high-spirited, magnanimous*.

Magnitudo, (magnitudin) is (340), *extent, greatness*.

Magnus, a, um, *great*; comp., maior, *greater*.

Malë, adv. (215, 1, R.), *badly*.

Maleficio, i (800, 2), *evil deed, crime*.

Malle (592), *to be more willing, to prefer*; perf., malui.

Mälum, i, *evil, misfortune*.

Man-ëre (mans-, mans-), 665, III., *to remain*.

Manus, ūs (f., 112, 2), *hand, band of soldiers*.

Mare, (mar) is (314), *sea*.

Massilia, æ, *Marseilles*.

Mater, (matr) is (f., 25, 2), *mother*.

Matrimonium, i, *matrimony*.

Matrona, æ, *the Marne*, a river of Gaul.

Matur-äre (av-, at-), *to hasten*.

Maxim-ë (adv., 376), *most, most greatly, in the highest degree*.

Maxim-us, a, um (sup. of magnus, 370), *greatest*.

Me (acc. and abl. of ego, I), *me*; mecum, *with me* (125, II., ð).

Medicin-a, æ, *medicine*.

Mediterrane-us, a, um, *Mediterranean* (medi-us+terr-a).

Medi-us, a, um, *middle*.

Meli-us, adv. (376), *better*.

Memini (defect., 611), *I remember*; meminisse, *to remember*.

Memori-a, æ, *memory*; memoria tenëre, *to hold in memory, to remember*.

Mens, (ment) is, f., *mind*.

Mercatör, (mercator) is (319), *merchant*.

Meridi-es, ei (m., 115), *mid-day, noon*.

Merit-um, i, *merit, desert*.

Metall-um, i, *metal*.

Met-ëre (messu-, mess-, 666, II., ð), *to reap*.

Met-iri (mens-), dep., *to measure*.

Metu-ëre (metu-, 666, VI., a), *to fear*.

Me-us, a, um (122), *my, mine*.

Mic-äre (micu-, 664, II.), *to glitter, shine*.

Migr-äre (av-, at-), *to migrate*.

Miles, (milit) is, *soldier*.

Mille (sing. indecl., pl. millia, ium), *thousand*.

Minerv-a, æ, *Minerva*.

Minim-us, a, um, *least* (superl. of parvus, 370).

Minor (minus), 358, *less* (compar. of parvus, 370).

Minu-ëre (minu-, mindt-), *to diminish*.

Mirabil-is, is, e, *wonderful*.
 Mirific-us, a, um, *causing wonder, astonishing* (mir-us+facere).
 Miser, a, um (77, b), *miserable, wretched*.
 Miseret (impers., 579, a), *one pities; me miseret, I pity*.
 Mitig-äre (av-, at-), *to mitigate*.
 Mitt-äre (mis-, miss-, 401, 3, b), *to send*.
 Mod-us, i, *measure, manner*.
 Mœnia, ium (used only in pl.), *walls*.
 Mœror, (mœrôr) is (319), *sadness*.
 Mon-äre (monu-, monit-), *to advise, warn, remind*.
 Monstr-äre (av-, at-), *to show*.
 Mord-äre (momord-, mors-, 395, IV.), *to bite, champ*.
 Mor-i, and mor-iri (mort-), dep., *to die*.
 Mortal-is, is, e, *mortal*.
 Mors, (mort) is, 293, *death*.
 Mos, (môr) is, 331, 1, b, *custom, manner*.
 Mot-us, ūs, *motion, moving*.
 Mov-äre (môv-, môt-, 395, V.), *to move*.
 Mûlier, (mûlier) is, (f.), *woman*.
 Multitudo, (multitudin) is, 340, *multitude*.
 Mult-us, a, um, *much, many*.
 Mund-us, i, *world*.
 Mun-ire (iv-, it-), *to fortify*.
 Munitio, (manition) is, 333, R., *fortification*.
 Munus, (muner) is, 344, 3, b, *office, gift*.
 Murus, i, *wall*.
 Mut-äre (äv-, ät-), *to change*.

N.

Nam, conj., *for*.
 Nasc-i (nat-), dep., *to be born, spring from*.
 Nat-äre (äv-, ät-), *to swim*.
 Naut-a, æ (m.), *sailor*.

Natio, (natiôn) is, 333, R., *nation*.
 Natur-a, æ, *nature*.
 Naval-e, (naval) is, 314, *a dock-yard*.
 Navigatio, (navigation) is, 333, R., *navigation, voyage*.
 Nav-is, (nav) is, 300, *ship*.
 Nē, interrogative particle, 135, II., a.
 Nē, adv., *not*, -used imperatively, 534, a; conj., *that not*, 548, b.
 Nec, conj., *nor*.
 Neg-äre (äv-, ät-), *to deny, refuse*.
 Neglig-äre (neglex-, neglect-, 666, V., a), *to neglect*.
 Negligens, (negligent) is, 107, *negligent*.
 Negoti-um, i, *matter, business*.
 Nemo, (nemin) is, c, *no one*.
 Neque, conj., *neither, nor*, 515.
 Nequidem, adv., *not even*, 217; always separated by the words which have the emphasis; e. g., ne Socrates quidem, *not even Socrates*.
 Nervi-us, i, *a Nervian* (people of Gaul).
 Nerv-us, i, *a sinew*.
 Nesc-ire (iv-, it-), *to be ignorant, not to know* (ne+scire).
 Neuter, tra, trum, 194, 1, *neither of the two*.
 Nidific-äre (äv-, at-), *to build a nest* (nidus+facere).
 Niger, nigra, nigrum, 77, a, *black*.
 Nihil, n., indecl., *nothing*.
 Nimi-us, a, um, *too much*.
 Nit-i (nis- and nix-), dep., *to strive*.
 Nisi, conj., *unless, if not*.
 Nobilis, is, e, *noble, illustrious*.
 Nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293, *nobility*.
 Noc-äre (nocû-, nocît-), *to hurt, with dat.*
 Noctû, adv., *by night*.
 Nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling*, 592.
 Nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a, *name*.
 Nôn, adv., *not*.

Nonne, interrogative particle (expects answer *yes*).
 Nonnullus, a, um, *some*; nonnulli, *some (persons)*.
 Nonnunquam, adv., *sometimes*.
 Non-us, a, um, *ninth*.
 Nos, *we*, 120.
 Nosc-ère (nôv-, nôt-), *to learn, know*.
 Noster, tra, trum, 122, *our*.
 Nôv-i (gen. of novus), *news*, 174 (vocab.).
 Nôv-i, defective, *I know*, 611; *no-visse, to know*.
 Novissimus, a, um (superl. of novus), *newest, latest*; novissimum agmen, *the rear-rank*.
 Novitas, (novitât) is, 293, *novelty (novus)*.
 Nov-us, a, um, *new*.
 Nox, (noct) is, 293, *night*.
 Nub-es, (nub) is, 300, *cloud*.
 Nud-us, a, um, *naked*.
 Nullus, a, um, gen. nullius, dat. nulli, 194, 1, *no one, none*.
 Num (interrog. particle), *whether (expects the answer no, 174)*.
 Numa, æ (m.), *Numa*.
 Numer-us, i, *number*.
 Nunti-äre (äv-, ât-), *to announce*.
 Nunti-us, i, *a messenger*.
 Nunquam, adv., *never*.
 Nuptiæ, ærum, 57, R., *a marriage*.
 Nutrix, (nutric) is, 293, *nurse*.

O.

Ob (prep. with acc.), *on account of*.
 Obæratu-s, a, um, *a debtor*.
 Obscur-äre (äv-, ât-), *to obscure*.
 Obsecr-äre (äv-, ât-), *to beseech*.
 Obses, (obsid) is (c), *hostage*.
 Obstring-ère (obstrinx-, obstrict-), *to bind*: ob+stringere.
 Obtin-ère (obtinu-, obtent-), *to hold, maintain*: ob+tenère.
 Occas-us, ūs, *setting, e. g., of the sun*; occasû solis, *sunset*, 118, II., c.

Occidens, (occident) is, m. (sol understood), *west*.
 Occid-ère (occid-, occäs-, ob+cadere), *to fall, set, die*.
 Occid-ère (occid-, occis-, ob+cadere), *to slay, kill*.
 Occup-äre (äv-, ât-), *to seize, take possession of*.
 Oceanus, i, *ocean*.
 Octavus, a, um, *eighth*.
 Octoginta (indecl.), *eighty*.
 Octoni, æ, a, *eight each, eight at a time*, 197.
 Ocul-us, i, *eye*.
 Odi (defect., 611), *I hate*; odiſſe, *to hate*.
 Odi-um, i, *hatred*.
 Offend-ère (offend-, offens-, ob+fendere), *to offend*.
 Olim, adv., *once upon a time, formerly*.
 Omnino, adv., *altogether, in all*.
 Omnis, is, e, *all, every, the whole*; omnis res, *the whole affair*.
 Onus, (oner) is, 344, *b, burden, load*.
 Oper-a, æ, *toil, labour*.
 Operet (impers., 583), oportebat, oportuit, *it behooves, one ought*.
 Oppidan-us, a, um, *of or belonging to a town, a townsman*.
 Oppid-um, i, *a town*.
 Opprim-ère (oppress-, oppress-, ob+premere), *to repress, crush*.
 Oppugn-äre (äv-, ât-), *to attack, besiege (ob+pugnare)*.
 Ops, opis, 293, *power*; opes, *resources, means*.
 Optim-us, a, um, *best (superl. of bonus)*.
 Opulens, (opulent) is, 107, *rich, opulent*.
 Opus, (oper) is, 344, *b, work*.
 Oracul-um, i, *oracle*.
 Or-äre (äv-, ât-), *to pray, beg, beseech*.
 Oratio, (oration) is, 333, R., *oration, speech*.

Orator, (orator) is, 319, *orator*.
 Orb-is, (orb) is (m., 302, R.), *orb, circle*; orbis terrarum, *the world*.
 Ordo, (ordin) is (m., 340, exc.), *order*.
 Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is, *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian chieftain.
 Origo, (origin) is, 339, *origin*.
 Oriri (ort-), dep., *to rise*.
 Orn-are (av-, at-), *to adorn*.
 Ornatus, a, um, *adorned*, part. of ornare.
 Ostend-äre (ostend-, ostens-, ob-tendere), *to show*.
 Ostent-äre (av-, at-), *to vaunt*.

P.

Pabulatio, (pabulation) is, 333, R., *foddering, foraging*.
 Pæne, adv., *almost*.
 Pag-us, i, *village, canton*.
 Palüs, (palüd) is, 293, *marsh*.
 Par-äre (av-, at-), *to prepare*.
 Parat-us, a, um, *prepared, ready* (part. pass. of parare).
 Parc-äre (peper-, par- and parci-, 666, IV., b), *to spare*, with dat.
 Par-äre (paru-), with dat., *to obey*.
 Pars, (part) is, 293, *part*.
 Parsimoni-a, æ, *parsimony, frugality*.
 Parv-us, a, um, *small, little*.
 Pastor, (pastor) is, 319, *shepherd*.
 Pater, (patr) is, *father*; patres, um, *patricians of Rome*.
 Pat-äre (patä-), *to be open, extend*.
 Pat-i, (pass-), dep., *to suffer*.
 Patienter, adv., 215, 2, b, *patiently*.
 Patienti-a, æ, *patience, endurance*.
 Paucitas, (paucitat) is, 293, *fewness*.
 Pauci, æ, a, *few*.
 Paullisper, adv., *for a little while*.
 Panno, adv., *a little*; paullo longius, *a little too far*.
 Pauper, (pauper) is, 107, *poor*.
 Paupertas, (paupertat) is, 293, *poverty*.

Pax, (pac) is, 293, *peace*.
 Pecc-äre (av-, at-), *to sin*.
 Peccat-um, i, *sin*.
 Pecuni-a, æ, *money*.
 Pedes, (pedit) is, 306, *foot-soldier*.
 Pell-äre (pepül-, puls-, 411, b), *to drive, rout, expel, defeat*.
 Pellis, (pell) is, 300, *hide, skin*.
 Pend-äre (pend-, pens-, 666, IV., a), *to weigh, pay*.
 Pene, adv., *almost*.
 Peninsul-a, æ, *peninsula* (pene+insula).
 Per (prep. with accus.), *through, during*.
 Perdives, (perdivit) is, 107, *very rich*.
 Perduc-äre (perdux-, perduct-, per+ducere), *to lead through, bring along*.
 Perfacilis, is, e, *very easy*.
 Perferre (pertül-, perlat-, per+ferre), *to convey, bear through*.
 Perfic-äre (perfec-, perfect-, per+facere), *to accomplish, finish, bring to pass*.
 Perfring-äre (perfreg-, perfract-, per+frangere), *to break through*.
 Perfug-a, æ, *deserter*.
 Perg-äre (perrex-, perfect-), *to go on, go straight*.
 Pericul-um, i, *danger*.
 Per-ire (peri-, perit-, per+ire), *to perish*.
 Peritus, a, um, *skilful, skilled in* (with gen.).
 Permöv-äre (permöv-, permöt-), *to move thoroughly, to induce*.
 Pernici-es, ei, *destruction*.
 Perpauci, æ, a, *very few*.
 Perpetu-us, a, um, *perpetual*.
 Perrump-äre (perrüp-, perrupt-, per+trumpere), *to break through*.
 Pers-a, æ, *a Persian*.
 Persequ-i (persecüt-, per+sequi), dep., *to follow after, pursue*.

- Persever-äre (äv-, at-), *to persevere.*
- Persolv-äre (persolv-, persolüt-, per-
+solvere), *to pay up, pay in full*;
pœnas persolvere, *to suffer full
punishment.*
- Perspic-äre (perspex-, perspect-), *to
observe, get sight of. see plainly.*
- Persuad-äre (persuas-, persuas-), *to
persuade, convince.*
- Perterr-äre (perterru-, perterrît-), *to
frighten thoroughly.*
- Pertin-äre (pertinu-, per+tenere), *to
reach, belong to, extend to.*
- Perturb-äre (äv-, at-), *to disturb, con-
found.*
- Pervén-äre (vén-, vent-), *to arrive at,
come to.*
- Pes, (ped) is (m., 295, 3), *foot*; pe-
dem referre, *to draw back the
foot, to retreat.*
- Pet-äre (petiv-, petit-), *to seek, aim
at, strive after.*
- Petr-a, æ, *rock.*
- Phalanx, (phalang) is, 293, *phalanx.*
- Pharsalus, i, *Pharsalus, a town in
Thessaly.*
- Philosoph-ari (at-), dep., *to philoso-
phize.*
- Piget (impers., 579, a), piguit, *it
grieves, pains, disgusts*; *I am
Pil-um, i, javelin. [grieved at.*
- Pisc-is, (pisc) is (m., 302, R.), *fish.*
- Pius, a, um, *pious.*
- Plac-äre (placû-, placit-), *to please
(with dat.).*
- Placet (impers., 584, a), placuit, *it
pleases*; Cæsari placuit, *Cæsar
determined.*
- Placid-us, a, um, *calm, placid.*
- Plant-a, æ, *plant.*
- Plan-us, a, um, *level, plain.*
- Plato, (Platôn) is, *Plato.*
- Plebs, (plêb) is, 293, *common people.*
- Plen-us, a, um, *full.*
- Plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *most,
the greater part.*
- Plerumque, adv., *for the most part.*
- Plum-a, æ, *feather.*
- Plurim-us, a, um (superl. of multus),
most, very many.
- Plurimum, adv., *very much, in the
highest degree.*
- Pocul-um, i, *cup.*
- Pœn-a, æ, *punishment*; pœnas per-
solvere, *pay the full penalty.*
- Pœnitet (impers., 579), pœnituit, *it
repents*; me pœnitet, *I repent.*
- Pœt-a, æ (m.), *poet.*
- Pompeius, i, *Pompey.*
- Pon-äre (posû-, posit-), *to place,
castra ponere, to pitch the camp.*
- Pons, (pont) is (m., 295, 1), *bridge.*
- Popul-ari (at-), dep., *to plunder, lay
waste.*
- Popul-us, i, *people.*
- Port-a, æ, *gate.*
- Port-äre (äv-, at-), *to carry.*
- Port-ûs, ûs, *harbour.*
- Portori-um, i, *tax, customs duty.*
- Posc-äre (poposc-, 411, a), *to demand
(admits two accusatives).*
- Posse, potui, *to be able, can, 587.*
- Possessio, (possessiôn) is, 333, R.,
possession.
- Possid-äre (possêd-, possess-), *to
possess.*
- Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*
- Postea, adv., *afterward.*
- Poster-us, a, um, *after*; postero die,
on the day after, on the next day.
- Postquam, adv., *after that.*
- Postul-äre (äv-, at-), *to demand.*
- Potens, (potent) is, 107, *powerful.*
- Potestas, (potestat) is, 293, *power.*
- Pot-iri (it-), dep., with gen. or abl.,
to acquire, get possession of.
- Præ (prep. with abl.), *before.*
- Præb-äre (præbu-, præbit-), *to af-
ford.*
- Præced-ere (cess-, cess-), *to go be-
fore, excel.*
- Præceps, (præcipit) is, 107, *headlong.*

- Præceptor**, (præceptōr) is, a teacher, *preceptor*.
Præcept-um, i, *precept*.
Præcip-ère (cāp-, cept-, præ + capere), to command, enjoin.
Præclar-us, a, um, *illustrious*.
Præco, (præcōn) is, *herald*.
Præd-a, æ, *booty, prey*.
Præd-ari (at-), dep., to plunder, get *booty*.
Prædic-are (av-, at-), to declare.
Prædo, (prædōn) is, *pirate*.
Præesse, præfui, to be over, command (præ + esse), with dat.
Præferre (tūl-, lat-), to prefer.
Præfic-ère (fēc-, fect-, præ + facere), to place over.
Præmitt-ère (mis-, miss-), to send before.
Præmi-um, i, *reward*.
Prænunti-a, or prænuncia, æ, *harbinger*.
Præsertim, adv., *especially*.
Præsidi-um, i, *garrison, defence*.
Præstans, (præstant) is, 107, *excellent*.
Præst-are (stīt-, stīt-), to stand before, *excel*.
Præter, prep. with acc., *besides, except*.
Præter-ire (iv- and i-, it-, præter + ire, 605, 2), to pass by.
Prætor, (prætōr) is, a prætor (Roman magistrate).
Preti-um, i, *price, reward*.
Prex, (prec) is, 293, *prayer*.
Primus, a, um, *first*.
Princeps, (princip) is, 107, *chief* (used only as a noun).
Principat-ūs, ūs, *chieftainship, chief authority*.
Principi-um, i, *beginning, principle*.
Pristin-us, a, um, *ancient, former*.
Privatim, adv., *privately*.
Privat-us, a, um, *private*.
Prisquam, adv., *before that*.
Pro (prep. with abl.), *before, for, in view of*.
Prob-are (av-, at-), to prove.
Prob-itas, (probitāt) is, 293, *honesty*.
Prob-us, a, um, *honest*.
Proced-ère (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b), to advance, go forward.
Procell-a, æ, *tempest*.
Procurr-ère (curr-, curs-, pro + currere), to run forward.
Prod-esse (pro + esse), to profit, with dat.
Prælium, i, *battle, fight*.
Profectio, (profectiōn) is, 333, *R., setting out, departure*.
Proficisc-i (profect-), dep., to set out, depart.
Prohib-ère (prohibu-, prohibit-, pro + habere), to restrain, keep off.
Projic-ère (jēc-, ject-, pro + jacere), to throw forward, throw.
Prope (prep. with acc.), *near, nigh to; propius, nearer; proxime, nearest*.
Propell-ère (pul-, puls-, pro + pelere), drive on, drive away.
Proper-are (av-, at-), *hasten*.
Propinquus, a, um, *near to, related to; propinquus* (used as noun), a relation.
Propius. See *prope*.
Propon-ère (posu-, posit-, pro + ponere), to set before, propose.
Propter (prep. with accus.), on account of.
Propterea, adv., *therefore; propterea quod, because, for the reason that*.
Propuls-are (av-, at-), to ward off, avert, repel.
Prorsus, adv., *straight on, truly, precisely*.
Prosequ-i (prosecūt-), dep., to pursue.
Proverbi-um, i, *proverb*.
Providenti-a, æ, *Providence* (pro + videre).

Provinci-a, æ, *province*.

Proxim-us, a, um (superl., 371), *next, nearest*.

Ptolemæus, i, *Ptolemy*.

Pudet (impers., 579, a), puduit, *it shames, one is ashamed*.

Puell-a, æ, *girl*.

Puer, i, *boy*.

Pugn-are (av-, at-), *to fight*.

Pulvis, (pulver) is, 331, b, *dust*.

Pun-ire (iv-, it-), *to punish*.

Put-are (av-, at-), *to suppose, think, reckon*.

Pyrenæi (montes), *the Pyrenees, mountains between Gaul and Spain*.

Q.

Quadringenti, æ, a, *four hundred*.

Quær-ere (quæsi-v-, quæsi-t-), *to seek, ask, inquire into*.

Qualis, is, e, *of what kind; talis—qualis, such—as*, 184.

Quam, conj., *than*.

Quamdiu, adv., *how long*.

Quamvis, conj., *although*.

Quando, adv., *when*.

Quantus, a, um, *how great*, 184.

Quantuscunque, -acunque, -umcunque, *however great*, 184.

Quasi, adv., *as if*.

Quatern-i, æ, a, *four apiece, four at a time*, 189.

Quattuor, indecl., *four*.

Que, conj., *and*, 517, a.

Queo, *I am able*, 606.

Quer-i (quest-), *to complain*.

Qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, what*, 164.

Quia, conj., *because*.

Quid, neut. of quis, used interrog., *what? as adv., why?*

Quicumque, *whosoever*, 164, R.

Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam, *a certain one; plur., some*, 178, 1.

Quidem, adv., *indeed*.

Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, *any one, any you please*, 178, 2.

Quia, conj., *but that, that not*, 558, b.

Quindecim, indecl., *fifteen*.

Quingent-i, æ, a, *five hundred*.

Quinque, indecl., *five*.

Quint-us, a, um, *fifth*.

Quire, *to be able*, 606.

Quis, quæ, quid, interrog., *who, which, what?* 170.

Quisnam, quænam, quidnam? *pray who? what?* 171.

Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, quidpiam, *somebody, some*, 178, 4.

Quisquam, quicquam, or quodquam, *any, any one*, 178, 3.

Quisque, quæque, quodque, quidque, *each, every one*, 178, 6.

Quisquis, *whoever, whatever*, 637, 3.

Quivis, *any one you please*, 178, 2.

Quò, adv., *whither, in which direction?*

Quò, conj., *to the end that, that, so that*, 558, a.

Quod, conj., *because*.

Quod, rel. pron. neut. of qui.

Quominus, *that the less, that not, after verbs of hindering, &c.*, 558, c.

Quondam, adv., *formerly, at one time*.

Quoniam, conj., *since, because*.

Quoque, conj., *also*.

Quot, *so many, how many?* 184.

Quotannis, adv., *yearly*.

Quotidian-us, a, um, *daily*.

Quot-us, a, um, *what one? quota hora, what o'clock?*

Quum, conj., *when, since*, 561.

R.

Rapin-a, æ, *rapine, plunder*.

Ratio, (ration) is, 333, R., *reason, manner, plan*.

Rauracus, i, *a Rauracian, people of Gaul*.

- Rebellio**, (*rebelliō*) is, 333, R., *rebellion*.
- Reced-ēre** (*cess-, cess-*, 401, 3, *b*), to give way, retreat.
- Recip-ēre** (*cāp-, cept-, re+capere*, io, 416, c, 199), to receive back, take back; *se recipere*, to take one's self back, to go back.
- Rect-ē**, adv., 215, 1, *rightly*.
- Redd-ēre** (*reddid-, reddit-, re+dare*), 666, IV., c), give back, return, restore.
- Redintegr-āre** (*av-, at-*), to renew.
- Redim-ēre** (*redēm-, redempt-, re+emere*), to buy back, redeem, farm (as revenues).
- Reditio**, (*reditiō*) is, 333, R., *return* (*redire*).
- Reduc-ēre** (*dux-, duct-, re+ducere*), to bring, bring back.
- Referre** (*retūl-, relat-, re+ferre*), to bring back, to draw back; *pedem referre*, to retreat.
- Rēfert**, it matters, it concerns, it interests, 584, d.
- Refic-ēre** (*fēc-, fect-, re+facere*), to renew, rebuild.
- Reg-ēre** (*rex-, rect-*) to rule.
- Regin-a**, *q*, queen.
- Regn-āre** (*av-, at-*), to reign.
- Regn-um**, *i*, kingdom, royal power.
- Relinqu-ēre** (*reliqu-, relict-*), to leave.
- Reliqui-ē**, *arum*, 57, R., remains, remnant.
- Reliqu-us**, *a, um*, remaining.
- Reminisc-i** (*dep.*), to remember (with *gen.*).
- Remōv-ēre** (*remōv-, remōt-*), to remove.
- Renunti-āre** (*av-, at-*), to bring back word, report.
- Repell-ēre** (*repūl-, repul-, re+pellere*), to repel, drive back.
- Repente**, adv., suddenly.
- Reptentin-us**, *a, um*, sudden; *repentina res*, the sudden occurrence.
- Reper-ire** (*reper-, report-, 427, V.*), to find out, to discover.
- Repet-ēre** (*repetiv- and repeti-, repetit-*), to demand back, to ask again.
- Repugn-āre** (*av-, at-, re+pugnare*), to oppose, resist.
- Res, rei**, thing; *res novæ* (pl.), revolution; *res familiaris*, private property.
- Rescind-ēre** (*rescid-, resciss-*), to cut down, to cut in pieces.
- Resist-ēre** (*resist-, resist-*), 390, intrans., to halt, stop; with *dat.*, to resist.
- Respond-āre** (*respond-, respons-*, 665, IV.), to answer.
- Respublic-a**, *reipublicæ*, 351, 3, *republic, state*.
- Ret-e**, (*ret*) is, 312, *not*.
- Retin-āre** (*retinu-, retent-, re+tenere*), to restrain, hold back, retain.
- Revert-ēre** (*revert-, revers-*, 429), to turn back, return.
- Revert-i** (*revers-*), *dep.*, to return.
- Revoc-āre** (*av-, at-*), to call back, recall.
- Rex**, (*reg*) is (*m.*), king.
- Rhen-us**, *i*, Rhine (river).
- Rhetic-a**, *q*, rhetoric.
- Rhodan-us**, *i*, Rhone (river).
- Rid-ēre** (*ris-, ris-*), to laugh.
- Rip-a**, *q*, bank of a river.
- Ris-us**, *q*, laughter.
- Robur**, (*robor*) is, 344, *a*, strength.
- Rog-āre** (*av-, at-*), to ask.
- Roman-us**, *a, um*, Roman; *Romanus* (used as noun), a Roman.
- Romul-us**, *i*, Romulus.
- Ros-a**, *q*, a rose.
- Rot-a**, *q*, wheel.
- Ruber**, *bra, brum*, 77, *a*, red.
- Rumor**, (*rumōr*) is, 319, rumour, report.
- Rursus**, adv., backward, again.

S.

Sacer, *cra, crum*, 77, *a, sacred*. Mons Sacer, *the Sacred Mount*; sacra, *orum, sacred rites*.

Sæpe, *adv., often*.

Sæviti-a, *a, cruelty*.

Sagittari-us, *i, archer*.

Sagunt-um, *i, Saguntum, a town in Spain*.

Salt-äre (av-, at-), *to dance*.

Salus, (salüt) *is, 293, safety*.

Salv-us, *a, um, safe*.

San-äre (av-, at-), *to heal, cure*.

Sanct-us, *a, um, sacred*.

Sanguis, (sanguin) *is (m.), blood*.

Sapiens, (sapient) *is, 107, wise, a wise man*.

Sapienter, 215, 2, *b, wisely*.

Sapienti-a, *a, wisdom*.

Satis, *adv., enough*.

Satius, *comp. of satis; satius est, it is better*.

Schol-a, *a, school*.

Scienti-a, *a, science, knowledge*.

Scind-äre (scid-, sciss-), *to cut, cut down*.

Scipio, (Scipiön) *is, Scipio*.

Sc-ire (sciv-, scit-), *to know*.

Scrib-äre (scrips-, script-), *to write*.

Scriptor, (scriptör) *is, 319, writer*.

Se, *acc. of sui, 142*.

Seced-äre (secess-, secess-), *to secede*.

Secretö, *adv., secretly, privately*.

Secund-us, *a, um, second, following*.

Sed, *but*.

Sed-äre (söd-, sess-, 394, V.), *to sit, sit down*.

Seditios-us, *a, um, seditious*.

Semel, *adv., once; semel atque iterum, once and again*.

Sementis, (sement) *is, a sowing (of corn)*.

Semper, *adv., always*.

Sempitern-us, *a, um, eternal*.

Senat-us, *üs, senate*.

Senex, (sen) *is, 107, old, old man*.

Senectus, (senectüt) *is, 293, old age*.

Sen-i, *a, a, six each, six at a time, distrib., 189*.

Sententi-a, *a, opinion*.

Sent-ire (sens-, sens-), *to feel, think, perceive*.

Separ-äre (av-, at-), *to separate*.

Septem, *indecl., seven*.

September, *bris (m.), September*.

Septentrion-es, *um, the north, the seven stars composing Ursa Major*.

Septim-us, *a, um, seventh*.

Septuaginta, *indecl., seventy*.

Sequan-a, *a, Seine (river)*.

Sequan-us, *i, Sequanian (people of Gaul)*.

Sequ-i (secüt-), *dep., to follow*.

Ser-äre (säv-, sät-), *to sow, plant*.

Sermo, (sermön) *is, 331, speech*.

Serv-äre (av-, at-), *to keep, preserve*.

Serv-us, *i, slave*.

Severitas, (severität) *is, 293, severity*.

Sex, *indecl., six*.

Sext-us, *a, um, sixth*.

Si, *conj., if*.

Sic, *adv., so, thus*.

Sicut, *conj., so as, just as*.

Sidus, (sider) *is, 344, b, star, constellation*.

Sign-um, *i, standard, signal*.

Simil-is, *is, e, 104, like (with gen. or dat.)*.

Simul, *adv., together, at the same time; simulac, simulatque, as soon as*.

Sin, *conj., but if*.

Sine, *prep. with abl., without*.

Sitis, (sit) *is, 300, thirst*.

Socer, *i, 65, R., father-in-law*.

Societas, (societät) *is, 293, society, fellowship*.

Soci-us, *i, companion, ally*.

Socrates, (Socrat) *is, Socrates*.

Söl, (Söl) *is, the Sun*.

Solum, adv., *only*; *non solum*—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.

Sol-us, a, um, gen. *solius*, 194, R. 1, *alone*.

Somn-us, i, *sleep*.

Sordid-us, a, um, *sordid, mean*.

Soror, (*sorôr*) is, *sister*.

Sors, (*sort*) is, 293, *lot*.

Spati-um, i, *space, opportunity*; *spatium arma capiendi. time for taking up arms*, 492, a.

Speci-es, ei, *appearance*.

Spect-are (av-, at-), *to look, look at*.

Spes, ei, *hope*.

Splendid-us, a, um, *brilliant, splendid*.

Splendor, (*splendôr*) is, 319, *splendour, glare*.

St-are (*stët-, stät-*, 387, III.), *to stand*.

Statim, adv., *immediately*.

Statio, (*statiôn*) is, 333, R., *station, post*.

Statu-ere (*statû-, statût-*), *to appoint, fix, decide*.

Stell-a, æ, *star*.

Stipendi-um, i, *tribute, tax*.

Stipendiari-us, a, um, *tributary*.

Stoicus, i, *a Stoic*.

String-ere (*strinx-, strict-*), *to draw* (as a sword).

Studiosè, 215, 1, *zealously, studiously*.

Studi-um, i, *zeal, study, desire*.

Stultiti-a, æ, *folly*.

Stult-us, a, um, *foolish*; *stultus*, a *fool*.

Suad-ere (*suas-, suas-*), *to advise, to persuade*.

Suav-is, is, e, 104, *sweet*.

Sub, prep. with acc., *up to, under*; with abl., *under*.

Subesse (*sub+esse*), *to be under, to be near*.

Subig-ere (*subëg-, subact-, sub+agere*), *to subdue*.

Sub-ire (*iv-, it-*), *to go under, to un-*

dergo; *ad pericula subeunda, for undergoing perils*.

Subitò, adv., *suddenly*.

Subjic-ere (*subjëc-, subject-, sub+jacere*), *to throw under, to throw up*.

Sublatus, a, um, part. of *tollere*, *elated, puffed up*.

Subsist-ere (*substît-*), *to stand still, to halt*.

Subsidi-um, i, *assistance, a reserve of troops*.

Suev-us, i, a *Suevian* (people of Germany).

Sufferre (*sustûl-, sublat-, sub+ferre*) *to bear, sustain*.

Sui, reflex. pron., 142, *himself, herself, &c.*

Sum, *I am*. (See *esse*.)

Sum-ere (*sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b*), *to take*.

Summ-us, a, um (superl. of *superus*, 370), *highest, top of a thing*; in *summo monte, on the top of the mountain*.

Sumpt-us, ûs, *expense*; *sumptû suô, at his own expense*.

Super-are (av-, at-), *to overcome*.

Superior, oris (compar. of *superus*, 370), *higher*.

Suppet-ere (*suppetiv- and suppetî-, suppetit-*), *to be at hand, to be in store*.

Supplici-um, i, *punishment*.

Suscip-ere (*suscëp-, suscept-, sub+capere*), *to undertake*.

Suspicio, (*suspiciôn*) is, 333, R., *suspicion*.

Sustin-ere (*sustinu-, sustent-, sub+tenere*), *to sustain*.

Suus, a, um, *one's own*, 143.

T.

Tac-ere (*tacu-, tacit-*), intrans., *to be silent*; trans., *to keep secret*.

Tædet, pertæsum est (*impers.*, 576),

- it wearies, it disgusts; me tædet, I am disgusted.*
 Talis, is, e, 184, *such*.
 Tam, adv., *so*.
 Tamen, conj., *nevertheless*.
 Tang-ère (tetig-, tact-, 411), *to touch*.
 Tanquam, adv., *as, like*.
 Tantum, *so much* (neut. of tantus); tantum auri, *so much gold*, 186.
 Tant-us, a, um, 184, *so great*.
 Tard-äre (av-, at-), *to delay*.
 Taur-us, i, *bull*.
 Tel-um, i, *weapon, dart*.
 Temerè, adv., *rashly*.
 Temeritas, (temeritât) is, 293, *rashness*.
 Temper-äre (av-, at-), *to refrain from; ab injuria temperare, to refrain from outrage*.
 Temperanti-a, æ, *temperance*.
 Tempestas, (tempestât) is, 293, *storm, tempest*.
 Templ-um, i, *temple; templum de marmore, temple of marble, marble temple*.
 Tempus, (tempör) is, 344, *b, time*.
 Tenax, (tenac) is, 107, *tenacious, firm*.
 Tener, a, um, 77, *b, tender*.
 Ten-ère (tenu-, tent-), *to hold*.
 Terg-um, i, *back*.
 Terni, æ, a (distrib., 189), *three apiece, three at a time*.
 Terr-a, æ, *earth; terra marique, by land and sea*.
 Terr-ère (terru-, territ-), *to terrify*.
 Terti-us, a, um, *third*.
 Tiberi-us, i, *Tiberius*.
 Themistocles, (Themistocl) is, *The-mistocles*.
 Tigurinus pagus, *The canton of Zurich*.
 Tim-ère (timu-), *to fear*.
 Timid-us, a, um, *timid*.
 Timor, (timör) is, 319, *fear*.
 Tiro, (tirön) is, 107, *inexperienced, raw*.
 Toler-äre (av-, at-), *to endure*.
 Toll-ère (sustäl-, sublat-), *to lift up, take away*.
 Tot, *so many*, 184.
 Tot-us, a, um, gen. -us, 194, R. 1, *whole, all*.
 Trabs, (trab) is, *beam*, 293.
 Trad-ère (tradid-, tradit-), *to surrender*.
 Tragul-a, æ, *a dart* (used by the Gauls).
 Trah-ère (trax-, tract-, 401, 2), *to draw*.
 Trajic-ère (trajic-, traject-), *transit, to throw or convey over; intrans., to cross over*.
 Tranquill-iter, adv., *calmly, tranquilly* (215, 2, tranquillus, *tranquil*).
 Transduc-ère (transdux-, transduct-) *to lead across*.
 Trans-ire (iv-, it-), *to cross or pass over*.
 Transn-äre (av-, at-), *to swim across*.
 Tredecim, indecl., *thirteen*.
 Tres, tria, 194, *three*.
 Tribun-us, i, *tribune*.
 Triginta, *thirty*.
 Triplex, (triplic) is, 107, *triple, three-fold*.
 Tripartitö, adv., *in three divisions*.
 Tristiti-a, æ, *sadness*.
 Tu, thou, 130.
 Tullus Hostilius, *Tullus Hostilius*.
 Tum, adv., *then*.
 Turbo, (turbín) is (m., 340), *whirlwind*.
 Turp-is, is, e, 104, *base*.
 Turpiter, adv., 215, 2, *a, basely*.
 Turris, (turr) is, 302, *tower*.
 Tut-us, a, um, *safe*.
 Tü-us, a, um, *thy, thine*, 134.

U.

- Ubi, adv., *where, when*.
 Ubinam? *where in the world?* 297, d.
 Ull-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, 1, *any*.
 Ulterior, ius (compar. of ultra, 371),
farther.
 Ultrô, adv., *of one's own accord*.
 Ulysses, (Ulyss) is, *Ulysses*.
 Umbr-a, æ, *shade, shadow*.
 Unâ, adv., *together*.
 Unde, adv., *whence*.
 Undecim, indecl., *eleven*.
 Undique, adv., *from all sides*.
 Univers-us, a, um, *universal, the whole*.
 Unquam, adv., *ever*.
 Un-us, a, um, gen. unius, 194, *one*.
 Unusquisque, 178, 6, *each one*.
 Urbs, (urb) is, 293, *city*.
 Usque, adv., *as far as; usque ad, even up to*.
 Ut, or uti, conj., *that*, 546.
 Uter, utra, utrum, 194, *which of the two*.
 Ut-i (ûs-), dep. (with abl, 316, R.), *to use, employ*.
 Util-is, is, e, 104, *useful*.
 Utinam, conj., *would that, O that*, 528.
 Utrum, conj., *whether; utrum—an, whether—or*.
 Uxor, (uxôr) is (f.), *wife*.

V.

- Vac-äre (av-, at-), *to be empty, to remain unoccupied*.
 Vag-äri (vagät-), dep., *to wander*.
 Val-äre (valü-), *to avail; plurimum valet, is most powerful*.
 Valid-us, a, um, *strong*.
 Valdë, adv., *greatly, very much*.
 Valetudo, (valetudin) is, 339, *health*.
 Vall-um, i, *rampart*.
 Vast-äre (av-, at-), *to lay waste*.
 Vast-us, a, um, *vast*. [ute.
 Vectigal, (vectigal) is, 325, *tax, trib-*

- ut* Veh-äre (vex-, vect-), *to carry, drive*.
 Vehementer, adv., *vehemently*, 215, 2, b.
 Vel, conj., *or*, 519, 2.
 Velle, volui, 592, *to wish, to be able*.
 Velox, (velöe) is, 107, *swift*.
 Venator, (venatör) is, *hunter*.
 Vener-äri (at-), dep., *to revere, to venerate*.
 Venetus, a, um, *Venetian*.
 Veni-a, æ, *pardon*.
 Vên-äre (vën-, vent-, 426, IV.), *to come*.
 Vent-us, i, *wind*.
 Ver, (ver) is, n., 325, *spring*.
 Verber-äre (av-, at-), *to flog*.
 Verb-um, i, *word*.
 Ver-äre (verît-), dep., *to fear*.
 Verg-äre (vers-), *to incline, tend*.
 Vero, conj., *but, truly, certainly*, 173.
 Verre-, (Verr) is, *Verres*.
 Ver-äre (vert-, vers-, 421, b), *to turn*.
 Ver-us, a, um, *true*.
 Versus, prep. with acc., *towards*.
 Vester, tra, trum, *your*, 134.
 Veteran-us, a, um, *veteran*.
 Vetus, (veter) is, 108, R. 2, *old*.
 Vexill-um, i, *standard*.
 Vi-a, æ, *way; Via Sacra, the Sacred Way, a street in Rome*.
 Victori-a, æ, *victory*.
 Vic-us, i, *village*.
 Vid-äre (vid-, vis-, 394, V.), *to see; videri, pass., to seem, appear*.
 Vigilanti-a, æ, *vigilance*.
 Vigil-äre (av-, at-), *to watch*.
 Vigili-a, æ, *watch; de tertia vigilia, about or after the third watch*.
 Viginti, indecl., *twenty*.
 Vil-is, is, e, 104, *cheap, vile*.
 Vinc-äre (vic-, vict-), *to conquer*.
 Vincul-um, i, *bond*.
 Vindex, (vindic) is, *avenger*.
 Vin-um, i, *wine*.
 Viol-äre (av-, at-), *to violate, lay waste*.
 Vir, i, *man*.

Virgili-us, i, *Virgil*.

Virgo, (virgin) is, 339, *virgin*.

Viriliter, adv., *manly, courageously*.

Virtūs, (virtūt) is, 293, *valour, virtue*.

Vis, vim, vi, 301, 2, *strength, force*;
pl., vires, ium.

Vit-a, æ, *life*.

Vit-are (av-, at-), *to shun, avoid*.

Viti-um, i, *vice*.

Viv-ere (vix-, vict-), *to live*.

Vix, adv., *scarcely*.

Voc-are (av-, at-), *to call*.

Vol-are (av-, at-), *to fly*.

Volo, *I wish*. (*See velle*.)

Voluntas, (voluntāt) is, 293, *will, wish*.

Voluptas, (voluptāt) is, 293, *pleasure*.

Volv-ere (volv-, volūt-), *to roll*.

Vos, *you*, 130.

Vox, (voc) is, 293, *voice*.

Vulg-us, i, n., 62, R. 1, *the common people*.

Vulner-are (av-, at-), *to wound*.

Vulnus, (vulner) is, 344, b, *wound*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, facultas, (facultat) is, 293.
Able (to be), posse, quire (queo).
Abode, domicilium, i.
Abound, abundare.
About, circiter (concerning); de, *abl*.
Abrogate, abrogare.
Absent (to be), abesse.
Abstain from, abstinere (abstinu-, abstent-).
Accuse, incusare.
Accustomed (to be), consuescere (suev-, suet-).
Acquit, absolvēre, 421, a.
Act, agere.
Act of kindness, beneficium, i.
Add, addere, 411, c.
Admire, mirari, admirari (dep.).
Admonish, monere.
Adore, adorare.
Adorn, ornare.
Advice, consilium, i.
Advise, monere, admonere.
Æduan, Æduus, i.
Affair, res, 117.
Affection, affectio, 333, R.
Affirm, confirmare.
Afford, præbere, 527.
After, post (with accus.); de (with abl.).
After that, postquam.
Again, rursus; iterum, *adv*.
Against, contra; adversus (with accus.); *against Cicero*, in Cicero-nem.
Age (time of life), ætas, (ætät) is, 293.
Agree, consentire, 427, III.
Agreeable, gratus, a, um (with dat.); *it is agreeable*, libet, or lubet, 583.

Aid, auxilium, i; *to aid*, adjuvare, 390.
Alarm, perturbare.
All, omnis, e; cunctus, a, um; *in all*, adv., omnino.
Allowed (it is), licet, 583.
Ally, socius, i.
Almost, fere; pene, adv.
Alone, solus, 194, R. 1; unus.
Already, jam, adv.
Also, etiam, adv.
Altogether, omnino, adv.
Although, quamvis, conj.
Always, semper.
Ambassador, legatus, i.
Ambush, insidias, 57, R.
Amiable, amabilis, e, 104.
Among, inter (with acc.).
Ancients (the), veteres; pl. of vetus, old.
And, et, que, ac, atque; *and not*, neque.
Anger, ira, æ.
Animal, animal, 325.
Announce, nuntiare.
Answer, respondere.
Antony, Antonius, i.
Any, ullus, a, um, 194, R. 1; *any one*, *any you please*, &c. See 178.
Apart (to be), distare.
Apiece, use the distrib. numerals, 189.
Apply, adhibere (u-, it-).
Appoint, constituere, 421, a.
Approach, adventus, us; *to approach*, appropinquare: accedere.
Archer, sagittarius, i.
Arise (as a storm), cooriri (coort-), dep.
Arm, armare.

Arms, arma, orum.
Army, exercitus, ūs.
Arrange, disponere, 406, b.
Arrival, adventus, ūs.
Arrive at, pervenire, 427, IV.
Art, ars, (art) is, 293.
Artificer, faber, fabri, 77, a.
As, conj., ut; *as, of what kind*, qualis, 184; *as far as to*, usque; *as soon as*, simulatque.
Ashamed (one is), pudet, 579.
Ask, rogare, postulare.
Assemble, convenire, 427, IV.
Assist, adjuvare, 390.
Assistance, auxilium, i.
Association, societas, (societas) is, [293].
Assure, confirmare.
At, ad, apud; *at home*, domi; *at length*, demum.
Athenian, Atheniensis, is.
Athens, Athenæ, arum.
Attack (noun), impetus, ūs; (verb), oppugnare.
Austerity, severitas, (severitas) is, 293.
Auxiliaries, auxilia, orum.
Avail, valere.
Avaricious, avarus, i.
Avoid, vitare.
Await, expectare.

B.

Back, tergum, i.
Badly, malè, adv., 215, B.
Band (of men), manus, ūs.
Barbarian, barbarus, i.
Base, turpis, e, 104; *basely*, turpiter, 215, 2, a.
Battle, prælum, i.
Be, esse; *be among*, interesse, 174; *be over*, præesse; *be wanting*, deesse, with dat.
Beam, trabs, (trab) is, 293.
Bear (verb), ferre, 596.
Beast, bestia, e; *beast of burden*, jumentum, i.

Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrom, 77, a.
Because, conj., quod, quia, propterea quod.
Becoming (it is), decet, 583.
Bed, cubile, (cubil) is, 319, *bed-chamber*, cubiculum, i.
Before, prep., ante (acc.); adv., antea; *before that*, antequam.
Beg, rogare, orare.
Begin, incipere, 416, c; *I begin*, cœpi, 611.
Beginning, initium, i.
Behold, spectare.
Behoooves (it), oportet, 583.
Belgian, Belga, e.
Believe, credere, 411, c.
Belong, pertinere, 394, I.
Benevolent, benevolus, a, um.
Benevolence, benevolentia, e.
Beseech, obsecrare.
Besiege, oppugnare.
Best, optimus, a, um, 370.
Betake one's self, se recipere, 418, a.
Better, melior, 379.
Between, inter.
Bind, obstringere.
Bird, avis (avis), 300.
Bit, frænum, i; pl., i and a, 396.
Bite, mordere, 395, IV.
Black, niger, gra, grum, 77, a.
Blame, incusare, vituperare.
Blood, sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.).
Blooming, flosens, (floreant) is, 167.
Boast, prædicare.
Body, corpus, (corpor) is, 344.
Bond, vinculum, i.
Book, liber, bri.
Booty, præda, e.
Born (to be), nasci (nat), dep.
Boundary, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Boy, puer, i.
Brave, fortis, e; *bravely*, fortiter 215, 2.
Bravery, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Break through, perfringere (page 275); perampere, 666, V., a.

Bridge, *pons*, (*post*) is, 295, R. 1.
Bring, ducere, agere; *bring back*, reducere; *bring back word*, renuntiare; *bring to pass*, perficere; *bring together*, cogere, 416, b.
Britain, *Britannia*, æ; *Briton*, *Britannus*, i.
Broad, *latus*, a, um.
Brother, *frater*, (*fratr*) is.
Build, edificare; *build a nest*, nidificare.
Bull, *taurus*, i.
Burn, incendere; *burn up*, exurere, 545.
Burden, *onus*, (*oner*) is, 344.
Burst into, irumpere, 666, V., a.
Business, *negotium*, i.
But, sed, autem.
Buy, emere; *buy up*, coemere.
By, prep. with abl., a or ab, 93, 2.
By night, *noctu*, adv.

C.

Cæsar, *Cæsar*, (*Cæsar*) is.
Call, vocare; to name, appellare; to be called, nominari, appellari.
Call together, convocare.
Call-upon, invocare.
Camp, *castra*, orum.
Can (to be able), posse, 567; *I cannot*, non possum, nequeo.
Captive, *captivus*, i.
Care (noun), *cara*, æ; (verb), *curare*.
Carefully, diligenter, studiose.
Carry, portare, vahere; *carry on*, gerere, 401, 4, a.
Carthage, *Carthago*, (*Carthagin*) is.
Cassius, *Cassius*, i.
Casticus, *Casticus*, i.
Catiline, *Catilina*, æ.
Cause, *causa*, æ.
Cautious, *cautus*, a, um.
Cavalry, *equitatus*, æs; *belonging to cavalry*, *equestris*, e, 104.
Celebrate, celebrare.
Celt, *Celta*, æ.

Censure, *incusare*.
Centurion, *centurio*, (*centurio*) is.
Certain, *certus*, a, um; *a certain one*, *quidam*, 178.
Certainly, adv., *certe*: profecto, vero.
Chain, *vinculum*, i.
Change (noun), *commutatio*, (*commutation*) is; (verb), *mutare*, *commutare*.
Champ, *mordere*, 395, IV.
Chide, *increpare*, 396.
Chief, *princeps*, (*princip*) is, 107.
Child, *infans*, (*infant*) is, 107; *children*, *liberi*, orum.
Chosee, *deligere*, 666, V., a.
Christ, *Christus*, i.
Cicero, *Cicero*, (*Ciceron*) is.
Citadel, *arx*, (*arc*) is, 293.
Citizen, *civis*, (*civ*) is, c, 25, a.
City, *urbs*, (*urb*) is, 293.
Cloud, *nubes*, (*nub*) is, 300; *cloud of dust*, *vis pulveris*.
Cohort, *cohort*, (*cohort*) is, 293.
Cold, *frigidus*, a, um; (noun), *frigus*, (*frigor*) is, 344.
Collect, *colligere* (leg-, lect-); *co-gere* (coeg-, coact-); *collect corn*, *frumentari*, dep.; *collect into a flock*, *congregare*.
Colour, *color*, (*colôr*) is, 319.
Come, *venire*, 427, IV.; *come near*, *appropinquare*; *come to*, *pervenire*; *come together*, *convenire*.
Coming, *adventus*, ùs.
Command, *imperare*, with dat.
Commander, *imperator*, (*imperator*) is, 319.
Commit, *committere*; *commit suicide*, *mortem sibi commiscere*.
Common, *communis*, e, 104.
Common-people, *plebs*, (*pleb*) is, 293.
Companion, *socius*, i; *comas*, (*commit*) is.
Compel, *cogere*, 416, b.
Complain, *queri* (*quest*), dep.
Complete, *conficere*.

Concerning (prep. with abl.), de.
Concerns (it), interest, refero, 584, d.
Condemn, damnare, condemnare, 348.
Conference, colloquium, i.
Confess, fatēri, dep.
Confines, fines, pl. of finis.
Conflict, congressus, ūs.
Confirm, confirmare.
Confound, perturbare.
Congratulate, gratulari, dep.
Conquer, vincere (vic-, vict-); superare.
Conqueror, victor, (victor) is, 319.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, (conjuratio) is, 333, R.
Consul, consul, (consul) is.
Consult, consulere (consula-, consult-).
Contemplate, contemplari, dep.
Contend, contendere.
Content, contentus, a, um (with abl.).
Continuous, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Continuance, continuatio, (continuatio) is.
Corn, frumentum, i.
Council, concilium, i.
Counsel, consilium, i.
Course, cursus, ūs.
Covetous, cupidus, a, um.
Cow, vacca, æ.
Cowardice, ignavia, æ.
Creak, crepare, 390.
Create, creare.
Crime, crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a.
Cross over, transire, trajicere.
Crow, corvus, i.
Crown, corona, æ.
Cry out, exclamare.
Cultivation, cultus, ūs; humanitas.
Cup, poculum, i.
Cure, sanare.
Custom, mos, (mor) is, 331, b.
Cut down, rescindere (rescid-, resciss-).

Cut to pieces, cædere, 411, b.
Cyrus, Cyrus, i.

D.

Daily, adj., quotidianus, a, um; *ade*, quotidie.
Dance, saltare.
Danger, periculum, i.
Danube, Danubius, i.
Dare, audere (ausus sum).
Dart, telum, i; pilum, i.
Daughter, filia, æ.
Day, dies, ei, 116, R., *by day*; *interdiu*, adv.; *to-day*, hodie, adv.
Dragon, draco, (dracō) is.
Dead, mortuus, a, um.
Dear, carus, a, um.
Death, mors, (mort) is, 293.
Deceive, fallere (fessell-, fals-).
Decide on, statuere.
Decree (verb), discernere (decrēv-, decrēt-); (noun), decretum, i; *decree of the senate*, senatus consultum.
Deep, altus, a, um.
Defeat, pellere, 411, b.
Defend, defendere, 421, c.
Defence, munitio, 333.
Defender, vindex, (vindic) is, 306.
Defiles, angustiae, arum, 57, R.
Delay, cunctari (dep.); *active*, tardare (to retard).
Deliberate, deliberare.
Delight, delectare.
Delight (with), libenter, adv.
Demand, poscere, 411, a; postulare, imperare, 390; *demand back*, repetere.
Deny, negare.
Depart, discedere, 401, 3, b.
Depart out of, excedere.
Departure, discessus, ūs.
Dependant, cliens, (client) is, c.
Descend, descendere.
Desert, deserere, 406, a; *a desert*, desertum, i.

Deserter, perfuga, æ.
Desire, cupiditas, (cupiditāt) is;
 (verb), cupēre (io): studium, i.
Desirous, cupidus, a, um.
Despair (verb), desperāre; (noun),
 desperatio, 333, R.
Despise, spernēre, 406, III, a: con-
 temnēre.
Destroy, delēre, 394, II.
Destruction, interitus, ūs.
Determine, constituēre, statuēre.
Devoid, expers, 336.
Die, morīri, or mori (mortu-), dep.
Difference (it makes no), nihil inter-
 est, nihil refert.
Different, diversus, a, um; alius, 194,
 R. 1.
Difficult, difficilis, e, 104.
Dignity, dignitas, (dignitat) is, 293.
Diligence, diligentia, æ.
Diligent, diligens, (diligent) is, 107;
 diligently, adv., diligenter.
Diminish, minuēre, diminuēre.
Direct (of a ship), gubernāre.
Disagree, dissentire, 427, III.
Discipline, disciplina, æ.
Discomfit, fugāre.
Discover, invenire, 427, IV.
Discourse, disserēre (disseru-, dis-
 sert-).
Discretion, consilium, i.
Dismiss, dimittēre (mis-, miss-).
Displease, displicēre (displicu-, dis-
 plicit-), with dat., 161, R.
Dispute, disputāre.
Dissolve, dissolvēre, 421, a.
Distant (to be), distāre.
Distribute, distribuēre, 406, a; ar-
 range, disponēre.
District, pagus, i.
Divide, dividēre, 401, 3, a; *divide*
 among, distribuere, 423, c.
Divulge, enuntiāre.
Do, agēre, facēre.
Dock-yard, navale, (naval) is, 312.
Dog, canis, (can) is.

Door, foris, (for) is, 300.
Double, duplicāre.
Doubt, dubitare.
Doubtful, incertus, a, um; dubius,
 a, um.
Dove, columba, æ.
Draw, trahēre (trax-, tract-); du-
 cēre (dux-, duct-); *draw up*, in-
 struēre, 401, 2; *draw as a sword*,
 stringere, 401; *draw out*, educēre.
Dread, formidāre.
Drive, agēre; *drive back*, repellēre;
drive on, or *together*, compellēre.
Druids, Druides, um, pl.
Duty, munus, (muner) is, 344.

E.

Each, quisque, 178; omnis, e; *each*
 of the two, uterque.
Eagle, aquila, æ.
Earth, terra, æ.
Easily, facile (adv.).
East, Oriens.
Easy, facilis, e; *very easy*, perfacilis.
Educate, educāre.
Egypt, Egyptus, i (f.).
Eighty, octoginta.
Eloquent, facundus, a, um; *disertus*,
 a, um; eloquens, 107.
Embark (upon), conscendēre, 309.
Embrace, amplecti (amplex-), dep.
Emperor, imperator, (imperator) is,
 319.
Employ, uti (us-), dep., with abl.:
 adhibere.
End, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Endeavour, conāri (conāt-), dep.
Endure, durāre; *to bear*, tolerāre.
Enemy, hostis, (host) is, c.
Enjoin upon, præcipere.
Enmity, inimicitia, æ.
Enough, satis, adv.
Enrol, conscribere.
Entreat, rogāre.
Equanimity (with), æquo animo.
Erect, communire.

Err, errare.

Especially, adv., præsertim.

Establish, confirmare.

Eternity, eternitas, (eternitat) is, 393.

Even up to, usque ad.

Ever, unquam.

Everlasting, sempiternus, a, um.

Every, omnis, e, 104.

Evil, malum, i.

Evil-deed, maleficium, i.

Example, exemplum, i.

Excel, præstare (præstit-), with dat.

Excellent, præclarus, a, um; præstant, 107.

Excite, excitare.

Excuse, excusatio, 333, R.

Exercise, exercere.

Exhort, hortari, dep.

Expedient (it is), expedit, 583.

Expel, expellere.

Expense, sumptus, ūs; *at his own expense*, sumptu suo.

Eye, oculus, i.

F.

Fable, fabula, æ.

Faith, fides, ei.

Fail, deficere.

Fall, cadere, 411, b.

Fame, fama, æ.

Family of slaves, familia, æ.

Far, longe, adv.

Farm (as revenues), redimere.

Farmer, agricola.

Father, pater, (patr) is.

Father-in-law, socer, i.

Fault, culpa, æ; peccatum, i; *find fault with*, culpæ, incusare.

Favour, venia, æ; (verb), favere, 395, V.

Fear, timor, (timor) is, 319; (verb), timere, meture.

Feather, pluma, æ.

Fell (cut down), cadere, 413, b.

Few, pauci, æ, a; *very few*, perpauci.

Fidelity, fides, ei.

Field, ager, gri.

Fierce, ferus, (feroc) is, 107; atrox, 107.

Fifth, quintus, a, um.

Fight, pugnare.

Figure, figura, æ.

Fill, implere; *fill up*, complere, 395, II.

Finally, denique, adv.

Find, invenire, 427, IV.; *find out*, reperire, 427, V.

Find fault with, incusare.

Finish, conficere.

Fire, ignis, (ign) is (m.).

Firmament, cælum, i.

First, primus, a, um.

Fish, piscis, (pisc) is (m.).

Fit for, idoneus, a, um, with dat.

Five, quinque; *five at a time*, quini, 189.

Flag, vexillum, i.

Flame, flamma, æ.

Flee, fugere (io), 416, c.

Fleet, classis, (class) is, 300.

Flesh, caro, (earn) is (f.).

Flight, fuga, æ.

Flock, grex, (gre) is (m.); *in flocks*, gregatim, adv.

Flag, verberare.

Flow, fluere; *flow together*, confuere, 401, 2, 422.

Flower, flos, (flor) is, 331, b.

Fly, volare.

Follow sequi (secut-), dep.

Folly, stultitia, æ; ineptia, arum, 57, R.

Fool, stultus, i; *foolish*, stultus, a, um.

Foot, pes, (ped) is (m.).

Foot-soldier, pedes, (pedit) is.

For, conj., enim, etenim; *for my sake*, mea causa.

Force, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; *forces* (troops), copias, arum, 57, a.

Foreign, alienus, a, um.

Forest, sylva, æ.
Forever, in æternum.
Forget, oblivisci, with gen.
Form, forma, æ.
Fortification,
Fortify, munire.
Fortunate, fortunatus, a, um.
Fortune, fortuna, æ.
Forum, forum, i.
Four, quattuor; *four apiece*, 169.
Founder, conditor, 319.
Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Frail, fragilis, e, 194.
Free from (to be), carere, 348.
Friend, amicus, i.
Friendship, amicitia, æ.
Frighten, terrere; *frighten completely*, perterrere.
From, a, de; *from every side*, undique, adv.; *from my boyhood*, a puero.
Frugality, parsimonia, æ.
Fruit, fructus, ūs.
Full, plenus, a, um, 348, b.
Future, futurus, a, um.

G.

Galba, Galba, æ.
Gain, potiri, 209; *gain for another*, conciliare.
Game, ludus, i.
Garden, hortus, i.
Garrison, præsidium, i.
Gate, porta, æ.
Gather, colligere, 416, b.
Gaul, Gallia, æ; *the Gauls*, Galli, orum.
General, imperator, 319.
German, Germanus, a, um.
Get sight of, conspiciere (conspex-, conspect-).
Gift, donum, i.
Girl, puella, æ.
Give, dare, 387, III.
Give largess, largiri (it-), dep.
Glare, splendor, 319.

Glory, gloria, æ.
Go, ire, 605; *go straight*, pergere; *go away*, discedere, 401, 3, b; *go forward*, procedere; *go forth*, or out, exire.
Goad, concitare.
God, Deus, i, 62, R. 3.
Gold, aurum, i.
Good, bonus, a, um; *good deed*, beneficium; *good-will*, voluntas, 293.
Govern, gubernare.
Grant (verb), concedere, 401, 3, b, dare: (noun), concessus, ūs.
Great, magnus, a, um; *comp.*, major; *superl.*, maximus.
Greatly, valde.
Greatness, magnitudo, 339.
Greek, Græcus, a, um.
Grief, mæror, 319; luctus, ūs, 113, N.
Grieve, dolere; *it grieves one*, piget, 579.
Guardian, custos, (custod) is, c, 25, a.
Guest, hospes, (hospit) is, c, 25, a.
Guide, dux, (duc) is.

H.

Hail, grando, (grandin) is, 339
Halt,
Hand, manus, ūs (f.).
Hannibal, Hannibal, (Hannibal) is.
Happen, accidere; *it happens*, accidit, 580.
Happily, beatè.
Happy, beatus, a, um; felix, 107
Harass, lacessere, 406, III, b.
Harbinger, prænuntia, æ.
Harbour, portus, ūs.
Hard, durus, e, um.
Hasten, festinare, contendere.
Hate (to), odiasse, 611.
Hatred, odium, i.
Have, habere (habu-, habit-). *I have a book*, est mihi liber, 125.
He, is, hic, ille.
Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is 107.

Heal, sanare.

Health, valetudo, 339.

Hear, audire.

Heart, cor, (cord) is (n.).

Heaven, cœlum, i.

Heavy, gravis, e, 104.

Help, auxilium, i.

Helvetian, Helvetius, a, um.

Herald, præco, (præcon) is.

Herb, herba, æ.

Hesitate, dubitare.

High, altus, a, um; *higher*, superior, comp. of superus, 370.

Hill, collis, is (m.).

Hillock, tumulus, i.

Hinder, impedire, prohibere.

His, suus, a, um: ejus.

History, historia, æ.

Hold, tenere, obtinere: *hold back*, retinere.

Home (at), domi, gen. of domus.

Honest, probus, a, um.

Honour, honor, 319; (verb), colere (colu-, cult-).

Honourable, honestus, a, um.

Hope, spes, ei.

Horn, cornu, 112.

Horned, corniger, a, um, 77, b.

Horse, equus, i.

Horse-soldier, eques, (equit) is.

Hostage, obses, (obsid) is, c, 25, a.

Hour, hora, æ.

House, domus, i and us (f.), 112, 3.

Household, familia, æ.

How great, how many? quantus, 186, obs.; *however great*, quantuscunque, 184; *how long*, quamdiu, adv.

Humanity, humanitas, (humanitat) is, 293.

Hunger, fames, (fam) is, 300.

Hurl, conicere, 416, c (conjec-, con-ject-).

Hurt, nocere.

I.

I, ego, 120.

Ides, Idus, iduum (f.).

If, si.

Ignorance, ignoratio, 339.

Ignorant, ignarus, a, um; *to be ignorant of*, ignorare, nescire.

Illustrious, clarus, a, um; *præclarus*, a, um.

Image, imago, 339.

Immediately, statim.

Immense, immensus, a, um.

Immortal, immortalis, e, 104.

Impious, impius, a, um.

Implore, implorare.

In, prep., in, with abl.

Incessant, continens, (continent) is, 107.

Increase, augere (aux-, auct-).

Incredible, incredibilis, e, 104.

Indeed, quidem.

Indolence, inertia, æ; ignavia, æ.

Indolent, ignavus, a, um.

Induce, inducere, adducere.

Indulge, indulgere, dat.

Infant, infans, (infant) is, c.

Influence, auctoritas.

Inform any one, aliquem certiores facere.

Inhabitant, incola, æ.

Injure, violare.

Injury, injuria, æ; incommodum, i

Innocence, innocentia, æ.

Insect, insectum, i.

Instead of, pro (prep. with abl.).

Instigate, instigare.

In the mean time, interea.

It interests, interest.

Intrust, committere (with dat.).

Invoke, invocare.

Ireland, Hibernia, æ.

Iron, ferrum, i.

Island, insula, æ.

Italy, Italia, æ.

Itself, 159.

J.

Javelin, telum, i; *tragula*, æ.
Join, jungere (junx-, junct-); *join together*, conjungere.
Journey, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Junior, junior, 370.
Jupiter, 351.
Just, justus, a, um; *just so many*, totidem.
Justice, justitia, æ.

K.

Keep, tenere, servare.
Kind, benignus, a, um, with dat.: suavis, e, 335.
Kindle, excitare.
King, rex, (reg) is.
Kingdom, regnum, i.
Kill, occidere, interficere, 390.
Know, scire, noscere, 525; cognoscere: *not to know*, nescire.
Knowledge, scientia, æ.

L.

Labour (noun), labor, 319; (verb), laborare.
Lamb, agnus, i.
Land, terra; *by land and sea*, terra marique.
Language, lingua, æ: sermo, 331.
Large, magnus, a, um.
Last (to), durare.
Latin, Latinus, a, um.
Laugh, ridere; *laughter*, risus, ūs.
Law, jus, (jur) is (n.).
Lawful (it is), licet.
Lay aside, deponere, 406, b.
Lay waste, populari (at-), dep.
Lead, ducere (dux-, duct-); *lead back*, reducere; *lead out*, educere; *lead together*, conducere; *lead over or across*, transducere, 113, II.
Leader, dux, (duc) is.
Leaf, folium, i.
League, foedus, (foeder) is, 344.

Leap, saltare, 199.
Learn, docere, 114, at-; edocere.
Leave, relinquere.
Legion, legio, (legion) is, 333, R.
Letter, epistola, æ; litteræ, arum, 58, N.
Level, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um.
Levy, conscribere.
Lieutenant, legatus, i.
Lightning, fulgur, (fulgur) is, 325.
Life, vita, æ.
Like, similis, e, 104 (with dat.).
Line of battle, acies, ei.
Lion, leo, (leon) is.
Literature, litteræ, arum, 57, R.
Little, parvus, a, um.
Live, vivere.
Living-being, animans, (animant) is.
Lofty, altus, a, um.
Long, longus, a, um; adv., longe; *a long time*, diu.
Look at, intuēri, dep.
Lose, amittere, perdere.
Lot, sors, (sort) is, 293.
Love (verb), amare, diligere; (noun), amor, 319.
Low, humilis, e, 104.
Lycurgus, Lycurgus.

M.

Magnanimous, magnanimus, a, um.
Maid-servant, ancilla, æ.
Maintain, alere.
Make, facere, 199; *make war*, bellare; *make war upon*, bellum inferre, with dat.; *make an attack*, impetum facere.
Maker, faber, bri.
Maltreat, violare.
Man, homo, vir.
Many, multus, a, um.
Marble, marmor, 325.
Master (of school), magister, tri; (of slaves), herus, dominus.
Matters (it), interest, refert, 583.

Measure, metiri, 206.
Medicine, medicina, æ.
Mediterranean, Mediterraneus, a, um.
Meet, convenire.
Memory, memoria, æ.
Merchant, mercator, 319.
Messenger, nuntius, i.
Metal, metallum, i.
Mid-day, meridies, ei.
Middle, medius, a, um.
Migrate, migrare.
Mile, millia (passuum), 191, b:
Military command, imperium, i.
Milk, lac, (lact) is (n.).
Mind, mens, (ment) is (f.); animus, i.
Mine, meus, a, um.
Minerva, Minerva, æ.
Miserable, miser, a, um, 77, b.
Mitigate, mitigare.
Moderation, modus, i.
Money, pecunia, æ.
Moon, luna, æ.
More, plus, pluris; adv., magis.
Mortal, mortalis, e, 104.
Most, plurimus, a, um; *most men*, plerique, 195.
Mountain, mons, (mont) is (m.).
Move, movere.
Much, multus, a, um; *much money*, magna pecunia.
Multitude, multitudo, 339.
My, meus, a, um.

N.

Naked, nudus, a, um.
Name, nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a; to name, nominare.
Narrow, angustus, a, um.
Nation, natio, 333, R.; gens, 293.
Nature, natura, æ.
Navigation, navigatio, 333, R.
Near, prope, iuxta; *nearest to*, proximus, a, um.
Neglect, negligere.

Neighbouring, finitimus, a, um; proximus, a, um.
Neither, conj. — *neq*, nec — *neq*; *neither* (of two), neuter, tra, trum, 194, R. 1.
Net, rete, (ret) is.
Never, nunquam (adv.).
Nevertheless, tamen, conj.
New, novus, a, um.
Next, posterus, a, um, 118; *prexi-*mus, 371.
Night, nox, (noct) is, 293.
Nine, novem.
Ninth, nonus, a, um.
Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293.
Noble, nobilis, e, 104.
Nobody, nemo, (nemin) is, e.
Noise, clamor, 319.
No one, nullus, a, um, 194, R. 1.
Not, nōn; *with imper.*, nē.
Nothing, nihil.
Notice, (see) conspiciere.
Nourish, alere.
Novelty, novitas, (novitat) is, 293.
November, November, bris.
Nurse, nutrix, (nutric) is, 293

O.

Oath, iusjurandum, 351, 4.
Obedy, parere (with dat.).
Obscure, obscurare.
Obtain booty, prædari (dep.).
Obviously, prorsus.
Ocean, oceanus, i.
Of, de.
Of one's own accord, ultro.
Old, vetus, (veter) is, 107.
Old man, senex.
Old age, senectus, 293.
On the other side of, trans (acc.); *on account of*, ob, with acc.
One, unus, a, um, 194, 1.
Open, apertus, a, um; *to open*, aperire.
Opinion, opinio, 333, R.; *senten-*tia, æ.

Opportunity of (with gerund in gen.), spatium, i.
Oracle, oraculum, i.
Oration, oratio, 333, R.
Orator, orator, 319.
Order, ordo, (ordin) is (m.); to order, jubere.
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is.
Origin, origo, 339.
Other, alius, a, ud, 194, R. 1.
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought (one), oportet, 583
Our, noster, tra, tram.
Out of, e, or ex (abl).
Overcome, superare.
Ox, bos, 351, 2.

P.

Pain, dolor, 319.
Paltry, vilis, e, 104.
Pardon, venia, æ.
Parents, parentes, iam.
Part, pars, (part) is.
Pass, iter facere, 210.
Passage, iter, (itiner) is (m.).
Patience, patientia, æ.
Patiently, patienter, adv.
Pay, pendere.
Peace, pax, (pac) is, 293.
Peninsula, peninsula, æ.
People, populus, i.
Perceive, animadvertere.
Perchance, forsitan, forte, adv.
Persian, Persa, æ.
Persuade, suadere, persuadere.
Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is.
Philosopher, philosophus, i.
Philosophize, philosophari, dep.
Pilot, gubernator, 319.
Pious, pius, a, um.
Pirate, praedo, 335.
Pity, miserere; *I pity*, me miseret, 579.
Place, locus, i; pl. i and a: to place, ponere.
Place into, imponere

Placid, placidus, a, um.
Plain, planus, a, um; sequus, a, um: a plain, sequor, 327.
Plan, consilium, i.
Plant, planta, æ; to plant, serere.
Plato, Plato, 334.
Pleading, dictio, 333, R.
Pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
Please, placere (with dat.); it please, placet, 583.
Pleasure, voluptas, (tat) is, 293.
Plough, arare.
Plunder, diripere: praedari, dep., 491.
Poet, poeta, æ (m.).
Pompey, Pompeius, i.
Poor, ægens, inops, pauper, 107.
Port, portus, ūs.
Post, statio, 333, R.
Possess one's self of, potiri (with gen. or abl.).
Power, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; potestas, (tat) is, 293.
Powerful, potens, (potent) is, 197.
Praise, laus, (laud) is, 293; to praise, laudare.
Prayers, preces, um, pl. of prex.
Precept, præceptum, i.
Preceptor, præceptor, 319.
Precious, carus, a, um.
Prefer, antepondere.
Prepare, parare.
Present (to be), adesse; interesse, 267.
Preserve, servare; preserve moderation, modum habere.
Preside over, præesse.
Prevail upon, permovere.
Prevent, prohibere, obstare.
Principle, principium, i.
Prisoner, captivus, i.
Private information, indicium, i.
Proceed, pergere, 447.
Proclaim, præco, 331, a.
Procure, comparare.
Promise, fides, ei; to promise, spondere, 395, IV.

Property, res familiaris : familia, s.
Providence, Providentia, s.
Province, provincia, s.
Prudence, prudentia, s.
Prudent, prudens, (prudens) is, 107.
Ptolemy, Ptolemæus, i.
Punish, punire.
Punishment, poena, s : supplicium, i.
Pursue, persequi (dep.).
Put-to-flight, fugare : dare in fugam.
Pyrenees, Pyrenæsi (montes).
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, s.

Q.

Queen, regina, s.
Quickly, cito, adv.

R.


Race, genus, (gener) is, 344; gens, (gent) is.
Rain, imber, bris.
Raise, tollere : excitare.
Rank, ordo, (ordin) is (m.).
Rapidly, celeriter, adv.
Rashly, temere.
Rashness, temeritas, (temeritat) is, 293.
Reach, pervenire.
Read, legere.
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, 333, R.
Rebellion, rebellio, 333, R.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere; *receive back*, recipere.
Reckon, ducere.
Recollection, memoria, s.
Red, ruber, bra, brum, 77, a.
Refrain, temperare.
Refuse, recusare.
Reign, regnum, i; *to reign*, regnare.
Rejoice, gaudere.
Relate, narrare : commemorare.
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, 333, R.

Remain, manere.
Remains, reliquias, arum, 57, R.
Remove, removere.
Renew, renovare : redintegrare.
Repair, reficere.
Repel, propulsare (ward off).
Repent, poenitere; *I repent*, me poenitet, 579.
Repress, opprimere.
Reprove, increpare.
Republic, respublica, 351, 3.
Resist, resistere, with dat.
Restrain, retinere.
Retreat, recedere.
Return (restore), reddere; (go back), revertere, or reverti.
Revenue, vectigal, (vectigal) is.
Revere, venerare.
Revoke, revocare, abrogare.
Reward, præmium, i.
Rhine, Rhenus, i.
Rhetoric, rhetorica, s.
Rich, dives, (divit) is, 107.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, 57, R.
Ride (on horseback), equitare.
Right, jus, (jur) is; *rightly*, jure (abl. of jus) : recte, adv.
Rise, oriri, dep.
River, fluvius, i; flumen, (flumin) is.
Robber, latro, 331, a.
Rock, petra, s.
Roll, volvere.
Roman, Romanus, a, um.
Rome, Roma, s.
Rose, rosa, s.
Rouse up, excitare.
Rout, fugare, pellere : fundere, 416, a.
Royal-power, regnum, i.
Rule, regere : imperare, with dat.
Run, currere.

S.

Sacred, sanctus, a, um : sacer, crum; *sacred rites*, sacræ, orum; *Sacred Way*, Via Sacra; *Sacred Mount*, Mons Sacer.

Sadness, tristitia, æ: mœror, 319.
Safe, salvus, a, um; tutus, a, um.
Safety, salus, (salut) is, 293.
Sailor, nauta, æ.
Sake—for the sake of, causa, abl., 135, II., b.
Same, is, ea, id; the very same, idem, 150.
Sand, aridum, i.
Say, dicere; I say, aio, inquam.
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, spargere.
Scholar, discipulus, i.
School, schola, æ.
Scout, explorator, 319.
Sea, mare, 312; æquor, 325.
Secede, secedere.
Second, secundus, a, um.
Sedition, seditio, 333, R.
See, videre; (notice), conspiciere.
Seek, querere.
Seize, occupare; seize up, arripere.
Self, ipse.
Senate, senatus, ūs.
Senate-house, curia, æ.
Senator, senator, 319.
Send, mittere; send away, dimittere; send for, arcessere.
Senior, senior, (senior) is, 107 (comp. of senex), 370.
Separate, separare: dividere.
Sepulchre, sepulchrum, i.
Sequanian, Sequanus, i.
Serve (worship), colere.
Set (as heavenly bodies), occidere.
Set out, proficisci; set forth, exponere; set up, proponere.
Setting (of heavenly bodies), occasus, ūs.
Seven, septem; seventh, septimus, a, um.
Seventy, septuaginta.
Severe, gravis, e, 104.
Severity, severitas, (severitāt) is, 293.
Shadow, umbra, æ.

Sharp, acutus, a, um.
Sharply, acriter, adv.
Shine, micare, 389, ; shine forth, emicare.
Ship, navis, 300.
Shore, litus, (littor) is, 344.
Short, brevis, e, 104.
Show, monstrare, ostendere; (noun), species, ei.
Shower, imber, bris.
Shun, vitare.
Shut, claudere.
Sick, æger, gra, grum.
Sign, signum, i.
Sight, conspectus, ūs; in sight of, conspectū.
Silent (to be), tacere.
Silver, argentum, i.
Similar to, similis (dat.).
Sin, peccatum, i; to sin, peccare.
Since, quum, quoniam.
Sing, cantare.
Singing, cantus, ūs.
Sister, soror, (soror) is (f.).
Sit, sedere, 394, V.
Six, sex; sixth, sextus, a, um.
Slave, servus, i.
Slay, occidere, interficere.
Slayer, interfector, 319.
Sleep, somnus, i; to sleep, dormire.
Slinger, funditor, 319.
Small, parvus, a, um.
Snatch up, arripere.
So, ita, tam; so great, tantus; so long, tamdiu; so many, tot.
Socrates, Socrates, is.
Soldier, miles, (milit) is.
Some (persons), nonnulli.
Somebody, some, 178; some one, aliquis.
Sometimes, interdum, nonnunquam.
Somewhat great, aliquantus, 184.
Son, filius, i.
Son-in-law, gener, i.
Song, carmen, 344, a.
Soul, animus, i.

Spain, Hispania, æ.
Spaniard, Hispanus, l.
Spare, parcere (dat.).
Sparta, Sparta, æ.
Speak, dicere, loqui.
Speech, sermo, 331.
Spend, consumere.
Spiritedly, acriter.
Splendid, splendidus, a, um.
Spoil, præda, æ.
Spur, calcar, 325.
Stag, cervus, i.
Stain, maculare.
Stand, stare; *stand in the way*, obstare.
Standard, signum, i.
Star, sidus, (sider) is, 344; stella, æ.
State, civitas, (civitat) is; respublica, 351, 3.
Station, statio, 333, R; *to station*, constituere, collocare.
Stimulate, inducere.
Stir up, instigare.
Stoic, Stoicus, i.
Stone, lapis, (lapid) is (m.).
Stormy, turbidus, a, um.
Strange, novus, a, um.
Strength, vis, 391; robor, 344.
Strengthen, confirmare.
Strive after, persequi, 206.
Strong, valldus, a, um.
Strong desire, cupiditas, 293.
Study, studium, i.
Subdue, subigere.
Succour, subsidium, i.
Such, talis, e, 184.
Sudden, repentinus, a, um.
Suddenly, subito, adv.
Sufficiently, satis.
Sum of money, pecunia, æ.
Summer, æstas, (æstat) is, 293.
Sun, sol, (söl) is (m.).
Sup, cænare.
Superior, superior, oris.
Support, alere.

Surrender, dedtio, 333, R.
Surround, circumvenire; circumstare, 391; cingere, 401, 2.
Sure, certus, a, um.
Suspicion, suspicio, 333, R.
Sustain, sustinere.
Swallow, hirundo, 339.
Sweet, dulcis, e, 104.
Swift, celer, velox, 107.
Swiftly, celeriter, 217.
Swim, natare; *swim across*, transnare.
Sword, gladius, i.
Syracuse, Syracusæ, ærum.

T.

Take, sumere; *take away*, eripere; *take back*, recipere; *take captive*, capere; *take care of*, curare; *take by storm*, expugnare; *take possession of*, occupare.
Talent, ingenium, i.
Tame, domare.
Teach, docere.
Teacher, magister, tri.
Tear, lacryma, æ.
Tell, dicere, nuntiare.
Tempest, procella, æ: tempestas.
Temple, templum, i.
Tenacious, tenax, (tenac) is, 107.
Tender, tener, a, um.
Tent, pellis, 322.
Tenth, decimus, a, um.
Terrify, terrere.
Territory, finis (m.).
Than, quam.
That (pron.), ille, is, iste.
That, conj., *in order that*, ut; *that not*, ne.
Themselves, sui, 142.
Then, tum, adv.
There, ibi.
Thick, densus, a, um.
Thine, tuus, a, um.
Thing, res, rei; *this thing*, hæc; *these things*, hæc.

Think, putare, cogitare, existimare,
sentire, censere.

Third, tertius, a, um.

Thirst, sitis, 300.

Thirteen, tredecima.

Thirty, triginta.

This, hic, hæc, hoc.

Thither, eo.

Three, tres, ie.

Through, per (prep. with acc.).

Throw, jacere; *throw before*, projicere.

Thunder (verb), tonare.

Thus, ita.

Thy, tuus, a, um.

Tiber, Tiberis, is.

Time, tempus, (tempore) is, 344.

Timid, timidus, a, um.

To, ad (prep. with acc.).

To-day, hodie.

Together, una (adv.).

Toil, labor, 319: opera, æ.

To-morrow, cras (adv.).

Tongue, lingua, æ.

Too much, nimius, a, um.

Tooth, dens, (dent) is (m.).

Top of, summus, 297, a.

Touch, tangere; *touch upon*, attingere.

Tower, turris, 300: castellum, i.

Town, oppidum, i.

Townsmen, oppidanus, i.

Treaty, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.

Tree, arbor, (arbor) is (f.).

Trial, judicium, i.

Tribune, tribunus, i.

Tributary, stipendiarius, a, um.

Tribute, stipendium, i.

True, verus, a, um.

Truce, indutiae, arum, 57, R.

Trust to, credere (with dat.).

Turbid, turbidus, a, um.

Turn, vertere.

Twenty, viginti.

Two-a-piece, bini, 189.

U.

Ulysses, Ulysses, is.

Uncertain, incertus, a, um.

Under, sub, prep., 323.

Understand, intelligere.

Undertake, suscipere.

Unfriendly, inamicus, a, um.

Unjust, injustus, a, um.

Unless, nisi (conj.).

Unmindful of, immemor (with gen.).

Until, donec, dum (conj.).

Use, usus, ūs; *to use*, uti, dep. abl., 316, ð.

Useful, utilis, e, 104.

V.

Vacant (to be), vacare.

Vain—in vain, frustra (adv.).

Valour, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.

Value, pretium, i; *to value*, aestimare.

Vast, vastus, a, um.

Vaunt, ostentare.

Vehemently, vehementer (adv.).

Venetian, Venetus, i.

Very, valde, admodum; *very easy*, perfacilis, e; *very few*, perpauci; *very near*, proximus.

Vice, vitium, i.

Victory, victoria, æ.

Vile, vilis, e, 104.

Village, vicus, i.

Violate, violare.

Virgin, virgo, 339.

Virtue, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.

Virtuous, probus, a, um.

Voice, vox, (vōc) is, 293.

Vow, spondere, 395, IV.

W.

Wage (e. g., war), gerere: bellum inferre.

Wagon, carrus, i.

Wait for, expectare.

Walk, ambulāre.
Wall, murus, i; *walls*, mœnia, um.
Wander, vagāre, errāre.
Want, carēre, 348.
Wanting (to be), deesse, 267, b.
War, bellum, i.
Warlike, bellicosus, a, um.
Warn, monēre.
Wash, alluēre.
Watch, *watching*, vigilia, æ; *to watch*, vigilāre.
Water, aqua, æ.
Wave, fluctus, ūs.
Way, via, æ; *to make* (their) *way*, iter facere.
Wearied, defessus, a, um.
Weary of, tædet, 579.
Weep, flēre.
Well (to be), valēre.
West, Occidens.
What (in number)? quotus? *what is the difference?* quid interest?
When, quum (conj.).
Whence, unde (adv.).
Whether, num, 174: utrum.
Where, ubi (adv.).
Which of the two, uter, 194, R. 1.
Whirlwind, turbo, (turbin) is (m.).
Who, qui, quæ, quod; *who?* quis, quæ, quid?
Whole, omnis, e; universus, a, um; totus, a, um; cunctus, 441.
Why? cūr?
Wicked, improbus, a, um.
Wide, latus, a, um; *widely*, latè; *more widely*, latius.
Wild beast, fera, æ.
Wind, ventus, i.
Willingly, libenter.
Wine, vinum, i.
Wing, ala, æ.
Winter, hyems, (hyem) is, 293; *to winter*, hiemāre; *winter-quarters*, hiberna, orum (pl.).
Wisdom, sapientia, æ.

Wise, sapiens, (sapient) is, 107; *wisely*, sapienter.
Wish, velle, cupēre.
With, cum (prep., abl.).
Without, sine (prep., abl.); *to be without*, carēre.
Withstand, resistēre, 390.
Wolf, lupus, i.
Woman, femina, æ; *mulier*, is (f.).
Wonder at, admirāri, dep.
Wonderful, mirabilis, e, 104.
Wood (a), sylva, æ.
Word, verbum, i; *word is brought*, nuntiātum est.
Work, opus, (oper) is, 344.
World, mundus, i: orbis terrarum.
Worse, pejus, adv.; *worst*, pessimus, 370.
Worship, colēre, adorāre.
Worthy, dignus, a, um (with abl.).
Would-that, utinam, 526.
Wound, vulnus, (vulner) is, 344; *to wound*, vulnerāre.
Wretched, miser, 77, b.
Write, scribēre.
Writer, scriptor, 319.

X.

Xenophon, Xenophon, (Xenophont) is.

Y.

Year, annus, adv.
Yearly, quotannis, i.
Yes, immo.
Yesterday, heri.
Yet, tamen.
Yoke, jugum, i.
Young-man, juvenis, is (m.): adolescens.
You, vos (sing., tu).
Your, vester, tra, trum, 134.
Youth, juvenus, (juventū) is, 293; *a youth*. See *young man*.

Z.

Zeal, studium, i.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

WHAT is a *monosyllable*? a *dissyllable*? a *polysyllable*? (8.)—What is *inflection*?—What is the inflection of *nouns* called? of *verbs*? (21, 2 R.)—Name the *vowels*: the *liquids*: the *c-sounds*: *p-sounds*: *t-sounds*: *double consonants*: *diphthongs*, (23.)—Repeat the *general rules of quantity*, (24.)—Repeat the *general rules of gender*, (25, a.)


Has the Latin any *article*? (27.)—What is the *stem* of a *noun*? (30.)—How many *cases* of *nouns* are there? (31.)—What is the use of the *nominative*? the *vocative*? the *genitive*? (33.)—How many *declensions*?—How distinguished? (34.)—Give *nom.*, *voc.*, and *gen.* endings of 1st decl. (*nom.* and *voc.*, a *short*; *abl.*, a *long*).—What is the *gender* of 1st decl.? (36, c.)

Where do you put the *unemphatic gen.*? (*After* its noun, 38, a.)—The *emphatic*? (*Before* its noun, 38, b.)

What is the *subject* of a sentence? the *predicate*? (41.)—What is an *active verb*? *transitive*? *intransitive*? (42.)—What does the *infinitive* express? the *indicative*? (43.)—What does the *present tense* express? the *imperfect*? the *future*? (44.)—What is the *infinitive-ending* of 1st conj.?—How do you find the *stem* of a verb? (45.)—Give the 3d *person endings* of the *indicative*, (46.)—Are the *personal pronouns* necessarily used in Latin? (47, R.)—Where do you put the *subject nominative* in a sentence? (48, II.)

What is the case of the *direct object*? (51.)—Give the *accusative-endings* of 1st decl. (52.)—Rule of position for the *object accusative*? (53, II.)

What does the *dative* express? (54): the *ablative*? (55.)—Give the *case-endings* complete, 1st decl. (618): *quantity* of final syllables (618, R. 1): *gender* (618, R. 2): rule of position for *remote object* (58, II., a): for *preposition and its noun* (58, II., b.)

Case-endings, 2d decl, masc. (61.)—Name the *feminine nouns* of 2d decl. (*alvus*, *cōlus*, *hūmus*, *vannus*).—What nouns have *i* for *vocative-ending*? (62, R. 2.)—When *to* implies *motion*, how do you render it in Latin? (63, )

What nouns of 2d decl. reject the endings *ūs* and *ō*? (64.)—Which of

these retain the *ě* in the oblique cases ? (65, R.)—What case is used with words of *abounding* and *wanting* ? (66, II., a.)

Case-endings, 2d decl. neut. (68.)—*Short* final syllables in 2d decl. (*ů s*, *ě*, *ů m*, *š*).—*Long* final syllables (*i*, *o*, *is*, *os*).—What is the infinitive-ending of verbs, 2d conj. ? (70.)—Give the 3d person endings, indic. present: imperfect: future, (71.)

Give the endings of adjectives of Class I. (76.)—What adjectives reject the endings *ů s* and *ě* ? (77.)—Where do you put the unemphatic adjective in a sentence ? (78, II., a.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun which governs another in the genitive ? (*Before* the genitive, 78, II., b.)

Give the 3d pers. endings of *esse*, indic. (79): rule of syntax for predicate noun (80, a): for predicate adjective, (81, b.)

Infinitive-ending, 3d conj. (83.)—Indic., 3d pers. endings, present: imperfect: future, (84.)—Infinitive-ending, 4th conj. (86.)—Indic., 3d pers., present: imperfect: future, (87.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition ? (89, II.)

What syllable forms the 3d pers. *pass.* ending, indic. ? (90.)—In putting an active sentence into the passive form, what changes occur ? (93, II.)—When is the preposition omitted ? (93, II., R.)

Case-endings, 3d decl. (98.)—What is the gender of most nouns which add *s* to form the nom. ? (99.)—Decline *sermo*: *urbs*: *lex*.

What is the gender of nouns in *a*, *ar*, *e* ? (102, R. 2.)—Endings of adjectives of 2d class ? (104.)—Decline *brěvīs*. (105.)—What adjectives take *ě* instead of *i* in abl. ? (105, R. 2.)—What case is used with adjectives of *advantage* or *disadvantage*? of *likeness* or *unlikeness* ? (106, II., c.)

What adjectives form Class III. ? (107.)—Decline *fělix*. (108.)—Which ending do *participles* in *as* take in *abl. sing.*, *ě* or *i* ? (108, R. 1, b.)

What nouns belong to 4th decl. ? (110.)—Give the case-endings, masc. (111): neut. (111): quantity of final syllables, 4th decl. (621, R. 1): fem. nouns of 4th decl. (621, R. 2.)—What nouns take *ůbūs* in *abl. plur.* ? (621, R. 3.)—Decline *děmūs*, (112, 3.)—What does *děmī* mean ? (112, 4.)—Rule of syntax for verbs compounded with *trans*, (113, II., a.)—Is *trans* ever repeated ?

What nouns belong to 5th decl. ? (114.)—Case-endings, 5th decl. ? (116.)—When is the *e* in *ei* *long* ? when *short* ? (116, R.)—What nouns of 5th

decl. have plur. complete ? (117, R.)—Time *when* is put in what case ? (118, II., c.)

Decline *ego*, (120.)—What is the *adj. personal* pron. of 1st pers. sing. ? of 1st pers. plur. ? (122.)—Give 1st pers. endings, 1st conj., act. indic. *present* : *imperfect* : *future*.—Also, pass. *present* : *imperfect* : *future*. (123.)—What case is used with *esse* to denote the possessor ? (125, II., a.)—Is *cū* prefixed or suffixed to the personal pronouns ? (125, II., b.)

What are the 1st person endings, act. and pass., for 2d conj., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (126.)—The same for 3d conj. (127.)—Fourth, (128.)

Decline *tu*, (130.)—What are the 2d pers. endings, 1st conj., act. and pass., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (131.)—The same for 2d conj. (133.)—What are the *possessive* pronouns of 2d pers. ? (134.)—How is *nō* used ? (135, II., a.)—Where is *causa* placed in a sentence ? (135, II., b.)

What are the 2d pers. endings of verbs, 3d conj., act. and pass., indic. pres. ? imperfect ? future ? (136.)—The same for 4th conj. (137.)

Decline the *reflexive* pronoun *sui*, (142.)—What is the *adjective-personal* pronoun of 3d pers. ? (143.)—What case does *imperāre* govern ? (147.)

Why are *demonstrative* pronouns so called ? (149.)—Decline *is*, *eā*, *id*, (150.)—Inflect *esse*, pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (151.)—Distinguish *suus* and *eius*, (153.)—What is the demonstrative of the 1st person ? (156) : of 2d ? (157) : of 3d ? (158.)

Decline *qui*, (164.)—Syntax of the relative, (167, b.)

Decline *quis*, (170.)—How is the answer *yes* given ? (173.)—What answer does *num* expect ? (175, b.)

Name the seven *indefinite* pronouns, (178.)—How are indef. pronouns used with a genitive ? (180, a.)

Name the *correlative* pronouns, (184.)—Give the Latin for *much gold* (186, a) : for *much money* (186, a).—Distinguish *tantum* and *tantus*, (186, obs.)

Repeat the first twelve numerals in all four classes, (189.)—Give the rule for accus. of *time* or *space*, (191.)

Decline *unus*, *duo*, and *tres*, (194.)—What words are declined like *unus* ? (194, R. 1.)—Is the penult of *unius* *long* or *short* ?

Inflect *capere* in pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (199.)

What are *deponent* verbs ? (206.)—How are they conjugated ? (Ans., like passives.)

How do you form *derivative adverbs* from adjectives of Class I. ? (215, 1) : of Class II. ? (215, 2.)—What is the general *position* of the adverb in a sentence ? (218, a.)—Where is *ferè* placed ? (218, b.)—How is *nequidem* used ? (218, c.)

What prepositions govern the accus. or ablat. ? (223.)—Give the rule of *apposition*, (225, a.)

Give the person-endings, pres. indic. act. : tense-stem : connecting-vowel : 1st conj. : 2d : 3d : 4th, (234.)

Imperfect tense, person-endings : tense-stem, four conj's. : connecting-vowel, (237.)—*Future* tense, 1st and 2d conj., person-endings : tense-stems : connecting-vowels (238) : 3d and 4th conj., fut., person-ending : tense-stem : connecting-vowel, (240.)

Passive-endings, (243.)—Apparent irregularities, viz., 1st pers. pres. indic. : 3d conj., 2d pers. sing. pres. : 1st and 2d conj., fut., 2d pers. sing. (244.)

Rules of Quantity.—Monosyllables ending in a vowel (247, a.) : exceptions.—Monosyllables ending in a consonant : exceptions, (247, b.)—Quantity of *a* final (248) : *e* final (249) : of *i* final (250) : of *o* final (251) : of *u* final, (252.)—Final syllables ending in a consonant, (253.)—Final *as*, *es*, *os* : exceptions, (254.)—Final *is* and *us* : exceptions, (255.)—Increase of nouns (257) : of verbs, (258.)—Penults of perf. tense, (259.)—Adjectives in *idus*, *icus* : in *inus* : in *ilis*, *bilis*, (260.)

What are the tenses for action *completed* ? (262) : their endings ? (263.)—Give the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. of *esse*, (264.)—Distinguish perf. pres. from perf. aorist, (265.)—What case do the compounds of *esse* with prepositions govern ? (267, b.)

How is perf. stem formed in most verbs of 1st conj. ? of 2d ? of 4th ? (270.)—Give perf. of *amare*, *monere*, *audire*, (271.)

How is perf. stem formed of most verbs of 3d conj. ? (276.)—Euphonic rules : (1) *k*-sound before *s* : (2) *b* before *s* : (3) *t*-sound before *s*, (277.)—What answer does *nonne* expect ? (280.)—How is the pluperf. formed ? the fut. perf. ? (283.)

Name the six classes of nouns of 3d decl. (291.)—Euphonic rules, (292.)—How do you express "*on the top of the mountain*" in Latin? (297.)

Decline Jupiter: Bos: Respublica: Jusjurandum, (351.)

Repeat the rules of gender, 3d decl., from nominative formation, with the exceptions under each, (355.)

Comparison of Adjectives.—What is the *compar.* ending? (357.)—If the stem ends in a vowel, how is the *compar.* formed? (357, R.)—Syntax of *compar.*, when *quam* is omitted, (360, c.)

Superl. ending, (363.)—Stems in *er* add what ending? (364.)—Stems in *l*, what ending? (365.)—What case is used with superlatives? (367, b.)

Compare bonus, malus, magnus, multus, parvus, senex, juvenis, exterus, inferus, superus, posterus, (370.)—Comp. dives, benevolus.

Are adverbs compared?—How? (376.)


What is the supine? (377.)—Form supine-stem, 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (378.)—How is supine in *um* used? (379.)—How is supine in *u* used? (380.)—Name the supines in *u* which are in common use, (381.)—What case answers the question *whither*? (383.)

What are the *four* ways of forming perf. stem, 1st conj.? (387.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (387.)—How do you form perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. of these verbs? (388.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem, 2d conj.? (394.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (395.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied here? (395, III., a, b, c.)

Name the *six* ways of forming the perf. stem, 3d conj. (400.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied in forming perf. stems of verbs of 1st class? (401, 1, &c.)

How do verbs of 2d class form perf. stem? (406): verbs of 3d class?—In what sense is *ad* often used by Cæsar? (408, c.)

How do verbs of 4th class form perf. stem? (411.)—What vowel changes must be observed here? (411, a, b, c.)—Give the rule for verbs of demanding (413, 1): for verbs of sparing (413, 4.)—What is the perf. of *cādērē*? of *cādērē*? (413, )

M M

How do verbs of 5th class form perf. stem? (416).—Form the perf. stems of the 10 verbs in (416, c).—What is said of the *prænomēn*? (418, c.)

How do verbs of 6th class form perf. stem? (421).—What cases are used after *distribūere*? (423, c.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem in 4th conj.? (426).—How many verbs does each class contain? (427).—How is the *manner* of an action expressed in Latin? (428, a.)

How are the passive tenses for completed action formed? (431).—How is the perf. part. formed? (432, b).—How is it inflected? (432, a).—Inflect the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. pass. of *amāre*, (433).—How is the perf. pass. part. sometimes used with *est*? (435, c.)

How many participles are there in Latin, act. and pass.? (438).—Give the endings of the present part. act. in the four conjugations, (439, a).—How is it declined? (440).—Has the Latin any *active* part. to express *complete* action? (None, excepting in *deponent* verbs, 440, a, b).—What is the use of the part. in discourse? (442, c).—Give the words in which cannot stand first in a clause or sentence, (442, c.)

How is the fut. part. act. formed? (445).—Inflect the periphrastic pres., past, and fut. of *amāre*, (446).—Give the rule for the use of the fut. part. with verbs of motion, (448.)

How is the perf. pass. part. formed? (451, a).—How is it inflected? (451, b).—How do *deponent* verbs use the perf. part. form? (451, c).—What is the case of the place *where*? (453, a): of the place *whence*? (453, b): of the place *whither*? (453, c.)

When is the part. used in the ablative with a noun? (456).—How is the want of a perf. act. part. supplied in Latin? (457).—Can a noun be used in the ablative absolute with another noun? (Yes: 458.)


How does the infin. express action? (465).—Give the infin. forms, act. and pass., in all the conjugations, (466).—Give the rule for the complementary infin. (468, a.)

Name the classes of verbs which take after them the accus. and infin. (471).—Give the method of changing English sentences commencing with *that* into the Latin accus. and infin. (472, 1, 2, 3.)

Give the formation of the perf. infin. pass. (478).—When the accus. is used with this infin., with what does its part. agree? (478.)

How is the infin. fut. act. formed? (482): the infin. fut. pass.? (483.)

Under what form does the gerund express the action of the verb ? (487, a.)—How is the gerund-stem formed ? (487, b.)—How the cases of the gerund ? (487, c.)—What rules apply to the cases of the infin. and gerund ? (489.)—Is the infin. or the accus. ger. used with a preposition ? (489, R.)—What case does the ger. govern ? (490.)

How does the gerundive express the action of a verb ? (495, a.)—How are its cases formed ? (495, b.)—How is it used ? (496.)—When *must* the gerundive be used instead of the gerund ?—When *may* it be so used ? (496, R.)—After what verbs does the gerundive express a purpose or object ? (498, )

What does the gerundive in the nom. neut. with *esse* express ? (501, a.)—What does it express when used with *esse* as a verbal adjective ? (502.)—What is the case of the person in both these constructions ? (The dative.)

How does *imper.* mood express the action of the verb ? (507.)—What is *not* with the imper. ? (510, Rule.)

When is a sentence compound ? (513, a.)—Give an example of a principal sentence : of a subordinate sentence, (513, c.)—Give some of the classes of subordinate sentences, (514, a, &c.)

Repeat the copulative conjunctions, (515.)—How are *et* and *que* used ? (517, a) : *ac* ? (517, b.)—What does *et* followed by another *et* mean ? (517, c.)—What is the Latin for *again and again* ? for *not only—but also* ? (517, d.)

Name the disjunctive conjunctions, (519.)—What does *aut* indicate ? *vel* ? (519, R. 1 and 2.)—How is *ve* used ? (519, R. 3.)—What do these conj. mean when repeated ? (519, R. 4.)—Give the adversatives, (520.)—What does *sed* express ? (522, a) : *autem* ? (522, b.)

How does the subjunc. mood express affirmation ? (524.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. of *esse*, (525.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. act. and pass. of *amārē*, *mōnērē*, *rēgērē*, *audirē*, (526, b.)—How may a *wish* be expressed in Latin ? (528, a.)—How may a *softened command* be expressed ? (528, b.)—How do you express a direct question when *doubt* is implied ? (528, c.)

Inflect subjunc. perf. of *esse*, (531.)—How do regular verbs form subjunc. perf. act. ? (532, 1) : subjunc. perf. pass. ? (532, 2.)—Inflect the subjunc. perf. act. and pass. of *amārē*, *mōnērē*, *rēgērē*, *audirē*, (532, 3.)—How is the subjunc. perf. used imperatively ? (534, a.)—How may a *supposed case* be expressed ? (534, b.)—How may a *softened assertion* be expressed ? (534, c.)—What interrogative sentences take the subjunc. ? (534, c.)

How is the subjunc. imperf. formed ? (537.)—Repeat the paradigm (538.)—How is the subjunc. pluperf. act. and pass. formed ? (539, *a* and *b*.)—Give the paradigm, (539, *c*.)—Repeat the conditional conjunctions, (540, *a*.)—What is a conditional sentence ? (540, *b*.)—In conditional sentences how do you express a *real* condition ? a *possible* condition ? an *unreal* or *impossible* in present time ? an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time ? (542, *b*, Rule.)—Can the perf. or pluperf. indic. ever be used with *si* ? (No.)

Inflect *posse* in subjunc. pres. : imperf. : perf. : pluperf. (545.)—State the composition of *posse*.—Repeat the final conjunctions, (546.)—How is purpose or aim expressed in English ? how in Latin ? (548, *a*.)—How is an object to be provided against introduced in English ? how in Latin ? (548, *b*.)—Can a purpose or aim be expressed in Latin by an infin. ? (No.)

Give the primary tenses of the Latin verb : the historical, (551, 2, *a*, *b*.)—What is the rule for the succession of tenses ? (551, 3.)—How is a *result* expressed in English ? how in Latin ? (553, *a*.)—What is the rule for ut signifying *that* ? (553, *b*.)

How is the want of a fut. subjunc. supplied in Latin ? (556.)—Give the paradigm, periph. conj. subjunc. (556.)—When does *quo* express a purpose instead of *ut* ? (558, *a*.)—In what sense is *quin* used ? (1) after negative sentences ? (2) after *non dubito*, &c. ? (558, *b*.)—When is *quominus* used in preference to *ne* ? (558, *c*.)

What are the two uses of *quum* ? (561.)—What is the first use called ? the second ? (561.)—When is *quum* followed by the indic. ? (563, *a*.)—When is *quum* *temporal* followed by the imperf. or pluperf. subjunc. ? (563, *b*.)—What is the rule for *quum* causal ? (563, *c*.)

When is the rel. pronoun followed by the subjunc. ? (566.)—Give the rule for the use of subjunc. in a rel. sentence, (568, *d*.)—Is the rel. to express a purpose very common in Cæsar ? (Yes.)

In what two ways may we relate the words of another ? (571.)—What is each method called ? (571.)—What kinds of sentences are introduced in *oratio obliqua* ? (Either principal or subordinate.)—What mood is used in principal sentences in *oratio obliqua* ? (574, *a*): in subordinate sentences ? (574, *b*.)

What are impersonal verbs ? (577.)—Give the classes of impersonals, (578.)—What impersonals are followed by the accus. of the person and the gen. of the cause ? (579, *a*.)

Give the rule for *oportet* and *decet* (584, a): for *placet* (584, b). for *licet* and *libet* (584, c): for *interest* and *refert* (584, d).



State the composition of *possum*, and repeat the paradigm, (587.)

Give the composition of *nolo* and *malo*, and repeat the paradigms (592).—Give the three rules for *velle*, *nolle*, and *malle*, in (594).

Repeat the paradigm of irregular forms of *ferre*, (596).—How are the remaining tenses formed? (596, b).—What is the meaning of *ferunt*? (598, b.)

Of what verb does *fieri* form the pass.? (600).—How are the tenses formed? (600).—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *i* in *fieri*? (600, R).—What forms of *edere* are similar to those of *esse*? (601).—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *es*, from *esse*? of *es*, from *edere*? (601, R.)

What conjugation does *ire* follow? (605).—Give the paradigm.—What is said of the compounds? (605, 1, 2).—How are *queo* and *nequeo* conjugated? (606.)

Inflect *aio* (609): *inquam* (610): *nōvi* (611).—How do you distinguish between the use of *aio* and of *inquam*? (613, b, )—What form of *cœpi* is used with a pass. infin.? (613, c, )

M M 2

THE END

